

# reledmac

## Typeset scholarly editions with L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X<sup>\*</sup>

Maïeul Rouquette<sup>†</sup>

based on the original ledmac by

Peter Wilson

Herries Press

which was based on the original edmac, tabmac and edstanza by

John Lavagnino, Dominik Wujastyk, Herbert Breger and Wayne Sullivan.

### Abstract

The **reledmac** provides many tools in order to typeset scholarly editions. It is based on the **eledmac** package, which was based on the **ledmac** package, which was based on the **edmac** T<sub>E</sub>X package.

It can be used in combination with **reledpar** in order to typeset two texts in parallel, like an original text and its translation in a modern language.

**reledmac** provides many tools and options. Normally, they are all documented in this file. Also provided is a help folder, “examples”. The folder contains additional examples (although not for every possible case). Examples starting with “1-” are for basic uses, those starting with “2-” are for advanced uses.

To report bugs or request a new feature, please go to ledmac GitHub page and click on “New Issue”: <https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues/>. You must create an account on github.com to access my page (maieul/ledmac). GitHub accounts are free for open-source users. You can post messages in English or in French (preferred).

You can subscribe to the **reledmac** mail list at:  
<http://geekographie.maieul.net/146>

## Contents

<b>1 Introduction</b>	<b>12</b>
1.1 Aim of the package . . . . .	12
1.2 History . . . . .	13
1.2.1 edmac . . . . .	13
1.2.2 ledmac . . . . .	14
1.2.3 eledmac . . . . .	15

---

<sup>\*</sup>This file (**reledmac.dtx**) has version number v2.34.0, last revised 2020/06/24.

<sup>†</sup>maieul at maieul dot net

1.2.4 <code>reledmac</code> . . . . .	15
1.3 Bibliography . . . . .	15
1.4 Acknowledgements . . . . .	15
<b>2 How the package works — the problem of the number of <math>\LaTeX</math> runs</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>3 Compatibility warning</b>	<b>16</b>
<b>4 Options</b>	<b>16</b>
4.1 Specific features . . . . .	16
4.2 Optimizing package performance . . . . .	17
<b>5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering</b>	<b>18</b>
5.1 Text lines numbering . . . . .	18
5.2 Paragraphs . . . . .	18
5.2.1 Basics . . . . .	18
5.2.2 Automatically producing <code>\pstart ... \pend</code> . . . . .	19
5.2.3 Content before specific <code>\pstart</code> and after specific <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	19
5.2.4 Content before every <code>\pstart</code> and after every <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	20
5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs ( <code>\pstart</code> ) . . . . .	20
5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left . . . . .	21
5.2.7 Memory limits . . . . .	21
5.3 Lineation commands . . . . .	21
5.3.1 Disabling lineation . . . . .	21
5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step . . . . .	22
5.3.3 Setting lineation reset . . . . .	22
5.3.4 Setting line number margin . . . . .	23
5.3.5 Other settings . . . . .	23
5.4 Changing the line numbers . . . . .	23
5.4.1 Sublineation . . . . .	23
5.4.2 Locking lineation . . . . .	24
5.4.3 Setting and changing line number . . . . .	24
5.4.4 Line number style . . . . .	24
5.4.5 Skipping and hiding number . . . . .	25
5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers . . . . .	25
5.5.1 Modifying annotation associated with a specific note . . . . .	26
5.5.2 Changing the position of the annotation . . . . .	26
5.5.3 Changing the macro in which annotations are wrapped . . . . .	27
5.5.4 Not printing the second identical annotations . . . . .	28
5.5.5 Separator between annotations . . . . .	28
5.5.6 Annotations in the apparatus . . . . .	28
5.6 Executing code at each line . . . . .	28
5.7 Executing code at a specific line . . . . .	28

<b>6 Apparatus commands</b>	<b>29</b>
6.1 Terminology	29
6.2 Critical notes	29
6.2.1 The lemma	29
6.2.2 Footnotes	30
6.2.3 Endnotes	30
6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus	32
6.2.5 Change lemma and line number	32
6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus	33
6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus	33
6.3.1 Basic use	33
6.3.2 Case setting	34
6.3.3 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor	34
6.3.4 Notes about right-to-left texts	34
6.3.5 Use with <code>\lemma</code> command	35
6.3.6 Sameword for a group of words	36
6.3.7 Customizing	37
6.3.8 Problems with some macros	37
6.3.9 Automatic sameword annotation	38
6.4 Apparatus of manuscripts	38
6.4.1 Marking sections of text	39
6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts	39
6.4.3 Settings	40
6.5 Familiar notes	40
6.5.1 Basic use	40
6.5.2 Customizing mark	40
6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes	41
6.6 Printing the footnote mark without printing the footnote text	41
6.7 Changing series	41
6.7.1 Create a new series	41
6.7.2 Delete series	41
6.7.3 Series order	41
6.8 Position of critical and familiar footnotes	42
<b>7 Apparatus customization</b>	<b>43</b>
7.1 Notes arrangement in a series	43
7.2 Control line number printing	44
7.2.1 Print line number only at first time	44
7.2.2 Print line number annotation only the first time	44
7.2.3 Print page number only at first time	45
7.2.4 Arbitrary text before line number	46
7.2.5 Separator for line range	46
7.2.6 Abbreviate line range	46
7.2.7 Disable line number	47
7.2.8 Printing pstart number	47
7.2.9 Printing stanza number	47

7.2.10 Separator between line and subline numbers . . . . .	47
7.2.11 Separator between page and line numbers . . . . .	48
7.2.12 Space around number . . . . .	48
7.2.13 Space around line symbol . . . . .	48
7.2.14 Space in place of number . . . . .	48
7.2.15 Boxing line number and line symbol . . . . .	48
7.3 Arbitrary code around line number . . . . .	49
7.4 Separator between the lemma and the note . . . . .	50
7.4.1 For footnotes . . . . .	50
7.4.2 For endnotes . . . . .	50
7.5 Font style . . . . .	51
7.5.1 For line number . . . . .	51
7.5.2 For the lemma . . . . .	51
7.5.3 For all notes . . . . .	51
7.6 Wrapping notes . . . . .	51
7.6.1 Wrapping lemmas . . . . .	51
7.6.2 Wrapping contents . . . . .	52
7.7 Indent of notes content . . . . .	52
7.8 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes . . . . .	52
7.9 Arbitrary code before inserting note . . . . .	52
7.10 Options for footnotes in columns . . . . .	53
7.10.1 Alignment . . . . .	53
7.10.2 Size of the columns . . . . .	53
7.11 Options for paragraphed footnotes and notes grouped by line . . . . .	53
7.11.1 Mark separation of notes . . . . .	53
7.11.2 Ragged text . . . . .	54
7.12 Options for block of notes . . . . .	54
7.12.1 Grouping notes by line . . . . .	54
7.12.2 Text before notes . . . . .	54
7.12.3 Code before notes . . . . .	55
7.12.4 Spacing . . . . .	55
7.12.5 Rule . . . . .	55
7.12.6 Maximum height . . . . .	55
7.12.7 Width . . . . .	56
7.13 Footnotes and the <code>reledpar</code> columns . . . . .	56
7.14 Line number annotation . . . . .	56
7.15 Endnotes in one paragraph . . . . .	56
<b>8 Fonts</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>9 Verse</b>	<b>57</b>
9.1 Basic . . . . .	57
9.2 Define stanza indents . . . . .	57
9.3 Repeating stanza indents . . . . .	58
9.4 Notes about the scope of the indent settings . . . . .	59
9.5 Manual stanza indent . . . . .	59

9.6 Stanza breaking . . . . .	59
9.7 Hanging symbol . . . . .	60
9.8 Long verse and page break . . . . .	60
9.9 Content before/after verses . . . . .	60
9.10 Numbering stanza . . . . .	61
9.11 Antilabe . . . . .	61
9.12 Various tools . . . . .	62
9.13 Notes on empty lines . . . . .	62
<b>10 Grouping</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>11 Cross referencing</b>	<b>63</b>
11.1 Basic use . . . . .	63
11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note . . . . .	64
11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case . . . . .	64
11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note . . . . .	64
11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing . . . . .	65
11.5 Normal $\text{\LaTeX}$ cross-referencing . . . . .	65
11.6 References to start and end lines . . . . .	65
11.6.1 Reference to main text lines . . . . .	65
11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus . . . . .	66
11.6.3 Settings . . . . .	66
11.6.4 Combining multiple references . . . . .	68
11.7 Compatibility with <code>xr</code> package . . . . .	68
<b>12 Sidenotes</b>	<b>68</b>
12.1 Basics . . . . .	68
12.2 Setting . . . . .	69
12.2.1 Width . . . . .	69
12.2.2 Vertical position . . . . .	69
12.2.3 Distance to the main text . . . . .	69
12.2.4 Font . . . . .	69
12.2.5 Separator between notes . . . . .	69
<b>13 Indexing</b>	<b>70</b>
13.1 Basics . . . . .	70
13.2 Use with <code>imakeidx</code> or <code>indextools</code> . . . . .	70
13.3 Referring to critical notes . . . . .	70
13.4 Separator between page and line numbers . . . . .	71
13.5 Using <code>xindy</code> . . . . .	71
13.6 Advanced setting . . . . .	72
<b>14 Glossary</b>	<b>72</b>
14.1 Preamble setting . . . . .	72
14.2 Commands . . . . .	72
<b>15 Tabular material</b>	<b>73</b>

<b>16 Sectioning commands</b>	<b>76</b>
16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes . . . . .	76
16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes . . . . .	76
16.3 Optimization . . . . .	77
<b>17 Quotation environments</b>	<b>77</b>
<b>18 Page breaks</b>	<b>77</b>
18.1 Control page breaking . . . . .	77
18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses . . . . .	78
<b>19 Miscellaneous</b>	<b>78</b>
19.1 Known and suspected limitations . . . . .	79
19.1.1 Non-standard geometry . . . . .	79
19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility . . . . .	79
19.1.3 ‘No room for a new’ . . . . .	79
19.1.4 Marginal notes . . . . .	79
19.1.5 Paragraph shape . . . . .	80
19.1.6 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	80
19.1.7 Use with other packages . . . . .	80
19.2 Parallel typesetting . . . . .	81
<b>I Implementation overview</b>	<b>82</b>
<b>II Preliminaries</b>	<b>82</b>
II.1 Links with original edmac . . . . .	82
II.2 Package declaration . . . . .	82
II.3 Package options . . . . .	83
II.3.1 Options of reledpar . . . . .	83
II.3.2 Options of reledmac . . . . .	83
II.4 Loading packages . . . . .	85
II.5 Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ . . . . .	86
II.6 Boolean flags . . . . .	86
II.7 Messages . . . . .	87
II.8 Gobbling . . . . .	94
II.9 Wrapping content . . . . .	94
II.10 Miscellaneous commands . . . . .	95
II.11 Prepare reledpar . . . . .	95
II.12 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case . . . . .	96
<b>III Sectioning commands</b>	<b>96</b>
<b>IV List macros</b>	<b>102</b>

<b>V Line counting</b>	<b>103</b>
V.1 Choosing the system of lineation . . . . .	103
V.2 Line number margin . . . . .	105
V.3 Line number initialization and increment . . . . .	106
V.4 Line number locking . . . . .	107
V.5 Line number style . . . . .	108
V.6 Line number printing . . . . .	108
V.7 Line number counters and lists . . . . .	110
V.8 Line number locking counter . . . . .	111
V.9 Line number associated to lemma . . . . .	111
V.10 Reading the line-list file . . . . .	114
V.11 Commands within the line-list file . . . . .	117
V.12 Writing to the line-list file . . . . .	130
<b>VI Marking text for notes</b>	<b>138</b>
VI.1 <code>\edtext</code> itself . . . . .	139
VI.2 Substitute lemma . . . . .	147
VI.3 Substitute line numbers . . . . .	147
VI.4 Lemma disambiguation . . . . .	148
<b>VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly</b>	<b>155</b>
VII.1 Boxes, counters, <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\pend</code> . . . . .	155
VII.2 Processing one line . . . . .	162
VII.2.1 General process . . . . .	162
VII.2.2 Process for “normal” line . . . . .	163
VII.2.3 Process for line containing <code>\eledsection</code> command . . . . .	165
VII.2.4 Hooks . . . . .	166
VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization . . . . .	166
<b>VIII Line and page number computation</b>	<b>167</b>
VIII.1 Continuous line numbering between parallel typesetting and normal typesetting . . . . .	171
<b>IX Line number annotation</b>	<b>172</b>
<b>X Line number printing</b>	<b>174</b>
<b>XI Pstart number printing inside</b>	<b>178</b>
<b>XII Restoring footnotes and penalties</b>	<b>179</b>
XII.1 Add insertions to the vertical list . . . . .	180
XII.2 Penalties . . . . .	182
XII.3 Printing leftover notes . . . . .	183
XII.4 Text before notes . . . . .	184

<b>XIII Critical footnotes</b>	<b>185</b>
XIII.1 Fonts . . . . .	185
XIII.2 Individual note options . . . . .	186
XIII.3 Notes language . . . . .	186
XIII.4 General survey of the way we manage notes . . . . .	187
XIII.5 General setup . . . . .	188
XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement . . . . .	189
XIII.6.1 User level macro . . . . .	189
XIII.6.2 Normal footnote . . . . .	189
XIII.6.3 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	194
XIII.6.4 Columnar footnotes . . . . .	202
XIII.7 Footnote paragraph indent . . . . .	209
XIII.8 Footnote hanging indent . . . . .	209
XIII.9 Critical notes presentation . . . . .	210
XIII.9.1 Font tools . . . . .	210
XIII.9.2 Pstart number in footnote . . . . .	211
XIII.9.3 Lemma printing . . . . .	211
XIII.9.4 Line number printing . . . . .	212
XIII.9.5 Footnote grouped by line . . . . .	224
<b>XIV Familiar footnotes</b>	<b>225</b>
XIV.1 Adjacent footnotes . . . . .	225
XIV.2 Regular footnotes for numbered texts . . . . .	227
XIV.3 Footnote formats . . . . .	229
XIV.4 Footnote arrangement . . . . .	229
XIV.4.1 User level macro . . . . .	229
XIV.4.2 Normal footnotes . . . . .	229
XIV.4.3 Two columns footnotes . . . . .	235
XIV.4.4 Three columns footnotes . . . . .	238
XIV.4.5 Paragraphed footnotes . . . . .	240
XIV.5 Wrapping footnote marks in hyperlink . . . . .	244
<b>XV Code common to both critical and familiar footnote in normal arrangement</b>	<b>245</b>
<b>XVI Footnotes' width for two columns</b>	<b>246</b>
<b>XVII Footnotes' order</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>XVIII Footnotes' rule</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>XIX Specific skip for first series of footnotes</b>	<b>248</b>
XIX.1 Overview . . . . .	248
XIX.2 User level command . . . . .	248
XIX.3 Internal commands . . . . .	249



<b>XX Endnotes</b>	<b>250</b>
XX.1 Internal commands	250
XX.2 User level commands	254
XX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes	254
XX.2.2 Printing endnotes	255
<b>XXI Generate series of notes</b>	<b>264</b>
XXI.1 Test if series is still existing	264
XXI.2 Init specific to <code>reledpar</code>	264
XXI.3 For critical footnotes	265
XXI.3.1 Options	265
XXI.3.2 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot	267
XXI.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, <code>\Afootnote</code> , <code>\Bfootnote</code> etc.	267
XXI.3.4 Set standard display	269
XXI.4 For familiar footnotes	270
XXI.4.1 Options	270
XXI.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes ( <code>\footnoteX</code> )	271
XXI.5 The endnotes	273
XXI.5.1 The auxiliary file	273
XXI.5.2 The main macro	273
XXI.5.3 Tools	274
XXI.5.4 Internal commands	275
XXI.5.5 The options	275
XXI.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E)	277
<b>XXII Setting series display</b>	<b>277</b>
XXII.1 Change series order	277
XXII.2 Test series order	277
XXII.2.1 Get the first series	278
XXII.3 Series setting	278
XXII.3.1 General way of working	278
XXII.3.2 Tools to set options	278
XXII.3.3 Tools to generate options commands	280
XXII.3.4 Options for critical notes	282
XXII.3.5 Options for familiar notes	284
XXII.3.6 Options for endnotes	284
XXII.4 Hooks for a particular footnote	286
XXII.5 Alias	288
<b>XXIII Output routine</b>	<b>288</b>
XXIII.1 Extra footnotes output	288
XXIII.2 Patching standard output's commands	292
<b>XXIV Page numbering in parallel typesetting</b>	<b>294</b>

<b>XXV Cross referencing</b>	<b>296</b>
XXV.1 Compatibility with xref . . . . .	312
<b>XXVI Sidenotes</b>	<b>313</b>
<b>XXVII Minipages and such</b>	<b>321</b>
<b>XXVIII Indexing</b>	<b>326</b>
XXVIII.1 Looking on package order . . . . .	326
XXVIII.2 Auxiliary macros for \edindex . . . . .	326
XXVIII.3 Code specific to \edindexin critical footnotes . . . . .	327
XXVIII.4 Analysis of command in indexed text . . . . .	329
XXVIII.5 Code for the formatted index . . . . .	329
XXVIII.6 Main code . . . . .	330
XXVIII.7 Hyperlink . . . . .	332
XXVIII.8 ‘innote’ and ‘notenumber’ option of indextols package . . . . .	334
<b>XXIX Glossaries</b>	<b>335</b>
<b>XXX Verse</b>	<b>338</b>
XXX.1 Hanging symbol management . . . . .	338
XXX.2 Using & character . . . . .	339
XXX.3 Code category setting . . . . .	339
XXX.4 Stanza count and indent . . . . .	339
XXX.5 Numbering stanza . . . . .	341
XXX.6 Stanza number in note . . . . .	342
XXX.7 Main work . . . . .	343
XXX.8 Restore catcode and penalties . . . . .	346
XXX.9 Dealing with antilabe . . . . .	346
<b>XXXI Apparatus of Manuscripts</b>	<b>347</b>
XXXI.1 User level macro . . . . .	347
XXXI.2 Setting macro . . . . .	348
XXXI.3 Counters and lists . . . . .	349
XXXI.4 Auxiliary file macros . . . . .	350
XXXI.5 Action macro . . . . .	351
XXXI.6 Inserting footnote . . . . .	356
XXXI.7 Other . . . . .	356
<b>XXXII Arrays and tables</b>	<b>357</b>
XXXII.1 Preamble: macro as environment . . . . .	357
XXXII.2 Tabular environments . . . . .	360
XXXII.2.1 Disabling and restoring commands . . . . .	361
XXXII.2.2 Counters, boxes and lengths . . . . .	364
XXXII.2.3 Tabular typesetting . . . . .	368
XXXII.2.4 Environments . . . . .	379

<b>XXXIII Quotation's commands</b>	<b>380</b>
<b>XXXIV Section's title commands</b>	<b>381</b>
XXXIV.1 Commands to disable some feature . . . . .	381
XXXIV.2 General overview . . . . .	381
XXXIV.3 <code>\beforeeledchapter</code> command . . . . .	382
XXXIV.4 Auxiliary commands . . . . .	382
XXXIV.5 Patching standard commands . . . . .	383
XXXIV.6 Main code of <code>\eledxxx</code> commands . . . . .	388
XXXIV.7 Macros written in the auxiliary file . . . . .	391
<b>XXXV Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines</b>	<b>393</b>
<b>XXXVI Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break</b>	<b>395</b>
<b>XXXVII Tools for <code>hyperref</code> package</b>	<b>395</b>
<b>XXXVIII Compatibility with <code>eledmac</code></b>	<b>396</b>
<b>Appendix A Things to do when changing versions</b>	<b>399</b>
A.1 Migrating from <code>edmac</code> to <code>ledmac</code> . . . . .	399
A.2 Migration from <code>ledmac</code> to <code>eledmac</code> . . . . .	400
A.3 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 1.5.1 . . . . .	401
A.4 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 1.12.0 . . . . .	401
A.5 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 17.1 . . . . .	402
A.6 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 1.21.0 . . . . .	402
A.6.1 <code>\Xledsetnormalparstuff</code> and <code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> . . .	402
A.6.2 Endnotes . . . . .	402
A.7 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 1.22.0 . . . . .	402
A.8 Migration to <code>eledmac</code> 1.23.0 . . . . .	402
A.9 Migration from <code>eledmac</code> to <code>reledmac</code> . . . . .	403
A.9.1 Risk of 'no room for a new' . . . . .	403
A.9.2 Multiple indices with <code>memoir</code> . . . . .	403
A.9.3 Deprecated commands and options . . . . .	403
A.9.4 <code>\renewcommand</code> replaced by <code>command</code> . . . . .	404
A.9.5 Commands the names of which have been changed . . . . .	404
A.9.6 Endnotes . . . . .	406
A.9.7 Z Series . . . . .	406
A.9.8 Internal commands . . . . .	406
A.10 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.1.0 . . . . .	406
A.11 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.1.3 . . . . .	406
A.12 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.3.0 . . . . .	406
A.13 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.4.0 . . . . .	407
A.14 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.5.0 . . . . .	407
A.15 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.7.0 . . . . .	407
A.16 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.7.2 . . . . .	407
A.17 Migration to <code>reledmac</code> 2.8.0 . . . . .	407

A.18 Migration to reledmac 2.13.1 . . . . .	407
A.19 Migration to reledmac 2.18.0 . . . . .	408
A.20 Migration to reledmac 2.21.0 . . . . .	408
A.21 Migration to reledmac 2.24.0 . . . . .	408
A.22 Migration to reledmac 2.26.0 . . . . .	408
A.23 Migration to reledmac 2.27.1 . . . . .	408
A.24 Migration to reledmac 2.30.0 . . . . .	408
A.25 Migration to reledmac 2.31.1 . . . . .	409
A.26 Migration to reledmac 2.32.7 . . . . .	409
A.27 Migration to reledmac 2.33.0 . . . . .	409
<b>Appendix B Auxiliary softwares</b>	<b>409</b>
B.1 <i>samewords</i> . . . . .	409
B.2 critical-keys for <i>Emacs</i> . . . . .	409
B.3 critical-marks for <i>Emacs</i> . . . . .	409
B.4 Import from TEI . . . . .	409
B.5 Import from TEI . . . . .	409
<b>References</b>	<b>411</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>411</b>
<b>Change History</b>	<b>463</b>

## 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Aim of the package

The `reledmac` package, together with `lATEX`, provides several important facilities for formatting critical editions of texts in a traditional manner. Major features include:

- automatic stepped line numbering, by page, section or paragraph;
- sub-lineation within the main series of line numbers;
- variant readings automatically keyed to line numbers;
- caters to both prose and verse;
- multiple series of footnotes and endnotes;
- block or columnar formatting of the footnotes;
- simple tabular material may be line numbered;
- indexing keyed to page and line numbers.

`reledmac` allows the scholar engaged in preparing a critical edition to focus attention wholly on the task of creating the critical text and evaluating the variant readings, text-critical notes and testimonia.  $\LaTeX$  and `reledmac` will take care of the formatting and visual correlation of all the disparate types of information.

Apart from `reledmac` there are other  $\LaTeX$  packages for typesetting critical editions. However, the aim of `reledmac` is to provide an “all in one” and flexible tool in the field of critical editions.

Any suggestions for new features are welcome.

This manual contains a general description of how to use `reledmac`, followed by the complete source code and its extensive documentation (in sections I and following, enumerated with Roman numerals). It ends with a list of actions to do when migrating from one version to other, a change history and an index to the source code.

You do not need to read the source code for this package in order to use it; we provide this code primarily for reference, and many of our comments on it repeat material that is also found in earlier sections. But no documentation, however thorough, can cover every question that comes up and many can be answered quickly by consulting the code. On a first reading, we suggest that you read only the general documentation in sections 2, unless you are particularly interested in the innards of `reledmac`.

## 1.2 History

### 1.2.1 edmac

The original version of `edmac` was `TEXTED.TEX`, written by John Lavagnino in late 1987 and early 1988 for formatting critical editions of English plays.

John passed these macros on to Dominik Wujastyk who, in September–October 1988, added the footnote paragraphing mechanism, margin swapping and other changes to suit his own purposes, making the style more like that traditionally used for classical texts in Latin and Greek (e.g., the Oxford Classical Texts series). He also wrote some extra documentation and sent the files out to several people. This version of the macros was the first to be called `edmac`.

The present version was developed in the summer of 1990, with the intent of adding necessary features, streamlining and documenting the code, and further generalizing it to make it easily adaptable to the needs of editors in different disciplines. John did most of the general reworking and documentation, with the financial assistance of the Division of the Humanities and Social Sciences, California Institute of Technology. Dominik adapted the code to the conventions of Frank Mittelbach’s `doc` option, and added some documentation, multiple-column footnotes, cross-references, and crop marks.<sup>1</sup> A description by John and Dominik of this version of `edmac` was published as ‘An overview of `edmac`: a `PLAIN`  $\TeX$  format for critical editions’, *TUGboat* 11 (1990), pp. 623–643.

From 1991 through 1994, the macros continued to evolve, and were tested at a number of sites. We are very grateful to all the members of the (now defunct) `edmac@mailbase.ac.uk` discussion group who helped us with smoothing out the bugs and infelicities in the macros. Ron Whitney and our anonymous reviewer at the TUG

<sup>1</sup>This version of the macros was used to format the Sanskrit text in volume I of *Metarules of Pāṇinian Grammar* by Dominik Wujastyk (Groningen: Forsten, 1993).

were both of great help in ironing out last-minute wrinkles, while Ron made some important suggestions which may help to make future versions of edmac even more efficient. Wayne Sullivan, in particular, provided several important fixes and contributions, including adapting the Mittelbach/Schöpf ‘New Font Selection Scheme’ for use with PLAIN T<sub>E</sub>X and edmac. Another project Wayne has worked on is a DVI post-processor which works with an edmac that has been slightly modified to output \specials. This combination enables you to recover to some extent the text of each line as ASCII code, facilitating the creation of concordances, an *index verborum*, etc.

As of 1994, we were pleased to be able to say that edmac was being used for the real-life book production of several interesting editions, such as the Latin texts of Euclid’s *Elements*,<sup>2</sup> an edition of the letters of Nicolaus Copernicus,<sup>3</sup> Simon Bredon’s *Arithmetica*,<sup>4</sup> a Latin translation by Plato of Tivoli of an Arabic astrolabe text,<sup>5</sup> a Latin translation of part II of the Arabic *Algebra* by Abū Kāmil Shujā’ b. Aslam,<sup>6</sup> the Latin *Rithmarchia* of Werinher von Tegernsee,<sup>7</sup> a middle-Dutch romance epic on the Crusades,<sup>8</sup> a seventeenth-century Hungarian politico-philosophical tract,<sup>9</sup> an anonymous Latin compilation from Hungary entitled *Sermones Compilati in Studio Generali Quinqueecclesiensi in Regno Ungarie*,<sup>10</sup> the collected letters and papers of Leibniz,<sup>11</sup> Theodosius’s *Spherics*, the German *Algorismus* of Sacrobosco, the Sanskrit text of the *Kāśikāvṛtti* of Vāmana and Jayāditya,<sup>12</sup> and the English texts of Thomas Middleton’s collected works.

### 1.2.2 ledmac

Version 1.0 of tabmac was released by Herbert Breger in October 1996. This added the capability for typesetting tabular material.

Version 0.01 of edstanza was released by Wayne Sullivan in June 1992, to help a colleague with typesetting Irish verse.

In March 2003 Peter Wilson started an attempt to port edmac from T<sub>E</sub>X to L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X. The starting point was edmac version 3.16 as documented on 19 July 1994 (available from CTAN). In August 2003 the tabmac functions were added; the starting point for these being version 1.0 of October 1996. The edstanza (v0.01) functions were added in

<sup>2</sup>Gerhard Brey used edmac in the production of Hubert L. L. Busard and Menso Folkerts, *Robert of Chester’s (?) Redaction of Euclid’s Elements, the so-called Adelard II Version*, 2 vols., (Basel, Boston, Berlin: Birkhäuser, 1992).

<sup>3</sup>Being prepared at the German Copernicus Research Institute, Munich.

<sup>4</sup>Being prepared by Menso Folkerts *et al.*, at the Institut für Geschichte der Naturwissenschaften in Munich.

<sup>5</sup>Richard Lorch, Gerhard Brey *et al.*, at the same Institute.

<sup>6</sup>Richard Lorch, ‘Abū Kāmil on the Pentagon and Decagon’ in *Vestigia Mathematica*, ed. M. Folkerts and J. P. Hogendijk (Amsterdam, Atlanta: Rodopi, 1993).

<sup>7</sup>Menso Folkerts, ‘Die *Rithmarchia* des Werinher von Tegernsee’, *ibid.*

<sup>8</sup>Geert H. M. Claassens, *De Middelnederlandse Kruisvaartromans*, (Amsterdam: Schipphower en Brinkman, 1993).

<sup>9</sup>Emil Hargittay, *Csáky István: Politica philosophiai Okoskodás-szerint való rendes életnek példája (1664–1674)* (Budapest: Argumentum Kiadó, 1992).

<sup>10</sup>Being produced, as was the previous book, by Gyula Mayer in Budapest.

<sup>11</sup>Leibniz, *Sämtliche Schriften und Briefe*, series I, III, VII, being edited by Dr. H. Breger, Dr. N. Gädke and others at the Leibniz-Archiv, Niedersächsische Landesbibliothek, Hannover. (see <http://www.nlb-hannover.de/Leibniz>)

<sup>12</sup>Being prepared at Poona and Lausanne Universities.

February 2004. Sidenotes and regular footnotes in numbered text were added in April 2004. This port was called `ledmac` ( $\LaTeX$  `edmac`).

Since July 2011, `ledmac` is maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. It is increasingly powerful and flexible, but it also has become increasingly divergent from the original  $\TeX$  macro.

### 1.2.3 `eledmac`

Important changes were put in version 1.0, to make `ledmac` more easily extensible (see 7 p. 43). These changes can trigger small problems with the old customization. That is why a new name was selected: `eledmac` (extended `ledmac`).

To migrate from `ledmac` to `eledmac`, please read A.2 p. 400.

### 1.2.4 `reledmac`

`eledmac` has facilitated the creation of customized critical editions. However, the changes made to allow such customization were made in a non-systematic way. Many deprecated commands were kept and many technical ‘debts’ were accumulated, hindering the future evolution of the package.

For these reasons, Maïeul Rouquette decided on a spring cleaning of the code. As some commands name were changed, the resulting compatibility was broken (a little).

A new name was selected: `reledmac` (extended renewed `eledmac`). To migrate from `eledmac` to `reledmac`, please read A.9 p. 403.

## 1.3 Bibliography

A collaborative list of works edited with (r)(e)ledmac is available at [https://www.zotero.org/groups/209265/critical\\_editions\\_typeset\\_with\\_edmac\\_ledmac\\_eledmac\\_and\\_reledmac/](https://www.zotero.org/groups/209265/critical_editions_typeset_with_edmac_ledmac_eledmac_and_reledmac/). Please add your own edition made with (r)(e)ledmac.

If you write a book or an article about (r)(e)ledmac, please add it on the collaborative bibliography on <https://www.zotero.org/groups/1024519/>.

## 1.4 Acknowledgements

Maïeul Rouquette may thank his predecessor, and all the `reledmac` community. Especially, he may thanks all the people who checks English spell and grammar for the handbook.

## 2 How the package works — the problem of the number of $\LaTeX$ runs

The `reledmac` package is a three-pass package like  $\LaTeX$  itself. Although your textual apparatus and line numbers will be printed on the first run, it takes two more compilations by  $\LaTeX$  to be sure that everything is correctly placed, and one more if you typeset right-to-left text with  $\XeLaTeX$ . If you make any subsequent changes altering the number

of lines or notes, the input file may similarly require three passes to get everything to the right place. `reledmac` will tell you that you need to make more runs when it detects changes, but it does not expend the labor to check this thoroughly. If you have problems with a line or two misnumbered at the top of a page, try running  $\LaTeX$  once or twice more.

**However, the best way to be sure that one has made the right number of runs is to use some of  $\LaTeX$ 's run scripts like *latexmk*.**

### 3 Compatibility warning

If you use other classes than `\article` or `\book`, or modify the layout with `geometry`, some settings should be made to have correct height for the blocks of notes.

Please read 7.12.6 p. 55.

If you use the  $\text{Lua}\TeX$  engine, you need  $\text{Lua}\TeX$  1.1.0 or later. A file may mix *numbered* and *unnumbered* text.

Numbered text is printed with marginal line numbers and can include footnotes and endnotes that are referenced to those line numbers: this is how you will want to print the text that you are editing.

Unnumbered text is not printed with line numbers, and you can't use `reledmac`'s note commands with it: this is appropriate for introductions and other material added by the editor around the edited text.

## 4 Options

The package can be loaded with a number of global options which are listed here. There are two types of options: 1) options which provide specific features, and, 2) options which optimize the package's performance. It is advisable for you to read the relevant parts of the handbook, before reading about the first type of option (specific features), but you can look at the second type (package optimization) in your first reading of the manual.

### 4.1 Specific features

**draft** underlines lemmas in the main text.

**auxdir** `reledmac` generates auxiliary files. It could be useful to store them in a specific directory. You can set it using `auxdir=<folder>` option. Note the two following point:

1.  $\TeX$  is not able to create folder. You should create it yourself.
2. The option does not change the default  $\LaTeX$  auxiliary files (`.aux`, `.toc`, ...).

**antilabe** enable `\antilabe` feature (see 9.11 p. 61);

**eledmac-compat** help to migrate from `eledmac` to `reledmac` (see A.9.5 p. 404);



**nopenalties** must be called in some cases when using paragraphed endnotes (see ?? p. ??;

**nopbinverse** prevents page break within verse environment;

**noquotation** by default, the quotation environment is redefined within numbered text. You can disable this redefinition with `noquotation` (see 17 p. 77);

**noresetlinenumannotation** does not reset the annotations to line number at each line (see 5.5 p. 25);

**parapparatus** by default, the apparatus cannot contain paragraph breaks; this option enables paragraphing inside the apparatus;

**swcaseinsensitive** make `\sameword` command case insensitive;

**widthliketwocolumns** set the width of the text printed in a single column to be the same as the width of the text printed in two parallel columns with `reledpar`. This is useful when alternating between normal and parallel typesetting;

**xindy** and `xindy+hyperref` select xindy as the index processor (13.5 p. 71).

## 4.2 Optimizing package performance

**nocritical** disables tools for critical footnotes (`\Afootnote`, `\Bfootnote` etc.). If you do not need critical footnotes, this option lets `reledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**noeledsec** disables tools for `\eledsection` and related commands (16.2 p. 76).

**noend** disables tools for endnotes (`\Aendnote`, `\Bendnote` etc.). If you do not need endnotes, this option lets `reledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**nofamiliar** disables tools for familiar footnotes (`\footnoteA`, `\footnoteB` etc.). If you do not need familiar footnotes, this option lets `reledmac` run faster. It will also preserve room for other packages.

**noledgroup** `reledmac` allows use of a series of critical notes and a new series of normal notes inside `minipage` and `ledgroup` environments (see 10 p. 62). However, such features use up computer memory, at the expense of other processing needs. So if you do not need this feature, use `noledgroup` option. This should make `reledmac` faster.

**series** `reledmac` defines five levels of notes: A, B, C, D, E. Using all these levels consumes memory space and processing speed. This is why, if your work does not require the entire A–E series, you can narrow down the available number of series. For example, if you only need A and B series, call the package with `series={A,B}` option.

## 5 Text lines and paragraphs numbering

### 5.1 Text lines numbering

`\beginnumbering` Each section of numbered text must be preceded by `\beginnumbering` and followed by `\endnumbering`, as in the following example.

```
\beginnumbering
Text
\endnumbering
```

The `\beginnumbering` macro resets the line number to zero, reads an auxiliary file called `<jobname>.nn` (where `<jobname>` is the name of the main input file for this job, and `nn` is 1 for the first numbered section, 2 for the second section, and so on), and then creates a new version of this auxiliary file to collect information during this run. The first instance of `\beginnumbering` also opens a file called `<jobname>.<series>end` to receive the text of the endnotes. `\endnumbering` closes the `<jobname>.nn` file.

If the line numbering of a text is to be continuous from start to end, then the whole text will be typed between one pair of `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering` commands. But your text will most often contain chapter or other divisions marking sections that should be independently numbered, and these will be appropriate places to begin new numbered sections.

`reledmac` has to read and store in memory a certain amount of information about the entire section when it encounters a `\beginnumbering` command, so it speeds up the processing and reduces memory use when a text is divided into a larger number of sections (at the expense of multiplying the number of external files that are generated).

### 5.2 Paragraphs

#### 5.2.1 Basics

`\pstart` Within a numbered section, each paragraph of numbered text must be marked using the `\pend` `\pstart` and `\pend` commands like this:

```
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
```

Text that appears within a numbered section but is not marked with `\pstart` and `\pend` will not be numbered.

The following example shows the proper section and paragraph markup and the kind of output that would typically be generated:

```

\beginnumbering
\pstart
This is a sample paragraph, with
lines numbered automatically.
\pend

\pstart
This paragraph too has its
lines automatically numbered.
\pend

The lines of this paragraph are
not numbered.

\pstart
And here the numbering begins
again.
\pend
\endnumbering

```

### 5.2.2 Automatically producing \pstart ... \pend

`\autopar` You can use `\autopar` to avoid the nuisance of this paragraph markup and still have every paragraph automatically numbered. The `\autopar` command needs to be called inside a `\beginnumbering... \endnumbering` structure, as follows:

```

\beginnumbering
\autopar

A paragraph of numbered text.

Another paragraph of numbered
text.

\endnumbering

```

`\autopar` fails, however, on paragraphs that start with a `{` or with any other command that starts a new group before it generates any text. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly, before the new group is opened, using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode`, or using `\pstart` itself.<sup>13</sup>

### 5.2.3 Content before specific \pstart and after specific \pend

Both `\pstart` and `\pend` can take an optional argument in brackets. Its content will be printed before the beginning of `\pstart` / after the end of `\pend` instead of the argument of `\AtEveryPstart` / `\AtEveryPend`.

---

<sup>13</sup>For a detailed study of the reasons for this restriction, see Barbara Beeton, ‘Initiation rites’, *TUGboat* 12 (1991), pp. 257–258.

Note that a `\noindent` will be automatically added before this argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip` will be inserted. You can use a second optional argument in brackets to avoid that `\noindent`.

```
\pstart[foo] % A \noindent will be inserted before foo.
\pstart[] [foo] % No \noindent before foo.
```

The second optional argument of `\pstart` / `\pend` replaces the argument of `\AtEveryPstart*` / `\AtEveryPend*`.

If you need to start a `\pstart` with brackets, or to add brackets after a `\pend`, just add a `\relax` between `\pstart ... \pend` and the brackets.

This feature is also useful when typesetting verses (see 9 p. 57) or `reledpar` (see 19.2 p. 81).

A `\noindent` is automatically added before this argument.

#### 5.2.4 Content before every `\pstart` and after every `\pend`

`\AtEveryPstart` You can use both `\AtEveryPstart` and `\AtEveryPend`. Their arguments will be printed before every `\pstart` begins / after every `\pend` ends.

Note that a `\noindent` will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip`. You can use the starred version of `\AtEveryPstart` and `\AtEveryPend` to avoid the `\noindent`.

`\AtStartEveryPstart` The argument of `\AtStartEveryPstart` / `\AtEndEveryPend` will be inserted at the beginning / the end of every `\pstart` / `\pend` in the same paragraph. For example, if you want each `\pstart` to start with a star, you can use:

```
\AtStartEveryPstart{*}
```

Instead of manually doing

```
\pstart * Real pstart content.\pend
```

#### 5.2.5 Numbering paragraphs (`\pstart`)

`\numberpstarttrue` It is possible to insert a number at every `\pstart` command; you must use the `\numberpstarttrue` command to have it. You can stop the numbering with `\numberpstartfalse`.  
`\numberpstartfalse` You can redefine the command `\thepstart` to change style. You can change the value of the `pstart` number by using *after* `\beginnumbering`:

```
\setcounter{pstart}{value}
```

On each `\beginnumbering` the numbering restarts.

`\sidepstartnumtrue` With the `\sidepstartnumtrue` command, the number of `\pstart` will be printed at the sides of the text. In this case, the line number will be not printed.

`\labelpstarttrue` With the `\labelpstarttrue` command, a `\label` added just after a `\pstart` will refer to the number of this `pstart`.

### 5.2.6 Languages written in Right to Left

If you use languages written right to left with Lua $\TeX$  or Xe $\TeX$ , you must switch text direction *before* the `\pstart` command.

### 5.2.7 Memory limits

**This paragraph is kept for history, but the problems described below should not appear with the most recent version of  $\TeX$ .**

`\pausenumbering`  
`\resumenumbering` reledmac stores a lot of information about line numbers and footnotes in memory as it goes through a numbered section. But at the end of such a section, it empties its memory out, so to speak. If your text has a very long numbered section it is possible that your  $\TeX$  may reach its memory limit. There are two solutions to this.

The first solution is to get a larger  $\TeX$  with increased memory.

The second solution is to split your long section into several smaller ones. The trouble with this is that your line numbering will start again at zero with each new section. To avoid this problem, we provide `\pausenumbering` and `\resumenumbering` which are just like `\endnumbering ... \beginnumbering`, except that they arrange for your line numbering to continue across the break. Use `\pausenumbering` only between numbered paragraphs:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
Paragraph of text.
\pend
\pausenumbering

\resumenumbering
\pstart
Another paragraph.
\pend
\endnumbering
```

We have defined these commands as two macros, in case you find it necessary to insert text between numbered sections without disturbing the line numbering. But if you are really just using these macros to save memory, you might as well type,

```
\newcommand{\memorybreak}{\pausenumbering\resumenumbering}
```

and type `\memorybreak` between the relevant `\pend` and `\pstart`.

## 5.3 Lineation commands

### 5.3.1 Disabling lineation

`\numberlinefalse`  
`\numberlinetrue` Line numbering can be disabled with `\numberlinefalse`. It can be enabled again with `\numberlinetrue`.

**This feature must be used with caution.**

- It should not be use if you have critical footnotes after `\numberlinefalse`.

- It could be used in the following cases:
  - You want only familiar footnotes, not critical footnotes;
  - You want only parallel typesetting (using `reledpar`) but no critical footnotes.
  - You disable, for a portion of text, line numbering
- It must not be used if:
  - You do not want to have the line number in the margins, but do want to use critical footnotes. In this case, set `\firstlinenum` to a big value, such as 100,000 (5.3.2 p. 22).
  - You want to freeze the line numbering for some line, but still keep critical footnotes. In this case, use `\startlock` (5.4.2 p. 24).

A successor to `reledmac` may disable this feature.

### 5.3.2 Setting lineation start and step

`\firstlinenum`  
`\linenumincrement`

By default, `reledmac` numbers every 5th line. There are two counters that control this behaviour: `firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`. They can be changed using `\firstlinenum{<num>}` and `\linenumincrement{<num>}`. `\firstlinenum` specifies the first line that will have a printed number, and `\linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. For example, to start printing numbers at the first line and to have every other line numbered:

```
\firstlinenum{1} \linenumincrement{2}
```

`\firstsublinenum`  
`\sublinenumincrement`  
`\linenumberlist`

There are similar commands, `\firstsublinenum{<num>}` and `\sublinenumincrement{<num>}` for controlling sub-line numbering.

You can define `\linenumberlist` to specify a non-uniform distribution of printed line numbers. For example:

```
\gdef\linenumberlist{1,2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29}
```

to have numbers printed on prime-numbered lines only. There must be no spaces within the definition which consists of comma-separated integer numbers. The numbers can be in any order but it is easier to read if you put them in numerical order. Either omitting the definition of `\linenumberlist` or following the empty definition

```
\gdef\linenumberlist{}
```

the standard numbering sequence is applied. The standard sequence is that specified by the combination of the `firstlinenum`, `linenumincrement`, `firstsublinenum` and `linenumincrement` counter values.

### 5.3.3 Setting lineation reset

`\lineation`

Lines can be numbered either by page, by `pstart` or by section; you specify this using the `\lineation{<arg>}` macro, where `<arg>` is either `page`, `pstart` or `section`.

You may only use this command at places where numbering is not in effect; you can't change the lineation system within a section. You can change it between sections: they don't all have to use the same lineation system. The package's standard setting is

`\lineation{section}`. If the lineation is by `pstart`, the `pstart` number will be printed before the line number in the notes.

### 5.3.4 Setting line number margin

`\linenummargin` The command `\linenummargin{<location>}` specifies the margin where the line (or `pstart`) numbers will be printed. The permissible values for `<location>` are `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`: for example, `\linenummargin{inner}`. The package's default setting is

`\linenummargin{left}`

to typeset the numbers in the left hand margin. You can change this whenever you're not in the middle of making a paragraph.

More precisely, the value of `\linenummargin` used is the value in effect at the `\pend` of a numbered paragraph. Apart from an initial setting for `\linenummargin`, only change `\linenummargin` after a `\pend`, whereupon it will apply to all following numbered paragraphs, until changed again (changing it between a `\pstart` and `\pend` pair will apply the change to all of the current paragraph).

### 5.3.5 Other settings

`\leftlinenum` When a marginal line number is to be printed, there are many ways to display it. You can  
`\rightlinenum` redefine `\leftlinenum` and `\rightlinenum` to change the way marginal line numbers  
`\linenumsep` are printed in the left and right margins respectively; the initial versions print the number in font `\numlabfont` (described below) at a distance `\linenumsep` (initially set to one pica) from the text.

## 5.4 Changing the line numbers

Normally, line numbering starts at 1 for the first line of a section and increments by one for each line thereafter. There are various common modifications of this system and the commands described here allow you to put such modifications into effect.

### 5.4.1 Sublineation

`\startsub` You insert the `\startsub` and `\endsub` commands in your text to turn sub-lineation  
`\endsub` on and off. For example, stage directions in plays are often numbered with sub-line numbers: as line 10.1, 10.2, 10.3, rather than as 11, 12, and 13. Titles and headings are sometimes numbered with sub-line numbers as well.

When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it doesn't take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if it changes in the middle.

`\Xsublinesep` You can change the separator between the line number and the subline number ei-  
`\Xsublinesepside` ther by using `\Xsublinesep` without any optional argument (7.2.10 p. 47) or by using `\Xsublinesepside`. In the second case, it will change the separator only for line numbers in the margins, not in the footnotes.

### 5.4.2 Locking lineation

`\startlock` The `\startlock` command, used in running text, locks the line number at its current value, until you insert `\endlock`. It can tell for itself whether you are in a patch of line or sub-line numbering. One use for line-number locking is in printing poetry: there the line numbers should be those of verse lines rather than of printed lines, even when a verse line requires several printed lines. But in this case you may use the `\stanza` mechanism, see 9 p. 57.

`\lockdisp` When line-number locking is used, several printed lines may have the same line number, and you have to specify whether you want the number attached to the first printed line or the last, or whether you just want the number printed by them all, assuming that the settings of the previous parameters requires the display of a line number for this line. You specify your preference using `\lockdisp{<arg>}`; its argument is a word, either `first`, `last`, or `all`. The package initially sets this as `\lockdisp{first}`.

### 5.4.3 Setting and changing line number

`\setline` In some cases you may want to modify the line numbers that are automatically calculated: if you are printing only fragments of a work but want to print line numbers appropriate to a complete version, for example. The `\setline{<num>}` and `\advanceline{<num>}` commands may be used to change the current line's number (or the sub-line number, if sub-lineation is currently on). They change both the marginal line numbers and the line numbers passed to the notes. `\setline` takes one argument, the value to which you want the line number set; it must be 0 or greater. `\advanceline` takes one argument, an amount that should be added to the current line number; it may be positive or negative.

`\setlinenum` The `\setline` and `\advanceline` macros should only be used within a `\pstart... \pend` group. The `\setlinenum{<num>}` command can be used outside such a group, for example, between a `\pend` and a `\pstart`. It sets the line number to `<num>`. It has no effect if used within a `\pstart... \pend` group.

### 5.4.4 Line number style

`\linenumberstyle` Line numbers are normally printed as arabic numbers. You can use `\linenumberstyle{<style>}` to change the numbering style. `<style>` must be one of:

`Alph` Uppercase letters (A ... Z).

`alph` Lowercase letters (a ... z).

`arabic` Arabic numerals (1, 2, ...)

`Roman` Uppercase Roman numerals (I, II, ...)

`roman` Lowercase Roman numerals (i, ii, ...)

Note that with the `Alph` or `alph` styles, 'numbers' must be between 1 and 26 inclusive.

Similarly `\sublinenumberstyle{<style>}` can be used to change the numbering style of sub-line numbers, which is normally arabic numerals.



### 5.4.5 Skipping and hiding number

`\skipnumbering` When inserted into a numbered line the macro `\skipnumbering` causes the numbering of that particular line to be skipped; that is, the line number is unchanged and no line number will be printed. Note that if you use it in `\stanza`, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

`\hidenumbering` When inserted into a numbered line, the macro `\hidenumbering` causes the number for that particular line to be hidden; namely, no line number will print. Note that if you use it in `\stanza`, you must call it at the beginning of the verse.

`\hidenumberingonleftpage` `\hidenumberingonleftpage` is like `hidenumbering`, but is applied only on left page. `\hidenumberingonrightpage` is applied on right page. They can be useful if the position of the line number is depending of the position of the page, but the position of marginal note is fixed.

## 5.5 Adding annotations to line numbers

You may want to have two or more numbers associated with a line of text. Consider, for example, the following cases:

- You want to split a line of verse into two parts depending upon some stylistic / rhythmic / linguistic convention.
- You want to add the line number used by a previous edition of the work.
- You want to typeset biblical text, and use division in verse.

In such instances, you must add the second number manually, as `reledmac` can't determine a general pattern for such numbering, which depends too heavily upon the edited text.<sup>14</sup>

`\linenumannotation` To resolve this issue, `reledmac` allows you to annotate line numbers using the following command:

```
\linenumannotation{<annotation>}
```

The annotation can contain any textual value (whether number, text, or other) such as the line number from the older edition. Here are some characteristics of line number annotation:

- An annotation is associated with a line of text. It is reset with each new line of text, unless you use the `noresetlinenumannotation` option of `reledmac`.
- It is printed alongside the line number in the margin.
- It is printed following the line number in critical footnotes and endnotes.
- And of particular interest: the annotation is printed in the critical note *only* when the `\edtext` is issued after the `\linenumannotation`.

<sup>14</sup>However, you may create your own commands dealing with such patterns which will in turn call `reledmac` commands.

- If two or more annotations are called before an `\edtext`, the last one is used in associated notes.
- If an annotation is called within an `\edtext`, it is printed as an annotation for the end of the lemma.

Here is an example, supposing we are on line 1:

```
\edtext{first lemma}
\linenumannotation{A}
\edtext{second lemma}{...}
\edtext{third%
  \linenumannotation{B}
lemma}{...}
\edtext{fourth lemma}&
```

In the critical notes, the line number will be followed

- by nothing in the first lemma, as there is no annotation for this line;
- by “A” for the second lemma;
- by “A-B” for the third lemma, as it starts while annotation A is still in effect and it finishes after annotation B has already taken effect;
- by “B” for the fourth lemma.

### 5.5.1 Modifying annotation associated with a specific note

`\lineannot` The `\linenum` (6.2.5 p. 32) macro changes the line number passed to a note. The `\lineannot` macro does the same for the annotations. It takes one argument, containing the beginning and ending annotations separated by a pipe (`|`). As with `\linenum`, if one wishes to change some specific part of the annotation, one can use

```
\lineannot{[b]}% to change the ending annotation
\lineannot{a|}% to change the beginning annotation
\lineannot{a|b}% to change both
\lineannot{\empty|}% to delete the beginning annotation
```

### 5.5.2 Changing the position of the annotation

By default, annotations are placed after line numbers in both margin and footnote.

To change this behaviour, one can use one of the following commands:

- `\Xlinenumannotationposition[⟨s⟩]{⟨v⟩}` changes the position in critical footnotes with `⟨s⟩` for the series of footnotes to which it applies, where `⟨s⟩` may be a comma-separated list of series. When `⟨s⟩` is empty, the change applies also to annotations at the sides of the page, alongside the line number.

`\Xlinenumannotationposition`  
`\Xendlinenumannotationposition`

- `\Xlinenumannotationpositionside{⟨v⟩}` changes the position at the sides of the page, alongside the line numbers.

Note that `\Xlinenumannotationposition` without any optional argument will override this setting.

- `\Xendlinenumannotationposition[⟨s⟩]{⟨v⟩}` changes the position in critical endnotes, `⟨s⟩` for the series of endnotes to which it applies, where `⟨s⟩` may once again be a comma-separated list of series.

In each of these three commands, `⟨v⟩` can be *after* or *before* to indicate position with regards to the line number.

### 5.5.3 Changing the macro in which annotations are wrapped

By default, annotations are wrapped in the `\textsuperscript` macro. You can modify this using one of the following:

- `\Xwraplinenumannotation[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}` for critical footnotes; `⟨s⟩` indicates the series of notes to which it applies and may be a comma-separated list of series. When `⟨s⟩` is empty, the change applies to the annotations in the margins also—around the line number—as well as to the annotations referenced using the `\annotationref` command of the crossref mechanism (11 p. 63).

- `\Xwraplinenumannotationside{⟨cmd⟩}` for annotations in the margins only.

Note that `\Xwraplinenumannotation` without any optional argument will override this setting.

- `\Xwraplinenumannotationref{⟨cmd⟩}` for annotations referenced using the `\annotationref` command of the crossref mechanism (11 p. 63).

Note that `\Xwraplinenumannotation` without any optional argument will override this setting.

- `\Xendwraplinenumannotation[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}` for critical endnotes, where `⟨s⟩` indicates the series of notes to which it applies, which may be a comma-separated list.

`⟨cmd⟩` is a command which can take one argument; the backslash is required though.

For example, if you do not wish to have annotations in the margins, but do want to have them in bold in the critical footnotes and endnotes, you say:<sup>15</sup>

```
\makeatletter
\Xwraplinenumannotation{\textbf}
\Xendwraplinenumannotation{\textbf}
\Xwraplinenumannotationside{\@gobble}
\makeatother
```

---

<sup>15</sup>The `\@gobble` command takes one argument, and returns nothing.

### 5.5.4 Not printing the second identical annotations

If you print only line number annotation, you may get in critical notes something like 6-6, because the starting and ending annotations are the same. You can avoid that using `\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation[⟨s⟩]`, for critical footnotes or `\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation[⟨s⟩]`

`\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation`  
`\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation`

### 5.5.5 Separator between annotations

If there are more than one annotation in the same line, they are separated by a comma. If you want to change the separator, you can use `\setlinenumannotationsep{⟨sep⟩}`

`\setlinenumannotationsep`

### 5.5.6 Annotations in the apparatus

Some other options for annotations in the apparatus are described in 7.2.2 p. 44

## 5.6 Executing code at each line

`\dolinehook`  
`\doinsidelinehook`

`reledmac` provides an advanced feature for users. The argument passed to `\dolinehook{⟨arg⟩}` will be executed before slicing a new line in the paragraph. The argument passed to `\doinsidelinehook{⟨arg⟩}` will be executed before printing a new line, when the line number has already been fixed. In many cases, the latter is more useful than the former. The file `examples/2-line_numbers_in_header.tex` provides an example for printing the first and last line numbers of a page in the header.

## 5.7 Executing code at a specific line

Sometime, you want to execute a code at a precise point in the flow of your text. For example, if the current header of the page corresponds to the position inside the text, you may want to use `\markboth` (or similar) command. The main problem is that you need to execute `\markboth` when `reledmac` typesets the text, and not when it reads it, because that could create damage with vertical spacing.

`\doinsidethislinehook`

The `\doinsidethislinehook{⟨code⟩}` macro allows `⟨code⟩` to be executed when the text is typeset. The `⟨code⟩` will be executed in the line equivalent to the position of `\doinsidethislinehook` in the flow of the text.

For example, with the following code:

```
\beginnumbering
\pstart
...
1.\doinsidelinehook{\markboth{1}{1}} a
\pend
```

`\markboth{1}{1}` will be executed at the line the 1. will be typeset. The `⟨code⟩` of `\doinsidethislinehook` will be executed only at the second run of `ℒTEX`.

See the file `examples/2-subdivision-number-in-header.tex` for an example. Especially, the use of this command with  $\LaTeX$  counters is quite complex, but the example show you how to deal with this problem.

## 6 Apparatus commands

### 6.1 Terminology

We call “critical notes” notes which refer to both a lemma, that is a part of text, and a line number. Critical notes are subdivided in critical footnotes and critical endnotes.

We call “familiar notes” notes which refer to a footnote mark in the main text.

`reledmac` manages many series of notes of each category. A series of notes is identified by an uppercase letter. When the series letter is at the *beginning* of a command name, it refers to a critical footnote. When the series letter is at the *end* of a command name, it refers to a familiar footnote.

So :

- `\Afootnote` is a critical footnote of the series A.
- `\Bendnote` is a critical endnote of the series B.
- `\footnoteC` is a familiar footnote of the series C.

### 6.2 Critical notes

#### 6.2.1 The lemma

`\edtext` Within numbered paragraphs, all footnotes and endnotes are generated by the `\edtext` macro:

```
\edtext{<lemma>}{<commands>}
```

The `<lemma>` argument is the lemma in the main text: `\edtext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the `<commands>` you specify to generate notes.

For example:

I am happy:	1	I am happy: I saw my friend Smith on
I saw my friend <code>\edtext{Smith}{</code>	2	Tuesday.
<code>\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}}</code>		
on Tuesday.		
		<hr style="width: 20%; margin-left: 0;"/>
	1	Smith ] Jones C, D.

The lemma `Smith` is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, `Jones C, D`. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The `<lemma>` may contain further `\edtext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

<pre> I am happy : \edtext{I saw my friend 1 \edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones 2 C, D.}} on Tuesday.}{ \Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.} } </pre>	<pre> I am happy : I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday. ----- 1 Smith ] Jones C, D. ----- 1-2 I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday.] The date was July 16, 1954. </pre>
---	--

However, `\edtext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; an `\edtext` that starts in the `<lemma>` argument of another `\edtext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

### 6.2.2 Footnotes

The second argument of the `\edtext` macro, `<commands>`, may contain a series of subsidiary commands that generate various kinds of notes.

`\Afootnote` Five separate series of footnotes are maintained; each macro takes one argument like `\Afootnote{<text>}`. When all of the five are used, the A notes appear in a layer just below the main text, followed by the rest in turn, down to the E notes at the bottom. These are the main macros that you will use to construct the critical apparatus of your text.

If you need more series of critical notes, please look at 6.7.1 p. 41.

An optional argument can be added before the text of the footnote. Its value is a comma-separated list of options. The available options are:

- `fulllines` to disable `\Xtwolines` and `\Xmorethantwolines` features for this note (cf. 7.2.6 p. 46).
- `nonum` disables line numbering for this note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use `\Xinplaceofnumber` to set it (7.2.14 p. 48).
- `nosep` to disable the lemma separator for this note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use `\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator` to set it (7.4.1 p. 50).
- `linrangesep=<c>` to change to `<c>` the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

Example: `\Afootnote[nonum]{<text>}`.

### 6.2.3 Endnotes

`\Aendnote` **Inserting endnotes** The package also maintains five separate series of endnotes. If you do not need the endnotes facility, you should use `noend` option when loading `reledmac`.

`\Bendnote` The mechanism is similar to the one for footnotes: each macro takes one or more optional arguments and one single argument, like:

`\Aendnote[<option>]{<text>}`.

`<option>` can contain a comma-separated list of values. Allowed values are:

- `fulllines` to disable `\Xendtwolines` and `\Xendmorethantwolines` features for this particular note (cf. 7.2.6 p. 46).
- `nonum` to disable line number for this particular note.
- `nosep` to disable the lemma separator for this particular note. A horizontal blank space is added instead. You can use `\Xendingplaceoflemmaseparator` to set it (7.4.2 p. 50).
- `linrangesep=<c>` to change to `<c>` the separator between start line and end line for this particular note.

`\doendnotes` **Printing endnotes** Normally, endnotes are not printed: you must use the `\doendnotes{<s>}`, where `<s>` is the letter of the series to be printed. Put this command where you want the corresponding set of endnotes printed. In this case, all the endnotes of the `<s>` series are printed, for all numbered sections.

`\doendnotesbysection` However, you may want to print the endnotes of one given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of another given series covering the first numbered section, then the endnotes of the first given series covering the second numbered section, then the endnotes of the second given series covering the second numbered section, and so forth. In this case, use `\doendnotesbysection{<s>}`. For each value of `<s>`, the first call of the command will print the notes for the first series, the second call will print the notes for the second series etc. For example, do:

```
\section{Endnotes}
\subsection{First text}
\doendnotesbysection{A}
\doendnotesbysection{B}
\subsection{Second text}
\doendnotesbysection{A}
\doendnotesbysection{B}
```

Note that by default inside endnotes no separator is used between the lemma and the content. However you can use the `\Xendlemmaseparator` macro to define one (7.4.2 p. 50).

As endnotes may be printed at any point in the document they always start with the page number where they are called.

`\toendnotes` **Code between endnotes** Sometimes, it is useful to insert content between endnotes of the same series: for example to separate endnotes of different sections of the same text. In this case, you could use *inside numbered text* the command:

`\toendnotes[<series>]{<content>}` where `<series>` is a comma-separated list of the series of endnotes where `<content>` must be inserted. If `<series>` is empty, then `<content>` is inserted to all the series.

For example:

```
\toendnotes{\section{Section's title}}
```

Alternatively, you can use `\Xtoendnotes{⟨content⟩}`, where “X” must be replaced by a series letter.

Remember that the endnotes are temporarily stored in an auxiliary file. That means in general you want to write the `⟨content⟩` in the auxiliary file *without expanding it*, that is without interpreting  $\TeX$  content.

However, in some cases, you may want to write a once-expanded<sup>16</sup> version of the `⟨content⟩`, that is the version where the commands are expanded on the first level. This can be, for example, to get a counter value. Use the starred version in this case. For example:

```
\Atoendnotes*{\string\section{Letter 1 (chap. \thechapter)}}
```

### 6.2.4 Paragraph in critical apparatus

By default, no paragraph can be made in the notes of the critical apparatus. You can allow it by adding the options `parapparatus` when loading the package :

```
\usepackage[parapparatus]{eledmac}
```

Note that you *cannot* use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or `\par`) inside of notes, when they are set to paragraph arrangement!

### 6.2.5 Change lemma and line number

`\lemma` If you want to change the lemma that gets passed to the notes, you can do this by using `\lemma{⟨alternative⟩}` within the second argument to `\edtext` and before the note commands. The most common use of this command is to abbreviate the lemma that’s printed in the notes. For example:

<pre>I am happy : \edtext{I saw my friend \edtext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}} on Tuesday.} {\lemma{I \dots\ Tuesday.} \Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.} }</pre>	<pre>1 I am happy : I saw my friend Smith on 2 Tuesday.  1 Smith ] Jones C, D.  1-2 I... Tuesday.] The date was July 16, 1954.</pre>
---	--

`\linenum` You can use `\linenum{⟨arg⟩}` to change the line numbers passed to the notes. `⟨arg⟩` actually consist of seven parameters: the page, line, and sub-line number for the start of the lemma; the same three numbers for the end of the lemma; and the font specifier for the lemma. As the argument to `\linenum`, you specify those seven parameters in that order, separated by vertical bars (the `|` character). I.e.

```
\linenum{⟨start page⟩|⟨s. line⟩|⟨s. sub-l.⟩|⟨end p.⟩|⟨e. l.⟩|⟨e. sub-l.⟩|⟨font⟩|}
```

However, you can retain the value computed by `reledmac` for any number by simply omitting it; and you can omit a sequence of vertical bars at the end of the argument.

<sup>16</sup>The expansion mechanism of  $\TeX$  is a quite complex problem, but fundamental. We have no place to explain it fully here. Read introduction to  $\TeX$  to understand well.



For example, `\linenum{|||23}` changes only the ending page number of the current lemma.

This command does not change the marginal line numbers in any way; it just changes the numbers passed to the notes. Its use comes in situations that `\edtext` has trouble dealing with for whatever reason. If you need notes for overlapping passages that aren't nested, for instance, you can use `\lemma` and `\linenum` to generate such notes despite the limitations of `\edtext`. If the *lemma* argument to `\edtext` is extremely long, you may run out of memory; here again you can specify a note with an abbreviated lemma using `\lemma` and `\linenum`. The numbers used in `\linenum` need not be entered manually; you can use the 'x-' symbolic cross-referencing commands below (11 p. 63) to compute them automatically.

Similarly, being able to manually change the lemma's font specifier in the notes might be important if you were using multiple scripts or languages. The form of the font specifier is three separate codes separated by / characters, giving the family, series, and shape codes as defined within NFSS.

### 6.2.6 Changing the names of commands for critical apparatus

The commands for generating the apparatus have been given rather bland names, because editors in different fields have widely divergent notions of what sort of notes are required, where they should be printed, and what they should be called. But this does not mean you have to type `\Afootnote` when you would rather type something you find more meaningful, like `\variant`.

We recommend that you create a series of such aliases and use them instead of the names chosen here; all you have to do is put commands of this form at the start of your file:<sup>17</sup>

```
\newcommandx{\variant}[2][1,usedefault]{\Afootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommandx{\explanatory}[2][1,usedefault]{\Bfootnote[#1]{#2}}
\newcommand{\trivial}[1]{\Aendnote{#1}}
\newcommandx{\testimonia}[2][1,usedefault]{\Cfootnote[#1]{#2}}
```

## 6.3 Disambiguation of identical words in the apparatus

Sometimes, the same word occurs twice (or more) in the same line. `reledmac` provides tools to disambiguate references in the critical notes. The lemma will be followed by a reference number if a given word occurs more than once in the same line.

### 6.3.1 Basic use

`\sameword` To use this tool, you have to mark every occurrence of the potentially ambiguous term with the `\sameword` command:

```
Lupus \sameword{aut} canis \edtext{\sameword{aut}}{\Afootnote{et}} felix
```

<sup>17</sup>We use `\newcommand` and `\newcommandx` instead of classical `\let` command because the `edtabular` environments have to modify the notes definition, and we need to use the newest definition of notes. Read the handbook of `xargs` to know more about `\newcommandx`.

In this example, `aut` will be followed, in the critical note, by the exponent 2 if it is printed in the same line as the first `aut`, but it will not if it is printed in a different line. The number is printed only after the second run.

### 6.3.2 Case setting

By default, `\sameword` is sensitive to the case. E.g. “foo” is considered as a different word to “Foo”.

You can use the `swcaseinsensitive` when loading the package to make `\sameword` insensitive to the case, i.e. to consider “foo” as identical “Foo”.

### 6.3.3 Notes about input encoding with UTF-8 processor

If you use UTF-8 processor, like  $\text{XeTeX}$  or  $\text{LuaTeX}$ , there should not be any glitches. However, pay attention to how characters are encoded. Similar-looking characters may be represented differently in unicode numbering.

For instance, in French, “é” has two possible Unicode codepoints:

- LATIN SMALL LETTER E (U+0065) + COMBINING ACUTE ACCENT (U+0301)
- LATIN SMALL LETTER E WITH ACUTE (U+00E9)

Which unicode number you use depends, many times, on your keyboard configuration (the computer-input system).

Inside `reledmac`, the `\sameword` command considers these two unicodes (code positions) as different characters. If you use only one unicode number consistently, the distinction will probably make no difference to how your text looks, but `\sameword` will process the text inaccurately, based on the unicode numbers. To prevent this, do the following:

- If you use  $\text{XeTeX}$ , add this line in your preamble: `\XeTeXinputnormalization 1`.
- If you use  $\text{LuaTeX}$ , use the `uninormalize` package of Michal Hoftich<sup>18</sup> with the `buffer` option set to true.

With these tools,  $\text{XeTeX}$  /  $\text{LuaTeX}$  will dynamicaly normalize unicode input when reading the file. Consequently, you will have no problems with the `\sameword` command.

### 6.3.4 Notes about right-to-left texts

Due to some internal limits of  $\text{XeTeX}$ , `\sameword` does not work with right-to-left text with this engine.

If you need to use `\sameword` with right-to-left text, you must use  $\text{LuaTeX}$ .

<sup>18</sup><https://github.com/michal-h21/uninormalize>.

### 6.3.5 Use with `\lemma` command

If you use the `\lemma` command, `reledmac` cannot know to which occurrence of `\sameword` in the first argument of `\edtext` a word marked with `\sameword` in `\lemma` should refer.

For example, in the following example:

```
some thing
  \edtext{\sameword{sw}
    and other \sameword{sw}
    and again \sameword{sw}
    it is all}%
{\lemma{\sameword{sw} \ldots all}\Afootnote{critical note}}.%
```

`reledmac` cannot know if the “sw” in `\lemma` refers to the word after “thing”, after “other”, or after “again”.

Consequently, you must tell `reledmac` to which instance of `\sameword` you are referring in the first argument of `\edtext`:

- In the content of `\lemma`, use `\sameword` with no optional argument.
- In the first argument of `\edtext`, use `\sameword` with the optional argument `[⟨X⟩]`. `⟨X⟩` is the depth of the `\edtext` where the `\lemma` is used. So if the `\lemma` is called in a `\edtext` inside another `\edtext`, `⟨X⟩` is equal to 2. If the `\lemma` is called in a `\edtext` “of first level”, `⟨X⟩` is equal to 1. If the lemma is called in both 1 and 2 `\edtext` depth, `⟨X⟩` is 1, 2. If that word is referenced in the lemma of every `\edtext` depth, `⟨X⟩` can also be set to `inlemma`.

Note that only words that are actually referenced in a `\lemma` need the optional argument. Therefore, the first `\sameword` in the example above should have “1” as its optional argument, to be referenced correctly in the lemma.

Note also that the `⟨X⟩` does not refer to the level where the `\sameword` occurs, but to the level of the `\lemma` that refers to that `\sameword`. For example:

```
\edtext{some \edtext{\sameword[1]{word}}{\Afootnote{om. M}}
  and other \sameword{word}
  and again a \sameword{word}
  it is all}%
{\lemma{some \sameword{word} \ldots all}\Afootnote{critical note}}.%
```

Here the `\sameword` occurs in an `\edtext` of level 2, but since it is referenced by `\lemma` on level 1, it has “1” in the optional argument.

In the following example figure, each framed box represents an `\edtext` level. Each number is an occurrence of `\sameword`. After a framed box, the text in superscript represents the content of `\lemma` for that `\edtext` level. The text in subscript at the right of a number represents the content of the optional argument of `\sameword`.

<div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px;"> 1<sub>inlemma</sub> <div style="display: inline-block; border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px 5px;"> 2<sub>3</sub> </div> </div>	1...3	4	5 <sub>1</sub>	1...5
---	-------	---	----------------	-------

The `\sameword` number 3 is called in a `\lemma` related to an `\edtext` of level 2. It must be marked by “2”.

The `\sameword` number 5 is called in a `\lemma` related to `\edtext` of level 1. It must be marked by “1”.

The `\sameword` number 1 is called in two `\lemmas`: one related to a `\edtext` of level 1, the other related to `\edtext` of level 2. It must be marked by “1,2”. However, as `\lemma` is called only in level 1 and 2, “1,2” could be replaced by “inlemma”.

The `\sameword` number 2 is in the first argument of a `\edtext` of level 3, but it has no `\lemma`-command, so there is no need to mark it.

Here, the corresponding code:

```
\edtext{%
  \edtext{%
    \sameword[inlemma]{A} (1)
    \edtext{%
      \sameword{A} (2)
    }%
  }%
  \Afootnote{level~3}%
}%
\sameword[2]{A} (3)
}%
{%
  \lemma{%
    \sameword{A}%
    \ldots%
    \sameword{A}%
  }%
  \Afootnote{level~2}%
}%
\sameword{A} (4)
\sameword[1]{A} (5)
}%
{%
  \lemma{\sameword{A}\ldots\sameword{A}}%
  \Afootnote{level~1}%
}
```

1	A (1) A (2) A (3) A (4) A (5)
1	A <sup>1</sup> ...A <sup>5</sup> ] level 1
1	A <sup>1</sup> ...A <sup>3</sup> ] level 2
1	A <sup>2</sup> (2) ] level 3

### 6.3.6 Sameword for a group of words

Sometimes a group of words and not only a single word, occurs multiple times. In this case, you have two possibilities.

First, you can consider only the individual words, and not groups of word. For example:

```
\sameword{per} \sameword{causam}
tamen scire
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}}
est
```

```
\edtext{\sameword{per} \sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{causam rei B}}
cognoscere
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}}
```

1 per causam tamen scire causam est per causam cognoscere causam

---

1 causam<sup>2</sup>] fnote

1 per<sup>2</sup> causam<sup>3</sup>] causam rei B

1 causam<sup>4</sup>] fnote

In this case it is clear which “per causam” is meant.

However, in the case that “per causam” is the lemma of the second note, there should be only one number for that whole lemma. In this case we can mark all “per causam” groups. But as “causam” is also called as lemma in note 1 and 3, we need to use nested \sameword commands. Consequently, we need to use \lemma for the \edtext linked to “per causam”, as we don’t want to number each individual word.

```
\sameword{per \sameword{causam}} tamen scire
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}} est
\edtext{\sameword[1]{per \sameword{causam}}}{\lemma{\sameword{per causam}}\Bfootnote{causam rei B}} cog
\edtext{\sameword{causam}}{\Bfootnote{fnote}}
```

1 per causam tamen scire causam est per causam cognoscere causam

---

1 causam<sup>2</sup>] fnote

1 per causam<sup>2</sup>] causam rei B

1 causam<sup>4</sup>] fnote

### 6.3.7 Customizing

`\showwordrank` You can redefine the \showwordrank macro to change the way the number is printed. The default value is

```
\newcommand{\showwordrank}[2]{%
  #1\textsuperscript{#2}%
}
```

### 6.3.8 Problems with some macros

`\swnoexpands` Macros inside \sameword that are not fully expandable, mainly macros which manipulate font features, write on full or have optional argument, may cause problems during compilation. Custom commands inside \sameword may therefore result in errors saying that “Use of sameword doesn’t match its definition.” To solve this, include a redefinition of your custom commands in the \swnoexpands macro. In order to not include any content of a macro during comparison, identify the command with \@gobble For example:

```

\makeatletter
\appto{\swnoexpands}{%
  \let\somemacro\@gobble%
}
\makeatother

```

This will drop the content of `\somemacro` during comparison.

To include the content of the first and only one argument of a custom command in `sameword` comparison, use the `\@firstofone` command. For example, this is how `\emph` is handled:

```

\makeatletter
\appto{\swnoexpands}{%
  \let\emph\@firstofone%
}
\makeatother

```

To include command which can take optional argument, use `\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand` of `\xparse`. For example, this is how `\edindex` is handled:

```

\makeatletter
\appto{\swnoexpands}{%
  \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\edindex}{om}{}%
}
\makeatother

```

### 6.3.9 Automatic sameword annotation

All potentially ambiguous apparatus entries must be annotated manually. That annotation process is laborious and includes a risk of errors. *Samewords* is a Python script that can automate this step of the process. It can be installed via the *Python Package Index*, but see <https://github.com/stenskjær/samewords> for more info and documentation. The script is still at a beta stage, so comments and questions as well as error reports are very welcome at <https://github.com/stenskjær/samewords/issues>.

Please note that the maintainer of this script is not identical with the maintainer of `reledmac`.

## 6.4 Apparatus of manuscripts

The critical notes mostly refer to textual variants between manuscripts which contain the text to be edited. It may so happen that the manuscripts only contain parts of the text. Depending on one's wishes, `reledmac` can generate lists of relevant manuscripts for any delimited portion of text. Such lists are referred to as “apparatuses of manuscripts”.

To produce an apparatus of manuscripts with `reledmac`, you have to insert specific commands that are used to mark the sections for which only part of the manuscripts

are relevant. These commands will be processed, and **after the second T<sub>E</sub>X run**, corresponding apparatuses of manuscripts will be inserted in the first (viz. 'A' series) level of footnotes.

As the insertion of this apparatus can change the page breaks, you may have to run T<sub>E</sub>X two or more times. We strongly recommend to use tools like *latexmk* to do that.

#### 6.4.1 Marking sections of text

`\msdata` `\msdata{⟨text⟩}` must be inserted at the point where a section for which only part of the manuscripts are relevant starts. `⟨text⟩` can be any arbitrary text, viz. a list of the manuscripts that are used for the section that starts. The command must be attached right at the point where the section starts, with no space, like so:

```
\msdata{ABC}Lorem ipsum
```

Which means that the section of text starting by “Lorem ipsum” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C.

`\stopmsdata` `\stopmsdata` must be inserted at the point where the section of text previously marked by `\msdata` ends. The command must be attached right to the end of the section, with no space. As `\stopmsdata` is a L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X argumentless macro, it will gobble the following space. To keep that space, you have to either append a backslash followed by a space or `{}` to `\stopmsdata`, like so:

```
\msdata{ABC}Lorem ipsum dolor
[...]
amet\stopmsdata{} \msdata{ABCD}sic transit [...]
```

Which means that the part of text containing “Lorem ipsum dolor [...] amet” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B and C, while the part of text starting “sic transit” is witnessed by manuscripts A, B, C and D.

`\stopmsdata` is also automatically inserted by `\msdata`.

Note that in most cases, any `\stopmsdata` is followed by `\msdata`. However, as these two command are usually separated by a space, it may happen that a line break be automatically inserted between them. This is why it is advised to always insert `\stopmsdata`, even if `\msdata` inserts it in case it is forgotten.

#### 6.4.2 Layout of the apparatus of manuscripts

On every page, the apparatus of manuscripts marks the corresponding section with starting and ending line numbers. However, the following rules will be applied:

- If the section does not start on the current page, the starting line number will be the line number of the first line on the page.
- If the section does not stop on the current page, the ending line number will be the line number of the last line on the page.

- If the section neither starts nor ends on the current page, no line number will be printed. The same is true in case both `\msdata` is called at the very beginning of the page and `\endmsdata` is called at the very end of the page.

### 6.4.3 Settings

As the apparatus of manuscripts technically consists of first-level critical notes ('A' series), any setting available for critical notes can be applied (7 p. 43). However, the following *additional* commands are available.

`\setmsdataseries` The series used by default for the apparatus of manuscripts is series A. However, you can change it with `\setmsdataseries{<series>}`.

`\setmsdatalabel` As the apparatus of manuscripts consists of regular critical footnotes, a lemma is associated to them. By default, it is "Ms.". You can change it using `\setmsdatalabel{<txt>}`.

`\setmsdataposition` If you want the manuscript apparatus to be on the same level of critical footnotes as the other apparatuses, for each line, reledmac will first insert the manuscript apparatus, then the other footnotes. You can change it using:  
`\msdataposition{regular-msdata}`  
 And restore the default behaviour using `\msdataposition{msdata-regular}`

## 6.5 Familiar notes

### 6.5.1 Basic use

`\footnoteA` As well as the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnotes generated via `\footnote`, the package also provides five series of additional footnotes called `\footnoteA` through `\footnoteE`. These have the familiar marker in the text, and the marked text at the foot of the page can be formatted using any of the styles described for the critical footnotes. Note that the 'regular' footnotes have the series letter at the end of the macro name whereas the critical footnotes have the series letter at the start of the name.

The footnote can take a first optional argument to manually define the footnote number or footnote symbol. For example:

```
\footnoteA[22]{This footnote will be numbered 22}
```

### 6.5.2 Customizing mark

`\thefootnoteA` Each series uses a set of macros for styling the marks. The mark numbering scheme of series A is defined by the `\thefootnoteA` macro; the default is:

`\bodyfootmarkA` `\renewcommand*{\thefootnoteA}{\arabic{footnoteA}}`

`\footfootmarkA` The appearance of the mark in the text is controlled by `\bodyfootmarkA` which is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\bodyfootmarkA}{%
  \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{\thefnmarkA}}}}
```

The command `\footfootmarkA` controls the appearance of the mark at the start of the footnote text. It is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\footfootmarkA}{\textsuperscript{\@nameuse{\thefnmarkA}}}
```

There are similar command triples for the other series.



### 6.5.3 Separator for multiple footnotes

The `footmisc` package [Fai03] by Robin Fairbairns has an option whereby sequential footnote marks in the text can be separated by commas<sup>3,4</sup> like so. As a convenience `reledmac` provides this automatically.

`\multfootsep` `\multfootsep` is used as the separator between footnote markers. Its default definition is:  
`\providecommand*\multfootsep{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}`  
 and can be changed if necessary.

## 6.6 Printing the footnote mark without printing the footnote text

`\footnoteXmark` `\footnoteXtext` In certain cases, you can't directly use `\footnoteX`; for example, when using `\uline` command of the `ulem` package. You need to print the footnote mark first, then call the footnote text to be inserted.

For all  $\langle X \rangle$  command, `reledmac` provides a `\footnote\langle X \rangle mark` command and a `\footnote\langle X \rangle text` command, equivalent to standard  $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's command `\footnotemark` and `\footnotetext`. For example, to use with `\uline`, do:

```
This is \uline{a test containing\mbox{\footnoteAmark}}\footnoteAtext{A
simple footnote.}\uline{ a simple footnote.}
```

If you use `reledpar`, you can't use these two commands to print the footnote mark on one side and the footnote text on the other side.

You must use `\footnote\langle X \rangle nomk` and `\footnote\langle X \rangle mk`, defined in `reledpar` (?? p. ??)

## 6.7 Changing series

### 6.7.1 Create a new series

If you need more than five series of critical footnotes, you can create extra series, using `\newseries` command. For example, to create F and G series `\newseries{G,H}`.

### 6.7.2 Delete series

As the number of series which are defined increases, `reledmac` gets slower. If you do not need all of the six standard series (A–E), you can load the package with the `series` option. For example, if you need only series A and B, use:

```
\usepackage[series={A,B}]{eledmac}
```

### 6.7.3 Series order

The default series order is the one called with the `series` option of the package, or, if this option is not used, A, B, C, D, E. Series order determines footnotes order.

`\seriesatbegin`  
`\seriesatend`

However in some specific cases, you need to change the series order at some point inside the document. You can use `\seriesatbegin{⟨s⟩}` to pull up a given series `⟨s⟩` to the beginning, or `\seriesatend{⟨s⟩}` to push it down to the end.

## 6.8 Position of critical and familiar footnotes

`\fnpos`  
`\mpfnpos`

There is a historical incoherence in `(r)(e)ledmac`. The familiar footnotes are before the critical footnotes in a normal page, but after in a minipage or in a ledgroup. However, it is possible to change the relative position of both types of footnotes. If you want to have familiar footnotes after critical footnotes in a normal page, use:

```
\fnpos{critical-familiar}
```

Or, if you want a minipage or ledgroup to have critical footnotes after familiar footnotes, use:

```
\mpfnpos{familiar-critical}
```

You can also decide to alternate familiar and critical footnotes with your own order. In this case, the second argument of `\fnpos` or `\mpfnpos` is a comma-separated list of values. Each value has the following form:

`⟨series⟩⟨type⟩`

`⟨series⟩` is a series letter (A,B,C etc.), while `⟨type⟩` must be either “critical” or “familiar”.

For example, suppose you want to first print the familiar footnotes of the “A” series, then all the series of critical footnotes, and finally all the series of familiar footnotes, except the “A” series. In this case, use the following command:

```
\fnpos{%
  {A}{familiar},
  {A}{critical},%
  {B}{critical},%
  {C}{critical},%
  {D}{critical},%
  {E}{critical},%
  {B}{familiar},%
  {C}{familiar},%
  {D}{familiar},%
  {E}{familiar}%
}
```

Note that you must define the position of all the series of footnotes you use. If you don’t, you will have infinite runs of  $\TeX$ .

## 7 Apparatus customization

Some commands can be used to change the display of the footnotes. All can have an optional argument [*s*], which is the letter of the series — or a list of letters separated by comma — depending on which option is applied. If the optional argument is omitted or empty, the setting will apply to the entire series.

When a length, noted  $\langle l \rangle$ , is used, it can be stretchable: *a* plus *b* minus *c*. The final length *m* is calculated by L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X to have:  $a - c \leq m \leq a + b$ . If you use some relative unit<sup>19</sup>, it will be relative to font size of the footnote, except for commands concerning the place kept by the notes — including blank space.

Some commands are boolean, indicating when an option is enabled. If you want to disable the option after enabling it, you must use [false] as the second optional argument. For example:

- `\XX[A][false]` to disable the ‘XX’ option for the series A.
- `\XX[] [false]` to disable it for all series.

There is also name convention:

- Names prefixed by X are for setting of critical footnotes.
- Names prefixed by Xend are for setting of critical endnotes.
- Names suffixed by X are for setting of familiar footnotes.

### 7.1 Notes arrangement in a series

`\Xarrangement`  
`\arrangementX`

By default, all footnotes are formatted as a series of separate paragraphs in one column. Three other formats are also available for notes.

Use `\Xarrangement[\langle s \rangle]{\langle a \rangle}` to change the arrangement of the  $\langle s \rangle$  series of critical footnotes and `\arrangementX[\langle s \rangle]{\langle a \rangle}` to change the arrangement of the  $\langle s \rangle$  series of familiar footnotes.

The value of  $\langle a \rangle$  can be one of the following

- `paragraph` formats all of the footnotes of a series as a single paragraph; if you use this arrangement, you are strongly encouraged to read 19.1.6 p. 80.
- `twocol` formats them as separate paragraphs, but in two columns;
- `threecol`, in three columns.
- `normal`, restore normal arrangement.

You should set up the page layout parameters, and in particular the `\baselineskip` of the footnotes, before you call this macro because its action depends on these; too much or too little space will be allotted for the notes on the page if these macros use the wrong values.

---

<sup>19</sup>Like `em` which is the width of an ‘m’ in a given font.

Note that you *cannot* use paragraphs (e.g. blank lines or `\par`) or line breaks (`\break` or `\linebreak` or `\newline` etc.) inside of notes, when they are set to paragraph arrangement!

The notes arrangement must be called after having defined the document geometry setting. If you must change geometry setting inside your document, do not forget to call note arrangement again.

`\hsize` has been set for the pages that use this series of notes; otherwise  $\TeX$  will try to put too many or too few of these notes on each page. If you need to change the `\hsize` within the document, call the arrangement macro again afterwards to take account of the new value.

## 7.2 Control line number printing

### 7.2.1 Print line number only at first time

`\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`

By default, the line number is printed inside every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a given line number (i.e., once for line 1, once for line 2, etc.), you can use `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]`.

`\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines`

Suppose you have a lemma on line 2 and a lemma between line 2 and line 3. With `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, the second lemma is considered to be on the same line as the first lemma. But if you use both `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]` and `\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines[⟨s⟩]`, a distinction is made.

`\Xsymlinenum`

For setting a particular symbol in place of the line number, you can use `\Xsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨symbol⟩}` in combination with `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline[⟨s⟩]`. From the second lemma of the same line, the symbol will be used instead of the line number. Note that any command called in `⟨symbol⟩` must be robust. Use `\robustify` to robustify a non-robust command.

`\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline`

`\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines`

`\Xendsymlinenum`

For endnotes, `\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline`; `\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines` and `\Xendsymlinenum` are the equivalents of `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`; `\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines` and `\Xsymlinenum`.

### 7.2.2 Print line number annotation only the first time

`\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst`

By default, the line number annotation (5.5 p. 25) is printed in every note. If you want to print it only the first time for a given annotation you can use `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]`.

Note the two following points:

- If you use the `noresetlinenumannotation` option of `reledmac`, the `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst` won't take account of the official line number.
- The `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst` works for consecutive lemmas with the same annotation. That is, if you have for example a lemma with an A annotation, then a lemma with a B annotation, then a lemma with an A annotation, each lemma will have its own annotation in the apparatus.

`\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo`

Suppose you have a lemma on annotation 1 and a lemma between annotation 1 and annotation 3. With `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst`, the second lemma is considered to have the same annotation as the first lemma. But if you use both

`\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]` and `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo[⟨s⟩]`, a distinction is made.

`\Xsymlinenumannotation`

To use a particular symbol in place of the line number annotation, you can use `\Xsymlinenumannotation[⟨s⟩]{⟨symbol⟩}` in combination with `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]`. From the second lemma with the same line number annotation, the symbol will be used instead of the annotation. Note that any command called in `⟨symbol⟩` must be robust. Use `\robustify` to robustify a non-robust command.

`\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst`

`\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo`

`\Xendsymlinenumannotation`

For endnotes, `\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst`; `\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo` and `\Xendsymlinenumannotation` are the equivalents of `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst`; `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo` and `\Xsymlinenumannotation`.

### 7.2.3 Print page number only at first time

For endnotes, `reledmac` provides a mechanism for printing the page number only the first time it is seen. However, when a lemma spans over two pages, the line numbers are normally printed in the following pattern: starting page number - starting line number - ending page number - ending line number. It follows that what corresponds to the actual ‘page number’ may not be self-evident. So: `\Xendpagenumberonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]` can be called to ensure that the starting page number of a lemma be not printed if it is the same as the ending page number of the preceding lemma. You can use *additionally* one (and only one) of the following commands:

`\Xendpagenumberonlyfirst`

- `\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle[⟨s⟩]`: the first page number of the lemma will not be printed only if the following conditions are true:
  1. The starting page number of the lemma is the same as the ending page number of the preceding lemma.
  2. The ending page number of the lemma is the same as the starting page number of the lemma.

In this case the ending page number will always be printed if it is different from the starting page number.

- `\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo[⟨s⟩]`: both the starting page number and the ending page number of a lemma are not printed if they are both the same as the starting page number and the ending page number of the preceding lemma respectively.

In any case, you can use:

`\Xendsympagenum`

- `\Xendsympagenum[⟨series⟩]{⟨c⟩}` to print `⟨c⟩` when the page number is not printed.

`\Xendinplaceofpagenumber`

- `\Xendinplaceofpagenumber[⟨series⟩]{⟨l⟩}` to print a `⟨l⟩` length horizontal space in case no symbol is printed instead of the page number.

### 7.2.4 Arbitrary text before line number

`\Xtxtbeforenumber` `\Xtxtbeforenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` allows the insertion of `⟨txt⟩` before the line number only when the line number is printed, so taking into account `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline` and the like.

`\Xendbeforepagenumber` **For endnotes** `\Xendbeforepagenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text before the page number in endnotes. Default value is p. (“p” followed by a dot).

`\Xendafterpagenumber` `\Xendafterpagenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text after the page number in endnotes. Default value is ) (open parenthesis followed by a single space). `\Xendlineprefixsingle[⟨s⟩]` defines the text before the line number in endnotes when there is only one line. Default value is empty. `\Xendlineprefixmore[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` defines the text before the line number in endnotes when there is more than one line. Default value is empty. If you don’t define it, it will use the value defined by `\Xendlineprefixsingle`.

### 7.2.5 Separator for line range

`\Xlinerangeseparator` `\Xendlinerangeseparator` By default, the separator between the begin line and the end line in a lines’ range is an en-dash in a normal font (`\textnormal{--}`). You can change it for critical footnotes with `\Xlinerangeseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`, and with `\Xendlinerangeseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` for critical endnotes.

### 7.2.6 Abbreviate line range

`\Xtwolines` `\Xmorethantwolines` If a lemma is printed on two subsequent lines, `reledmac` will print the first and the last line numbers. Instead of this, it is also possible to print an abbreviation which stands for “line 1 and subsequent line(s)”.

To achieve this, use `\Xtwolines[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` and `\Xmorethantwolines[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`. The `⟨text⟩` argument of `\Xtwolines` will be printed if the lemma is on two lines, and the `⟨text⟩` argument of `\Xmorethantwolines` will be printed if the lemma is on three or more lines. For example:

```
\Xtwolines{sq.}
\Xmorethantwolines{sqq.}
```

will print “1sq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–2 and “1sqq.” for a lemma which falls on lines 1–4.

If you use `\Xtwolines` without setting `\Xmorethantwolines`, the `⟨text⟩` argument of `\Xtwolines` will be used for lemmas which fall on three or more lines.

However, if you want to use a short form (when the lemma overlaps two lines, but not more than two), use `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore[⟨series⟩]`.

When you use lineation by page, the final page number, if different from the initial page number, will not be printed, because the final page number is included in the `\Xendtwolines` symbol.

`\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage` However, you can force print the final page number with `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage[⟨series⟩]`.

You can disable `\Xtwolines` and related for a specific note by using the ‘[fullines]’ argument in the note macro cf. 6.2.2 p. 30.

For endnotes, use these macros: `\Xendtwolines`; `\Xendmorethantwolines`; `\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore`; `\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage` instead of `\Xtwolines`; `\Xmorethantwolines`; `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore`; `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage`.

### 7.2.7 Disable line number

`\Xnonumber` You can use `\Xnonumber[⟨s⟩]` if you do not want to have the line number in a footnote.  
`\Xendnonumber` `\Xendnonumber[⟨s⟩]` is the same for endnote.

### 7.2.8 Printing pstart number

`\Xpstart` You can use `\Xpstart[⟨s⟩]` if you want to print the pstart number in the footnote, before the line and subline number. Note that when you change the lineation system, the option is automatically switched :

- If you use lineation by pstart, the option is enabled.
- If you use lineation by section or by page, the option is disabled.

`\Xpstarteverytime` By default, the pstart number is printed only in the part of text where you have called `\numberpstarttrue`. We don’t know why you would like to print the pstart number in the notes and not in the main text. However, if you want to do it, you can call `\Xpstarteverytime[⟨s⟩]`. In this case, the pstart number will be printed every time in footnote.

`\Xonlypstart` In combination with `\Xpstart`, you can use `\Xonlypstart[⟨s⟩]` if you want to print only the pstart number in the footnote, and not the line and subline number.

`Xpstartonlyfirst` You can use `\Xpstartonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]` to print the pstart number only the first time it appears in the apparatus. When using `\Xpstart`, you can use `\Xpstartseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` to print `⟨text⟩` after the pstart number. Default value is empty.

### 7.2.9 Printing stanza number

`\Xstanza` You can use `\Xstanza[⟨s⟩]` if you want to print the stanza number in the footnote, before the line and subline number.

Of course the stanza number is printed only when you use `\numberstanza`

`\Xstanzaseparator` When using `\Xstanza`, you can use `\Xstanzaseparator[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` to print `⟨text⟩` after the stanza number. Default value is empty.

`Xstanzaonlyfirst` You can use `\Xstanzaonlyfirst[⟨s⟩]` to print the stanza number only the first time it appears in the apparatus.

### 7.2.10 Separator between line and subline numbers

`\Xsublinesep` `\Xsublinesep[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` changes the separator between line and subline in footnotes.

**Employed without optional argument, it also changes the separator in side numbering.**

`\Xendsublinesep` `\Xendsublinesep[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` does the same thing for endnotes.

**However, it does not change anything for the separator in side numbering. Use `\Xsublinesep` without optional argument or `\Xsublinesepside{⟨txt⟩}` to do it.**

The default value is `\textnormal{.}`.

### 7.2.11 Separator between page and line numbers

`\Xpagelinesep` `\Xpagelinesep[⟨s⟩]{⟨txt⟩}` changes the separator between the page and line number in footnotes.

By default, the value defined for `\Xsublinesep` is used.

### 7.2.12 Space around number

`\Xbeforenumber` With `\Xbeforenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`, you can add some space before the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, the space is not either. The default value is 0 pt.

`\Xafternumber` With `\Xafternumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space after the line number in a footnote. If the line number is not printed, neither is the space. The default value is 0.5 em.

`\Xendbeforenumber` `\Xendbeforenumber` and `\Xendafternumber` are the equivalents of `\Xbeforenumber` and `\Xafternumber` for endnotes.

`\Xnonbreakableafternumber` By default, the space defined by `\Xafternumber` is breakable. With `\Xnonbreakableafternumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` it becomes nonbreakable.

### 7.2.13 Space around line symbol

`\Xbeforesymmlinenum` With `\Xbeforesymmlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space before the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by `\Xbeforenumber`.

`\Xaftersymmlinenum` With `\Xaftersymmlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` you can add some space after the line symbol in a footnote. The default value is value set by `\Xafternumber`.

`\Xendbeforesymmlinenum` `\Xendbeforesymmlinenum` and `\Xendaftersymmlinenum` are the equivalents of `\Xbeforesymmlinenum` and `\Xaftersymmlinenum` for the endnotes.

### 7.2.14 Space in place of number

`\Xinplaceofnumber` If no number or symbolic line number is printed, you can add a space, with `\Xinplaceofnumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1 em.

`\Xendinplaceofnumber` `\Xendinplaceofnumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same, for critical endnotes.

### 7.2.15 Boxing line number and line symbol

`\Xboxlinenum` It could be useful to put the line number inside a fixed box: the content of the note will be printed after this box. You can use `\Xboxlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` to do that. To subsequently



disable this feature, use `\Xboxlinenum` with length equal to 0 pt. One use of this feature is to print line number in a column, and the note in an other column:

```
\Xhangindent{1em}
\Xafternumber{0em}
\Xboxlinenum{1em}
```

`\Xboxsymlinenum`      `\Xboxsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as `\Xboxlinenum` but for the line number symbol.

`\Xendboxsymlinenum`      `\Xendboxsymlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as `\Xboxsymlinenum` but for endnotes.

`\Xboxlinenumalign`      If you put line number in box, it will be aligned left inside the box. However, you can change it using `\Xboxlinenumalign[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` where `⟨text⟩` can be the following:

**L** to align left (default value);

**R** to align right;

**C** to center.

When using `\Xboxlinenum`, `reledmac` put all the line number description in the same box. That is, the same box will contain: the start line number, the dash, and either the end line number or the range symbol (like `ff.`). However, it is possible to box them in two different boxes.

- `\Xboxstartlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` will box the start line number in a box of length `⟨l⟩`. The content will be put at the right of the box.
- `\Xboxendlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` will box the dash plus the end line number or the range symbol in a box of length `⟨l⟩`. The content will be put at the left of the box.

With these two commands, it is possible to horizontally align the dash of line number when using critical notes, to obtain something like:

```
1
12-23
24ff.
```

`\Xendboxlinenum`      `\Xendboxlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`, `\Xendboxlinenumalign[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`, `\Xendboxstartlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`,  
`\Xendboxlinenumalign`      `\Xendboxendlinenum[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` are the same as, respectively, `\Xboxlinenum` and  
`\Xendboxstartlinenumalign`      `\Xboxlinenumalign`, `\Xboxstartlinenum`, `\Xboxendlinenum` except in endnotes.  
`\Xendboxendlinenumalign`

### 7.3 Arbitrary code around line number

`\Xendbhooklinenumber`      `\Xendbhooklinenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨code⟩}` is used to execute code before line numbers in endnotes. The code is executed before the `\Xendbeforelinenumber` space and before the `\Xendnotenumberfont` font setting.

`\Xendahooklinenumber`      `\Xendahooklinenumber[⟨s⟩]{⟨code⟩}` is used to execute code after line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the `\Xendafternumber` space.

<code>\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber</code>	<code>\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}</code> is used to execute code before space or symbol which replace line number in endnotes. The code is executed before the <code>\Xendbeforesymmlinenumber</code> space and before the <code>\Xendnotenumfont</code> font setting.
<code>\Xendahookinplaceofnumber</code>	<code>\Xendahookinplaceofnumber[\langle s \rangle]{\langle code \rangle}</code> is used to execute code after space or symbol which replace line number in endnotes. The code is executed after the <code>\Xendaftersymmlinenumber</code> space.

## 7.4 Separator between the lemma and the note

### 7.4.1 For footnotes

<code>\Xlemmaseparator</code>	By default, in a footnote, the separator between the lemma and the note is a right bracket ( <code>\rbracket</code> ) <sup>20</sup> . You can use <code>\Xlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle Xlemmaseparator \rangle}</code> to change it. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a <b>breakable</b> space between the separator and the following text.
<code>\Xbeforelemmaseparator</code>	Using <code>\Xbeforelemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add some space between lemma and separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0 em.
<code>\Xafterlemmaseparator</code>	Using <code>\Xafterlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add some space between separator and note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space will not be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.
<code>\Xnolemmaseparator</code>	You can suppress the lemma separator, using <code>\Xnolemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]</code> , which is simply a alias of <code>\Xlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{}</code> .
<code>\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	With <code>\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add a space if no lemma separator is printed. The default value is 1 em.

### 7.4.2 For endnotes

<code>\Xendlemmaseparator</code>	By default, there is no separator inside endnotes between the lemma and the content of the note. You can use <code>\Xendlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle Xendlemmaseparator \rangle}</code> to change this. The optional argument can be used to specify the series in which it is used. A common value of <code>\Xendlemmaseparator</code> is <code>\rbracket</code> . Note that there is a non-breakable space between the lemma and the separator, but a <b>breakable</b> space between the separator and the following text.
<code>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator</code>	Using <code>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add some space between the lemma and the separator. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0 em.
<code>\Xendafterlemmaseparator</code>	Using <code>\Xendafterlemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add some space between the separator and the content of the note. If your lemma separator is empty, this space won't be printed. The default value is 0.5 em.
<code>\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	With <code>\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator[\langle s \rangle]{\langle l \rangle}</code> you can add some space if you choose to remove the lemma separator. The default value is 0.5 em.

<sup>20</sup>For polyglossia, when the lemma is RTL, the bracket automatically switches to a left bracket.

## 7.5 Font style

### 7.5.1 For line number

<code>\Xnotenumfont</code>	<code>\Xnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}</code> is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes ; <code>⟨command⟩</code> must be one (or more) switching command, like <code>\bfseries</code> .
<code>\Xendnotenumfont</code>	<code>\Xendnotenumfont[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}</code> is used to change the font style for line numbers in critical footnotes. <code>⟨command⟩</code> must be one (or more) switching command, like <code>\bfseries</code> .
<code>\notenumfontX</code>	<code>\notenumfontX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}</code> is used to change the font style for note numbers in familiar footnotes. <code>⟨command⟩</code> must be one (or more) switching command, like <code>\bfseries</code> .

### 7.5.2 For the lemma

<code>\lemmadisablefontselection</code>	By default, font of the lemma in footnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The <code>\Xlemmadisablefontselection[⟨s⟩]</code> command allows to disable it for a specific series.
<code>\lemmadisablefontselection</code>	By default, font of the lemma in endnote is the same as font of the lemma in the main text. For example, if the lemma is in italic in the main text, it is also in italic in note. The command allows <code>\Xendlemmadisablefontselection[⟨s⟩]</code> to disable it for a specific series.
<code>\Xlemmafont</code> <code>\Xendlemmafont</code>	Use <code>\Xlemmafont[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}</code> to apply a $\TeX$ font command to the lemma. For example, to have boldface lemma:  <code>\Xlemmafont{\bfseries}</code>  <code>\Xendlemmafont[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}</code> is the same for endnotes.

### 7.5.3 For all notes

<code>\Xnotefontsize</code>	<code>\Xnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}</code> is used to define the font size of critical footnotes of the series. The default value is <code>\footnotesize</code> . The <code>⟨command⟩</code> must not be a size in pt, but a standard $\TeX$ size, like <code>\small</code> .
<code>\notefontsizeX</code>	<code>\notefontsizeX[⟨s⟩]{⟨command⟩}</code> is used to define the font size of familiar footnotes of the series. The default value is <code>\footnotesize</code> . The <code>⟨command⟩</code> must not be a size in pt, but a standard $\TeX$ size, like <code>\small</code> .
<code>\Xendnotefontsize</code>	<code>\Xendnotefontsize[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}</code> is used to define the font size of end critical footnotes of the series. The default value is <code>\footnotesize</code> . The <code>⟨command⟩</code> must not be a size in pt, but a standard $\TeX$ size, like <code>\small</code> .

## 7.6 Wrapping notes

### 7.6.1 Wrapping lemmas

<code>\Xwraplemma</code>	<code>\Xwraplemma[⟨s⟩]{⟨cmd⟩}</code> is used to wrap, in the footnote, the lemma in a $\TeX$ com-
--------------------------	---

mand. For example, with the `bid` package, to ensure having a lemma written right to left, use `\Xwraplemma{\RL}`.

`\Xwrapendlemma`      `\Xendwraplemma[\s]{\cmd}` is the same for endnotes.

### 7.6.2 Wrapping contents

`\Xwrapcontent`      `\Xwrapcontent[\s]{\cmd}` is used to wrap the footnote contents — excluding the lemma — in a  $\LaTeX$  command.

For example, if the language of your note is not the same as the language of the lemma, use `\Xwrapcontent{\foreignlanguage{\language}}` (with `babel`) or `\Xwrapcontent{\text{\language}}` (for `babel`).

`\Xendwrapcontent`      `\Xendwrapcontent[\s]{\cmd}` is the same for endnotes.

`\wrapcontentX`      `\wrapcontentX[\s]{\cmd}` is the same for familiar footnotes.

## 7.7 Indent of notes content

`\Xparindent`      By default, `reledmac` does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside critical footnotes. Use `\Xparindent[\s]` to enable indentation.

`\parindentX`      By default, `reledmac` does not add indentation before the paragraphs inside familiar footnotes. Use `\parindentX[\s]` to enable indentation.

`\Xhangindent`      For critical notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indent with `\Xhangindent[\s]{\l}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make distinction between a new note and a break in a note. The default value is 0 pt.

`\hangindentX`      For familiar notes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with `\hangindentX[\s]{\l}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

`\Xendhangindent`      For critical endnotes NOT paragraphed you can define an indentation with `\Xendhangindent[\s]{\l}`, which will be applied in the second line of notes. It can help to make a distinction between a new note and a break in a note.

## 7.8 Arbitrary code at the beginning of notes

The three next commands add arbitrary code at the beginning of notes. As the name's space is local to the notes, you can use it to redefine some style inside the notes. For example, if you don't want the `pstart` number to be in bold, use :

```
\Xbhooknote{\renewcommand{\thepstart}{\arabic{pstart}}.}}
```

`\Xbhooknote`      `\Xbhooknote[\s]{\code}` is to be used at the beginning of each critical footnote.

`\bhooknoteX`      `\bhooknoteX[\s]{\code}` is to be used at the beginning of each familiar footnote.

`\Xendbhooknote`      `\Xendbhooknote[\s]{\code}` is to be used at the beginning of each endnote.

## 7.9 Arbitrary code before inserting note

`\Xbeforeinserting`      `\Xbeforeinserting[\s]{\code}` and `\beforeinsertingX[\s]{\code}` are very technical commands.

`beforeinsertingX`

They allow one to add any arbitrary code just before the footnotes are added in the list of footnotes. The main use is to insert text direction code. For example, if you edit right-to-left text with `bidl`, but want your critical footnote be left-to-right, use `\Xbeforeinserting\LTR`. You should also use `\Xwraplemma` to ensure your lemmas are right-to-left in a left-to-right paragraph (7.6.1 p. 51)).

Note that the changes are local to the footnote.

## 7.10 Options for footnotes in columns

### 7.10.1 Alignment

`\Xcolalign` By default, text in footnotes of two or three columns are flush left and without hyphenation. However, you can change this with `\Xcolalign[s]{code}` for critical footnotes, and `\colalignX[s]{code}` for familiar footnotes.

*s* must be one of the following command:

`\justifying` to have text justified, as usual with  $\text{\LaTeX}$ . You can also let *s* empty.

`\raggedright` to have text left aligned, but *without hyphenation*. That is the default `reledmac` setting.

`\RaggedRight` to have text left aligned *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

`\raggedleft` to have text right aligned, but *without hyphenation*.

`\RaggedLeft` to have text right aligned *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

`\centering` to have text centered, but *without hyphenation*.

`\Centering` to have text centered *with hyphenation* (requires `ragged2e`).

### 7.10.2 Size of the columns

For the following four macros, be careful that the columns are made from right to left.

`\Xhsizetwocol` `\Xhsizetwocol[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsizetwocol`.

`\Xhsizethreecol` `\Xhsizethreecol[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when critical notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsizethreecol`.

`\hsizetwocolX` `\hsizetwocolX[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in two columns. Default value is `.45 \hsizetwocolX`.

`\hsizethreecolX` `\hsizethreecolX[s]{l}` is used to change width of a column when familiar notes are displaying in three columns. Default value is `.3 \hsizethreecolX`.

## 7.11 Options for paragraphed footnotes and notes grouped by line

### 7.11.1 Mark separation of notes

`\Xafternote` You can add some horizontal space after a note by using `\Xafternote[s]{l}` (for `\afternoteX`

critical footnotes) or `\afternoteX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` (for familiar footnotes). The default value is 1em plus .4em minus .4em.

`\Xparafootsep` For paragraphed footnotes (see below), you can choose the separator between each note by using `\Xparafootsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}` for critical notes and `\parafootsepX` for familiar notes. A common separator is the double pipe (`||`), which you can set by using `\Xparafootsep{$\parallel$}`.

Note that if the symbol defined by `\Xsymlinenum` must be used at the beginning of a note, the `\Xparafootsep` / `\parafootsepX` is not used before this note.

### 7.11.2 Ragged text

`\Xragged` Text in paragraphed critical notes is justified, but you can use `\Xragged[⟨s⟩]{L}` if you want it to be ragged left (i.e., right justified), or `\Xragged[⟨s⟩]{R}` if you want it to be ragged right (i.e., left justified).

`\raggedX` Text in paragraphed footnotes is justified, but you can use `\raggedX[⟨s⟩]{L}` if you want it to be ragged left, or `\raggedX[⟨s⟩]{R}` if you want it to be ragged right.

## 7.12 Options for block of notes

### 7.12.1 Grouping notes by line

`\Xgroupbyline` If you do not use `\Xarrangement{paragraph}`, you may want to group all the critical footnotes related to the same line in the same paragraph. In this case, use `\Xgroupbyline[⟨series⟩]`.

In many cases, you might like to use it in combination with `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline` (7.2.1 p. 44).

`\Xgroupbylineseparetwolines` Note that the `\Xafternote` and `\Xparafootsep` settings are used to determine space and content between footnotes (7.11 p. 53). Suppose you have two notes on line 1 which overlap lines 1 and 2. This last note will be printed, if you use `\Xgroupbyline` in the same group as the previous one. In the case you want that note to be distinct, you must use both `\Xgroupbyline` and `\Xgroupbylineseparetwolines[⟨s⟩]`.

In many cases, you might like to use it in combination with `\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines` (7.2.1 p. 44).

### 7.12.2 Text before notes

`\Xtxtbeforenotes` You can add text before critical footnotes with `\Xtxtbeforenotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`.

`\txtbeforenotesX` You can add text before familiar footnotes with `\txtbeforenotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`.

`\Xendtxtbeforenotes` You can add text before endnotes with `\Xendtxtbeforenotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`. The text will be typeset only if there are endnotes.

`\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce` By default, such texts are inserted at the beginning of the groups of notes on each page. You can add `\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce` (for critical footnotes) and `\txtbeforenotesonlyonceX` (for familiar footnotes) to insert them only the first time notes are typeset.

### 7.12.3 Code before notes

`\Xbhookgroup` While `\Xtxtbeforenotes` is for typesetting text before notes, `\Xbhookgroup[⟨s⟩]{⟨code⟩}` and `\bhookgroupX[⟨s⟩]{⟨code⟩}` (for critical and familiar respectively) are for executing code before a group of notes, between the rules and the printing of the notes.

### 7.12.4 Spacing

`\Xbeforenotes` You can change the vertical space before the rule of the critical notes with `\Xbeforenotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1.2em plus .6em minus .6em.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule used by reledmac decreases by 3pt. This 3pt decrease is not changed by this command.**

`\beforenotesX` You can change the vertical space printed before the rule of the familiar notes with `\beforenotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 1.2em plus .6em minus .6em.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, decreases 3pt. These 3pt are not changed by this command.**

`\Xprenotes` You can set the space before the first series of critical notes printed on each page and set a different amount of space for each subsequent series on the page. You can do it with `\Xprenotes{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 0pt. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.

`\prenotesX` You can set the space before the first printed (in a page) series of familiar notes to be different from the space before other series. The default value is 0pt. You can do this with `\prenotesX{⟨l⟩}`. You can disable this feature by setting the length to 0pt.

### 7.12.5 Rule

`\Xafterrule` You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the critical notes with `\Xafterrule[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 0pt.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.**

`\afterruleX` You can change the vertical space printed after the rule of the familiar notes with `\afterruleX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is 0pt.

**Be careful, the standard L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X footnote rule, which is used by reledmac, adds 2.6pt. These 2.6pt are not changed by this command.**

### 7.12.6 Maximum height

`\Xmaxhnotes` By default, one series of critical notes can take up to 80% of `\vsize`, before being broken to the next page. If you want to change the size use `\Xmaxhnotes[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. Be careful : the length can't be flexible, and is relative to the the current font. For example, if you want the note to take, at most, 33% of the text height, do `\Xmaxhnotes{.33\textheight}`.

`\maxhnotesX` `\maxhnotesX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` is the same as previous, but for familiar footnotes.

Note that in many cases, you should call these commands in the begin of the document, because the `\vsize` in the preamble is not the same as `\vsize` after the preamble. That why we recommend to you to add in your preamble

```

\AtBeginDocument{
  \maxhnotesX{0.8\textheight}
  \Xmaxhnotes{0.8\textheight}
}

```

Be careful with the two previous commands. Actually, for technical purposes, one paragraphed note is considered as one block. Consequently, it cannot be broken between two pages, even if you used these commands. The debug is in the todoclist.

### 7.12.7 Width

`\Xwidth` `\Xwidth[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` sets the total width of critical footnotes. `\widthX[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}` does the same for familiar footnotes.

⟨l⟩ can be a length expression, parsable with `\dimexpr`. For example:

```

\Xwidth{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrsnotewidth}
\widthX{\columnwidth+\marginparsep+\ledrsnotewidth}

```

Note that changes the width of the block of notes. If you want to change the width of each column when typesetting notes in columns, use `\Xhsizetwocol`, `\Xhsizethreecol`, `\hsizetwocolX`, `\hsizethreecolX`, see 7.10.2 p. 53.

### 7.13 Footnotes and the reledpar columns

`\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns` If you use `reledpar \columns` macro, you can call :

`\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX`

- `\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns[⟨s⟩]` to create critical notes with a two-column size width.
- `\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX[⟨s⟩]` to create familiar notes with a two-column size width.

### 7.14 Line number annotation

The way line number annotations are typeset can be changed using hooks as described in 5.5.2 p. 26 and 5.5.3 p. 27.

### 7.15 Endnotes in one paragraph

`\Xendparagraph` By default, any new endnote starts a new paragraph. Use `\Xendparagraph[⟨s⟩]` to have all end notes of one given series set in one paragraph.

`\Xendafternote` You can add some space after an endnote series by using `\Xendafternote[⟨s⟩]{⟨l⟩}`. The default value is `1em plus.4em minus.4em`.

`\Xendsep` You can choose the separator between each note by `\Xendsep[⟨s⟩]{⟨text⟩}`. A common separator is the double pipe (`||`), which you can set by using `\Xendsep{${\parallel}$}`.



## 8 Fonts

One of the most important features of the appearance of the notes, and indeed of your whole document, will be the fonts used. We will first describe the commands that give you control over the use of fonts in the different structural elements of the document, especially within the notes, and then in subsequent sections specify how these commands are used.

`\numlabfont` Line numbers for the main text are usually printed in a smaller font in the margin. The `\numlabfont` macro is provided as a standard name for that font: it is initially defined as

```
\newcommand{\numlabfont}{\normalfont\scriptsize}
```

You might wish to use a different font if, for example, you preferred to have these line numbers printed using old-style numerals.

`\select@lemmafont` We will briefly discuss `\select@lemmafont` here because it is important to know about it now, although it is not one of the macros you would expect to change in the course of a simple job. Hence it is ‘protected’ by having the @-sign in its name.

When you use the `\edtext` macro to mark a word in your text as a lemma, that word will normally be printed again in your apparatus. If the word in the text happens to be in a font such as italic or bold you would probably expect it to appear in the apparatus in the same font. This becomes an absolute necessity if the font is actually a different script, such as Arabic or Cyrillic. `\select@lemmafont` does the work of decoding `reledmac`’s data about the fonts used to print the lemma in the main text and calling up those fonts for printing the lemma in the note.

`\select@lemmafont` is a macro that takes one long argument—the cluster of line numbers passed to the note commands. This cluster ends with a code indicating what fonts were in use at the start of the lemma. `\select@lemmafont` selects the appropriate font for the note using that font specifier.

`reledmac` uses `\select@lemmafont` in a standard footnote format macro called `\normalfootfmt`. The footnote formats for each of the layers A to E are `\let` equal to `\normalfootfmt`. So all the layers of the footnotes are formatted in the same way.

## 9 Verse

### 9.1 Basic

`\stanza` Use `\stanza` at the start of a stanza. Each line in a stanza is ended by an ampersand (&), and the stanza itself is ended by putting `\&` at the end of the last line.

`\&`

If you need to add brackets directly after `\stanza`, `&` or `\&`, add `\norelax`. Otherwise, the brackets will be interpreted as delimitation of an optional argument (cf. 9.9 p. 60)

### 9.2 Define stanza indents

`\stanzaindentbase` Lines within a stanza may be indented. The indents are integer multiples of the length `\stanzaindentbase`, whose default value is 20pt.

`\setstanzaindents` In order to use the stanza macros, **one must set the indentation values**. First the

value of `\stanzaindentbase` should be set, unless the default value 20pt is desired. Every stanza line indentation is a multiple of this.

To specify these multiples one invokes, for example  
`\setstanzaindent{3,1,2,1,2}`.

The numerical entries must be whole numbers, 0 or greater, separated by commas without embedded spaces. The first entry gives the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

If it is known that each stanza line will fit in one print line, then this first entry should be 0;  $\TeX$  does less work in this case, but no harm ensues if the hanging indentation is not 0 but is never used.

If you want the hanging verse to be flush right, you can use `\sethanginsymbol`: see p. 9.7 p. 60.

Enumeration is by stanza lines, not by print lines. In the above example the lines are indented one unit, two units, one unit, two units, with 3 units of hanging indentation in case a stanza line is too long to fit on one print line.

### 9.3 Repeating stanza indents

Since version 0.13, if the indentation is repeated every  $n$  verses of the stanza, you can define only the  $n$  first indentations, and indicate that they are repeated, defining the value of the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter at  $n$ . For example:

```
\setstanzaindent{5,1,0}
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{2}
```

is like

```
\setstanzaindent{5,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0,1,0}
```

**Be careful: the feature is changed in `eledmac` 1.5.1. See A.3 p. 401.**

If you don't use the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter, make sure you have at least one more numerical entry in `\setstanzavalues` than the number of lines in the stanza.

If you want to disable this feature again, just put the counter to 0:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{0}
```

The macro makes no restriction on the number of lines in a stanza.

Sometime, it is useful to repeat the indents only after some lines of verse. You can set the counter `startstanzaindentrepetition` to do that. Its default value is 1, that means the repetition starts with line of verse number 1.

For example, you may want to have no indent for the first line, and all other lines been indented by 1. So do

```
\setstanzaindent{1,0,1}
```

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}{1}
\setcounter{startstanzaindentrepetition}{2}
```

## 9.4 Notes about the scope of the indent settings

Stanza indentation values (and penalty values) obey  $\TeX$ 's grouping conventions, so if one stanza among several has a different structure, its indentations (penalties) may be set within a group; the prior values will be restored when the group ends.

## 9.5 Manual stanza indent

`\stanzaindent`  
`\stanzaindent*`

You can set the indent of some specific verse by calling `\stanzaindent{\langle value \rangle}` at the beginning of the verse, before any other character. In this case, the indent defined by `\setstanzaindent` for this verse is skipped, and `\{\langle value \rangle\}` is used instead.

If you use the mechanism of indent repetition, the next verse will be printed as it should be even if the current verse would have its normal indent value. In other words, using `\stanzaindent` in a verse does not shift the indent repetition.

However, if you want to shift the indent repetition, so the next verse has the indent normally used for the current verse, use `\stanzaindent*` instead of `\stanzaindent`.

## 9.6 Stanza breaking

`\setstanzapenalties`

When the stanzas run over several pages, it is often desirable that page breaks should arise between certain lines in the stanza, so a facility for including penalties after stanza lines is provided. If you are satisfied with the page breaks, you need not set the penalty values.

The command

```
\setstanzapenalties{1,5000,10100,5000,0}
```

results in a penalty of 5000 being placed after the first and third lines of the stanza, and a penalty of  $-100$  after the second.

The first entry “1” is a control value. If it is zero, then no penalties are passed on to  $\TeX$ , which is the default. Values between 0 and 10000 are penalty values; values between 10001 and 20000 have 10000 subtracted and the result is given as a negative penalty. The mechanism used for indentations and penalties requires unsigned values less than 32768. No penalty is placed after the last line, so the final ,0 in the example above could be omitted. A penalty of 10000 will prevent a page break; such a penalty is included automatically where there is stanza hanging indentation. A penalty of  $-10000$  (corresponding to the entry value 20000 in this context) forces a page break. Values in between act as suggestions as to the desirability of a page break at a given line. There is a subtle interaction between penalties and *glue*, so it may take some adjustment of skips and penalties to achieve the best results.

## 9.7 Hanging symbol

It is possible to insert a symbol in each line of hanging verse, as in French typography; for example, the opening bracket ‘[’. To insert it in `reledmac`, use macro `\sethangingsymbol{<h>}` with this code. In the example of French typography, do

`\sethangingsymbol`

```
\sethangingsymbol{[,}
```

You can also use it to force hanging verse to be flush right:

```
\sethangingsymbol{\protect\hfill}
```

## 9.8 Long verse and page break

If you want to prevent page breaks inside long verses, use the option `nopbinverse` when loading package, or use `\lednopbinverse>true`. Read 18.2 p. 78 for further details.

## 9.9 Content before/after verses

It is possible to add content, like a subtitle or a spacing, before or after verse:

- The `\stanza` command can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed before the stanza. A `\noindent` is inserted before the content of first optional argument. If you don’t want this `\noindent`, you can use the second optional argument (also in brackets):

```
\stanza[foo] % \noindent is inserted before foo.
\stanza[][foo] % There is no \noindent inserted before foo.
```

`\AtEveryStanza`

- Use `\AtEveryStanza{<arg>}` to automatically add content before stanzas (not in the same paragraph).

Note that a `\noindent` will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip`. You can use the starred version of `\AtEveryStanza` to avoid this `\noindent`.

`\AtStartEveryStanza`

- Use `\AtStartEveryStanza` to automatically add content at the beginning of stanzas (in the same paragraph).

- `&` can be replaced by `\newverse` with two optional arguments (in brackets). The first will be printed after the current verse, the second before the next verse.

A `\noindent` is automatically inserted before the contents of these optional arguments.

Use a third and fourth optional argument to not add these `\noindents` (to add content respectively after the current verse / before the next verse).

- Use `\AtEveryPend{⟨arg⟩}` to automatically add content after verses (including the final one) and `\AtEveryPstart{⟨arg⟩}` to automatically add content before verses (including the first one).
- `\&` can take an optional argument (in brackets). Its content will be printed after the stanza.

`\AtEveryStopStanza`

- Use `\AtEveryStopStanza` to automatically add content after the end of stanzas (not in the same paragraph).

Note that a `\noindent` will be inserted before the argument, and, consequently, a `\parskip`. You can use the starred version of `\AtEveryStopStanza` to avoid this `\noindent`.

`\BeforeEveryStopStanza`

- Use `\BeforeEveryStopStanza` to automatically add content at the end of stanzas (in the same paragraph).

## 9.10 Numbering stanza

`\numberstanzatrue`

If you want to automatically number stanzas, use `\numberstanzatrue`. In this case, the line number will restart at each `\stanza`.

`\numberstanzafalse`

If you want to disable this feature again, use `\numberstanzafalse`.

You can use this feature in combination with `\Xstanza` (7.2.9 p. 47).

`\thestanza`

You can redefine `\thestanza` to change the aspect of stanza number. Default value is:

```
\renewcommand{\thestanza}{%
  \textbf{\arabic{stanza}}%
}
```

You can change the value of the `stanza` counter with the usual commands of  $\TeX$ .

`\stanzanumwrapper`

You can redefine `\stanzanumwrapper` in order to modify the way the stanza number is inserted in the flow of text. Default value is:

```
\newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{%
  \flagstanza{#1}%
}
```

`\antilabe`

## 9.11 Antilabe

In dramatic text, it may happen that a line of verse is split between two speakers. That is called “antilabe”. In this case, the typesetting of the second half must start at the horizontal position where the typesetting of the first half stops.

`Reledmac` provides tool for such problematic, but you must enable them with the `antilabe` option when loading package, as this option is quite resource consuming.

The `\antilabe{<name>}` must be called at the beginning of the second half of the line of verse.

Its `<name>` argument is the name of the speaker. Because of the way  $\TeX$  expand argument, you can use one the following syntax:

- `\antilabe{<name>}`, if you typeset the character name;
- `\antilabe<command>`, if the character name is defined in a command, like with the `thalie` package;
- `\antilabe{}`, if you do not type the character name.

See the file `examples/2-antilabe.tex` for an example of use.

`\beforeantilabe` You can execute any arbitrary code before or after `\antilabe` macro just with a re-definition of `\beforeantilabe` or `\afterantilabe`. For example, to add more space, just do:

`\afterantilabe`

```
\renewcommand{\afterantilabe}{\hspace{1em}}
```

## 9.12 Various tools

`\ampersand` If you need to print an `&` symbol in a stanza, use the `\ampersand` macro, not `\&` as this will end the stanza.

`\flagstanza` Putting `\flagstanza[<len>]{<text>}` at the start of a line in a stanza (or elsewhere) will typeset `<text>` at a distance `<len>` before the line. The default `<len>` is `\stanzaindentbase`.

## 9.13 Notes on empty lines

Since v2.3.0 of `reledmac`, empty lines when typesetting verses no longer produce new paragraphs, and consequently, do not insert vertical spaces. Use optional argument of `\stanza` or `\newverse` to insert vertical space (9.9 p. 60).

# 10 Grouping

In a `minipage` environment  $\TeX$  changes `\footnote` numbering from arabic to alphabetic and puts the footnotes at the end of the `minipage`.

`minipage` You can put numbered text with critical footnotes in a `minipage` and the footnotes are set at the end of the `minipage`.

You can also put familiar footnotes (see section 6.5) in a `minipage` but unlike with `\footnote` the numbering scheme is unaltered.

`ledgroup` Minipages, of course, are not broken across pages. Footnotes in a `ledgroup` environment are typeset at the end of the environment, as with `minipages`, but the environment includes normal page breaks. The environment makes no change to the `textwidth` so it appears as normal text; it just might be that footnotes appear in the middle of a page, with text above and below.

`ledgroupsize`

The `ledgroupsize` environment is similar to `ledgroup` except that you must specify a width for the environment, as with a `minipage`.

`\begin{ledgroupsize}[\langle pos \rangle]{\langle width \rangle}`.

The required  $\langle width \rangle$  argument is the text width for the environment. The optional  $\langle pos \rangle$  argument is for positioning numbered text within the normal textwidth. It may be one of the characters:

l (left) numbered text is flush left with respect to the normal textwidth. This is the default.

c (center) numbered text is in the center of the textwidth.

r (right) numbered text is flush right with respect to the normal textwidth.

Note that normal text, footnotes, and so forth are all flush left.

`\begin{ledgroupsize}{\textwidth}` is effectively the same as `\begin{ledgroup}`

## 11 Cross referencing

The package provides a simple cross-referencing facility that allows you to mark places in the text with labels, and generate page and line number references to those places elsewhere using those labels.

### 11.1 Basic use

`\edlabel`

First you place a label in the text using the command `\edlabel{\langle lab \rangle}`.  $\langle lab \rangle$  can be almost anything you like, including letters, numbers, punctuation, or a combination—anything but spaces; you might type `\edlabel{toves-3}`, for example.<sup>21</sup>

`\edpageref``\edlineref``\sublineref``\pstartref``\annotationref`

Elsewhere in the text, either before or after the `\edlabel`, you can refer to its location with `\edpageref{\langle lab \rangle}`, `\edlineref{\langle lab \rangle}`, `\edsublineref{\langle lab \rangle}`, `\pstartref{\langle lab \rangle}` or `\annotationref{\langle lab \rangle}`, that will produce, respectively, the page, line, sub-line, `pstart`, the annotation, on which the `\edlabel{\langle lab \rangle}` command occurred.

Note that the `\edlineref` command insert the side flag after the line number.

An `\edlabel` command may appear in the main text, or in the first argument of `\edtext`, but not in the apparatus itself. But `\edpageref`, `\edlineref`, `\sublineref`, `\pstartref` commands can also be used in the apparatus to refer to `\edlabels` in the text.

The `\edlabel` command works by writing macros to `ℒTEX.aux` file. You will need to process your document through `ℒTEX` twice in order for the references to be resolved.

You will be warned if you use `\edlabel{foo}` and `foo` has been used as a label before. The `ref` commands will return references to the last place in the file marked with this label. You will also be warned if a reference is made to an undefined label. (This will also happen the first time you process a document after adding a new `\edlabel` command: the auxiliary file will not have been updated yet.)

<sup>21</sup>More precisely, you should stick to characters in the `TEX` categories of “letter” and “other”.

## 11.2 Cross-referencing to a critical note

If you want to refer to a word which is a lemma word, the `\edlabel` command should be in the first argument of `\edtext` command.

If you want to refer to the content of a `\Xfootnote`, the line and subline number printed will be the start line.

If you want to refer to starting and ending lines, you should use `\appref` and related tools (11.6.2 p. 66).

## 11.3 Cross-referencing which return a number in any case

`\xpageref`  
`\xlineref`  
`\xsublineref`  
`\xpstartref`  
`\xannotationref`

However, there are situations in which you will want `reledmac` to return a number without displaying any warning messages about undefined labels or the like: if you want to use the reference in a context where  $\TeX$  is looking for a number, such a warning will lead to a complaint that the number is missing. This is the case for references used within the argument to `\linenum`, for example (see 6.2.5 p. 32).

For this situation, `reledmac` supplies variants of the reference commands, with the `x` prefix: `\xpageref`, `\xlineref`, `\xsublineref`, `\xpstartref` and `\xannotationref`. They have the following limitations:

- They will not tell you if the label is undefined.
- They must be preceded in the file by at least one of the four other cross-reference commands—e.g., a `\edlabel{foo}` command, even if you never refer to that label—since those commands can all do the necessary processing of the `.aux` file, and the `\x...` ones cannot.
- When `hyperref` is loaded, the `hyperref` link will not be added. (Indeed, it is not a limitation, but a feature.)
- With `reledpar`, the `\xlineref` does not insert the right side flag, in order to obtain a line number. Use `\xflagref` to obtain the side flag, depending of your flag.

### 11.3.1 Cross-referencing in order to define line number of a critical note

`\xxref`

The `\xxref{<lab1>}{<lab2>}` command generates a reference to a sequence of lines, for use in the second argument of `\edtext`. It takes two arguments, both of which are labels: e.g., `\xxref{mouse}{elephant}`.

It automatically calls `\linenum` (6.2.5 p. 32) and `\lineannot` (5.5.1 p. 26) and sets the beginning page, line, subline numbers and line annotations to those of the place where `\edlabel{mouse}` was placed, and the ending ones to those where `\edlabel{elephant}` occurs.

For example, one might use the following:

```
\beginnumbering
```



```
\pstart
\edlabel{Queritur}Queritur utrum metaphysica sit scientia una.
\pend
```

```
\pstart
\edtext{Et videtur quod non\edlabel{non}.}{\xxref{Queritur}{non}\lemma{queritur \dots{} non}\Afootnote{}}
\pend
```

```
\endnumbering
```

## 11.4 Not automatic cross-referencing

`\edmakelabel` Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired—for example, if you want to refer to a page and line number in another volume of your edition. In such cases, you can use the `\edmakelabel{<lab>}{<numbers>}` macro so that you can ‘roll your own’ label.

For example, if you type ‘`\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}`’ you will create a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print ‘10’ and `\lineref{elephant}` would print ‘25’. The sub-line number here is zero. It is usually best to collect your `\edmakelabel` statements near the top of your document, so that you can see them at a glance.

## 11.5 Normal $\LaTeX$ cross-referencing

`\label` The normal `\label`, `\ref` and `\pageref` macros may be used within numbered text, and operate in the familiar fashion.

`\ref`

`\pageref`

## 11.6 References to start and end lines

### 11.6.1 Reference to main text lines

Many times, you may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is defined by a start line and an end line. `reledmac` provides specific tools for this scenario.

`\edlabelS` Use `\edlabelS{<label>}` to mark the start line of the passage.

`\edlabelE` Use `\edlabelE{<label>}` to mark the end the end line of the passage. These two commands just create two labels which are named `<label>:start` and `<label>:end`.

`\edlabelSE` Use `\edlabelSE{<label>}` to mark just one location in the text. Contrary to a classical `\edlabel`, the `<label>` could be use with `\Seref` and `\Serefwithpage`.

`\Seref` The main utility is to use them with three other commands. `\Seref{<label>}` will make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical footnotes.

`\Serefwithpage` `\Serefwithpage` will make a cross-reference printed as a reference in critical end-notes.

`\Serefonlypage` `\Serefonlypage` will make a cross-reference printed only with page number.

### 11.6.2 References to lines that are commented on in the apparatus

You may want to make a cross-reference to a passage that is referred to by `\edtext`. `reledmac` provides specific tools for this scenario.

`\applabel` If you use `\applabel{⟨label⟩}` inside the second argument of a `\edtext`, `reledmac` will add a `\edlabel` at the beginning and end of the marked passage. The label at the beginning of the passage will have the title `⟨label⟩:start`, while the label at the end will have the title `⟨label⟩:end`.

If you use `\linenum` (6.2.5 p. 32) to refer to these labels, `reledmac` will use your line settings to refer to the passage.

`\appref` You can also use `\appref{⟨label⟩}` and `\apprefwithpage{⟨label⟩}` to refer to these lines. The first one will print the lines as they are printed in the critical footnotes, while the second will print the lines as they are printed in endnotes.

### 11.6.3 Settings

`\setapprefprefixsingle` **Specific to these tools** If you use `\apprefprefixsingle{⟨prefix⟩}`, `⟨prefix⟩` will be printed before the line numbers of a `\appref`-reference. If you use `\apprefprefixmore{⟨prefix⟩}`, `⟨prefix⟩` will be printed before the line numbers, if you refer to more than one line.

For example, you may use:

```
\setapprefprefixsingle{line~}
\setapprefprefixmore{lines~}
```

Note that if you do not use `\setapprefprefixmore`, the argument of `\setapprefprefixsingle` will be used in any case.

`\setSerefprefixsingle` `\setSerefprefixmore` and `\setSerefprefixmore` are similar for `\Seref` command.

`\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle` Use `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle{⟨prefix⟩}` to set the page prefix for `\Serefonlypage` when there is only one page. Use `\setSerefonlypageprefixmore{⟨prefix⟩}` to set it when there is more than one page. For example:

```
\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle{p.~}
\setSerefonlypageprefixmore{pp.~}
```

Note that if you do not use `\setSerefonlypageprefixmore`, the value of `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle` is used instead.

**Also note that `\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle` is only a shortcut for `\Xendbeforepagenumber` (see 11.6.3 p. 66). So if you use `\Xendbeforepagenumber` without any optional argument, it will override this setting.**

**Linked to setting of critical footnotes and endnotes** Some commands which set the appearance of line numbers in critical footnotes also set the appearance of line numbers in `\appref` and `\Seref` if called *without the optional series argument*.

These commands are the following:

- `\Xlineflag` (for `reledpar`), enabled by default.

- `\Xlinerangeseparator`
- `\Xmorethantwolines`
- `\Xsublinesep`
- `\Xtwolines`
- `\Xtwolinesbutnotmore`
- `\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage`
- `\Xlinenumannotationposition`
- `\Xwraplinenumannotation`
- `\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation`

If you want to make settings specific to `\appref` or `\Seref`, just call them with an optional argument containing a comma-separated list of command names (for example `appref,Seref`) or with a suffix equal to the command name (for example `appref`).

The same principle is available for `\apprefwithpage`, `\Serefwithpage` and `\Serefonlypage` with the following commands:

- `\Xendafterpagenumber` (not for `\Serefonlypage`)
- `\Xendbeforepagenumber`
- `\Xendlineflag` (for `reledpar`), enabled by default.
- `\Xendlineprefixmore`
- `\Xendlineprefixsingle`
- `\Xendlinerangeseparator`
- `\Xendmorethantwolines`
- `\Xendsublinesep`
- `\Xendtwolines`
- `\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore`
- `\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage`
- `\Xendlinenumannotationposition`
- `\Xendwraplinenumannotation`
- `\Xemdnoidenticallinenumannotation`

**For one specific command** When calling `\appref` and `\Seref`, you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (`[]`), any optional argument which can be used for critical footnotes (6.2.2 p. 30).

When calling `\apprefwithpage`, `\Serefwithpage` or `\Serefonlypage` you can use as a first optional argument, in brackets (`[]`), any optional argument which can be used for critical endnotes (6.2.3 p. 30).

### 11.6.4 Combining multiple references

When combining multiple cross references into a list, it is possible to prevent prefixes reappearing by adding an optional argument to `\appref` and `\Seref`. The available options are:

- `noprefix` to remove any prefix set by `\setapprefprefixsingle` or the equivalent for a single reference;
- `prefixmore` to force the plural version of a prefix.

For example, a reference to ‘lines 65–66, 72, and 75’ might use `\Seref[prefixmore]{ref1}`, `\Seref` to achieve this result.

## 11.7 Compatibility with `xr` package

The `\externaldocument` command of the `xr` package allows making cross-references from an external document, with the standard  $\TeX$  commands `\label` and `\ref` (and related).

To use it with the `reledmac` cross-reference commands (i.e. `\edlabel` and related), you must do the following:

1. Load the `xr` package.
2. Load the `reledmac` package.
3. Use the `\externaldocument` document command.

## 12 Sidenotes

### 12.1 Basics

The `\marginpar` command does not work in numbered text. Instead, the package provides for non-floating sidenotes in either margin.

`\ledinnernote` `\ledinnernote{⟨text⟩}` will put `⟨text⟩` into the inner margin level with where the command was issued. Similarly, `\ledouternote{⟨text⟩}` puts `⟨text⟩` in the outer margin.

`\ledleftnote` `\ledsidenote{⟨text⟩}` will put `⟨text⟩` into the margin specified by the current setting of `\sidenotemargin{⟨location⟩}`. The permissible value for `⟨location⟩` is one out of the list `left`, `right`, `inner`, or `outer`, for example `\sidenotemargin{outer}`.  
`\ledrightnote` The package’s default setting is  
`\ledsidenote`  
`\sidenotemargin`

`\sidenotemargin{right}`

to typeset `\ledsidenotes` in the right hand margin. This is the opposite of the default margin for line numbers. The style for a `\ledsidenote` follows that for a `\ledleftnote` or a `\ledrightnote` depending on the margin it is put in.

If two note commands for the same side are called in the same line, they will be appended and separated by a comma.

**The notes will appear only after the second  $\text{\LaTeX}$  run. If the note positions change in your `.tex` file, you need two runs to get the correction position in the output file. You are strongly encouraged to use tools like *latexmk*, to be sure to get the correct number of runs.**

## 12.2 Setting

### 12.2.1 Width

`\ledlsnotewidth` The left sidenote text is put into a box of width `\ledlsnotewidth` and the right  
`\ledrsnotewidth` text into a box of width `\ledrsnotewidth`. These are initially set to the value of `\marginparwidth`.

### 12.2.2 Vertical position

`\rightnoteupfalse` By default, sidenotes are placed to align with the last line of the note to which it refers.  
`\leftnoteupfalse` If you want they to be placed to align with the first line of the note to which it refers, use `\leftnoteupfalse` (for left note) and/or `\rightnoteupfalse` (for right note).

### 12.2.3 Distance to the main text

`\ledlsnotesep` The texts are put a distance `\ledlsnotesep` (or `\ledrsnotesep`) into the left (or right)  
`\ledrsnotesep` margin. These lengths are initially set to the value of `\linenumsep`.

### 12.2.4 Font

`\ledlsnotefontsetup` These macros specify how the sidenote texts are to be typeset. The initial definitions  
`\ledrsnotefontsetup` are:

```
\newcommand*{\ledlsnotefontsetup}{\raggedleft\footnotesize}% left
\newcommand*{\ledrsnotefontsetup}{\raggedright\footnotesize}% right
```

These can of course be changed to suit.

### 12.2.5 Separator between notes

`\setsidenotesep` If you have two or more sidenotes for the same line, they are separated by a comma. But if you want to change this separator, you can use `\setsidenotesep{<sep>}`.

## 13 Indexing

### 13.1 Basics

`\edindex`  $\TeX$  provides the `\index{⟨item⟩}` command for specifying that  $\langle item \rangle$  and the current page number should be added to the raw index (idx) file. The `\edindex{⟨item⟩}` macro can be used in numbered text to specify that  $\langle item \rangle$  and the current page & line number should be added to the raw index file.

Note that the file `.idx` will contain the right reference only after the third run, because of the internal indexing mechanism of `reledmac`. That means you must first run (Xe/Lua) $\TeX$  three times, then run `makeindex`, and then finally run (Xe/Lua) $\TeX$  again, in order to get an index with the right page numbers.

Also note that using `\edtext` in familiar footnotes refers to the line where the footnotes are called

### 13.2 Use with `imakeidx` or `indextools`

If the `imakeidx` or `indextools` package is used then the macro takes an optional argument, which is the name of a raw index file. For example `\edindex[line]{item}` will use `line.idx` as the raw file instead of `\jobname.idx`.

The minimal version of `imakeidx` package to be used is the version 1.3a uploaded on CTAN on 2013/07/11.

Be careful with the order of package loading and index declaration. You must use this order:

1. Load `imakeidx` or `indextools`.
2. Load `reledmac`.
3. Declare the index with the macro `\makeindex` of `imakeidx` and `indextools`.

### 13.3 Referring to critical notes

If you want to refer to a word inside an `\edtext{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨app⟩}` command, `\edindex` should be defined inside the first argument, e.g.,

```
The \edtext{creature\edindex{elephant} was quite
unafraid}{\Afootnote{Of the mouse, that is.}}
```

If you add `\edindex` inside some `\Xfootnote` command, it will refer to that note, and a suffix *n* will be appended to the reference.

`\Xinnotemark` You can redefine the way the reference is made using :

`\innotemarkX`

- `\Xinnotemark[⟨series⟩]{⟨definition⟩}` for critical notes;
- `\innotemarkX[⟨series⟩]{⟨definition⟩}` for familiar notes;

In the  $\langle definition \rangle$  argument, you can use the following codes:

- #1, which stands for footnote series;
- ##1, which stands for reference (ie. page+line)

For example:

```
\Xinnotemark{##1\textsuperscript{#1}}
```

### 13.4 Separator between page and line numbers

`\pagelinesep` The page & linenumber combination is written as `page\pagelinesep line`, where the default definition is `\newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}` so that an item on page 3, line 5 will be noted as being at 3-5. You can renew `\pagelinesep` to get a different separator.

– is the default separator used by the MAKEINDEX program.

You can reconfigure it, this example defines a colon as separator:

```
\renewcommand{\pagelinesep}{:}
```

However, you also have to configure your `.ist` index style file. For example, if you use `:` as separator<sup>22</sup>.

```
page_compositor ":"
```

Read the MAKEINDEX program's handbook about the `.ist` file.

### 13.5 Using xindy

Should you decide to use `xindy` instead of `makeindex` to transform your `.idx` files into `.ind` files, you must use some specific configuration file (`.xdy`) so that `xindy` can understand `eledmac` reference syntax of which the scheme is:

`pagenumber-linenummer`

An example of such a file is provided in the “examples” folder. Read the `xindy` handbook to learn how to use it.<sup>23</sup>

This file also provides, with an explanation, the settings that are needed to put `reledmac` lines numbers in parenthesis, in order to make a better distinction between line numbers and page ranges.

In any case, you must load `reledmac` with the `xindy` option, in order to generate a `.xdy` file which is specific to your document. This file is needed by the `.xdy` example file which is in the “examples” folder. Its default name is `reledmac-markup-attr.xdy`, but you can change it by using your own as an argument of the `xindy+hyperref` option.

If you choose to use both `xindy` and the `hyperref` package, you must do three more things:

<sup>22</sup>For further detail, you can read <http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/32783/7712>.

<sup>23</sup>Or, for people who read French, read <http://geekographie.maieul.net/174>.

1. Use `xindy+hyperref` option when loading the `reledmac` package. When you run (Xe/Lua)TeX with this option, a `.xdy` configuration file will be generated with all the settings needed to allow internal hyperlinking in each index entry which is created by `\edindex`.
2. Use `hyperindex=false` option when loading `hyperref`.
3. Uncomment — by removing the semicolons at the beginning of the relevant lines — some lines in the `<code>.xdy</code>` file provided in the “examples” folder in order to restore internal links in the index to be used by the standard `index` command.<sup>24</sup>

### 13.6 Advanced setting

`\edindexlab` The `\edindex` process uses a `\label` and `\ref` mechanism to get the correct line number. It automatically generates labels of the form `\label{\edindexlab N}`, where `N` is a number, and the default definition of `\edindexlab` is:

```
\newcommand*{\edindexlab}{\&\&}
```

in the hopes that this will not be used by any other labels (`\edindex`’s labels are like `\label{\&\&27}`). You can change `\edindexlab` to something else if you need to.

## 14 Glossary

`reledmac` provides mechanism to make glossaries with the `glossaries` package, referring not to the page, but to the page and line.

### 14.1 Preamble setting

The standard compositor between page and line number in `reledmac` is a dash, while `glossaries` uses, by default, a dot. Consequently, you must:

- Or set `.glossaries`:  

```
\glsSetCompositor{-}
```
- Or set `reledmac`:  

```
\renewcommand{\pagelinesep}{.}
```

In this case, the above will have consequences for your use of `\edindex` and you should set your `.ist` file (13.4 p. 71).

### 14.2 Commands

The `\gls`, `\Gls`, and related commands of `glossaries` packages have a prefixed version with `ed`, which refers to the page line. The argument are the same as for the standard commands. So for example:

```
\edgls[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]
```

<sup>24</sup>These are the recommended lines to provide the best possible compatibility between `hyperref` and `xindy`, even without using `reledmac`.



## 15 Tabular material

L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X's normal `tabular` and `array` environments cannot be used where line numbering is being done; more precisely, they can be used but with odd results, so don't use them. However, `reledmac` provides some simple tabulation environments that can be line numbered. The environments can also be used in normal unnumbered text.

There are six environments; the `edarray*` environments are for math and `edtabular*` for text entries. The final `l`, `c`, or `r` in the environment names indicate that the entries will be flushleft (`l`), centered (`c`) or flushright (`r`). There is no means of specifying different formats for each column, nor for specifying a fixed width for a column. The `edtabularc` environments are centered with respect to the surrounding text.

```

\begin{edtabularc}
1 & 2 & 3 \\
a & bb & ccc \\
AAA & BB & C
\end{edtabularc}

```

Entries in the environments are the same as for the normal `array` and `tabular` environments but there must be no ending `\\` at the end of the last row. *There must be the same number of column designators (the &) in each row.* There is no equivalent to any line drawing commands (such as `\hline`). However, unlike the normal environments, the `ed...` environments can cross page breaks.

Macros like `\edtext` can be used as part of an entry.

For example:

```

\beginnumbering
\pstart
\begin{edtabularl}
\textbf{\Large I} & wish I was a little bug\edindex{bug} &
\textbf{\Large I} & eat my peas with honey\edindex{honey} \\
& With whiskers \edtext{round}{\Afootnote{around}} my tummy &
& I've done it all my life. \\
& I'd climb into a honey\edindex{honey} pot &
& It makes the peas taste funny \\
& And get my tummy gummy.\edindex{gummy} &
& But it keeps them on the knife.
\end{edtabularr}
\pend
\endnumbering

```

produces the following parallel pair of verses.

1	<b>I</b> wish I was a little bug	<b>I</b> eat my peas with honey
2	With whiskers round my tummy	I've done it all my life.
3	I'd climb into a honey pot	It makes the peas taste funny
4	And get my tummy gummy.	But it keeps them on the knife.

`\edtabcolsep` The distance between the columns is controlled by the length `\edtabcolsep`.

`\spreadmath`     `\spreadmath{<math>}` typesets `{<math>}` but the `{<math>}` has no effect on the calculation of column widths. `\spreadtext{<text>}` is the analagous command for use in edtabular environments.

```

\begin{edarrayl}
1 & 2 & & 3 & & 4 & \\\
& \spreadmath{F+G+C} & & & & & \\
a & & bb & & ccc & & dddd \\
\end{edarrayl}

```

$$\begin{array}{cccccc}
 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & & \\
 & F + G + C & & & & \\
 a & & bb & & ccc & & dddd
 \end{array}$$

`\edrowfill`     The macro `\edrowfill{<start>}{<end>}{<fill>}` fills columns number `<start>` to `<end>` inclusive with `<fill>`. The `<fill>` argument can be any horizontal ‘fill’. For example, `\hrulefill` or `\upbracefill`.

Note that every row must have the same number of columns, even if some would not appear to be necessary.

The `\edrowfill` macro can be used in both tabular and array environments. The typeset appearance of the following code is shown below.

```

\begin{edtabularr}
1 & & & & & & & & & & \\
Q & & & & fd & & h & & & & qwertziohg \\
v & & & & wptz & & x & & y & & vb \\
g & & & & nnn & & & & \edrowfill{3}{5}{\upbracefill} & & \\
\edrowfill{1}{3}{\downbracefill} & & & & & & pq & & dgh & & \\
k & & & & & & 1 & & co & & ghweropjklmnbvcxys \\
1 & & & & 2 & & 3 & & \edrowfill{4}{5}{\hrulefill} & & \\
\end{edtabularr}

```

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
 1 & & 2 & & 3 & & 4 & & & & 5 \\
 Q & & & & & & fd & & h & & qwertziohg \\
 v & & wptz & & x & & y & & & & vb \\
 g & & nnn & & & & & & \upbracefill & & \\
 k & & & & & & & & pq & & dgh \\
 1 & & 2 & & 3 & & & & \hrulefill & & 
 \end{array}$$

You can also define your own ‘fill’. For example:

```

\newcommand*{\upbracketfill}{%
\vrule height 4pt depth 0pt\hrulefill\vrule height 4pt depth 0pt}

```

is a fill like `\upbracefill` except it has the appearance of a (horizontal) bracket instead of a brace. It can be used like this:

```

\begin{edarrayc}
1 & & 2 & & & & & & 3 & & 4 & \\\
a & & \edrowfill{2}{3}{\upbracketfill} & & & & d & \\\
A & & B & & & & C & & D & & \\
\end{edarrayc}

```

$$\begin{array}{cccc} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ a & \perp & & d \\ A & B & C & D \end{array}$$

`\edatleft`      `\edatleft[ $\langle math \rangle\{\langle symbol \rangle\}\langle halfheight \rangle$ ]` typesets the math  $\langle symbol \rangle$  as  $\left\{\langle symbol \rangle\right\}$  with the optional  $\langle math \rangle$  centered before it. The  $\langle symbol \rangle$  is twice  $\langle halfheight \rangle$  tall. The `\edatright` macro is similar and it typesets  $\right\{\langle symbol \rangle\}$  with  $\langle math \rangle$  centered after it.

```
\begin{edarrayc}
& 1 & 2 & 3 & \\
& 4 & 5 & 6 & \\
\edatleft[left =]{\{1.5\baselineskip}
& 7 & 8 & 9 & \\
\edatright[= right]{\{1.5\baselineskip}
\end{edarrayc}
```

$$left = \left\{ \begin{array}{ccc} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{array} \right\} = right$$

`\edbeforetab`      `\edbeforetab{ $\langle text \rangle\{\langle entry \rangle\}$ }`, where  $\langle entry \rangle$  is an entry in the leftmost column, typesets  $\langle text \rangle$  left justified before the  $\langle entry \rangle$ . Similarly `\edaftertab{ $\langle entry \rangle\{\langle text \rangle\}$ }`, where  $\langle entry \rangle$  is an entry in the rightmost column, typesets  $\langle text \rangle$  right justified after the  $\langle entry \rangle$ .

For example:

```
\begin{edarrayl}
A & 1 & 2 & 3 & \\
\edbeforetab{Before}{B} & 1 & 3 & 6 & \\
C & 1 & 4 & & \edaftertab{8}{After} & \\
D & 1 & 5 & 0 & \\
\end{edarrayl}
```

	$\begin{array}{cccc} A & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ B & 1 & 3 & 6 \\ C & 1 & 4 & 8 \\ D & 1 & 5 & 0 \end{array}$	After
Before		

`\edvertline`      The macro `\edvertline{ $\langle height \rangle$ }` draws a vertical line  $\langle height \rangle$  high (contrast this with `\edatright` where the size argument is half the desired height).

`\edvertdots`

```
\begin{edarrayr}
a & b & c & d & & \\
v & w & x & y & & \end{arrayr}
```

```

m & n & o & p & \\\
k & & L & cvb & \edvertline{4pc}
\end{edarrayr}

```

<i>a</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>C</i>	<i>d</i>	
<i>v</i>	<i>w</i>	<i>x</i>	<i>y</i>	
<i>m</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>p</i>	
<i>k</i>		<i>L</i>	<i>cvb</i>	

The `\edvertdots` macro is similar to `\edvertline` except that it produces a vertical dotted instead of a solid line.

## 16 Sectioning commands

### 16.1 Sectioning commands without line numbers or critical notes

The standard sectioning commands (`\chapter`, `\section` etc.) can be used inside numbered text. In this case, you must call them as an optional argument of `\pstart` (5.2.3 p. 19):

```

\pstart[\section{section}]
Pstart content.
\pend

```

The line which contains them will not be numbered, and you cannot add critical notes inside.

### 16.2 Sectioning commands with line numbering and critical notes

You have to use the following commands:

- `\eledchapter[\langle text \rangle]{\langle critical text \rangle}`,
- `\eledchapter*`,
- `\eledsection[\langle text \rangle]{\langle critical text \rangle}`,
- `\eledsection*`,
- `\eledsubsection[\langle text \rangle]{\langle critical text \rangle}`,
- `\eledsubsection*`,
- `\eledsubsubsection[\langle text \rangle]{\langle critical text \rangle}`,
- `\eledsubsubsection*`.

These are equivalent to the  $\LaTeX$  commands. Each individual command must be called alone in a `\pstart... \pend`:

```
\pstart
\eledsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{section}}
\pend
\pstart
\eledsubsection*{xxxx\ledsidenote{sub}}
\pend
\pstart
normal text
\pend
```

After the first run, you will see only the text. This is normal. After the second run, you will see the formatting. Finally, with the third run, you will see the table of contents.

For technical reasons, the page break before `\elechapter` cannot be added automatically. You have to insert it manually via `\beforeeledchapter`, which must be called outside of a numbered section.

## 16.3 Optimization

If you are not going to have any `\eledxxx` commands, then load `reledmac` with `noeledsec` option. That will suppress the generation of unneeded `.eledsec` files, save memory, and make `reledmac` run faster.

## 17 Quotation environments

The quotation and quote environments can be used so that the same definition/note appears both inside and outside a numbered section. The typographical consequences will resemble the outside numbered sections, based on the styles of the *book* class. However, if you use a package that redefines these environments, these redefinitions won't be available inside the numbered section. You must open any quotation environments inside a `\pstart... \pend` block, not outside. A quotation environment **MUST NOT** be opened immediately after a `\pstart` and **MUST NOT** be closed immediately before a `\pend`.

In some cases, you do not want these environments to be redefined in numbered sections. You can load the package with the option `noquotation` to prevent this redefinition.

## 18 Page breaks

### 18.1 Control page breaking

`reledmac` and `reledpar` break pages automatically. However, you may sometimes want to either force page breaks, or prevent them. The packages provide two macros:

```
\ledpb
\lednopb
```

- `\ledpb` adds a page break.
- `\lednopb` prevents a page break, by adding one line to the current page if needed.

**These commands have effect only at the second run.**

These two commands take effect at the beginning of line in which they are called. For example, if you call `\ledpb` at l. 444, then l. 443 will be at p.  $n$ , and l. 444 at p.  $n + 1$ . However, you can change the behavior and decide they will have effect after the end of the line, adding `\ledpbsetting{after}` at the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble). With the previous example, l. 444 will be on p.  $n$  and l. 445 will be on p.  $n + 1$ .

If you are using `reledpar` to typeset parallel pages, you must use `\lednopb` on both sides in the two corresponding lines. This is especially important when you are using stanzas; otherwise, the pages will be out of sync.

## 18.2 Prevent page break in a long verses

You can also decide to prevent page breaks between two lines of a long verse. To do this, use `nopbinverse` when loading package, or add `\lednopbinversetrue` in the beginning of your file (better: in your preamble).

This feature works only with verse of 2 lines and no more. It works on the third run, or on the fourth run if using `reledpar`. By default, when a long verse runs between two pages, a page break will be placed at the beginning of the verse. However, if you have added `\ledpbsetting{after}`, the page break will be placed at the end of the long verse and the page containing the long verse will have one extra line.

## 19 Miscellaneous

When the package assembles the name of the auxiliary file for a section, it prefixes `\extensionchars` to the section number. This is initially defined to be empty, but you can add some characters to help distinguish these files if you like; what you use is likely to be system-dependent. If, for example, you said `\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{!}`, then you would get temporary files called `jobname. !1`, `jobname. !2`, etc.

The package can take options. The option ‘final’, which is the default is for final typesetting; this sets `\ifledfinal` to TRUE. The other option, ‘draft’, may be useful during earlier stages and sets `\ifledfinal` to FALSE.

The lemma within the text is printed via `\showlemma{lemma}`. Normally, or with the ‘final’ option, the definition of `\showlemma` is:

```
\newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{#1}
```

so it just produces its argument. With the ‘draft’ option it is defined as

```
\newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{\textit{#1}}
```

so that its argument is typeset in an italic font, which may make it easier to check that all lemmas have been treated.

If you would prefer some other style, you could put something like this in the preamble:

```
\ifledfinal\else
```

```
\renewcommand{\showlemma}[1]{\textbf{#1}}% or simply ...[1]{#1}
\fi
```

## 19.1 Known and suspected limitations

### 19.1.1 Non-standard geometry

If you use classes other than `article` or `book`, or if you use the `geometry` package, you should use `maxhnotesX` and/or `\Xmaxhnotes` as explained in 7.12.6 p. 55 in order to prevent footnotes from overlapping the bottom margin.

### 19.1.2 floatrow package compatibility

The `floatrow` package must be loaded before the `reledmac`.

### 19.1.3 ‘No room for a new’

Sometimes, especially when using `reledmac` with other packages, you could obtain warning messages such ‘no room for a new count’ or ‘no room for a new write’.

In order to prevent such problems, the first thing is to use the options to optimize `reledmac`. For example, if you need only two series of notes, use the `series={A,B}` option. Read 16.3 p. 77 in order to know which are the available options.

However, if with these options you still have such messages, here are some tricks.

‘no room for a new count’ is often caused by `biblatex` being used at the same time.

Load `reledmac` (and `reledpar`) *before* `biblatex`.

‘no room for a new write’ can be caused by multiple indexes. In this case, use `indextools` of `imakeidx` with the `splitindex` option, in order to obtain only one `.idx` file. If that does not solve your problem, you can use `morewrites` package. That should solve the problem, but  $\LaTeX$  will be slower.

If after reading and applying these advices you have still problem, contact us with a minimal working example.

### 19.1.4 Marginal notes

In general, `reledmac`’s system for adding marginal line numbers breaks anything that makes direct use of the  $\LaTeX$  insert system, which includes `marginpars`, footnotes and floats.

However, you can use both `\footnote` and the familiar footnote series notes in numbered text. A `\marginpar` in numbered text will throw away its contents and send a warning message to the terminal and log file, but will do no harm.

### 19.1.5 Paragraph shape

`\parshape` cannot be used within numbered text, except in a very restricted way.

`\ballast`

$\TeX$  is a three-pass system, but even after a document has been processed three times, there are some tricky situations in which the page breaks decided by  $\TeX$  never settle down. At each successive run, `reledmac` may oscillate between two different sets of page decisions. To stop this happening, should it arise, Wayne Sullivan suggested the inclusion of the quantity `\ballast`. The amount of `\ballast` will be subtracted from the penalties which apply to the page breaks calculated on the *previous* run through  $\TeX$ , thus reinforcing these breaks. So if you find your page breaks oscillating, insert `\setcounter{ballast}{100}` or some such figure, and with any luck the page breaks will settle down. Luckily, this problem does not crop up at all often.

### 19.1.6 Paraphed footnotes

The restriction on explicit line-breaking in paraphed footnotes, mentioned on 7.1 p. 43, and described in more detail on XIII.6.3 p. 197, really is a nuisance if that is something you need to do. There are some possible solutions, described by Michael Downes, but this area remains unsatisfactory.

If you use more than one series of paraphed notes, it may happen, in some particular cases, that only the footnote rule, with no accompanying footnotes, be printed. In this case use `reledmac` package option `nopenalties` which should solve the problem, but also may produce widow or orphan lines. For the time being, we have no solution of this problem.

`\footfudgefiddle`

For paraphed footnotes  $\TeX$  has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 68) to increase the estimate. You have to use `\renewcommand` for this, like:

```
\renewcommand{\footfudgefiddle}{68}
```

Note that you must call it *before* `\Xarrangement{paragraph}` or `\arrangementX{paragraph}`.

Any settings to ‘geometry’ must be made before `\Xarrangement` / `\arrangementX`.

Finally, in many cases you should use `\Xmaxhnotes` and / or `\maxhnotesX` (7.12.6 p. 55), in order to define the maximum height relative to `\textheight` and not to `\vsize`, because the `\vsize` value is not the same inside and outside of the preamble.

### 19.1.7 Use with other packages

Because of `reledmac`’s complexity, it may not play well with other packages. In particular `reledmac` is sensitive to commands in the arguments to the `\edtext` and `\*footnote` macros (this is discussed in more detail in section VI, and in particular the discussion about `\no@expands` and `\morenoexpands`). You will have to see what works or doesn’t work in your particular case.

`\morenoexpands`

You can define the macro `\morenoexpands` to modify macros that you call within `\edtext`. Because of the way `reledmac` numbers the lines the arguments to `\edtext` can be processed more than once and in some cases a macro should only be processed



once. One example is the `\colorbox` macro from the `color` package, which you might use like this:

```
... \edtext{\colorbox{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \colorbox{...}}}
```

If you actually try this<sup>25</sup> you will find  $\TeX$  whinging ‘Missing { inserted’, and then things start to fall apart. The trick in this case is to specify either:

```
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox=0}
```

or

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\colorbox\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

(`\@secondoftwo` is an internal  $\TeX$  macro that takes two arguments and throws away the first one.) The first incantation lets color show in both the main text and footnotes whereas the second one shows color in the main text but kills it in the lemma and footnotes. On the other hand if you use `\textcolor` instead, like

```
... \edtext{\textcolor{mycolor}{lemma}}{\Afootnote{... \textcolor{...}}}
```

there is no need to fiddle with `\morenoexpands` as the color will naturally be displayed in both the text and footnotes. To kill the color in the lemma and footnotes, though, you can do:

```
\makeatletter
\newcommand{\morenoexpands}{\let\textcolor\@secondoftwo}
\makeatother
```

It took Peter Wilson a little while to discover all this. If you run into this sort of problem you may have to spend some time experimenting before hitting on a solution.

If you want to use the option *bottom* of the `footmisc` package, you must load this package *before* the `reledmac` package.

## 19.2 Parallel typesetting

Peter Wilson has developed the `ledpar` package as an extension to `ledmac` specifically for parallel typesetting of critical texts. This also cooperates with the `babel` / `polyglossia` packages for typesetting in multiple languages. `reledpar` is the successor of the primitive `ledpar` package.

Peter Wilson also developed the `ledarab` package for handling parallel Arabic text in critical editions. However, this package is not maintained by Maïeul Rouquette. You should use the capabilities of a modern TeX processor, like Xe(La)TeX

<sup>25</sup>Reported by Dirk-Jan Dekker in the CTT thread ‘Incompatibility of “color” package’ on 2003/08/28.

## I Implementation overview

We present the `reledmac` code in roughly the order in which it is used during a run of  $\text{\TeX}$ . The order is *exactly* that in which it is read when you load the `reledmac` package, because the same file is used to generate this manual and to generate the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  package file.

Most of what follows consists of macro definitions, but there are some commands that are executed immediately—especially at the start of the code. The documentation generally describes the code from the point of view of what happens when the macros are executed, though. As each macro is introduced, its name is printed in the margin.

After package options, we begin with the commands you use to start and stop line numbering in a section of text (Section II). Next comes the machinery for writing and reading the auxiliary file for each section that helps us count lines, and for creating list macros encoding the information from that file (Section V); this auxiliary file will be read at the start of each section, to create those list macros, and a new version of the file will be started to collect information from the body of the section.

Next are commands for marking sections of the text for footnotes (Section VI), followed by the macros that take each paragraph apart, attach the line numbers and insertions, and send the result to the vertical list (Section VII). The footnote commands (Section XIII) and output routine (Section XXIII) finish the main part of the processing; cross-referencing (Section XXV) and endnotes (Section XX) complete the story.

In what follows, macros with an `@` in their name are more internal to the workings of `reledmac` than those made up just of ordinary letters, just as in `PLAIN \TeX` (see *The TeXbook*, p. 344). You are meant to be able to make free with ordinary macros, but the ‘`@`’ ones should be treated with more respect, and changed only if you are pretty sure of what you are doing.

## II Preliminaries

### II.1 Links with original `edmac`

Generally, these are the modifications to the original. `edmac` code:

- Replace as many `\def`’s by `\newcommand`’s as possible to avoid overwriting  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macros.
- Replace user-level  $\text{\TeX}$  counts by  $\text{\LaTeX}$  counters.
- Use the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  font handling mechanisms.
- Use  $\text{\LaTeX}$  messaging and file facilities.

### II.2 Package declaration

Announce the name and version of the package, which is targetted for `LaTeX2e`.

```

1 %<*code>
2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
3 \ProvidesPackage{reledmac}[2020/06/24 v2.34.0 typesetting critical editions]
4 %

```

## II.3 Package options

`\ifparledgroup` Use this to remember which option is used, set and execute the options with final as the default. We use `xkeyval` in order to manage options with argument.

```

\ifsameparallelpagenumber
\ifprevpgnotnumbered
\ifledfinal
\ifnocritical@
\if@noeled@sec
\ifnoend@
\ifnofamiliar@
\ifnoledgroup@
\ifparapparatus@
\ifnoquotation@
\iflednopbinverse
\ifwidthliketwocolumns
\ifxindy@
\ifxindyhyperref@
\ifeledmaccompat@
\ifantilabe@

```

### II.3.1 Options of reledpar

Here, we define some booleans specific to `reledpar` options, but which have consequences on `reledmac` internal commands.

```

7 \newif\ifparledgroup
8 \newif\ifsameparallelpagenumber%
9 \newif\ifprevpgnotnumbered%%
10 %
11 \DeclareOptionX{series}[A,B,C,D,E]{\xdef\default@series{#1}}
12 \ExecuteOptionsX{series}%
13
14 \newif\if@noeled@sec%
15 \DeclareOptionX{noeledsec}{\@noeled@sectrue}
16
17 \newif\ifnocritical@%
18 \DeclareOptionX{nocritical}{\nocritical@true}%
19
20 \newif\ifnofamiliar@%
21 \DeclareOptionX{nofamiliar}{\nofamiliar@true}%
22
23 \newif\ifnoledgroup@%
24 \DeclareOptionX{noledgroup}{\noledgroup@true}%
25
26 \newif\ifnoend@%
27 \DeclareOptionX{noend}{%
28   \let\l@dend@open\@gobble%
29   \let\l@dend@close\relax%
30   \global\let\l@dend@stuff=\relax%
31   \noend@true%
32 }%

```

### II.3.2 Options of reledmac

```

33 \newif\ifnoquotation@
34 \DeclareOptionX{noquotation}{\noquotation@true}
35
36 \newif\ifledfinal
37 \DeclareOptionX{final}{\ledfinaltrue}
38 \DeclareOptionX{draft}{\ledfinalfalse}
39 \ExecuteOptionsX{final}
40
41 \newif\ifparapparatus@
42 \DeclareOptionX{parapparatus}{\parapparatus@true}
43
44 \newif\iflednopbinverse
45 \DeclareOptionX{nopbinverse}{\lednopbinversetrue}
46
47 \newif\ifwidthliketwocolumns%
48 \DeclareOptionX{widthliketwocolumns}{\widthliketwocolumnstrue}%
49
50 \newif\ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns
51 \DeclareOptionX{continuousnumberingwithcolumns}{\continuousnumberingwithcolumnstrue}%
52
53 \newif\ifxindy@
54 \DeclareOptionX{xindy}[eledmac-markup-attr.xdy]{%
55   \AtBeginDocument{\immediate\openout\eledmac@xindy@out=#1}%
56   \newwrite\eledmac@xindy@out%
57   \xindy@true%
58   \gdef\eledmacmarkuplocdepth{:depth 1}%
59   \AtEndDocument{\immediate\closeout\eledmac@xindy@out}%
60 }%
61
62 \newif\ifxindyhyperref@
63 \DeclareOptionX{xindy+hyperref}{%
64   \xindyhyperref@true%
65 }%
66
67 \newif\ifeledmaccompat@%
68 \DeclareOptionX{eledmac-compat}{%
69   \eledmaccompat@true%
70 }%
71 \DeclareOptionX{nopenalties}{%
72   \AtBeginDocument{\let\add@penalties\relax}%
73 }
74 \def\l@auxdir{}%
75 \DeclareOptionX{auxdir}{%
76   \xdef\l@auxdir{#1}%
77 }%
78
79 \newif\ifsw@caseinsensitive%
80 \DeclareOptionX{swcaseinsensitive}{%

```

```

82 \sw@caseinsensitivetrue%
83 }%
84 \newif\ifnoresetlinenumannotation@
85 \DeclareOptionX{noresetlinenumannotation}{%
86 \noresetlinenumannotation@true%
87 }%
88 \newif\ifantilabe@%
89 \DeclareOptionX{antilabe}{%
90 \antilabe@true%
91 }%
92 %

```

We use the starred form of `\ProcessOptionsX` which executes options in the order listed in the source file: class options, then listed package options, so a package option can override a class option with the same name. This was suggested by Dan Luecking in the `ctt` thread *Class/package option processing*, on 27 February 2004.

```

93 \ProcessOptionsX*\relax
94
95 %

```

## II.4 Loading packages

Loading package `xargs` to declare commands with optional arguments. Loading package `xparse` to declare fully expandable commands with optional argument. Ideally, we should use only `xparse` and not `xargs`. For historical reasons, we use both. `Etoolbox` is also used to make code clearer - for example, in dynamic command names (which can replace `\csname` etc.). Use suffix to declare commands with a starred version, `xstring` to work with strings, `ifluatex` and `ifxetex` to test if Lua<sub>TeX</sub> or Xe<sub>TeX</sub> is running, and `ragged2e` to manage ragged justification for paragraphed notes.

```

96 \RequirePackage{xargs}
97 \RequirePackage{xparse}[2017/03/07]%
98 \RequirePackage{etoolbox}
99 \@ifl@t@r\fmtversion{2015/10/01}
100 {\ifboolexpr{not test{\@ifl@t@r\fmtversion{2016/03/31}}} or (test{\
101 ifdefstring{\fmtversion}{2016/03/31}} and test {\ifnumless{\patch@level
102 }{3}})}}%
103 {\PackageWarning{reledmac}{You are using a LaTeX version older than
104 2016/03/31 patch 3.%
105 \MessageBreak You are strongly encouraged to use a newer version.}}%
106 {}%
107 }%
108 {\RequirePackage{etex}%
109 \csname reserveinserts\endcsname{32}%
110 }%
111 \RequirePackage{suffix}
112 \RequirePackage{xstring}
113 \RequirePackage{ifluatex}
114 \RequirePackage{ragged2e}

```

```

112 \RequirePackage{ifxetex}%
113 %

```

## II.5 Compatibility with Lua<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub>X

Here, we enable some primitives for Lua<sub>T</sub><sub>E</sub>X.

```

114 \ifx\directlua\undefined\else%
115   \directlua{tex.enableprimitives("",{"texdir","pdir","bodydir"})}
116 \fi
117 \ifluatex%
118   \ifnum\luatexversion<110%
119     \PackageWarning{reledmac}{You need to use LuaTeX 1.1.0 or higher}{\@ehc}
120   }%
121   \fi%
122 %

```

## II.6 Boolean flags

**\ifl@dmemoir** Define a flag for if the memoir class has been used.

```

123 \newif\ifl@dmemoir
124 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{\l@dmemoirtrue}{\l@dmemoirfalse}
125 %
126 %

```

**\if@ledgroup** Flag set to true inside a ledgroup environment.

```

127 \newif\if@ledgroup%
128 %

```

**\ifl@imakeidx** Define a flag for if the imakeidx package has been used.

```

129 \newif\ifl@imakeidx
130 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\l@imakeidxtrue}{\l@imakeidxfalse}%False is the default value
131 %

```

**\ifl@indextools** Define a flag for if the indextools package has been used.

```

132 \newif\ifl@indextools%
133 \@ifpackageloaded{indextools}{%
134   \l@indextoolstrue%
135   \l@imakeidxtrue%
136   \let\imki@wrindexentry\indtl@wrindexentry%
137 }{}%
138 %

```

False is the default value. We consider `indextools` as a variant of `imakeidx`. That is why we set `\ifl@imakeidx` to true. We also let `\imki@wrindexentry` to `\indtl@wrindexentry`.

`\ifl@footmisc` Define a flag if the `footmisc` package has been loaded.

```
139 \newif\ifl@footmisc
140 \ifpackageloaded{footmisc}{\l@footmisctrue}{}%False is the default value
141 %
```

`\if@RTL` The `\if@RTL` is defined by the `bidi` package, which is sometimes loaded by *polyglossia*. But we define it as well if the `bidi` package is not loaded.

```
142 \ifdef{\if@RTL}{\newif\if@RTL}
143 %
```

`\if@firstlineofpage` `\if@firstlineofpage` is set to TRUE at the first line of every page. `\if@firstlineofpageR` is for the right side.

```
144 \newif\if@firstlineofpage%
145 \newif\if@firstlineofpageR%
146 %
```

## II.7 Messages

All the messages are grouped here as macros. This saves  $\TeX$ 's memory when the same message is repeated and also lets them be edited easily.

`\reledmac@warning` Write a warning message.

```
147 \newcommand{\reledmac@warning}[1]{\PackageWarning{reledmac}{#1}}
148 %
```

`\reledmac@error` Write an error message.

```
149 \newcommand{\reledmac@error}[2]{\PackageError{reledmac}{#1}{#2}}
150 %
```

```
\led@err@NumberingStarted51 \newcommand*\led@err@NumberingStarted{%
d@err@NumberingNotStarted52 \reledmac@error{Numbering has already been started}{\@ehc}}
NumberingShouldHaveStarted53 \newcommand*\led@err@NumberingNotStarted{%
154 \reledmac@error{Numbering was not started}{\@ehc}}
155 \newcommand*\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted{%
156 \reledmac@error{Numbering should already have been started}{\@ehc}}
157 %
```

```

\led@err@samewordRTL158 \newcommand*{\led@err@samewordRTL}{%
159   \reledmac@error{You can't use \string\sameword \MessageBreak with XeLaTeX
\MessageBreak when typesetting RTL text.\MessageBreak Please use LuaTeX
instead.}\@ehc}%
160 }%
161 %

```

```

\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart162 \newcommand*{\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart}{%
\led@err@PstartInEdtext163   \reledmac@error{\string\edtext\space outside numbered paragraph (\pstart\
\led@err@PendInEdtext   space ... \space\pend)}{\@ehc}}%
164
165 \newcommand{\led@err@PstartInEdtext}[1]{%
166   \reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space in \string\edtext\space #1 argument
}\@ehc}%
167 }%
168
169 \newcommand{\led@err@PendInEdtext}[1]{%
170   \reledmac@error{\string\pend\space in \string\edtext\space #1 argument}{\
\@ehc}%
171 }%
172 %

```

```

\led@mess@NotesChanged173 \newcommand*{\led@mess@NotesChanged}{%
174   \typeout{reledmac reminder: }%
175   \typeout{ The number of the footnotes in this section
176     has changed since the last run.}%
177   \typeout{ You will need to run LaTeX two more times
178     before the footnote placement}%
179   \typeout{ and line numbering in this section are
180     correct.}}
181 %

```

```

\led@mess@SectionContinued182 \newcommand*{\led@mess@SectionContinued}[1]{%
183   \message{Section #1 (continuing the previous section)}%
184 %

```

```

\led@err@LineationInNumbered185 \newcommand*{\led@err@LineationInNumbered}{%
186   \reledmac@error{You can't use \string\lineation\space within
187     a numbered section}{\@ehc}}
188 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadLineation189 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLineation}{%
\led@warn@BadLinenummargin190   \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lineation\space argument}}
\led@warn@BadLockdisp191 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLinenummargin}{%
\led@warn@BadSubblockdisp

```



```

192 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\linenummargin\space argument}}
193 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadLockdisp}{%
194 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\lockdisp\space argument}}
195 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSublockdisp}{%
196 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sublockdisp\space argument}}
197 %

```

```

\led@warn@NoFile% \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoFile}[1]{%
199 \reledmac@warning{File `#1' not found}}
200 %

```

```

\led@warn@LineFileObsolete% \newcommand*{\led@warn@Obsolete}[1]{%
202 \reledmac@warning{Line-list file #1 was obsolete. We have not read it.
Please run LaTeX again.}}
203 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline% \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline}{%
\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine% \reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a sub-line
206 number less than zero.}}
207 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine}{%
208 \reledmac@warning{\string\advanceline\space produced a line
209 number less than zero.}}
210 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadSetline% \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetline}{%
\led@warn@BadSetlinenum% \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setline\space argument}}
213 \newcommand*{\led@warn@BadSetlinenum}{%
214 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\setlinenum\space argument}}
215 %

```

```

\led@err@PstartNotNumbered% \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartNotNumbered}{%
\led@err@PstartInPstart% \reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space must be used within a
\led@err@PendNotNumbered% numbered section %
\led@err@PendNoPstart% (\string\beginnumbering\space ...\space\string\
\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered endnumbering)}{\@ehc}}%
\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart% \newcommand*{\led@err@PstartInPstart}{%
220 \reledmac@error{\string\pstart\space encountered while another
221 \string\pstart\space was in effect}{\@ehc}}
222 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNotNumbered}{%
223 \reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must be used within a
224 numbered section}{\@ehc}}
225 \newcommand*{\led@err@PendNoPstart}{%
226 \reledmac@error{\string\pend\space must follow a \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}
227 \newcommand*{\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered}{%
228

```

```

229 \reledmac@error{\string\autopar\space must be used within a
230         numbered section}{\@ehc}}
231 \newcommand*\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart{%
232 \reledmac@error{\string\beginnumbering...\string\endnumbering\space
without \string\pstart}{\@ehc}}%
233 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadAction34 \newcommand*\led@warn@BadAction{%
235 \reledmac@warning{Bad action code, value \next@action.}}
236 %

```

```

\led@warn@DuplicateLabel237 \newcommand*\led@warn@DuplicateLabel}[1]{%
\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext238 \reledmac@warning{Duplicate definition of label `#1'\@gobble}%
\led@warn@RefUndefined239 \@latex@warning{no@line{Label `#1' multiply defined}%
\led@warn@RefUndefined240 }%
241 \newcommand*\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext}[1]{%
242 \reledmac@warning{\string\applabel\space outside of the second argument
of an \string\edtext\space `#1' on page \thepage.}}%
243 \newcommand*\led@warn@RefUndefined}[1]{%
244 \G@refundefinedtrue%
245 \reledmac@warning{Reference `#1' on page \thepage\space undefined.%
246         Using `000'.}%
247 \@latex@warning{Reference `#1' undefined\on@line}%
248 }%
249 \newcommand*\led@warn@pairRefUndefined}[1]{%
250 \G@refundefinedtrue%
251 \reledmac@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' on page \thepage\
space undefined.
252         Using `??'.}%
253 \@latex@warning{Reference `#1:start' and/or `#1:end' undefined\on@line}%
254 }
255 %

```

```

\led@warn@NoMarginpars56 \newcommand*\led@warn@NoMarginpars{%
257 \reledmac@warning{You can't use \string\marginpar\space in numbered text
}}
258 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadHookSeries59 \newcommand*\led@warn@BadHookSeries}[2]{%
260 \reledmac@warning{Bad series #1 for #2 hook. Skipped.}%
261 }%
262 %

```

```

\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin63 \newcommand*\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin{%
264 \reledmac@warning{Bad \string\sidenotemmargin\space argument}}
265 %

```

```
\led@warn@NoIndexFile 266 \newcommand*{\led@warn@NoIndexFile}[1]{%
267 \reledmac@warning{Undefined index file #1}}
268 %
```

```
\led@warn@SeriesStillExist 269 \newcommand{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist}[1]{%
270 \reledmac@warning{Series #1 is still existing !}}%
271 }%
272 %
```

```
\led@err@BadAction 273 \newcommand*{\led@err@StanzaIndentNotDefined}{%
274 \reledmac@error{You have not defined the indentation for the line \number
\stanza@count}{\@ehc}}%
275 %
```

```
\led@err@ManySidenotes 276 \newcommand{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{%
\led@err@ManyLeftnotes 277 \ifledRcol{%
\led@err@ManyRightnotes 278 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space sidenotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
279 \else%
280 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space sidenotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
281 \fi%
282 }%
283 \newcommand{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{%
284 \ifledRcol{%
285 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space leftnotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
286 \else%
287 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space leftnotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
288 \fi%
289 }%
290 \newcommand{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{%
291 \ifledRcol{%
292 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space rightnotes on line \the\line@numR\
space p. \the\page@numR}%
293 \else%
294 \reledmac@warning{\itemcount@space rightnotes on line \the\line@num\
space p. \the\page@num}%
295 \fi%
296 }%
297 %
```

```
\led@err@TooManyColumns 298 \newcommand*{\led@err@TooManyColumns}{%
\led@err@UnequalColumns 299 \reledmac@error{Too many columns}{\@ehc}}
\led@err@LowStartColumn
\led@err@HighEndColumn
\led@err@ReverseColumns
```

```

300 \newcommand*\led@err@UnequalColumns}{%
301   \reledmac@error{Number of columns is not equal to the number
302     in the previous row (or \protect\\ \space forgotten?)}{\@ehc}}
303 \newcommand*\led@err@LowStartColumn}{%
304   \reledmac@error{Start column is too low}{\@ehc}}
305 \newcommand*\led@err@HighEndColumn}{%
306   \reledmac@error{End column is too high}{\@ehc}}
307 \newcommand*\led@err@ReverseColumns}{%
308   \reledmac@error{Start column is greater than end column}{\@ehc}}
309 %

```

```

\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering10 \newcommand\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}{%
311   \reledmac@error{\string\toendnotes\space and related commands must be
called inside a numbered texte (\string\beginnumbering\space ... \space\
string\endnumbering)}{\@ehc}%
312 }%
313 %

```

```

\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote14 \newcommand\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote}{%
315   \reledmac@error{edtext without Xfootnote. Check syntaxis}{\@ehc}%
316 }%
317 %

```

```

\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext18 \newcommand\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext}[1]{%
319   \reledmac@error{#1footnote outside of the second argument of an edtext.
Check syntax}{\@ehc}%
320 }%
321 %

```

```

\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac22 \newcommand\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac}[1]{%
323   \reledmac@error{#1 must be loaded before reledmac}{\@ehc}%
324 }%
325 %

```

```

\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol26 \newcommand\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol}{%
327   \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@makecol\space command}{\@ehc}%
328 }%
329 %

```

```

\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts30 \newcommand\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts}{%
331   \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@reinserts\space command}{\@ehc}%
332 }%
333 %

```

```

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@doclearpage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@doclearpage\space command}{\@ehc}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@@iiiminipage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Fail to patch \string\@iiiminipage\space command}{\@ehc}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}{%
  \reledmac@error{Failed to patch the \string\endminipage\space command}{\@ehc}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@error@fail@patch@makeindex}{%
  \reledmac@error{Failed to patch the \string\makeindex\space command}{\@ehc}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@warn@edinde@outsidenumbering}{%
  \reledmac@warning{\string\edindex\space called outside of \string\beginnumbering\space ... \space \string\endnumbering. \MessageBreak Automatically switched to \string\index.}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated}{%
  \reledmac@warning{\string\hsizeX\space command deprecated, use \string\widthX\space instead.}%
}%
%
```

```

\newcommand{\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated}{%
  \reledmac@warning{\string\Xhsize\space command deprecated, use \string\Xwidth\space instead.}%
}%
%
```

```

\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop62 \newcommand{\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop}{%
363   \reledmac@warning{\string\msdata\space without corresponding \string\
stopmsdata}%
364 }%
365 %

```

```

\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated66 \newcommand{\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated}{%
367   \reledmac@warning@preXnotes@deprecated%
368 }%
369 %

```

## II.8 Gobbling

Here, we define some commands which gobble their arguments.

```

\@gobblethree70 \providecommand*\@gobblethree}[3]{%
\@gobblefour71 \providecommand*\@gobblefour}[4]{%
\@gobbleseven72 \providecommand*\@gobbleseven}[7]{%
373 %

```

## II.9 Wrapping content

`\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox`  
`\l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox`

The `\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox` macro wraps its second argument in the command passed as the first argument, but only if the second argument does not produce an empty box. That is useful for example when we need to wrap something on a `\textsuperscript`.

Indeed `a\textsuperscript{b}` does not produce the same typographical result as `ab`.<sup>26</sup> The `\l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox` does the same, but take as argument a control sequence name, so without backslash.

```

374 \newcommand{\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox}[2]{%
375   \setbox0=\hbox{#2}%
376   \ifdim\wd0=\z@ \else%
377     #1{#2}%
378   \fi%
379 }%
380 \newcommand{\l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox}[2]{%
381   \l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\csname #1\endcsname}{#2}%
382 }%
383 %

```

---

<sup>26</sup>Compare the distance between letters in the first case (ab) and in the second one (ab).

## II.10 Miscellaneous commands

`\showlemma` `\showlemma{<lemma>}` typesets the lemma text in the body. It depends on the option.

```

384 \ifl@dfinal
385   \newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{#1}
386 \else
387   \newcommand*{\showlemma}[1]{\underline{#1}}
388 \fi
389
390 %

```

`\linenumberlist` The code for the `\linenumberlist` mechanism was given to Peter Wilson by Wayne Sullivan on 2004/02/11.

Initialize it as `\empty`.

```

391 \let\linenumberlist=\empty
392
393 %

```

`\@l@tempcnta` In imitation of  $\TeX$ , we create a couple of scratch counters.

`\@l@tempcntb`  $\TeX$  already defines `\@tempcnta` and `\@tempcntb` but Peter Wilson found in the past that it can be dangerous to use these (for example one of the AMS packages did something nasty to the `ccaption` package's use of one of these).

```

394 \newcount\@l@tempcnta \newcount\@l@tempcntb
395 %

```

## II.11 Prepare reledpar

`\ifl@dpairing` In preparation for the `reledpar` package, these are related to the ‘right’ text of parallel texts (when `\ifl@dpairing` is TRUE). They are explained in the `reledpar` manual.

```

\ifl@dpairing
\ifl@dpaging
\ifl@dprintingpages
\ifl@dprintingcolumns
\ifpst@rtedL
\l@dnumpstartsL
396 \newif\ifl@dpairing
397 \newif\ifl@dpaging%
398 \newif\ifl@dprintingpages%
399 \newif\ifl@dprintingcolumns%
400 \newif\ifpst@rtedL
401 \newcount\l@dnumpstartsL
402 %

```

`\ifledRcol` `\ifledRcol` is set to true in the Rightside environment. It must be not confused with `\ifledRcol@` which is set to true when a right line is processed, in `\Pages` or `\Columns`.

```

403 \newif\ifledRcol
404 \newif\ifledRcol@
405 %

```

`\ifnumberingR` The `\ifnumberingR` flag is set to true if we're within a right text numbered section.

```
406 \newif\ifnumberingR
407 %
```

`\ifafterendnumberingR` The `\ifafterendnumberingR` boolean is set to TRUE at `\endnumberingR` and to FALSE at next `\beginnumberingR` or real `\beginnumbering` (not `\resumenummering`). It is mainly used for the `continuousnumberingwithcolumns`, to avoid incrementing right column line counters after a `\endnumberingR`.

```
408 \newif\ifafterendnumberingR%
409 %
```

The `\ifXnote@` macro is set to true when we are typesetting a critical footnote.

```
410 \newif\ifXnote@%
411 %
```

## II.12 Booleans provided by other optional packages which are required in any case

`\ifindtl@innote` The `\ifindtl@innote` and `\ifindtl@notenumber` are required even if `indextools` is not used.

```
412 \providebool{indtl@innote}%
413 \providebool{indtl@notenumber}%
414 %
```

`ifinstanzaL` These boolean tests are switched by the `\stanza` command, using either the left or right side.

```
415 \newif\ifinstanzaL%
416 \newif\ifinstanzaR%
417 %
```

`ifinastanzaL` These boolean tests are switched by the `astanza` environment, using either the left or right side.

```
418 \newif\ifinastanzaL%
419 \newif\ifinastanzaR%
420 %
```

## III Sectioning commands

`\section@num` You use `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering` to begin and end a line-numbered section of the text; the pair of commands may be used as many times as you like within one document to start and end multiple, separately line-numbered sections.  $\TeX$  will maintain and display a 'section number' as a count named `\section@num` that counts how many `\beginnumbering` and `\resumenummering` commands have appeared; it need not be related to the logical divisions of your text.



`\extensionchars` Each section will read and write an associated ‘line-list file’, containing information used to do the numbering; the file will be called `\jobname.nn`, where `nn` is the section number. However, you may direct that an extra string be added before the `nn` in that filename, in order to distinguish these temporary files from others: that string is called `\extensionchars`. Initially it’s empty, since different operating systems have greatly varying ideas about what characters are permitted in file names. So `\renewcommand{\extensionchars}{-}` gives temporary files called `jobname.-1`, `jobname.-2`, etc.

```
421 \newcount\section@num
422 \section@num=0
423 \let\extensionchars=\empty
424 %
```

`\ifnumbering` The `\ifnumbering` flag is set to true if we are within a numbered section (that is, between `\beginnumbering` and `\endnumbering`). You can use `\ifnumbering` in your own code to check whether you are in a numbered section, but do not change the flag’s value.

```
425 \newif\ifnumbering
426 %
```

`\beginnumbering` `\initnumbering@reg` `\beginnumbering` begins a section of numbered text. When it is executed we increment the section number, initialize our counters, send a message to your terminal, and call macros to start the lineation machinery and endnote files.

The initializations here are trickier than they look. `\line@list@stuff` will use all of the counters that are zeroed here when it assembles the line-list and other lists of information about the lineation. But it will do all of this locally and within a group, and when it is done the lists will remain but the counters will return to zero. Those same counters will then be used as we process the text of this section, but the assignments will be made globally. These initializations actually apply to both uses, though in all other respects there should be no direct interaction between the use of these counters and variables in the two processing steps. For parallel processing :

- zero `\l@dnumpstartsL` — the number of chunks to be processed.
- set `\ifpst@rtedL` to FALSE.

```
427 \newcommand*{\beginnumbering}{%
428   \ifnumbering
429     \led@err@NumberingStarted
430   \endnumbering
431 \fi
432 \global\numberingtrue
433 \global\afterendnumberingRfalse%
434 \global\advance\section@num \@ne
435 \initnumbering@reg
436 \message{Section \the\section@num }%
```

```

437 \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
438 \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
439   \unless\ifafterendnumberingR%
440     \unless\ifl@dpairing%
441       \ledRcoltrue%
442       \global\advance\section@numR \@ne%
443       \message{Section \the\section@numR R (continuousnumbering)}%
444       \line@list@stuffR{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@numR R}%
445       \ledRcolfalse%
446     \fi%
447   \fi%
448 \fi%
449 \l@dend@stuff
450 \setcounter{pstart}{1}
451 \ifl@dpairing
452   \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@
453   \global\pst@rtedLfalse
454 %

```

The tools for section's title commands are called:

- Define an empty list of pstart number where sectioning commands are called.
- Input auxiliary file with the description of section titles.
- Open the same auxiliary file to write in.

```

455 \else
456   \begingroup
457   \global\@afterindenttrue%In order to reestablish normal feature if the \
458   \initnumbering@quote
459   \ifwidthliketwocolumns%
460     \setwidthliketwocolumns%
461     \csuse{setpositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
462   \fi%
463 \fi
464 \gdef\eled@sections@{ }%
465 \if@noeled@sec\else%
466   \makeatletter%
467   \InputIfFileExists%
468     {\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num}%
469     {}%
470     {\led@warn@NoFile{\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\section@num}}%
471   \makeatother%
472   \immediate\openout\eled@sectioning@out=\l@auxdir\jobname.eledsec\the\
473   section@num\relax%
474   \fi%
475 \fi
476 \newcommand*{\initnumbering@reg}{%
477   \global\pst@rtedLfalse

```

```

477 \global\l@dnumpstartsL \z@
478 \global\absline@num \z@
479 \gdef\normal@page@break{}
480 \gdef\l@prev@pb{}
481 \gdef\l@prev@nopb{}
482 \global\line@num \z@
483 \global\subline@num \z@
484 \global\@lock \z@
485 \global\sub@lock \z@
486 \global\sublines@false
487 \global\let\next@page@num=\relax
488 \global\let\this@section@next@page@num=\relax%
489 \global\let\sub@change=\relax
490 \global\last@page@num=-10000%
491 \ifdefined\line@numR%
492   \line@numR=\z@%
493   \last@page@numR=\z@%
494 \fi%
495 \resetprevline@
496 \resetprevpage@num
497 \global\stopmsdata@inserted@true%
498 \global\let\@msdata@list\relax%
499 \global\csundef{\@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
500 }
501
502 %

```

`\endnumbering` `\endnumbering` must follow the last text for a numbered section. It takes care of notifying you when changes have been noted in the input that require running the file through again to move everything to the right place. We define it using `\def` and not `\newcommand` because  $\TeX$  does not allow defining command whose name starts by “end” except if we are currently creating an environment, which is not the case here.

```

503 \def\endnumbering{%
504   \ifnumbering
505     \global\numberingfalse
506     \normal@pars
507     \ifnum\l@dnumpstartsL=0%
508       \led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart%
509     \fi%
510 %

```

For the `continuousnumberingwithcolumn` options, we need to store a global value for the next `\endnumbering`. We don’t modify this counter globally, because that creates problem for nested `\edtext`.

```

511   \global\page@num=\this@section@page@num%
512   \global\last@page@num=\this@section@last@page@num%
513   \global\let\next@page@num\this@section@next@page@num%
514   \ifl@dpairing

```

```

515 \global\pst@rtedLfalse
516 \else
517 \ifx\insertlines@list\empty\else
518 \global\noteschanged@true
519 \fi
520 \ifx\line@list\empty\else
521 \global\noteschanged@true
522 \fi
523 \fi
524 \ifnoteschanged@
525 \led@mess@NotesChanged
526 \fi
527 \else
528 \led@err@NumberingNotStarted
529 \fi
530 \autoparfalse
531 \if@noeled@sec\else%
532 \immediate\closeout\eled@sectioning@out%
533 \fi%
534 \ifl@dpairing\else
535 \global\l@dnumpststartsl=\z@%
536 \endgroup
537 \fi
538 }
539 %

```

`\pausenumbering` The `\pausenumbering` macro is just the same as `\endnumbering`, but with the `\ifnumbering` flag set to true, to show that numbering continues across the gap.<sup>27</sup> The `\resumenumbering` `\ifresumenumbering@start` `\pausenumbering@page@num` counter stores the `\this@section@next@page@num` when the `\pause@numbering` is called.

```

540 \newcount\pausenumbering@page@num%
541 \newcommand{\pausenumbering}{%
542 \ifx\this@section@next@page@num\relax%
543 \global\pausenumbering@page@num=0%
544 \else%
545 \global\pausenumbering@page@num=\this@section@next@page@num%
546 \fi%
547 \ifautopar\global\autopar@pausetrue\fi%
548 \endnumbering\global\numberingtrue}
549 %

```

The `\resumenumbering` macro is a bit more involved, but not much. It does most of the same things as `\beginnumbering`, but without resetting the various counters. Note that no check is made by `\resumenumbering` to ensure that `\pausenumbering` was actually invoked. The boolean `\ifresumenumbering@start` is set to true. That allows us to avoid resetting the line number at the first line of `\resumenumbering` if the lineation is by page. This boolean is set to false after the first action.

<sup>27</sup>Peter Wilson's thanks to Wayne Sullivan, who suggested the idea behind these macros.

```

550 \newif\ifresumenumbering@start%
551 \newcommand*{\resumenumbering}{%
552   \ifnumbering
553     \ifautopar@pause\autopar\fi
554     \global\pst@rtedLtrue
555     \global\advance\section@num \@ne
556     \global\resumenumbering@starttrue%
557     \led@mess@SectionContinued{\the\section@num}%
558     \set@continuousnumberingforL%
559     \line@list@stuff{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
560     \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
561       \unless\ifafterendnumberingR%
562         \unless\ifl@dpairing%
563           \ledRcoltrue%
564           \global\advance\section@numR \@ne%
565           \message{Section \the\section@numR R (continuousnumbering)}%
566           \line@list@stuffR{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@numR R}%
567           \ledRcolfalse%
568         \fi%
569       \fi%
570     \fi%
571     \l@dend@stuff
572     \ifl@dpairing\else%
573       \begingroup%
574       \initnumbering@quote%
575       \ifwidthliketwocolumns%
576         \setwidthliketwocolumns%
577         \csuse{setpositionliketwocolumns@}\columns@position}%
578       \fi%
579     \fi%
580   \else
581     \led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted
582     \endnumbering
583     \beginnumbering
584   \fi}
585
586
587 %

```

`\set@continuousnumberingforL` \set@continuousnumberingforL sets pstart counters at a \beginnumbering or a \resumenumbering in order to have continuous numbering with single column text.

```

588 \newcommand{\set@continuousnumberingforL}{%
589   \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
590     \ifl@dpairing%
591       \unless\ifl@dpadding%
592         \global\c@pstartL=\c@pstart%
593       \fi%
594     \fi%
595   \fi%

```

```

596 }%
597 %

```

## IV List macros

We will make heavy use of lists of information, which will be built up and taken apart by the following macros; they are adapted from *The TeXbook*, pp. 378–379, which discusses their use in more detail.

These macros consume a large amount of the run-time of this code. We intend to replace them in a future version, and in anticipation of doing so have defined their interface in such a way that it is not sensitive to details of the underlying code.

The historical list tools of `ledmac` are kept, because in many cause there are more useful than `etoolbox`'s lists. They allows to get and delete the first element of a list in one operation. They also expands the items add to the list.

However, `etoolbox`'s lists are more useful to loop on them. Consequently, depending of what we need, we use one or either.

It could be nice to unify them to the `LATEX3` list, however such migration would take quite time with some risk of error, for a gain which will be minor.

`\list@create` The `\list@create` macro creates a new list. This macro does not do anything beyond initializing an empty list macro.

```

598 \newcommand*{\list@create}[1]{%
599   \global\let#1=\empty%
600 }%
601 %

```

`\list@clear` The `\list@clear` macro just initializes a list to the empty list; it is no different from `\list@create` in its effect, but it is in its semantic .

```

602 \newcommand*{\list@clear}[1]{%
603   \global\let#1=\empty%
604 }
605 %

```

`\xright@appenditem` `\xright@appenditem` expands an item and appends it to the right end of a list macro. We want the expansion because we will often be using this to store the current value of a counter. `\xright@appenditem` creates global control sequences, like `\xdef`, and uses two temporary token-list registers, `\@toksa` and `\@toksb`.

```

606 \newtoks\led@toksa \newtoks\led@toksb
607 \global\let@toksa={\}
608 \long\def\xright@appenditem#1\to#2{%
609   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
610   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksb\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}}%
611   \global\led@toksb={}}
612 %

```

`\xleft@appenditem` `\xleft@appenditem` expands an item and appends it to the left end of a list macro; it is otherwise identical to `\xright@appenditem`.

```

613 \long\def\xleft@appenditem#1\to#2{%
614   \global\led@toksb=\expandafter{#2}%
615   \xdef#2{\the\led@toksa\expandafter{#1}\the\led@toksb}%
616   \global\led@toksb={}}
617 %

```

`\gl@p` The `\gl@p` macro removes the leftmost item from a list and places it in a control sequence. You type `\gl@p\l\to\z` (where `\l` is the list macro, and `\z` receives the left item). `\l` is assumed nonempty; use `\ifx\l\empty` to test for an empty `\l`. The control sequences created by `\gl@p` are all global.

```

618 \def\gl@p#1\to#2{\expandafter\gl@poff#1\gl@poff#1#2}
619 \long\def\gl@poff\#1#2\gl@poff#3#4{\gdef#4{#1}\gdef#3{#2}}
620
621 %

```

## V Line counting

### V.1 Choosing the system of lineation

Line number can be reset at each section (default) ; at each page ; at each pstart. Here we define internal codes for these systems and the macros.

`\ifbypstart@` The `\ifbypage@` and `\ifbypstart@` flag specify the current lineation system:

- line-of-page: `bypstart@ = false` and `bypage@ = true`.
- line-of-pstart: `bypstart@ = true` and `bypage@ = false`.

`\bypstart@true`

`\ifbypage@`

`\bypage@true`

`\bypage@false` `reledmac` will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

```

622 \newif\ifbypage@
623 \newif\ifbypstart@
624 %

```

The `\ifbypage@R` and `\ifbypstart@R` flag specify the current lineation for right side in case of using `reledpar`. They are now defined because they are used in some specific code. `reledpar` will use the line-of-section system unless instructed otherwise.

```

\ifbypage@R25 \newif\ifbypage@R
\ifbypstart@R26 \newif\ifbypstart@R
627 %

```

`\lineation` `\lineation{<word>}` is the macro you use to select the lineation system. Its argument is a string: either `page`, `section` or `pstart`.

```

628 \newcommand*{\lineation}[1]{\{
629 %

```

We can't change the lineation system inside numbering section.

```

630 \ifnumbering
631 \led@err@LineationInNumbered
632 \else
633 %

```

If the argument is page.

```

634 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{page}%
635 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
636 \global\bypage@true
637 \global\bypstart@false
638 \unless\ifnocritical@%
639 \Xpstart[] [false]%
640 \fi%
641 %

```

If the argument is pstart.

```

642 \else
643 \def\@tempb{pstart}%
644 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
645 \global\bypage@false
646 \global\bypstart@true
647 \unless\ifnocritical@%
648 \Xpstart%
649 \fi%
650 %

```

And finally, if the argument is section (default).

```

651 \else
652 \def\@tempb{section}
653 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
654 \global\bypage@false
655 \global\bypstart@false
656 \unless\ifnocritical@%
657 \Xpstart[] [false]%
658 \fi%
659 %

```

In other case, it is an error.

```

660 \else
661 \led@warn@BadLineation
662 \fi
663 \fi
664 \fi
665 \fi}}
666 %

```



## V.2 Line number margin

`\linenummargin` `\linenummargin{<word>}` specify which margin line numbers are in; it takes one argument, a string, which value can be left ; right; inner or outer.  
`\line@margin`  
`\l@dgetline@margin` The selection is recorded in the count `\line@margin`: 0 for left, 1 for right, 2 for outer, and 3 for inner.

```

667 \newcount\line@margin%
668 \newcount\line@margin@columns%Only for parallel typesetting
669 \line@margin@columns=\m@ne%
670
671 \newcommand*{\linenummargin}[1]{%
672   \l@dgetline@margin{#1}%
673   \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\m@ne
674     \ifledRcol
675       \global\line@marginR=\@l@tempcntb
676       \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\linenummargin}%
677     \else
678       \global\line@margin=\@l@tempcntb
679     \fi
680   \fi}}
681
682 \newcommand*{\l@dgetline@margin}[1]{%
683   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
684   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
685     \@l@tempcntb \z@
686   \else
687     \def\@tempb{right}%
688     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
689       \@l@tempcntb \@ne
690     \else
691       \def\@tempb{outer}%
692       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
693         \@l@tempcntb \tw@
694       \else
695         \def\@tempb{inner}%
696         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
697           \@l@tempcntb \thr@@
698         \else
699           \led@warn@BadLinenummargin
700           \@l@tempcntb \m@ne
701         \fi
702       \fi
703     \fi
704   \fi}
705
706 %

```

### V.3 Line number initialization and increment

`\c@firstlinenum`    The following counters tell reledmac which lines should be printed with line numbers. `firstlinenum` is the number of the first line in each section that gets a number; `linenumincrement` is the difference between successive numbered lines. The initial values of these counters produce labels on lines 5, 10, 15, etc. `linenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```
707 \newcounter{firstlinenum}
708   \setcounter{firstlinenum}{5}
709 \newcounter{linenumincrement}
710   \setcounter{linenumincrement}{5}
711 %
```

`\c@firstsublinenum`    The following parameters are just like `firstlinenum` and `linenumincrement`, but for sub-line numbers. `sublinenumincrement` must be at least 1.

```
712 \newcounter{firstsublinenum}
713   \setcounter{firstsublinenum}{5}
714 \newcounter{sublinenumincrement}
715   \setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{5}
716
717 %
```

`\firstlinenum`    These macros can be used to set the corresponding counters.

```
\linenumincrement
718
\firstsublinenum
719
\sublinenumincrement
720
721 \newcommand*{\firstlinenum}[1]{%
722   \ifledRcol%
723     \setcounter{firstlinenumR}{#1}%
724     \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\firstlinenum}%
725   \else%
726     \setcounter{firstlinenum}{#1}%
727   \fi%
728 }
729 \newcommand*{\linenumincrement}[1]{%
730   \ifledRcol%
731     \setcounter{linenumincrementR}{#1}%
732     \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\linenumincrement}%
733   \else%
734     \setcounter{linenumincrement}{#1}%
735   \fi%
736 }
737 \newcommand*{\firstsublinenum}[1]{%
738   \ifledRcol%
739     \setcounter{firstsublinenumR}{#1}%
740     \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\firstsublinenum}%
741   \else%
742     \setcounter{firstsublinenum}{#1}%
743   \fi%
744 }
```

```

742 }
743 \newcommand*{\sublinenumincrement}[1]{%
744   \ifledRcol%
745     \setcounter{sublinenumincrementR}{#1}%
746     \led@warn@setting@in@rightside{\sublinenumincrement}%
747   \else%
748     \setcounter{sublinenumincrement}{#1}%
749   \fi%
750 }
751
752 %

```

## V.4 Line number locking

`\lockdisp` When line locking is being used, the `\lockdisp{<word>}` macro specifies whether a line number—if one is due to appear—should be printed on the first printed line or on the last, or by all of them. Its argument is a word, either `first`, `last`, or `all`. Initially, it is set to `first`.

`\lock@disp` encodes the selection: 0 for first, 1 for last, 2 for all.

```

753 \newcount\lock@disp
754 \newcommand{\lockdisp}[1]{%
755   \l@dgetlock@disp{#1}%
756   \ifnum\l@dtempcntb>\m@ne
757     \global\lock@disp=\l@dtempcntb
758   \else
759     \led@warn@BadLockdisp
760   \fi}}
761 \newcommand*{\l@dgetlock@disp}[1]{
762   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{first}%
763   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
764     \l@dtempcntb \z@
765   \else
766     \def\@tempb{last}%
767     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
768       \l@dtempcntb \@ne
769     \else
770       \def\@tempb{all}%
771       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
772         \l@dtempcntb \tw@
773       \else
774         \l@dtempcntb \m@ne
775       \fi
776     \fi
777   \fi}
778
779 %

```

`\sublockdisp` The same questions about where to print the line number apply to sub-lines, and these  
`\sublock@disp` are the analogous macros for dealing with the problem.

```

780 \newcount\sublock@disp
781 \newcommand{\sublockdisp}[1]{%
782   \l@getlock@disp{#1}%
783   \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
784     \global\sublock@disp=\l@dttempcntb
785   \else
786     \led@warn@BadSublockdisp
787   \fi}}
788
789 %

```

## V.5 Line number style

`\linenumberstyle` We provide a mechanism for using different representations of the line numbers, not  
`\linenumrep` just the normal arabic.  
`\linenumr@p` NOTE: In v0.7 `\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep` replaced the internal `\linenumr@p`  
`\sublinenumberstyle` and `\sublinenumr@p`.  
`\sublinenumrep` `\linenumberstyle` and `\sublinenumberstyle` are user level macros for setting  
`\sublinenumr@p` the number representation (`\linenumrep` and `\sublinenumrep`) for line and sub-line  
 numbers.

```

790 \newcommand*{\linenumberstyle}[1]{%
791   \def\linenumrep##1{\@nameuse{#1}{##1}}
792 \newcommand*{\sublinenumberstyle}[1]{%
793   \def\sublinenumrep##1{\@nameuse{#1}{##1}}
794 %

```

Initialise the number styles to arabic.

```

795 \linenumberstyle{arabic}
796 \let\linenumr@p\linenumrep
797 \sublinenumberstyle{arabic}
798 \let\sublinenumr@p\sublinenumrep
799
800 %

```

## V.6 Line number printing

`\leftlinenum` `\leftlinenum` and `\rightlinenum` are the macros that are called to print marginal  
`\rightlinenum` line numbers on a page, for left- and right-hand margins respectively. They are made  
`\linenumsep` easy to access and change, since you may want to change the styling in some way. These  
`\numlabfont` standard versions illustrate the general sort of thing that will be needed; they are based  
`\ledlinenum` on the `\leftheadline` macro in *The TeXbook*, p. 416.

Whatever these macros output gets printed in a box that will be put into the appropriate margin without any space between it and the line of text. You will generally want a kern between a line number and the text, and `\linenumsep` is provided as a

standard way of storing its size. Line numbers are usually printed in a smaller font, and `\numlabfont` is provided as a standard name for that font. When called, these macros will be executed within a group, so font changes and the like will remain local.

`\ledlinenum` typesets the line (and subtitle) number.

The original `\numlabfont` specification is equivalent to the  $\TeX$  `\scriptsize` for a 10pt document.

```

801 \newlength{\linenumsep}
802 \setlength{\linenumsep}{1pc}
803 \newcommand*\numlabfont{\normalfont\scriptsize}
804 \newcommand*\ledlinenum{%
805   \bgroup%
806   \ifluatex%
807     \texdir TLT%
808   \fi%
809   \numlabfont%
810   \ifdefstring{\Xlinenumannotationposition@side}{before}{%
811     \l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\Xwraplinenumannotation@side}{%
812       \csuse{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}%
813     }%
814   }{%
815     \linenumrep{\line@num}%
816     \ifsublines@
817       \ifnum\subline@num>0\relax
818         \unskip%
819         \Xsublinesep@side%
820         \sublinenumrep{\subline@num}%
821       \fi
822     \fi%
823     \ifdefstring{\Xlinenumannotationposition@side}{after}{%
824       \l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\Xwraplinenumannotation@side}{%
825         \csuse{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}%
826       }%
827     }{%
828       \egroup%
829     }%
830
831 \newcommand*\leftlinenum{%
832   \ledlinenum
833   \kern\linenumsep}
834 \newcommand*\rightlinenum{%
835   \kern\linenumsep
836   \ledlinenum}
837
838 %

```

## V.7 Line number counters and lists

Footnote references using line numbers rather than symbols can't be generated in one pass, because we do not know the line numbers till we ship out the pages. It would be possible if footnotes were never keyed to more than one line; but some footnotes gloss passages that may run for several lines, and they must be tied to the first line of the passage glossed. And even one-line passages require two passes if we want line-per-page numbering rather than line-per-section numbering.

So we run  $\text{\LaTeX}$  over the text several times, and each time save information about page and line numbers in a 'line-list file' to be used during the next pass. At the start of each section—whenever `\beginnumbering` is executed—the line-list file for that section is read, and the information from it is encoded into a few list macros.

We need first to define the different line numbers that are involved in these macros, and the associated counters.

`\line@num` The count `\line@num` stores the line number that is used in marginal line numbering and in notes: counting either by section, page or pstart, depending on your choice for this section. This may be qualified by `\subline@num`.

```
839 \newcount\line@num
840 %
```

`\subline@num` The count `\subline@num` stores a sub-line number that qualifies `\line@num`. For example, line 10 might have sub-line numbers 1, 2 and 3, which might be printed as lines 10.1, 10.2, 10.3.

```
841 \newcount\subline@num
842 %
```

`\ifsublines@` We maintain an associated flag, `\ifsublines@`, to tell us whether we're within a sub-line range or not.

`\sublines@true` You may wonder why we do not just use the value of `\subline@num` to determine this—treating anything greater than 0 as an indication that sub-lineation is on. We need a separate flag because sub-lineation can be used together with line-number locking in odd ways: several pieces of a logical line might be interrupted by pieces of sub-lineated text, and those sub-line numbers should not return to zero until the next change in the major line number. This is common in the typesetting of English Renaissance verse drama, in which stage directions are given sub-line numbers: a single line of verse may be interrupted by several stage directions.

`\sublines@false`

```
843 \newif\ifsublines@
844 %
```

`\absline@num` The count `\absline@num` stores the absolute number of lines since the start of the section: that is, the number we have actually printed, no matter what numbers we attached to them. This value is never printed on an output page, though `\line@num` will often be equal to it. It is used internally to keep track of where notes are to appear and where new pages start: using this value rather than `\line@num` is a lot simpler, because it does not depend on the lineation system in use.

```

845 \newcount\absline@num
846 %

```

We will call `\absline@num` numbers “absolute” numbers, and `\line@num` and `\subline@num` numbers “visible” numbers.

## V.8 Line number locking counter

`\@lock` The counts `\@lock` and `\sub@lock` tell us the state of line-number and sub-line-number locking. 0 means we are not within a locked set of lines; 1 means we are at the first line in the set; 2, at some intermediate line; and 3, at the last line.

```

847 \newcount\@lock
848 \newcount\sub@lock
849 %

```

## V.9 Line number associated to lemma

```

\line@list
\insertlines@list
\actionlines@list
\actions@list
\annot@list

```

Now we can define the list of macros which will be created from the line-list file. We will maintain the following lists:

- `\line@list`: the page and line numbers for every lemma marked by `\edtext`. There are seven pieces of information, separated by vertical bars:
  1. the starting page,
  2. line, and
  3. sub-line numbers, followed by the
  4. ending page,
  5. line, and
  6. sub-line numbers, and then the
  7. font specifier for the lemma.

These line numbers are all visible numbers. The font specifier is a set of four codes for font encoding, family, series, and shape, separated by / characters. Thus a lemma that started on page 23, line 35 and went on until page 24, line 3 (with no sub-line numbering), and was typeset in a normal roman font would have a line list entry like this:

```
23|35|0|24|3|0|OT1/cmr/m/n.
```

There is one item in this list for every lemma marked by `\edtext`, even if there are several notes to that lemma, or no notes at all. `\edtext` reads the data in this list, making it available for use in the text of notes.

- `\insertlines@list`: the line numbers of lines that have footnotes or other insertions. These are the absolute numbers where the corresponding lemmas begin. This list contains one entry for every footnote in the section; one lemma may contribute no footnotes or many footnotes. This list is used by `\add@inserts` within `\do@line`, to tell it where to insert notes.

- `\actionlines@list`: a list of absolute line numbers at which we are to perform special actions; these actions are specified by the `\actions@list` list defined below.
- `\actions@list`: action codes corresponding to the line numbers in `\actionlines@list`. These codes tell `reledmac` what action it is supposed to take at each of these lines. One action, the page-start action, is generated behind the scenes by `reledmac` itself; the others, for specifying sub-lineation, line-number locking, and line-number alteration, are generated only by explicit commands in your input file. The page-start and line-number-alteration actions require arguments, to specify the new values for the page or line numbers; instead of storing those arguments in another list, we have chosen the action-code values so that they can encode both the action and the argument in these cases. Action codes greater than  $-1000$  are page-start actions, and the code value is the page number; action codes less than  $-5000$  specify line numbers, and the code value is a transformed version of the line number; action codes between these two values specify other actions which require no argument.

Here is the full list of action codes and their meanings:

Any number greater than  $-1000$  is a page-start action: the line number associated with it is the first line on a page, and the action number is the page number. (The cutoff of  $-1000$  is chosen because negative page-number values are used by some macro packages; we assume that page-number values less than  $-1000$  are not common.) Page-start action codes are added to the list by the `\page@action` macro, which is (indirectly) triggered by the workings of the `\page@start` macro; that macro should always be called in the output routine, just before the page contents are assembled. `Eledmac` calls it in `\pagecontents`.

The action code  $-1001$  specifies the start of sub-lineation: meaning that, starting with the next line, we should be advancing `\subline@num` at each start-of-line command, rather than `\line@num`.

The action code  $-1002$  specifies the end of sub-lineation. At the next start-of-line, we should clear the sub-line counter and start advancing the line number. The action codes for starting and ending sub-lineation are added to the list by the `\sub@action` macro, as called to implement the `\startsub` and `\endsub` macros.

The action code  $-1003$  specifies the start of line number locking. After the number for the current line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1004$  specifies the end of line number locking.

The action code  $-1005$  specifies the start of sub-line number locking. After the number for the current sub-line is computed, it will remain at that value through the next sub-line that has an action code to end locking.

The action code  $-1006$  specifies the end of sub-line number locking.

The four action codes for line and sub-line number locking are added to the list by the `\do@lockon` and `\do@lockoff` macros, as called to implement the



`\startlock` and `\endlock` macros.

An action code of  $-5000$  or less sets the current visible line number (either the line number or the sub-line number, whichever is currently being advanced) to a specific positive value. The value of the code is  $-(5000 + n)$ , where  $n$  is the value (always  $\geq 0$ ) assigned to the current line number. Action codes of this type are added to the list by the `\set@line@action` macro, as called to implement the `\advanceline` and `\setline` macros: this action only occurs when the user has specified some change to the line numbers using those macros. Normally `reledmac` computes the visible line numbers from the absolute line numbers with reference to the other action codes and the settings they invoke; it does not require an entry in the action-code list for every line.

- `\annot@list` stores line number annotations for the start and the end lines of each `\edtext`, as `\line@list` does for line numbers. We don't store that in the same list as line numbers as `\Xprintlines` already have height arguments, and a `TeX` macro can take at most nine arguments.

Here are the commands to create these lists:

```
850 \list@create{\line@list}
851 \list@create{\insertlines@list}
852 \list@create{\actionlines@list}
853 \list@create{\actions@list}
854 \list@create{\annot@list}%
855 %
```

`\page@num` We will need some counts while we read the line-list, for the page number and the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers. Some of these will be used again later on, when we are acting on the data in our list macros.

```
\endpage@num
\endline@num
\endsubline@num
856 \newcount\page@num
857 \newcount\endpage@num
858 \newcount\endline@num
859 \newcount\endsubline@num
860 %
```

`\this@section@page@num` The `\this@section@page@num` stores the page number on which a numbering section ends.

```
861 \newcount\this@section@page@num%
862 %
```

`\ifnoteschanged@`  
`\noteschanged@true`  
`\noteschanged@false`

If the number of the footnotes in a section is different from what it was during the last run, or if this is the very first time you've run `TeX`, on this file, the information from the line-list used to place the notes will be wrong, and some notes will probably be misplaced. When this happens, we prefer to give a single error message for the whole section rather than messages at every point where we notice the problem, because we do not really know where in the section notes were added or removed, and the solution in any case is simply to run `TeX` two more times; there is no fix needed to the document.

The `\ifnoteschanged@` flag is set if such a change in the number of notes is discovered at any point.

```
863 \newif\ifnoteschanged@
864 %
```

`\resetprevline@` Inside the apparatus, at each note, the line number is stored in a macro called `\prevlineX`, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`. This macro must be reset at the same time as the line number. The `\resetprevline@` does this resetting for every series.

```
\resetprevline@ 865 \newcommand*\resetprevline@{%
866     \def\do##1{\global\csundef{prevline##1}}%
867     \dolistloop{\@series}%
868 }
869 %
```

`\resetprevpage@num` Inside the apparatus, at each note, the page number is stored in a macro called `\prevpageX@num`, where X is the letter of the current series. This macro is called when using `\Xparafootsep` or `\parafootsepX`. This macro must be reset at the beginning of each numbered section. The `\resetprevpage@` command resets this macro for every series.

```
\resetprevpage@ 870 \newcommand*\resetprevpage@num{%
871     \def\do##1{%
872         \ifcsdef{prevpage##1@num}{%
873             \global\csname prevpage##1@num\endcsname=\z@%
874             \global\csname prevpage##1@numR\endcsname=\z@%
875             }%
876         {}%
877         \ifcsdef{##1prevpage@num}{%
878             \global\csname ##1prevpage@num\endcsname=\z@%
879             \global\csname ##1prevpage@numR\endcsname=\z@%
880             }%
881             {}%
882         }%
883     \dolistloop{\@series}%
884 }
885 %
```

## V.10 Reading the line-list file

`\read@linelist` `\read@linelist{<file>}` is the control sequence that is called by `\beginnumbering` (via `\line@list@stuff`) to open and process a line-list file; its argument is the name of the file. First, it clear all previous line's list.

```
886 \newread\@inputcheck
887 \newcommand*\read@linelist[1]{%
```

```

888 \ifledRcol%
889   \list@clearing@regR%
890 \else%
891   \list@clearing@reg%
892 \fi%
893 %

```

When using `reledpar`, make sure that the `\maxlinesinpar@list` is empty (otherwise things will be thrown out of kilter if there is any old stuff still hanging in there).

```

894 \list@clear{\maxlinesinpar@list}
895 %

```

Now get the file and interpret it. When the file is there we start a new group and make some special definitions we will need to process it. It is a sequence of  $\TeX$  commands, but they require a few special settings. We make `[` and `]` become grouping characters: they are used that way in the line-list file, because we need to write them out one at a time rather than in balanced pairs, and it is easier to just use something other than real braces. `@` must become a letter, since this is run in the ordinary  $\LaTeX$  context. We ignore carriage returns, since if we are in horizontal mode they can get interpreted as spaces to be printed.

Our line, page, and line-locking counters were already zeroed by `\line@list@stuff` if this is being called from within `\beginnumbering`; sub-lineation will be turned off as well in that case. On the other hand, if this is being called from `\resumenumbers`, those things should still have the values they had when `\pausenumbering` was executed.

If the file is not there, we print an informative message.

Now, after these preliminaries, we start interpreting the file.

```

896 \get@linelistfile{#1}%
897 \@stopmsd%Security if last \endms{} is forgotten
898 \unless\ifledRcol%Get the last line of the last page
899   \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpage@the\page@num}{\the\absline@num}%
900   \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpage@the\page@num}{\the\line@num}%
901   \csnumgdef{@lastsubline@forpage@the\page@num}{\the\subline@num}%
902 \else%
903   \csnumgdef{@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\absline@numR}%
904   \csnumgdef{@lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\line@numR}%
905   \csnumgdef{@lastsubline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\subline@numR}%
906 \fi%
907 \endgroup
908 %

```

When the reading is done, we are all through with the line-list file. All the information we needed from it will now be encoded in our list macros.

Finally, we initialize the `\next@actionline` and `\next@action` macros, which specify where and what the next action to be taken is.

```

909 \ifledRcol
910   \global\page@numR=\m@ne
911   \ifx\actionlines@listR\empty

```

```

912 \gdef\next@actionlineR{1000000}%
913 \else
914 \gl@p\actionlines@listR\to\next@actionlineR
915 \gl@p\actions@listR\to\next@actionR
916 \fi
917 \else
918 \global\page@num=\m@ne
919 \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
920 \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
921 \else
922 \gl@p\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
923 \gl@p\actions@list\to\next@action
924 \fi
925 \fi
926 }
927 %

```

`\list@clearing@reg` Clears the lists for `\read@linelist`

```

928 \newcommand*\list@clearing@reg{%
929 \list@clear{\line@list}%
930 \list@clear{\insertlines@list}%
931 \list@clear{\actionlines@list}%
932 \list@clear{\actions@list}%
933 \list@clear{\linesinpar@listL}%
934 \list@clear{\linesonpage@listL}%
935 }%
936 %

```

`\get@linelistfile` reledmac can take advantage of the  $\TeX$  ‘safe file input’ macros to get the line-list file.

```

937 \newcommand*\get@linelistfile}[1]{%
938 \InputIfFileExists{\l@auxdir#1}{%
939 \global\noteschanged@false
940 \begingroup
941 \catcode`\[=1 \catcode`\]=2
942 \makeatletter \catcode`\~M=9}{%
943 \led@warn@NoFile{\l@auxdir#1}%
944 \global\noteschanged@true
945 \begingroup}%
946 }
947
948 %

```

This version of `\read@linelist` creates list macros containing data for the entire section, so they could get rather large. It would be no more difficult to read the line-list file incrementally rather than all at once: we could read, at the start of each paragraph, only the commands relating to that paragraph. But this would require that we have

two line-lists open at once, one for reading, one for writing, and on systems without version numbers we would have to do some file renaming outside of  $\text{\TeX}$  for that to work. We have retained this slower approach to avoid that sort of hacking about, but have provided the `\pausenumbers` and `\resumenumbers` macros to help you if you run into macro memory limitations (see 5.2.7 p. 21 above).

## V.11 Commands within the line-list file

This section defines the commands that can appear within a line-list file. They all have very short names because we are likely to be writing very large numbers of them out. One macro, `\@nl`, is especially short, since it will be written to the line-list file once for every line of text in a numbered section. (Another of these commands, `\@lab`, will be introduced in a later section, among the cross-referencing commands it is associated with.)

When these commands modify the various page and line counters, they deliberately do not use `\global`. This is because we want them to affect only the counter values within the current group when nested calls of `\@ref` occur. (The code assumes throughout that the value of `\globaldefs` is zero.)

The macros with action in their names contain all the code that modifies the action-code list: again, this is so that they can be turned off easily for nested calls of `\@ref`.

`\line@list@version` The `\line@list@version` check if the line-list file does not refers to the older commands of `reledmac`. In this case, we stop reading the line-list file. Consequently, `\line@list@version` must be the first line of a line-number file.

```

949 \newcommand{\line@list@version}[1]{%
950   \IfStrEq{#1}{\this@line@list@version}%
951   }{%
952     {\ifledRcol%
953       \led@warn@obsolete{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
954     \else%
955       \led@warn@obsolete{\jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}%
956     \fi%
957     \endinput%
958   }%
959 }%
960 %

```

`\@nl` `\@nl` does everything related to the start of a new line of numbered text.

`\@nl@reg` In order to get the `\setlinenum` to work Peter Wilson had to slip in some new code at the start of the macro, to get the timing of the actions correct. The problem was that his original naive implementation of `\setlinenum` had a unfortunate tendency to change the number of the last line of the *preceding* paragraph. The new code is sort of based on the page number handling and `\setline`. It seems that a lot of fiddling with the line number internals is required.

In November 2004 in order to accurately determine page numbers Peter Wilson added these to the macro. It is now:

`\@nl{<page counter number>}{<printed page number>}`

We do not (yet) use the printed number (i.e., the `\thepage`) but it may come in handy later. The macro `\@page` checks if a new page has started.

Exactly what `\@nl` does depends on whether right text is being processed. That's why many code is defined in `\@nl@reg` or `\nl@regR`.

```

961
962 \newcommand*{\@nl}[2]{%
963   \@page{#1}%
964   \ifledRcol%
965     \@nl@regR%
966   \else%
967     \@nl@reg%
968   \fi%
969 }
970 \newcommand*{\@nl@reg}{%
971   \ifx\l@dchset@num\relax \else
972     \advance\absline@num \@ne
973     \csgdef{l@dchset@num@the\absline@num}{}%To remember this line have
    been marked by a \setlinenum
974     \set@line@action
975     \let\l@dchset@num=\relax
976     \advance\absline@num \m@ne
977     \advance\line@num \m@ne
978   \fi
979 %

```

First increment the absolute line-number, and perform deferred actions relating to page starts and sub-lines.

```

980 \reset@current@annot%
981 \advance\absline@num \@ne
982   \ifx\next@page@num\relax \else
983     \page@action
984     \let\next@page@num=\relax
985   \fi
986   \ifx\sub@change\relax \else
987     \ifnum\sub@change>\z@
988       \sublines@true
989     \else
990       \sublines@false
991     \fi
992     \sub@action
993     \let\sub@change=\relax
994   \fi
995 %

```

Fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

996   \ifcase\@lock
997     \or

```

```

998         \@lock \tw@
999         \or \or
1000         \@lock \z@
1001     \fi
1002     \ifcase\sub@lock
1003         \or
1004         \sub@lock \tw@
1005         \or \or
1006         \sub@lock \z@
1007     \fi
1008 %

```

Now advance the visible line number, unless it has been locked.

```

1009     \ifsublines@
1010         \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
1011             \advance\subline@num \@ne
1012         \fi
1013     \else
1014         \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
1015             \advance\line@num \@ne \subline@num \z@
1016         \fi
1017     \fi}
1018 %
1019 %

```

`\last@page@num`    \@page determines whether or not a new page has been started, based on the page values held by `\@nl`.

```

\this@section@last@page@num
\@page
1020 \newcount\last@page@num
1021 \last@page@num=-10000
1022
1023 \newcount\this@section@last@page@num%
1024 \this@section@last@page@num=-10000%
1025
1026 \newcommand*{\@page}[1]{%
1027     \ifledRcol
1028         \ifnum #1=\last@page@numR
1029         \else
1030             \csnumgdef{\lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\absline@numR}%
1031             \csnumgdef{\lastline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\line@numR}%
1032             \csnumgdef{\lastsubline@forpageR@the\page@numR}{\the\subline@numR}%
1033             \ifbypage@R
1034                 \ifx\l@dchset@num\relax%Not resetting if preceded by a \setlinenum
1035                     \ifboolexpr{%
1036                         bool{resumenumberingR@start}%
1037                         and test {\ifnumequal{\last@page@numR}{-10000}}%
1038                     }%
1039                     {}%
1040                     {%
1041                         \line@numR \z@%

```

```

1042         \subline@numR \z@%
1043         \global\csdef{reset@lineR\the\numexpr\absline@numR+1\relax @\
the\section@numR}{}%
1044     }%
1045     \fi%
1046     \fi
1047     \page@numR=#1%
1048     \this@section@page@numR=#1%
1049     \last@page@numR=#1%
1050     \this@section@last@page@numR=#1%
1051     \def\next@page@numR{#1}%
1052     \gdef\this@section@next@page@numR{#1}%
1053     \fi
1054     \else
1055     \ifnum #1=\last@page@num
1056     \else
1057         \csnumgdef{lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\absline@num}%
1058         \csnumgdef{lastline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\line@num}%
1059         \csnumgdef{lastsubline@forpage@\the\page@num}{\the\subline@num}%
1060         \ifbypage@
1061             \ifx\l@dchset@num\relax%Not resetting if preceded by a \setlinenum
1062                 \line@num \z@%
1063                 \subline@num \z@%
1064                 \global\csdef{reset@line\the\numexpr\absline@num+1\relax @\the\
section@num}{}%
1065             \fi%
1066             \fi
1067             \page@num=#1%
1068             \global\this@section@page@num=#1%
1069             \last@page@num=#1%
1070             \global\this@section@last@page@num=#1%
1071             \def\next@page@num{#1}%
1072 %

```

And we set a flag that tells \@n1 that a new page number is to be set, because other associated actions shouldn't occur until the next line-start occurs.

```

1073         \gdef\this@section@next@page@num{#1}%
1074         \listxadd{\normal@page@break}{\the\absline@num}
1075     \fi
1076 \fi}
1077 %

```

\@pend These do not do anything at this point, but will have been added to the auxiliary file(s) if the reledpar package has been used. They are just here to stop reledmac from moaning if the reledpar is used for one run and then not for the following one.

```

\@lopL
\@lopR
1078 \newcommand*{\@pend}[1]{}
1079 \newcommand*{\@pendR}[1]{}
1080 \newcommand*{\@lopL}[1]{}
1081 \newcommand*{\@lopR}[1]{}

```



```
1082
1083 %
```

**\sub@on** The `\sub@on` and `\sub@off` macros turn sub-lineation on and off: but not directly, since such changes do not really take effect until the next line of text. Instead they set a flag that notifies `\@nl` of the necessary action.

**\sub@off**

```
1084 \newcommand*\sub@on{\ifsublines@
1085   \let\sub@change=\relax
1086   \else
1087   \def\sub@change{1}%
1088   \fi}
1089 \newcommand*\sub@off{\ifsublines@
1090   \def\sub@change{-1}%
1091   \else
1092   \let\sub@change=\relax
1093   \fi}
1094
1095 %
```

**\@adv** The `\@adv{<num>}` macro advances the current visible line number by the amount specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\advanceline`.

```
1096
1097 \newcommand*\@adv{[1]{%
1098   \ifsublines@
1099   \ifledRcol
1100     \advance\subline@numR by #1\relax
1101     \ifnum\subline@numR<\z@
1102       \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
1103       \subline@numR \z@
1104     \fi
1105   \else
1106     \advance\subline@num by #1\relax
1107     \ifnum\subline@num<\z@
1108       \led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline
1109       \subline@num \z@
1110     \fi
1111   \fi
1112 \else
1113   \ifledRcol
1114     \advance\line@numR by #1\relax
1115     \ifnum\line@numR<\z@
1116       \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
1117       \line@numR \z@
1118     \fi
1119   \else
1120     \advance\line@num by #1\relax
1121     \ifnum\line@num<\z@
1122       \led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine
```

```

1123     \line@num \z@
1124     \fi
1125   \fi
1126 \fi
1127 \set@line@action}
1128
1129 %

```

**\@set** The `\@set{<num>}` macro sets the current visible line number to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setline`.

```

1130
1131 \newcommand*{\@set}[1]{%
1132   \ifledRcol
1133     \ifsublines@
1134       \subline@numR=#1\relax
1135     \else
1136       \line@numR=#1\relax
1137     \fi
1138     \set@line@action
1139   \else
1140     \ifsublines@
1141       \subline@num=#1\relax
1142     \else
1143       \line@num=#1\relax
1144     \fi
1145     \set@line@action
1146   \fi}
1147
1148 %

```

**\l@d@set** The `\l@d@set{<num>}` macro sets the line number for the next `\pstart` to the value specified as its argument. This is used to implement `\setlinenum`.

**\l@dchset@num** `\l@dchset@num` is a flag to the `\@nl?` macro. If it is not `\relax` then a linenum change is to be done.

```

1149
1150 \newcommand*{\l@d@set}[1]{%
1151   \ifledRcol
1152     \line@numR=#1\relax
1153     \advance\line@numR \@ne
1154     \def\l@dchset@num{#1}
1155   \else
1156     \line@num=#1\relax
1157     \advance\line@num \@ne
1158     \def\l@dchset@num{#1}
1159   \fi}
1160 \let\l@dchset@num\relax
1161
1162 %

```

**\page@action** \page@action adds an entry to the action-code list to change the page number.

```

1163
1164 \newcommand*{\page@action}{%
1165   \ifledRcol
1166     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1167     \xright@appenditem{\next@page@numR}\to\actions@listR
1168   \else
1169     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1170     \xright@appenditem{\next@page@num}\to\actions@list
1171   \fi}
1172 %

```

**\set@line@action** \set@line@action adds an entry to the action-code list to change the visible line number.

```

1173
1174 \newcommand*{\set@line@action}{%
1175   \ifledRcol
1176     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1177     \ifsublines@
1178       \l@ldtempcnta=-\subline@numR
1179     \else
1180       \l@ldtempcnta=-\line@numR
1181     \fi
1182     \advance\l@ldtempcnta by -5000\relax
1183     \xright@appenditem{\the\l@ldtempcnta}\to\actions@listR
1184   \else
1185     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1186     \ifsublines@
1187       \l@ldtempcnta=-\subline@num
1188     \else
1189       \l@ldtempcnta=-\line@num
1190     \fi
1191     \advance\l@ldtempcnta by -5000\relax
1192     \xright@appenditem{\the\l@ldtempcnta}\to\actions@list
1193   \fi}
1194 %

```

**\sub@action** \sub@action adds an entry to the action-code list to turn sub-lineation on or off, according to the current value of the \ifsublines@ flag.

```

1195
1196 \newcommand*{\sub@action}{%
1197   \ifledRcol
1198     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1199     \ifsublines@
1200       \xright@appenditem{-1001}\to\actions@listR
1201     \else
1202       \xright@appenditem{-1002}\to\actions@listR

```

```

1203 \fi
1204 \else
1205 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1206 \ifsublines@
1207 \xright@appenditem{-1001}\to\actions@list
1208 \else
1209 \xright@appenditem{-1002}\to\actions@list
1210 \fi
1211 \fi}
1212 %

```

`\lock@on` `\lock@on` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking on. The current setting of the sub-lineation flag tells us whether this applies to line numbers or sub-line numbers.

Adding commands to the action list is slow, and it is very often the case that a lock-on command is immediately followed by a lock-off command in the line-list file, and therefore really does nothing. We use a look-ahead scheme here to detect such pairs, and add nothing to the line-list in those cases.

```

1213 \newcommand*{\lock@on}{\futurelet\next\do@lockon}
1214
1215 \newcommand*{\do@lockon}{%
1216 \ifx\next\lock@off
1217 \global\let\lock@off=\skip@lockoff
1218 \else
1219 \ifledRcol
1220 \do@lockonR
1221 \else
1222 \do@lockonL
1223 \fi
1224 \fi}
1225
1226
1227 \newcommand*{\do@lockonL}{%
1228 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1229 \ifsublines@
1230 \xright@appenditem{-1005}\to\actions@list
1231 \ifnum\sub@lock=\z@
1232 \sub@lock \@ne
1233 \else
1234 \ifnum\sub@lock=\thr@@
1235 \sub@lock \@ne
1236 \fi
1237 \fi
1238 \else
1239 \xright@appenditem{-1003}\to\actions@list
1240 \ifnum\@lock=\z@
1241 \@lock \@ne
1242 \else

```

```

1243 \ifnum\@lock=\thr@@
1244 \@lock \@ne
1245 \fi
1246 \fi
1247 \fi}
1248
1249 %

```

`\lock@off` `\lock@off` adds an entry to the action-code list to turn line number locking off.

```

\do@lockoff
\do@lockoffL
\skip@lockoff
1250 \newcommand*{\do@lockoffL}{%
1251 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list
1252 \ifsublines@
1253 \xright@appenditem{-1006}\to\actions@list
1254 \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
1255 \sub@lock \thr@@
1256 \else
1257 \sub@lock \z@
1258 \fi
1259 \else
1260 \xright@appenditem{-1004}\to\actions@list
1261 \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
1262 \@lock \thr@@
1263 \else
1264 \@lock \z@
1265 \fi
1266 \fi}
1267
1268 \newcommand*{\do@lockoff}{%
1269 \reset@current@annot%
1270 \ifledRcol
1271 \do@lockoffR
1272 \else
1273 \do@lockoffL
1274 \fi}
1275 \newcommand*{\skip@lockoff}{\global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff}
1276 \global\let\lock@off=\do@lockoff
1277
1278 %

```

`\n@num` These macros implement the `\skipnumbering` command. They use action code 1007.

```

1279 \newcommand*{\n@num}{%
1280 \ifledRcol%
1281 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR
1282 \xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@listR
1283 \else%
1284 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%
1285 \xright@appenditem{-1007}\to\actions@list%

```

`\n@num@stanza` This macro implements the `\skipnumbering` for `stanza` command. It uses action code 1008.

`\ifl@dhidenumber`    `\hidenumbering` hides number in margin. It uses action code 1009. `\hidenumberingonleftpage`  
`\hidenumbering`    and `\hidenumberingonrightpage` are variant, using action code only conditionnaly

```

\hidenumberingonleftpage
\hidenumberingonrightpage
1301 \newif\ifl@dhidenumber
1302 \newcommand*{\hidenumbering}{%
1303   \ifledRcol%
1304     \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num}%
1305   \else%
1306     \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num}%
1307   \fi%
1308 }%
1309 \newcommand*{\hide@num}{%
1310   \ifledRcol%
1311     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1312     \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1313   \else%
1314     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%
1315     \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1316   \fi%
1317 }
1318 \newcommand*{\hidenumberingonleftpage}{%
1319   \ifledRcol%
1320     \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num@left}%
1321   \else%
1322     \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num@left}%
1323   \fi%
1324 }%
1325 \newcommand*{\hide@num@left}{%
1326   \ifledRcol%

```

```

1327 \ifodd\page@numR\else%
1328 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1329 \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1330 \fi%
1331 \else%
1332 \ifodd\page@num\else%
1333 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%%
1334 \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1335 \fi%
1336 \fi%
1337 }%
1338
1339 \newcommand*{\hidenumberingonrightpage}{%
1340 \ifledRcol%
1341 \write\linenum@outR{\string\hide@num@right}%
1342 \else%
1343 \write\linenum@out{\string\hide@num@right}%
1344 \fi%
1345 }%
1346
1347 \newcommand*{\hide@num@right}{%
1348 \ifledRcol%
1349 \ifodd\page@numR%
1350 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
1351 \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@listR%
1352 \fi%
1353 \else%
1354 \ifodd\page@num%
1355 \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%%
1356 \xright@appenditem{-1009}\to\actions@list%
1357 \fi%
1358 \fi%
1359 }%
1360
1361 %

```

**\@ref** \@ref marks the start of a passage, for creation of a footnote reference. It takes two arguments:

- #1, the number of entries to add to \insertlines@list for this reference. This value, here and within \edtext, which computes it and writes it to the line-list file, will be stored in the count \insert@count.

```

1362 \newcount\insert@count
1363 %

```

- #2, a sequence of other line-list-file commands, executed to determine the ending line-number. (This may also include other \@ref commands, corresponding to uses of \edtext within the first argument of another instance of \edtext.)

`\dummy@ref` When nesting of `\@ref` commands does occur, it is necessary to temporarily redefine `\@ref` within `\@ref`, so that we are only doing one of these at a time.

```
1364 \newcommand*\@dummy@ref}[2]{#2}
1365 %
```

`\@ref@reg` The first thing `\@ref` (i.e. `\@ref@reg`) itself does is to add the specified number of items to the `\insertlines@list` list.

```
1366 \newcommand*\@ref}[2]{%
1367   \ifledRcol%
1368     \@ref@regR{#1}{#2}%
1369   \else%
1370     \@ref@reg{#1}{#2}%
1371   \fi%
1372 }%
1373 \newcommand*\@ref@reg}[2]{%
1374   \global\insert@count=#1\relax
1375   \global\advance\@edtext@level by 1%
1376   \loop\ifnum\insert@count>\z@
1377     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\insertlines@list
1378     \global\advance\insert@count \m@ne
1379   \repeat
1380 %
```

Next, process the second argument to determine the page and line numbers for the end of this lemma. We temporarily equate `\@ref` to a different macro that just executes its argument, so that nested `\@ref` commands are just skipped this time. Some other macros need to be temporarily redefined to suppress their action.

```
1381 \begingroup
1382   \let\@ref=\dummy@ref
1383   \let\@lopL@\gobble
1384   \let\page@action=\relax
1385   \let\sub@action=\relax
1386   \let\set@line@action=\relax
1387   \let\@lab=\relax
1388   \let\@lemma=\relax%
1389   \let\@sw@\gobblethree%
1390   \let\store@annot@to@absline@\gobble%
1391   #2
1392   \global\endpage@num=\page@num
1393   \global\endline@num=\line@num
1394   \global\endsubline@num=\subline@num
1395   \global\let\endcurrent@annot=\current@annot%
1396 \endgroup
1397 %
```

Now store all the information about the location of the lemma's start and end in `\line@list`.



```

1398 \xright@appenditem%
1399   {\the\page@num|\the\line@num|%
1400    \ifsublines@ \the\subline@num \else 0\fi}%
1401    \the\endpage@num|\the\endline@num|%
1402    \ifsublines@ \the\endsubline@num \else 0\fi}\to\line@list
1403 \xright@appenditem%
1404   {\current@annot|\endcurrent@annot}\to\annot@list%
1405 %

```

And now, call `\@ref@reg@parsearg`, which can be also called by `\@ref@later`

```

1406   \@ref@reg@parse{#2}%
1407 %

```

Decrease edtext level counter.

```

1408   \global\advance\@edtext@level by -1%
1409 }
1410 %

```

**`\@ref@reg@parse`** The `\@ref@reg@parsearg` command parses the second argument of a `\@ref` or the unique argument of `\@ref@later` written in the auxiliary fill.

First, create a list which stores every second argument of each `\@sw` in this lemma, at this level. Also set the boolean about the use of lemma in this edtext level to false.

```

1411 \newcommand{\@ref@reg@parse}[1]{%
1412   \expandafter\list@create\expandafter{\csname sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\
1413   \@edtext@level\endcsname}%
1414   \providebool{lemmacommand@\the\@edtext@level}%
1415   \boolfalse{lemmacommand@\the\@edtext@level}%
1416 %

```

Execute the second argument of `\@ref` again, to perform for real all the commands within it.

```

1416   #1%
1417 %

```

Now, we store the list of `\@sw` of this current `\edtext` as an element of the global list of list of `\@sw` for a `\edtext` depth.

```

1418   \ifnum\@edtext@level>0%
1419     \def\create@this@edtext@level{\expandafter\list@create\expandafter{\
1420     \csname sw@list@edtext@\the\@edtext@level\endcsname}}%
1421     \ifcsundef{sw@list@edtext@\the\@edtext@level}{\create@this@edtext@level}%
1422     \letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@\the\@edtext@level}%
1423     \letcs{\@tmpp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@edtext@level}%
1424     \xright@appenditem{\expandonce\@tmpp}\to\@tmp%
1425     \global\cslet{sw@list@edtext@\the\@edtext@level}{\@tmp}%
1426   \fi%

```

```

1427 }
1428
1429 %

```

**\ref@reg@later** This macro is stored in the auxiliary file when using `\edtextlater`. It is used only to get the correct value for the `\sameword` tools.

```

1430 \newcommand{\@ref@later}[1]{%
1431   \global\advance\@edtext@level by \@ne%
1432   \ifledRcol%
1433     \@ref@reg@parseR{#1}%
1434   \else%
1435     \@ref@reg@parse{#1}%
1436   \fi%
1437   \global\advance\@edtext@level by -\@ne%
1438 }%
1439 %

```

## V.12 Writing to the line-list file

We have now defined all the counters, lists, and commands involved in reading the line-list file at the start of a section. Now we will cover the commands that `reledmac` uses within the text of a section to write commands out to the line-list.

**\linenum@out** The file will be opened on output stream `\linenum@out`.

```

1440 \newwrite\linenum@out
1441 %

```

**\iffirst@linenum@out** Once any file is opened on this stream, we keep it open forever, or else switch to another file that we keep open. The reason is that we want the output routine to write the page number for every page to this file; otherwise we would have to write it at the start of every line. But it is not very easy for the output routine to tell whether an output stream is open or not. There is no way to test the status of a particular output stream directly, and the asynchronous nature of output routines makes the status hard to determine by other means.

We can manage pretty well by means of the `\iffirst@linenum@out` flag; its inelegant name suggests the nature of the problem that made its creation necessary. It is set to be `true` before any `\linenum@out` file is opened. When such a file is opened for the first time, it is done using `\immediate`, so that it will at once be safe for the output routine to write to it; we then set this flag to `false`.

```

1442 \newif\iffirst@linenum@out
1443 \iffirst@linenum@out@true
1444 %

```

**\this@line@list@version** The commands allowed in the line-list file and their arguments can change between two versions of `reledmac`. The `\this@line@list@version` command is upgraded when it

happens. It is written in the file list. If we process a line-list file which used a older version, that means the commands used inside are deprecated, and we can't use them.

```
1445 \newcommand{\this@line@list@version}{7}%
1446 %
```

`\line@list@stuff` The `\line@list@stuff{<file>}` macro, which is called by `\beginnumbering`, performs all the line-list operations needed at the start of a section. Its argument is the name of the line-list file.

`\next@line@list@stuff`

```
1447 \let\next@line@list@stuff\relax%
1448 \newcommand*{\line@list@stuff}[1]{%
1449 %
```

First, define a toggle set to true when we are not in the first run.

```
1450 \global\newtoggle{notfirstrun@#1}%
1451 \IfFileExists{\l@auxdir#1}%
1452 {\global\toggletrue{notfirstrun@#1}}%
1453 {\global\togglefalse{notfirstrun@#1}}%
1454 %
```

A internal hook (not used yet).

```
1455 \next@line@list@stuff%
1456 \global\let\next@line@list@stuff\relax%
1457 %
```

Use the commands of the previous section to interpret the line-list file from the last run.

```
1458 \read@linelist{#1}%
1459 %
```

Now close the current output line-list file, if any, and open a new one. The first time we open a line-list file for output, we do it using `\immediate`, and clear the `\iffirst@linenum@out@` flag. `reledmac` and `reledpar` can fill the `\next@line@list@stuff` hook between a `\endnumbering` (associated with numbered file  $n$ ) and a `\beginnumbering` (associated with numbered file  $n + 1$ ). It allows adding content to the numbered file  $n + 1$  and not  $n$ .

```
1460 \iffirst@linenum@out@
1461 \global\first@linenum@out@false%
1462 \immediate\openout\linenum@out=\l@auxdir#1\relax%
1463 \immediate\write\linenum@out{\string\line@list@version{\this@line@list@version}}%
1464 \ifl@dpaging%
1465 \immediate\write\linenum@out{\string\@par@sync@option{\@par@this@sync@option}}%
1466 \fi%
1467 \else
1468 %
```

If we get here, then this is not the first line-list we have seen, so we do not open or close the files immediately.

```

1469 \if@minipage%
1470 \leavevmode%
1471 \fi%
1472 \closeout\linenum@out%
1473 \openout\linenum@out=\l@auxdir#1\relax%
1474 \write\linenum@out{\string\line@list@version{\this@line@list@version}}
1475 %
1476 \ifl@dpaging%
1477 \write\linenum@out{\string\par@sync@option{\par@this@sync@option}}
1478 %
1479 \fi%
1480 \fi%
1481 %

```

`\new@line` The `\new@line` macro sends the `\@nl` command to the line-list file, to mark the start of a new text line, and its page number. It writes the two forms of the page number:

- Raw form (`\the\c@page`, which can be used for numeric tests).
- Formatted form (for example, in Roman).

Actually, only the first form is used by `\@nl`. If we use the `\sameparallelpagnumber` option of `reledpar`, we must write not the real page number (i.e. page counter, defined in standard  $\TeX$ ) but the printed page number (i.e. `par@page` counter, defined only on `reledmac`).

- For the raw form, we use `\the\c@page@page` macro, because the `{par@page}` counter is increased for each page.
- For the formatted version, `\thepage` is patched through `\par@patch@thepage`. So we have nothing to change.

```

1482 \newcommand*{\new@line}{%
1483 \set@this@c@page%
1484 \ifnumberline%
1485 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}%
1486 {\xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}%
1487 {\xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}%
1488 {\numgdef{\@next@page}{\c@par@page+\@ne}%
1489 \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\@next@page][\@next@page]}}%
1490 }%
1491 {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\@this@c@page][\thepage]}}%
1492 }%
1493 {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\@this@c@page][\thepage]}}}%
1494 {}%
1495 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}%
1496 {\numgdef{\next@absline}{\the\absline@num+\@ne}%
1497 \xifinlist{\next@absline}{\l@prev@nopb}%

```

```

1498     {\xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}%
1499       {\numgdef{\nc@page}{\c@par@page+\@ne}%
1500         \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\nc@page][\nc@page]}}%
1501       }%
1502       {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\@this@cc@page][\thepage]}}%
1503     }%
1504     {\write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\@this@cc@page][\thepage]}}%
1505   }%
1506   {}%
1507   \IfStrEqCase{\led@pb@setting}%
1508   {%
1509     {before}{\relax}%
1510     {after}{\relax}%
1511   }[%
1512     \write\linenum@out{\string\@nl[\the\@this@cc@page][\thepage]}}%
1513   ]%
1514   \fi%
1515 }
1516
1517 \newcount\@this@cc@page%%
1518 \newcommand{\set@this@cc@page}{%
1519   \ifboolexpr{%
1520     bool{sameparallelpagenumber}%
1521     or bool{prevpgnotnumbered}%
1522   }%
1523   {\global\@this@cc@page=\c@par@page}%
1524   {\global\@this@cc@page=\c@page}%
1525 }%
1526 %

```

**\if@noneed@Footnote** \if@noneed@Footnote is a boolean to check if we have to print a error message when a \edtext is called without any critical notes.

**\flag@start** We enclose a lemma marked by \edtext in \flag@start and \flag@end: these send  
**\flag@end** the \@ref command to the line-list file. \edtext is responsible for setting the value of \insert@count appropriately; it actually gets done by the various footnote macros.

```

1527 \newif\if@noneed@Footnote%
1528
1529 \newcommand*{\flag@start}{%
1530   \ifledRcol%
1531     \edef\next{\write\linenum@outR{%
1532       \string\@ref[\the\insert@countR] []}}%
1533     \next%
1534     \ifnum\insert@countR<1%
1535       \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
1536         \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
1537       \fi%
1538     \fi%
1539   \else%

```

```

1540 \edef\next{\write\linenum@out{%
1541         \string\@ref[\the\insert@count] []}%
1542 \next%
1543 \ifnum\insert@count<1%
1544     \if@noneed@Footnote\else%
1545         \led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote%
1546     \fi%
1547 \fi%
1548 \fi}%
1549
1550 \newcommand*\flag@end{%
1551     \ifledRcol%
1552         \write\linenum@outR[]}%
1553 \else%
1554     \write\linenum@out[]}%
1555 \fi}%
1556
1557
1558 %

```

`\flag@start@RTL` With  $\text{\LaTeX}$ , there is a problem when using RTL: the writing of a command in the numbered auxiliary files (.1, .2 etc) is reversed when the first argument of `\edtext` is typeset in one line, but it is **not** reversed when this first argument is typeset in two lines or more.<sup>28</sup>

To solve this problem, we use a crossref mechanism. At the first run, we put a label, but we do not write any `\@ref` command. When the value of the label can be tested, that is after three runs, we're doing:

- If the first argument of `\edtext` is typeset on only one line, we first call `\flag@end`, at the point we normally call `\flag@start`, at the beginning of the content of the first argument, and we call `\flag@end` at the point we normally call `\flag@start`, at the end of the content of the first argument.
- If the first argument of `\edtext` is typeset on only two lines, we use the normal order.

This system is a workaround for the problem of order when writing in auxiliary files.

The `\flag@start@RTL` and `\flag@end@RTL` macro put the label, do the test and call the right commands.

```

1559 \newcommand{\flag@start@RTL}{%
1560     \edlabel{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}%
1561     \IfStrEq{\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1562         {000}%

```

<sup>28</sup>This problem is caused by the way  $\text{\LaTeX}$  manages right-to-left typesetting. David Carlisle explains it on <http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/333373/7712> and provides a potential solution, using `\vadjust`. However in some cases this adds spurious vertical spaces in `reledmac`. That is why we are using the solution explained below.

```

1563 {}%
1564 {%
1565 \ifnumequal%
1566   {\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1567   {\xabslineref{edtext:end:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1568   {\flag@end}%
1569   {\flag@start}%
1570 }%
1571 }%
1572
1573 \newcommand{\flag@endRTL}{%
1574   \edlabel{edtext:end:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}%
1575   \IfStrEq{\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1576   {000}%
1577   {}%
1578   {%
1579     \ifnumequal%
1580       {\xabslineref{edtext:start:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1581       {\xabslineref{edtext:end:\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}}}%
1582       {\flag@start}%
1583       {\flag@end}%
1584     }%
1585   }%
1586   %

```

**\flag@start@later**    \flag@start@later and \flag@end@later: these send the \@ref@later to the line-list file command to the line-list file

**\flag@end@later**

```

1587 \newcommand*{\flag@start@later}{%
1588   \ifledRcol%
1589     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@ref@later []}%
1590   \else%
1591     \write\linenum@out{\string\@ref@later []}%
1592   \fi%
1593 }%
1594 \newcommand{\flag@end@later}{%
1595   \ifledRcol%
1596     \write\linenum@outR{[]}%
1597   \else%
1598     \write\linenum@out{[]}%
1599   \fi%
1600 }
1601 %

```

**\startsub**    \startsub and \endsub turn sub-lineation on and off, by writing appropriate instructions to the line-list file. When sub-lineation is in effect, the line number counter is frozen and the sub-line counter advances instead. If one of these commands appears in the middle of a line, it does not take effect until the next line; in other words, a line is

**\endsub**

counted as a line or sub-line depending on what it started out as, even if that changes in the middle.

We tinker with `\lastskip` because a command of either sort really needs to be attached to the last word preceding the change, not the first word that follows the change. This is because sub-lineation will often turn on and off in mid-line—stage directions, for example, often are mixed with dialogue in that way—and when a line is mixed we want to label it using the system that was in effect at its start. But when sub-lineation begins at the very start of a line we have a problem, if we don't put in this code.

```

1602
1603
1604 \newcommand*{\startsub}{\dimen0\lastskip
1605   \ifdim\dimen0>Opt \unskip \fi
1606   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@on}%
1607   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@on}%
1608   \fi
1609   \ifdim\dimen0>Opt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
1610 \def\endsub{\dimen0\lastskip
1611   \ifdim\dimen0>Opt \unskip \fi
1612   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\sub@off}%
1613   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\sub@off}%
1614   \fi
1615   \ifdim\dimen0>Opt \hskip\dimen0 \fi}
1616
1617 %

```

**\advanceline** You can use `\advanceline{<num>}` in running text to advance the current visible line-number by a specified value, positive or negative.

```

1618 \newcommand*{\advanceline}[1]{\leavevmode%
1619   \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\@adv[#1]}%
1620   \else      \write\linenum@out{\string\@adv[#1]}%
1621   \fi%
1622 }
1623 %

```

**\setline** You can use `\setline{<num>}` in running text (i.e., within `\pstart... \pend`) to set the current visible line-number to a specified positive value.

```

1624
1625 \newcommand*{\setline}[1]{%
1626   \leavevmode%
1627   \ifnum#1<\z@
1628     \led@warn@BadSetline%
1629   \else%
1630     \ifledRcol%
1631       \write\linenum@outR{\string\@set[#1]}%
1632     \else%
1633       \write\linenum@out{\string\@set[#1]}%
1634     \fi%

```



```

1635 \fi%
1636 }%
1637
1638 %

```

**\setlinenum** You can use `\setlinenum{<num>}` before a `\pstart` to set the visible line-number to a specified positive value. It writes a `\l@d@set` command to the line-list file.

```

1639
1640 \newcommand*{\setlinenum}[1]{%
1641 \ifnum#1<\z@
1642 \led@warn@BadSetlinenum
1643 \else
1644 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\l@d@set[#1]}
1645 \else \write\linenum@out{\string\l@d@set[#1]} \fi
1646 \fi}
1647
1648 %

```

**\startlock** You can use `\startlock` or `\endlock` in running text to start or end line number locking at the current line. They decide whether line numbers or sub-line numbers are affected, depending on the current state of the sub-lineation flags.

```

1649
1650 \newcommand*{\startlock}{%
1651 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@on}%
1652 \else \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@on}%
1653 \fi}
1654 \def\endlock{%
1655 \ifledRcol \write\linenum@outR{\string\lock@off}%
1656 \else \write\linenum@out{\string\lock@off}%
1657 \fi}
1658 %

```

**\ifl@dskipnumber** In numbered text `\skipnumbering` will suspend the numbering for that particular line.  
**\ifl@dskipversenumber**

```

\l@dskipnumbertrue
\l@dskipnumberfalse
\skipnumbering
1659 \newif\ifl@dskipnumber
1660 \newif\ifl@dskipversenumber%
1661 \newcommand*{\skipnumbering}{%
1662 \leavevmode%
1663 \ifledRcol%
1664 \ifinstanza%
1665 \write\linenum@outR{\string\n@num@stanza}%
1666 \else%
1667 \write\linenum@outR{\string\n@num}%
1668 \fi%
1669 \advanceline{-1}%
1670 \else%
1671 \ifinstanza%

```

```

1672     \write\linenum@out{\string\n@num@stanza}%
1673   \else%
1674     \write\linenum@out{\string\n@num}%
1675   \fi%
1676   \advanceline{-1}%
1677 \fi%
1678 }%
1679
1680 %

```

## VI Marking text for notes

The `\edtext` macro is used to create all footnotes and endnotes, as well as to print the portion of the main text to which a given note or notes is keyed. The idea is to have that lemma appear only once in the `.tex` file: all instances of it in the main text and in the notes are copied from that one appearance.

The `\edtext` macro takes two arguments.

```
\edtext{#1}{#2}
```

- #1 is the piece of the main text being glossed; it gets added to the main text, and is also used as a lemma for notes to it.
- #2 is a series of subsidiary macros that generate various kinds of notes.

The `\edtext` macro may be used (somewhat) recursively; that is, `\edtext` may be used within its own first argument. The code would be much simpler without this feature, but nested notes will commonly be necessary: it is quite likely that we will have an explanatory note for a long passage and notes on variants for individual words within that passage. The situation we can't handle is overlapping notes that are not nested: for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18. You can handle such cases by using the `\lemma` and `\linenum` macros within #2: they alter the copy of the lemma and the line numbers that are passed to the notes, and hence allow you to overcome any limitations of this system, albeit with extra effort.

The recursive operation of `\edtext` will fail if you try to use a copy that is called something other than `\edtext`. In order to handle recursion, `\edtext` needs to redefine its own definition temporarily at one point, and that does not work if the macro you are calling is not actually named `\edtext`. There is no problem as long as `\edtext` is not invoked in the first argument. If you want to call `\edtext` something else, it is best to create instead a macro that expands to an invocation of `\edtext`, rather than copying `\edtext` and giving it a new name; otherwise you will need to add an appropriate definition for your new macro to `\morenoexpands`.

Side-effects of our line-numbering code make it impossible to use the usual footnote macros directly within a paragraph whose lines are numbered (see comments to `\do@line`, VII.2.1 p. 162). Instead, the appropriate note-generating command is appended to the list macro `\inserts@list`, and when `\pend` completes the paragraph it inserts all the notes at the proper places.

Note that we do not provide previous-note information, although it is often wanted; your own macros must handle that. We can not do it correctly without keeping track of what kind of notes have gone past: it is not just a matter of remembering the line numbers associated with the previous invocation of `\edtext`, because that might have been for a different kind of note. It is preferable for your footnote macros to store and recall this kind of information if they need it.

## VI.1 `\edtext` itself

The various note-generating macros might want to request that commands be executed not at once, but in close connection with the start or end of the lemma. For example, footnote numbers in the text should be connected to the end of the lemma; or, instead of a single macro to create a note listing variants, you might want to use several macros in series to create individual variants, which would each add information to a private macro or token register, which in turn would be formatted and output when all of #2 for the lemma has been read.

`\end@lemmas` To accomodate this, we provide a list macro to which macros may add commands that should subsequently be executed at the end of the lemma when that lemma is added to the text of the paragraph. A macro should add its contribution to `\end@lemmas` by using `\xleft@appenditem`. (Anything that needs to be done at the *start* of the lemma may be handled using `\aftergroup`, since the commands specified within `\edtext`'s second argument are executed within a group that ends just before the lemma is added to the main text.)

`\end@lemmas` is intended for the few things that need to be associated with the end of the lemma, like footnote numbers. Such numbers are not implemented in the current version, and indeed no use is currently made of `\end@lemmas` or of the `\aftergroup` trick. The general approach would be to define a macro to be used within the second argument of `\edtext` that would add the appropriate command to `\end@lemmas`.

Commands that are added to this list should always take care not to do anything that adds possible line-breaks to the output; otherwise line numbering could be thrown off.

```
1681 \list@create{\end@lemmas}
1682 %
```

`\dummy@edtext` We now need to define a number of macros that allow us to weed out nested instances of `\edtext`, and other problematic macros, from our lemma. This is similar to what we did in reading the line-list file using `\dummy@ref` and various redefinitions—and that is because nested `\edtexts` macros create nested `\@ref` entries in the line-list file.

```
1683 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext}[2]{#1}
1684 %
```

`\dummy@edtext@showlemma` Some time, we want to obtain only the first argument of `\edtext`, while also wrapping it in `\showlemma`. For example, when printing a `\eledsection`.

```
1685 \newcommand{\dummy@edtext@showlemma}[2]{\showlemma{#1}}%
1686 %
```

We are going to need another macro that takes one argument and ignores it entirely. This is supplied by the  $\text{\TeX}$  `\@gobble{arg}`.

`\no@expands`  
`\morenoexpands`

We need to turn off macro expansion for certain sorts of macros we are likely to see within the lemma and within the notes.

The first class is font-changing macros. We suppress expansion for them by letting them become equal to zero.<sup>29</sup> This is done because we want to pass into our notes the generic commands to change to roman or whatever, and not their expansions that will ask for a particular style at a specified size. The notes may well be in a smaller font, so the command should be expanded later, when the note’s environment is in effect.

A second sort to turn off includes a few of the accent macros. Most are not a problem: an accent that is expanded to an `\accent` command may be harder to read but it works just the same. The ones that cause problems are: those that use alignments— $\text{\TeX}$  seems to get confused about the difference between alignment parameters and macro parameters; those that use temporary control sequences; and those that look carefully at what the current font is.

(The `\copyright` macro defined in `PLAIN $\text{\TeX}$`  has this sort of problem as well, but is not used enough to bother with. That macro, and any other that causes trouble, will get by all right if you put a `\protect` in front of it in your file.)

We also need to eliminate all `reledmac` macros like `\edlabel` and `\setline` that write things to auxiliary files: that writing should be done only once. And we make `\edtext` itself, if it appears within its own argument, do nothing but copy its first argument.

Finally, we execute `\morenoexpands`. The version of `\morenoexpands` defined here does nothing; but you may define a version of your own when you need to add more expansion suppressions as needed with your macros. That makes it possible to make such additions without needing to copy or modify the standard `reledmac` code. If you define your own `\morenoexpands`, you must be very careful about spaces: if the macro adds any spaces to the text when it runs, extra space will appear in the main text when `\edtext` is used.

The `\new@series` command also adds `\let\footnote(X)\@gobble` to the end of the `\no@expands` macro for the series  $\langle X \rangle$ .

(A related problem, not addressed by these two macros, is that of characters whose category code are changed by any of the macros used in the arguments to `\edtext`. Since the category codes are set when the arguments are scanned, macros that depend on changing them will not work. We have most often encountered this with characters that are made ‘active’ within text in some, but not all, of the languages used within the document. One way around the problem, if it takes this form, is to ensure that those characters are *always* active. Within languages that make no special use of them, their associated control sequences should simply return the proper character. A simpler solution is to avoid active characters, using `Lua $\text{\TeX}$`  or `XY $\text{\TeX}$` .)

```
1687 \newcommand*{\no@expands}{%
1688   \let\select@lemmafnt=0%
```

<sup>29</sup>Since ‘control sequences equivalent to characters are not expandable’—*The TeXbook*, answer to Exercise 20.14.

```

1689 \let\startsub=\relax \let\endsub=\relax
1690 \let\startlock=\relax \let\endlock=\relax
1691 \let\edlabel=\@gobble
1692 \let\setline=\@gobble \let\advanceline=\@gobble
1693 \let\sameword\sameword@inedtext%
1694 \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext
1695 \let\edindex\dummy@edindex%
1696 \l@dtabnoexpands
1697 \l@noexpands@edgl%
1698 \let\linenumannotation=\@gobble%
1699 \morenoexpands}
1700 \let\morenoexpands=\relax
1701
1702 %

```

**\@tag** Now, we define an empty \@tag command. It will be redefine by \edtext: its value is the first argument. It will be used by the \Xfootnote commands.

```

1703 \newcommand{\@tag}{}
1704 %

```

**\@edtext@level** This counter is increased by 1 at each level of \edtext.

```

1705 \newcount\@edtext@level%
1706 \@edtext@level=0%
1707 %

```

**\if@edtext@secondarg@** This boolean is set to TRUE before reading the second argument of a \edtext. It is tested on some macro which must be executed only inside a second argument.

```

1708 \newif\if@edtext@secondarg@%
1709 %

```

**\theedtext** The edtext counter is increased at each \edtext command. It is used to add to insert hyperlinks between a notes and the lemma.

```

1710 \newcounter{edtext}
1711 \renewcommand{\theedtext}{edtxt@the\c@edtext}%
1712 %

```

**\edtext** When executed, \edtext first ensures that we are in horizontal mode.

```

1713 \newcommand{\edtext}[2]{\leavevmode%
1714 %

```

Then, check if we are in a numbered paragraph (\pstart... \pend)..

```

1715 \ifnumberedpar@%
1716 %

```

Check the content of the arguments, to be certain there is no forbidden command inside.

```
1717 \check@edtext@args{#1}{#2}%
1718 %
```

We increment the `\edtext@level` TeX counter to know in which level of `\edtext` we are.

```
1719 \global\advance\edtext@level by 1%
1720 %
```

We also increase the `edtext` L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X counter to insert a hypertarget if the `hyperref` package is loaded, and also works with `\edtext` on right-to-left typesetting with `XYLATEX`.

We store the value for the current level in a global macro. So we have one macro by level of `\edtext`. That is required, because `\edtext` can contain `\edtext`.

```
1721 \stepcounter{edtext}%
1722 \csxdef{thisedtext@the\edtext@level}{\theedtext}%
1723 %
```

By default, we do not use `\lemma`

```
1724 \global\clemmacommand@false%
1725 %
```

```
1726 \begingroup%
1727 %
```

We get the next series of samewords data in the list of samewords data for the current `edtext` level. We push them inside `\sw@inthisedtext`.

```
1728 \ifledRcol%
1729 \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtextR@the\edtext@level}%
1730 {\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}%
1731 {\expandafter\glp\csname sw@list@edtextR@the\
@edtext@level\endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}%
1732 \else%
1733 \ifcsvoid{sw@list@edtext@the\edtext@level}%
1734 {\global\let\sw@inthisedtext\empty}%
1735 {\expandafter\glp\csname sw@list@edtext@the\edtext@level
\endcsname\to\sw@inthisedtext}%
1736 \fi%
1737 %
```

`\@tag` Our normal lemma is just argument #1; but that argument could have further invocations of `\edtext` within it. We get a copy of the lemma without any `\edtext` macros within it by temporarily redefining `\edtext` to just copy its first argument and ignore the other, and then expand #1 into `\@tag`, our lemma.

This is done within a group that starts here, in order to get the original `\edtext` restored; within this group we have also turned off the expansion of those control sequences commonly found within text that can cause trouble for us.

```

1738 \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{%
1739 \no@expands #1%
1740 }%
1741 %

```

**\l@d@nums** Prepare more data for the benefit of note-generating macros: the line references and font specifier for this lemma go to \l@d@nums.

```

1742 \set@line%
1743 %

```

\insert@count will be altered by the note-generating macros: it counts the number of deferred footnotes or other insertions generated by this instance of \edtext. If we are in a right column (reledpar), we use \insert@countR instead of \insert@count.

```

1744 \ifledRcol \global\insert@countR \z@%
1745 \else \global\insert@count \z@ \fi%
1746 %

```

Now process the note-generating macros in argument #2 (i.e., \Afootnote, \lemma, etc.). \ignorespaces is here to skip over any spaces that might appear at the start of #2; otherwise they wind up in the main text. Footnote and other macros that are used within #2 should all end with \ignorespaces as well, to skip any spaces between macros when several are used in series.

```

1747 \@edtext@secondarg@true%
1748 \ignorespaces #2\relax%
1749 \@edtext@secondarg@false%
1750 %

```

With Xe<sub>La</sub>TeX, you must track whether the language reads left to right (English) or right to left (Arabic). reledmac defines an \if@RTL boolean test is not already defined.

```

1751 \if@RTL%
1752 \flag@start@RTL%
1753 \else%
1754 \flag@start%
1755 \fi%
1756 %

```

We write in the numbered file whether the current \edtext has a \lemma in the the second argument.

```

1757 \if@lemmacommand@%
1758 \ifledRcol%
1759 \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lemma}%
1760 \else%
1761 \write\linenum@out{\string\@lemma}%
1762 \fi%
1763 \fi%
1764 %

```

Finally, we are ready to admit the first argument into the current paragraph.

It is important that we generate and output all the notes for this chunk of text *before* putting the text into the paragraph: notes that are referenced by line number should generally be tied to the start of the passage they gloss, not the end. That should all be done within the expansion of #2 above, or in `\aftergroup` commands within that expansion.

```

1765     \endgroup%
1766     \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
1767     {%
1768         \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@the\
@edtext@level}:start}{}}%
1769         \showlemma{#1}%
1770         \Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{\csuse{thisedtext@the\@edtext@level}:
end}{}}%
1771     }%
1772     {%
1773         \showlemma{#1}%
1774     }%
1775 %

```

Finally, we add any insertions that are associated with the *end* of the lemma. Footnotes that are identified by symbols rather than by where the lemma begins in the main text need to be done here, and not above.

```

1776     \ifx\end@lemmas\empty \else%
1777     \gl@p\end@lemmas\to\x@lemma%
1778     \x@lemma%
1779     \global\let\x@lemma=\relax%
1780     \fi%
1781     \if@RTL%
1782     \flag@end@RTL%
1783     \else%
1784     \flag@end%
1785     \fi%
1786 %

```

We switch some flags to false.

- The one that checks having footnotes inside a `\edtext`.
- The one that says we are inside a `\edtext`. In fact, it is not a flag, but a counter which is increased to 1 in each level of `\edtext`.
- The one that says we are inside a `\@lemma`.

```

1787     \global\@noneed@Footnotefalse%
1788     \global\advance\@edtext@level by -1%
1789     \global\@lemmacommand@false%
1790 %

```

We also reset `\@beforeinsertofthisedtext`



```

1791 \global\let\@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax%
1792 %

```

If we are outside of a numbered paragraph, we send an error message and print the first argument.

```

1793 \else%
1794 \showlemma{#1} (\textbf{\textsc{Edtext outside numbered paragraph}})\
led@err@edtextoutsidepstart%
1795 \fi%
1796 }%
1797
1798
1799 %

```

**`\@check@edtext@args`** A macro which just checks the arguments of the `\edtext` and let know if there is some probleme, like, for example, `\pstart` inside.

```

1800 \newcommand{\@check@edtext@args}[2]{%
1801 \begingroup%
1802 \noexpandarg%
1803 \IfSubStr{#1}{\pstart}{\led@err@PstartInEdtext{first}}{}%
1804 \IfSubStr{#1}{\pend}{\led@err@PendInEdtext{first}}{}%
1805 \IfSubStr{#2}{\pstart}{\led@err@PstartInEdtext{second}}{}%
1806 \IfSubStr{#2}{\pend}{\led@err@PendInEdtext{second}}{}%
1807 \endgroup%
1808 }%
1809 %
1810 %

```

**`\@beforeinsertofthisedtext`** `\@beforeinsertofthisedtext` is an internal macro. `reledmac` or `reledpar` can add in this macro any content required to be executed before doing any `\insert` related to a `\edtext`. Its content is `\let` equal to `\relax` at the end of every `\edtext`.

```

1811 \let\@beforeinsertofthisedtext\relax
1812 %

```

**`\ifnumberline`** The `\ifnumberline` option can be set to `FALSE` to disable line numbering.

```

1813 \newif\ifnumberline
1814 \numberlinetrue
1815 %

```

**`\set@line`** The `\set@line` macro is called by `\edtext` to put the line-reference field and font specifier for the current block of text into `\l@d@nums`.

One instance of `\edtext` may generate several notes, or it may generate none — it is legitimate for argument #2 to `\edtext` to be empty. But `\flag@start` and `\flag@end` induce the generation of a single entry in `\line@list` during the next run, and it is vital to also remove one and only one `\line@list` entry here.

If no more lines are listed in `\line@list`, something is wrong — probably just some change in the input. We set all the numbers to zeros, following an old publishing convention for numerical references that have not yet been resolved.

```

1816 \newcommand*{\set@line}{%
1817   \ifl@edRcol
1818     \ifx\line@listR\empty
1819       \global\noteschanged@true
1820       \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
1821     \else
1822       \gl@p\line@listR\to\@tempb
1823       \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
1824       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
1825     \fi
1826     \ifx\annot@listR\empty%
1827       \xdef\l@current@annotR{||}%
1828     \else%
1829       \gl@p\annot@listR\to\@tempb%
1830       \xdef\l@current@annotR{\@tempb}%
1831       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined%
1832     \fi%
1833   \else
1834     \ifx\line@list\empty
1835       \global\noteschanged@true
1836       \xdef\l@d@nums{000|000|000|000|000|000|000|\edfont@info}%
1837     \else
1838       \gl@p\line@list\to\@tempb
1839       \xdef\l@d@nums{\@tempb|\edfont@info}%
1840       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined
1841     \fi
1842     \ifx\annot@list\empty%
1843       \xdef\l@current@annot{||}%
1844     \else%
1845       \gl@p\annot@list\to\@tempb%
1846       \xdef\l@current@annot{\@tempb}%
1847       \global\let\@tempb=\undefined%
1848     \fi%
1849   \fi}
1850
1851 %

```

`\edfont@info` The macro `\edfont@info` returns coded information about the current font.

```

1852 \newcommand*{\edfont@info}{\f@encoding/\f@family/\f@series/\f@shape}
1853
1854 %

```

## VI.2 Substitute lemma

**\lemma** The `\lemma{<text>}` macro allows you to change the lemma that is passed on to the notes. Read about `\@tag` in normal `\edtext` macro for more details about `\sw@list@inedtext` and `\no@expands` (VI.1 p. 142).

```
1855 \newcommand*{\lemma}[1]{%
1856   \global\@lemmacommand@true%
1857   \global\renewcommand{\@tag}{%
1858     \no@expands #1%
1859   }%
1860   \ignorespaces%
1861 }%
1862 %
```

**\@lemma** The `\@lemma` is written in the numbered file to set which `\edtext` has an `\lemma` as second argument.

```
1863 \newcommand{\@lemma}{%
1864   \booltrue{lemmacommand@the\@edtext@level}%
1865 }%
1866 %
```

**\if@lemmacommand@** This boolean is set to TRUE inside a `\edtext` (or `\critext`) when a `\lemma` command is called. That is useful for some commands which can have a different behavior if the lemma in the note is different from the lemma in the main text.

```
1867 \newif\if@lemmacommand@%
1868 %
```

## VI.3 Substitute line numbers

**\linenum** The `\linenum` macro can change any or all of the page and line numbers that are passed on to the notes.

As argument `\linenum` takes a set of seven parameters separated by vertical bars, in the format used internally for `\l@d@nums` (see V.9 p. 111): the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma. However, you can omit any parameters you do not want to change, and you can omit a string of vertical bars at the end of the argument. Hence `\linenum{18|4|0|18|7|1|0}` is an invocation that changes all the parameters, but `\linenum{|3}` only changes the starting line number, and leaves the rest unaltered.

We use `\\` as an internal separator for the macro parameters.

```
1869 \newcommand*{\linenum}[1]{%
1870   \xdef\@tempa{#1|\\|\\|\\|\\|\\|\\|\\noexpand\\|\\l@d@nums}%
1871   \global\let\l@d@nums=\empty
1872   \expandafter\line@set\@tempa|\\|\\ignorespaces}
1873 %
```

`\line@set` `\linenum` calls `\line@set` to do the actual work; it looks at the first number in the argument to `\linenum`, sets the corresponding value in `\l@d@nums`, and then calls itself to process the next number in the `\linenum` argument, if there are more numbers in `\l@d@nums` to process.

```

1874 \def\line@set#1|#2|\#3|#4\{%
1875   \gdef\@tempb{#1}%
1876   \ifx\@tempb\empty
1877     \l@d@add{#3}%
1878   \else
1879     \l@d@add{#1}%
1880   \fi
1881   \gdef\@tempb{#4}%
1882   \ifx\@tempb\empty\else
1883     \l@d@add{|\line@set#2|\#4\}%
1884   \fi}
1885 %

```

`\l@d@add` `\line@set` uses `\l@d@add` to tack numbers or vertical bars onto the right hand end of `\l@d@nums`.

```

1886 \newcommand{\l@d@add}[1]{\xdef\l@d@nums{\l@d@nums#1}}
1887
1888 %

```

`\lineannot` Last but not least, `\lineannot` allows us to substitute line number annotation. It is different from `\linenum` for backward compatibility with older versions of `reledmac`. It calls `\lineannot@set` to determine whether we must change only one annotation or two, or none.

`\lineannot@set`

```

1889 \newcommand*{\lineannot}[1]{%
1890   \lineannot@set#1|}%
1891 }%
1892 \def\lineannot@set#1|#2|{%
1893   \expandafter\parse@annot#1|#2|}%
1894   \IfStrEq{#1}{}%
1895     {\let\@tempa\annot@start}%
1896     {\def\@tempa{#1}}%
1897   \IfStrEq{#2}{}%
1898     {\let\@tempb\annot@start}%
1899     {\def\@tempb{#2}}%
1900   \xdef\l@current@annot{\@tempa|\@tempb}%
1901 }%
1902 %

```

## VI.4 Lemma disambiguation

The mechanism which counts the occurrence of a same word in a same line is quite complex, because, when  $\text{\LaTeX}$  reads a command between a `\pstart` and a `\pend`, it does not know yet which are the line numbers.

The general mechanism is the following:

- **At the first run**, each `\sameword` command increments an `etoolbox` counter the name of which contains the argument of the `\sameword` commands.
- Then this counter associated with the argument of `\sameword` is stored with the `\@sw` command in the auxiliary file of the current `reledmac` section (the `.1`, `.2...` file).
- **When this auxiliary file is read at the second run**, different operations are achieved:
  1. Get the rank of each `\sameword` in a line (relative rank) from the rank of each `\sameword` in all the numbered section (absolute rank):
    - For each paired `\sameword` argument and absolute line number, a counter is defined. Its value corresponds to the number of times `\sameword{<argument>}` is called from the beginning of the lineation to the end of the current line. We also store the same data for the preceding absolute line number, if it does not have `\sameword{<argument>}`.
    - For each `\sameword` having the same argument, we subtract from its absolute rank the number stored for the paired `\sameword` argument and previous absolute line number. Consequently, we obtain the relative rank.
    - See the following example which explains how, for same `\sameword`, absolute ranks are transformed to relative ranks.

```

At line 1:
absolute rank 1 becomes relative rank 1-0 = 1
1 is stored for this \sameword and line 1
At line 2:
absolute rank 2 becomes relative rank 2-1 = 1
absolute rank 3 becomes relative rank 3-1 = 2
3 is stored for this \sameword and line 2
At line 3:
no \sameword for this line.
3 is stored for this \sameword and line 3
At line 4:
absolute rank 4 becomes relative rank 4-3 = 1
4 is stored for this \sameword and line 4

```
  2. Create lists of lists of `\sameword` by depth of `\edtext`. That is: create a list for `\edtexts` of level 1, a list for `\edtexts` of level 2, a list for `\edtexts` of level 3 etc. For each `\edtext` in these lists, we store all of the relative ranks of `\sameword` which are called as lemma information. That is: 1) either called in the first argument of `\sameword`, or, 2) called in the `\lemma` macro of the second argument of `\sameword` AND marked by the optional argument of `\sameword` in first argument of `\edtext`.

For example, suppose a line with nested `\edtext`s which contains some word marked by `\sameword` and having the following relative rank:

bar<sup>1</sup> foo<sup>1</sup> foo<sup>2</sup> bar<sup>2</sup> foo<sup>3</sup> (A)(B) foo<sup>4</sup> bar<sup>3</sup> (C) foo<sup>5</sup> (D) bar<sup>4</sup> (E)

In this example, all lemma information for `\edtext` is framed. The text in parenthesis is the content of critical notes associated to the preceding frame. As you can see, we have two levels of `\edtext`.

The list for `\edtexts` of level 1 is  $\{\{1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 3\}, \{5, 4\}\}$ .

The list for `\edtexts` of level 2 is  $\{\{1, 2, 2, 3\}, \{5\}\}$ .

As you can see, the mandatory argument of `\sameword` does not matter: we store the rank informations for every word potentially ambiguous.

- At the second run, when a critical notes is called, we associate it to the next item of the list associated to its `\edtext` level. So, in the previous example:
  - Critical notes (A) and (B) are associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3\}$ .
  - Critical note (C) is associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3, 4, 3\}$ .
  - Critical note (D) is associated with  $\{5\}$ .
  - Critical note (E) is associated with  $\{5, 4\}$ .
- At the second run, when a critical note is printed:
  - The `\sameword` command is let `\sameword@inedtext`.
  - At each call of this `\sameword@inedtext`, we step to the next element of the list associated to the note. Let it be  $r$ .
  - For the word marked by `\sameword`, we calculate how many time it is called in its line. To do it:
    - \* We get the absolute line number of the current `\sameword`. This absolute line number was stored with a list of relative ranks for the current `\edtext`. That means, in the previous example, that if the absolute line number of `\edtext` was 1, that critical notes (A) and (B) were not associated with  $\{1, 2, 2, 3\}$  but with  $\{(1, 1), (2, 1), (2, 1), (3, 1)\}$ . Such a method of knowing the absolute line number associated to a `\sameword` is required because a `\edtext` can overlap many lines, but `\sameword` can't get it.
    - \* When reading the auxiliary file, we get the value associated to the pair composed by the current marked word and the current absolute line number. To this value, we subtract the value associated to the pair composed by the current marked word and the previous absolute line number. Let the result be  $n$ .
  - If  $n > 1$ , that means the current word appears more than once in its line. In this case, we call `\showwordrank` with the word as the first argument and  $r$  as the second argument. If the word is called only once, we just print it.

After theory, implementation. First, getting a sanitized form of the argument of `\sameword`

```
\get@sw@txt 1903 \newcommand{\get@sw@txt}[1]{%
1904   \begingroup%
1905   \swnoexpands%
1906   %.
```

Using case sensibility option.

```
1907   \ifsw@caseinsensitive%
1908     \def\@tmpa##1{\lowercase{##1}}%
1909   \else%
1910     \def\@tmpa##1{##1}%
1911   \fi%
1912   %
```

And now, define `\sw@txt`.

```
1913     \@tmpa{\protected@xdef\sw@txt{##1}}%
1914   \endgroup%
1915 }%
1916 %
```

Allow some macros inside `\sameword`. We use `\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand` to get expandable command with optional argument. Cf. <https://tex.stackexchange.com/a/384783/7712>.

```
\sw@noexpand 1917 \newcommand{\swnoexpands}{%
1918   \let\sameword\l@secondmandarg% Allow to have nested \sameword
1919   \let\emph\@firstofone%
1920   \let\textit\@firstofone%
1921   \let\textbf\@firstofone%
1922   \let\textsc\@firstofone%
1923   \let\framebox\@firstofone%
1924   \let\edtext\dummy@edtext%
1925   \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\edindex}{om}{}%
1926   \ifdefined\index%
1927     \RenewExpandableDocumentCommand{\index}{om}{}%
1928   \fi%
1929   \let\selectlanguage\@gobble%
1930   \let\foreignlanguage\@secondoftwo%
1931   \ifdefined\xpg@loaded%
1932     \renewcommand\do[1]{%
1933       \expandafter\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand\expandafter{\csname
text##1\endcsname}{om}{###2}%
1934     }%
1935     \expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{\xpg@loaded}%
1936   \fi%
1937 }%
1938 %
```

**\sameword** The high level macro \sameword, used by the editor.

```

1939 \newcommandx{\sameword}[2][1,usedefault]{%
1940     \ifxetex%
1941     \if@RTL%
1942     \led@err@samewordRTL%
1943     \fi%
1944     \fi%
1945     \leavevmode%
1946     \get@sw@txt{#2}%
1947 %

```

Now, the real code. First, increment the counter corresponding to the argument.

```

1948 \unless\ifledRcol%
1949     \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@ne}%
1950 %

```

Then, write its value to the numbered file.

```

1951     \protected@write\linenum@out{}{\string\@sw{sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}
1952 }}{#1}}%
1953 %

```

Do the same thing if we are in the right column.

```

1953 \else%
1954     \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}+\@ne}%
1955     \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{\string\@sw{sw@txt}{\csuse{sw@sw@txt}
1956 }}{#1}}%
1957     \fi%
1958 %

```

And print the word.

```

1958     #2%
1959 }%
1960 %

```

A flag set to true if a \@sw relative rank must be added to the list of ranks for a specific \edtext.

```

\if@addsw \newif\if@addsw%
1962 %

```

**\@sw** The command printed in the auxiliary files.

```

1963 \newcommand{\@sw}[3]{%
1964     \get@sw@txt{#1}%
1965     \unless\ifledRcol%
1966 %

```

First, define a counter which store the second argument as value for a each paired absolute line number/first argument



```

1967 \csxdef{sw@sw@txt @\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}{#2}%
1968 %

```

If such argument was not defined for the preceding line, define it.

```

1969 \numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@num-1}%
1970 \ifcsundef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{%
1971   \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}{#2-1}%
1972 }{}%
1973 %

```

Then, calculate the position of the word in the line.

```

1974 \numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}}%
1975 %

```

And do the same thing for the right side.

```

1976 \else%
1977   \csxdef{sw@sw@txt @\the\absline@numR @\the\section@numR @R}{#2}%
1978   \numdef{\prev@line}{\the\absline@numR-1}%
1979   \ifcsundef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}{%
1980     \csnumgdef{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}{#2-1}%
1981   }{}%
1982   \numdef{\the@sw}{#2-\csuse{sw@sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}}%
1983   \fi%
1984 %

```

And now, add it to the list of \@sw for the current edtext, in all depth.

```

1985 \@tempcnta=\@edtext@level
1986 \@whilenum{\@tempcnta>0}\do{%
1987   \ifcsdef{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}%
1988     {%
1989       \@addswfalse%
1990       \notbool{lemmacommand@\the\@tempcnta}%
1991       {\@addswtrue}%
1992       {\IfStrEq{#3}{inlemma}%
1993        {\@addswtrue}%
1994        {%
1995          \def\do##1{%
1996            \ifnumequal{##1}{\the\@tempcnta}%
1997              {\@addswtrue\listbreak}%
1998            }%
1999          }%
2000          \docsvlist{#3}%
2001        }%
2002      }%
2003   \if@addsw%
2004     \letcs{\@tmp}{sw@list@edtext@tmp@\the\@tempcnta}%
2005     \ifledRcol%
2006       \xright@appenditem{\the@sw}{\the\absline@numR}\to\@tmp%

```

```

2007         \else%
2008             \xright@appenditem{{\the@sw}{\the\absline@num}}\to\@tmp%
2009         \fi%
2010         \cslet{sw@list@edtext@tmp@the\@tempcnta}{\@tmp}%
2011     \fi%
2012 }%
2013 {}%
2014 \advance\@tempcnta by -1%
2015 }%
2016 }%
2017 %

```

`\sameword@inedtext` The command called when `\sameword` is called in a `\edtext`.

```

2018 \newcommandx{\sameword@inedtext}[2][1,usedefault]{%
2019     \get@sw@txt{#2}%
2020     \unless\ifledRcol@%
2021 %

```

Just a precaution.

```

2022     \ifx\sw@list@inedtext\empty%
2023         \def\the@sw{999}%
2024         \def\this@absline{-99}%
2025     \else%
2026 %

```

But in many cases, at this step, we should have some content in the list `\sw@list@inedtext`, which contains the reference for `\edtext`.

```

2027     \glp\sw@list@inedtext\to\@tmp%
2028     \edef\the@sw{\expandafter\@firstoftwo\@tmp}%
2029     \edef\this@absline{\expandafter\@secondoftwo\@tmp}%
2030     \fi%
2031 %

```

First, calculate the number of occurrences of the word in the current line

```

2032     \ifcsdef{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\section@num}{%
2033         \numdef{\prev@line}{\this@absline-1}%
2034         \numdef{\sw@atthisline}{\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\
section@num}-\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@num}}%
2035     }%
2036     {\numdef{\sw@atthisline}{0}}%
2037 %

```

Finally, print the rank, but only if there is more than one occurrence of the word in the current line.

```

2038     \ifnumgreater{\sw@atthisline}{1}%
2039         {\showwordrank{#2}{\the@sw}}%
2040         {#2}%
2041 %

```

And the same for right side.

```

2042 \else%
2043 \ifx\sw@list@inedtext\empty%
2044 \def\the@sw{999}%
2045 \def\this@absline{-99}%
2046 \else%
2047 \gl@p\sw@list@inedtext\to\@tmp%
2048 \edef\the@sw{\expandafter\@firstoftwo\@tmp}%
2049 \edef\this@absline{\expandafter\@secondoftwo\@tmp}%
2050 \fi%
2051 \ifcsdef{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\section@numR @R}{%
2052 \numdef{\prev@line}{\this@absline-1}%
2053 \numdef{\sw@atthisline}{\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\this@absline @\the\
section@numR @R}-\csuse{sw@\sw@txt @\prev@line @\the\section@numR @R}}%
2054 }%
2055 {\numdef{\sw@atthisline}{0}}%
2056 \ifnumgreater{\sw@atthisline}{1}%
2057 {\showwordrank{#2}{\the@sw}}%
2058 {#2}%
2059 \fi%
2060 }%
2061 %

```

`\showwordrank` Finally, the way the rank will be printed.

```

2062 \newcommand{\showwordrank}[2]{%
2063 #1\textsuperscript{#2}%
2064 }%
2065 %

```

## VII Paragraph decomposition and reassembly

In order to be able to count the lines of text and affix line numbers, we add an extra stage of processing for each paragraph. We send the paragraph into a box register, rather than straight onto the vertical list, and when the paragraph ends we slice the paragraph into its component lines; to each line we add any notes or line numbers, add a command to write to the line-list, and then at last send the line to the vertical list. This section contains all the code for this processing.

### VII.1 Boxes, counters, `\pstart` and `\pend`

`\raw@text` Here are numbers and flags that are used internally in the course of the paragraph decomposition.

`\ifnumberedpar@` When we first form the paragraph, it goes into a box register, `\raw@text`, instead of onto the current vertical list. The `\ifnumberedpar@` flag will be true while a paragraph is being processed in that way. `\num@lines` will store the number of lines in the paragraph when it is complete. When we chop it up into lines, each line in turn goes

`\numberedpar@true`

`\numberedpar@false`

`\num@lines`

`\one@line`

`\par@line`

into the `\one@line` register, and `\par@line` will be the number of that line within the paragraph.

```

2066 \newbox\raw@text
2067 \newif\ifnumberedpar@
2068 \newcount\num@lines
2069 \newbox\one@line
2070 \newcount\par@line
2071 %

```

`\pstarts@typeset@L` The `\pstarts@typeset@L` counts the number of LEFT `\pstart` typeset. A left `\pstart` can be a `\pstart` typeset in normal mode, or `\pstart` typeset in left column or page in parallel mode (`withreledpar`). In the first case, its value is increased at every `\pstart` command. In the second case, its value is increased in `\Columns` or `\Pages` when we prepare to typeset a left `\pstart`. The `\pstarts@read@L` counts the number of LEFT `\pstart` read. A left `\pstart` can be a `\pstart` typeset in normal mode, or `\pstart` typeset in left column or page in parallel mode (`withreledpar`). In the first case, its value is increased at every `\pstart` command. In the second case, its value is increased at every `\pstarL`.

```

2072 \newcount\pstarts@typeset@L%
2073 \newcount\pstarts@read@L%
2074 %

```

`\pstart` `\pstart` starts the paragraph by clearing the `\inserts@list` list and other relevant variables, and then arranges for the subsequent text to go into the `\raw@text` box.  
`\AtEveryPstart` `\pstart` needs to appear at the start of every paragraph that is to be numbered; the  
`\AtStartEveryPstart` `\autopar` command below may be used to insert these commands automatically.  
`\numberpstarttrue`  
`\numberpstartfalse`

Beware: everything that occurs between `\pstart` and `\pend` is happening within a group; definitions must be global if you want them to survive past the end of the paragraph.  
`\labelpstarttrue`  
`\labelpstartfalse`

```

\thepstart
2075 \if@every@pstart@star@
2076 \newcommand{\AtStartEveryPstart}[1]{%
2077   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2078   {\gdef\@at@start@every@pstart{}}%
2079   {\gdef\@at@start@every@pstart{#1}}%
2080 }%
2081 \def\@at@start@every@pstart{}%
2082
2083 \newif\if@every@pstart@star@%
2084 \newcommand{\AtEveryPstart}[1]{%
2085   \ifstrempy{#1}%
2086   {\gdef\@at@every@pstart{}}%
2087   {\gdef\@at@every@pstart{\noindent#1}}%
2088   \global\@at@every@pstart@star@false%
2089 }%
2090 \WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryPstart*[1]{%
2091   \ifstrempy{#1}%

```

```

2092     {\gdef\at@every@pstart{}}%
2093     {\gdef\at@every@pstart{#1}}%
2094     \global\at@every@pstart@star@true%
2095 }%
2096 \def\at@every@pstart{}%
2097
2098 \newcounter{pstart}
2099 \renewcommand{\thepstart}{\bfseries\@arabic\c@pstart}. }
2100 \newif\ifnumberpstart
2101 \numberpstartfalse
2102 \newif\iflabelpstart
2103 \labelpstartfalse
2104 \newcommand*{\pstart}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
2105     \normal@pars%
2106     \ifboolexpr{%
2107         test {\ifstrempy{#1}}%
2108         and test {\ifstrempy{#2}}%
2109     }%
2110     {\at@every@pstart}%
2111     {%
2112         \ifstrempy{#1}{\noindent#1}%
2113         \ifstrempy{#2}{\#2}%
2114     }%
2115     \ifautopar%
2116         \autopar%
2117     \fi%
2118     \ifluatex%
2119         \edef\l@luatexttextdir@L{\the\textdir}%
2120     \fi%
2121     \@nobreaktrue%
2122     \ifnumbering \else%
2123         \led@err@PstartNotNumbered%
2124         \beginnumbering%
2125     \fi%
2126     \ifnumberedpar@%
2127         \led@err@PstartInPstart%
2128         \pend%
2129     \fi%
2130     \list@clear{\inserts@list}%
2131     \global\let\next@insert=\empty%
2132     \begingroup\normal@pars%
2133     \global\advance \l@dnumpstartsL\@ne
2134     \global\advance \pstarts@typeset@L\@ne%
2135     \global\advance \pstarts@read@L\@ne%
2136     \global\setbox\raw@text=\vbox\bgroup%
2137     \if@nobreak%
2138         \if@afterindent\else%
2139             \noindent%
2140             \global\@afterindenttrue%
2141         \fi%

```

```

2142 \fi%
2143 \ifboolexpr{%
2144   bool{autopar}%
2145   and bool{by@autopar}%
2146 }%
2147 {}%
2148 {%
2149   \ifnumberpstart%
2150   \ifinstanza\else%
2151   \ifsidepstartnum\else%
2152   \thepstart%
2153   \fi%
2154   \fi%
2155   \fi%
2156 }%
2157 \numberedpar@true%
2158 \iflabelpstart%
2159   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{\p@pstart\thepstart}%
2160 \fi%
2161 \l@dzero penalties%
2162 \@at@start@every@pstart%
2163 \global\by@autoparfalse%
2164 \ignorespaces%because not automatically ignored if an optional argument
is used (classical TeX behavior for space after commands)
2165 }
2166 %

```

**\pend** \pend must be used to end a numbered paragraph.

```

2167 \newcommand*{\pend}[2][1,2,usedefault]{\ifnumbering \else%
2168   \led@err@PendNotNumbered%
2169   \fi%
2170   \global\l@dskipversenumberfalse%
2171   \ifnumberedpar@ \else%
2172     \led@err@PendNoPstart%
2173   \fi%
2174 %

```

We set all the usual interline penalties to zero and then immediately call `\endgraf` to end the paragraph; this ensures that there will be no large interline penalties to prevent us from slicing the paragraph into pieces. These penalties revert to the values that you set when the group for the `\vbox` ends. Then we call `\do@line` to slice a line off the top of the paragraph, add a line number and footnotes, and restore it to the page; we keep doing this until there are not any more lines left.

```

2175 \l@dzero penalties%
2176 \@at@end@every@pend%
2177 \endgraf\global\num@lines=\prevgraf\egroup%
2178 \global\par@line=0%
2179 \get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd%
2180 %

```

Output the lines.

```
2181 \loop\ifvbox\raw@text%
2182   \do@line%
2183 \repeat%
2184 %
```

Deal with any leftover notes, and then end the group that was begun in the \pstart.

```
2185 \flush@notes%
2186 \endgroup%
2187 \ignorespaces%
2188 %
```

Increase pstart counter.

```
2189 \ifnumberpstart%
2190   \global\pstartnumtrue%
2191 \fi%
2192 \addtocounter{pstart}{1}%
2193 \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
2194   \addtocounter{pstartL}{1}%
2195   \addtocounter{pstartR}{1}%
2196 \fi%
2197 %
```

Print the optional arguments of \pend or the content printed after every \pend

```
2198 \normal@pars%
2199 \ifboolexpr{%
2200   test {\ifstrempy{#1}}%
2201   and test {\ifstrempy{#2}}%
2202 }%
2203   {\at@every@pend}%
2204   {%
2205     \ifstrempy{#1}{\noindent#1}%
2206     \ifstrempy{#2}{\#2}%
2207   }%
2208 %
```

Restore standard “nobreak” and “autopar” settings. Normally, \if@nobreak is true only immediately after a sectioning command (see latex.ltx file). As a \pstart... \pend structure can’t contain any sectioning command, we set \if@nobreak to false.

```
2209 \@nobreakfalse%
2210 \ifautopar%
2211   \autopar%
2212 \fi%
2213 %
```

At the very end, we check if the lineation is made by \pstart. In this case, we reset the line number, using \setlinenum, as we are, technically, already out of \pstart\pend structure.

```

2214 \ifbypstart{%
2215     \begingroup%
2216     \let\leavevmode\relax%
2217     \setlinenum{0}%
2218     \endgroup%
2219     \resetprevline%
2220 \fi%
2221 }
2222 %

```

Here, two macros to insert content after every `\pend`, between numbered line. `\AtEveryPend` is the user macro, `\at@every@pend` is macro set by it.

```

\AtEveryPend
\at@every@pend
\ifat@every@pend@star%
2226 \newif\ifat@every@pend@star%
2227 \newcommand{\AtEveryPend}[1]{%
2228     \ifstrempy{#1}%
2229     {\gdef\at@every@pend{}}%
2230     {\gdef\at@every@pend{\noindent#1}}%
2231     \global\at@every@pend@star@false%
2232 }%
2233 \WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryPend*[1]{%
2234     \ifstrempy{#1}%
2235     {\gdef\at@every@pend{}}%
2236     {\gdef\at@every@pend{#1}}%
2237     \global\at@every@pend@star@true%
2238 }%
2239 \xdef\at@every@pend{}%
2240 %

```

**\AtEndEveryPend** Here a macro to insert automatically any content at the end of `\pend`, in numbered lines.

```

2241 \newcommand{\AtEndEveryPend}[1]{%
2242     \ifstrempy{#1}%
2243     {\xdef\@at@end@every@pend{}}%
2244     {\gdef\@at@end@every@pend{#1}}%
2245 }%
2246 \def\@at@end@every@pend{}%
2247 %

```

**\l@dzeroopenalties** A macro to zero penalties for `\pend` or `\pstart`.

```

2248 \newcommand*{\l@dzeroopenalties}{%
2249     \brokenpenalty \z@ \clubpenalty \z@
2250     \displaywidowpenalty \z@ \interlinepenalty \z@ \predisplaypenalty \z@
2251     \postdisplaypenalty \z@ \widowpenalty \z@}
2252 %
2253 %

```



`\autopar` In most cases it is only an annoyance to have to label the paragraphs to be numbered with `\pstart` and `\pend`. `\autopar` will do that automatically, allowing you to start a paragraph with its first word and no other preliminaries, and to end it with a blank line or a `\par` command. The command should be issued within a group, after `\beginnumbering` has been used to start the numbering; all paragraphs within the group will be affected.

A few situations can cause problems. One is a paragraph that begins with a begin-group character or command: `\pstart` will not get invoked until after such a group beginning is processed; as a result the character that ends the group will be mistaken for the end of the `\vbox` that `\pstart` creates, and the rest of the paragraph will not be numbered. Such paragraphs need to be started explicitly using `\indent`, `\noindent`, or `\leavevmode` — or `\pstart`, since you can still include your own `\pstart` and `\pend` commands even with `\autopar` on.

Prematurely ending the group within which `\autopar` is in effect will cause a similar problem. You must either leave a blank line or use `\par` to end the last paragraph before you end the group.

The functioning of this macro is more tricky than the usual `\everypar`: we do not want anything to go onto the vertical list at all, so we have to end the paragraph, erase any evidence that it ever existed, and start it again using `\pstart`. We remove the paragraph-indentation box using `\lastbox` and save the width, and then skip backwards over the `\parskip` that has been added for this paragraph. Then we start again with `\pstart`, restoring the indentation that we saved, and locally change `\par` so that it will do our `\pend` for us.

The boolean `\ifautopar` is set to TRUE while `\autopar` is enabled, and the `\ifby@autopar` is set to TRUE at each `\pstart` automatically called by the `\autopar` feature. A manual `\pstart` will have a `\ifby@autopar` set to FALSE.

```

2254 \newif\ifautopar
2255 \newif\ifby@autopar%
2256 \newcommand*{\autopar}{
2257   \ifledRcol
2258     \ifnumberingR \else
2259       \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
2260       \beginnumberingR
2261       \fi
2262     \else
2263       \ifnumbering \else
2264         \led@err@AutoparNotNumbered
2265         \beginnumbering
2266         \fi
2267       \fi
2268       \autopartrue
2269       \everypar{\setbox0=\lastbox
2270         \endgraf \vskip-\parskip
2271         \global\by@autopartrue%
2272         \pstart \noindent \kern\wd0%
2273         \ifnumberpstart%
2274         \ifinstanza\else%
```

```

2275     \thepstart%
2276     \fi%
2277     \fi%
2278     \let\par=\pend}%
2279     \ignorespaces}
2280 %

```

**\normal@pars** We also define a macro which we can rely on to turn off the \autopar definitions at various important places, if they are in force. We will want to do this within a footnotes, for example.

```

2281 \newcommand*{\normal@pars}{\everypar{}\let\par\endgraf}
2282
2283 %

```

**\ifautopar@pause** We define a boolean test switched to true at the beginning of the \pausenumbering command if the autopar is enabled. This boolean will be tested at the beginning of \resumenumbering to continue the autopar if needed.

```

2284 \newif\ifautopar@pause
2285 %

```

## VII.2 Processing one line

### VII.2.1 General process

**\do@line** The \do@line macro is called by \pend to do all the processing for a single line of text. The \l@dunhbox@line macro only \unhboxes one line, but packages like \microtype can override it as required.

```

2286 \newcommand*{\l@dunhbox@line}[1]{\unhbox #1}
2287 \newcommand*{\do@line}{%
2288   {\vbadness=10000
2289     \splittopskip=\z@
2290     \do@linehook
2291   \l@demtyd@ta
2292     \global\setbox\one@line=\vsplit\raw@text to\baselineskip}%
2293   \unvbox\one@line \global\setbox\one@line=\lastbox
2294   \getline@num
2295   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{\}
2296   \ifnum\@lock>\@one
2297     \inserthangingsymboltrue
2298   \else
2299     \inserthangingsymbolfalse
2300   \fi
2301   \check@pb@in@verse
2302   \ifl@dhidnumber%
2303     \global\l@dhidnumberfalse%
2304   \f@x@l@cks%

```

```

2305 \else%
2306 \affixline@num%
2307 \fi%
2308 %

```

Depending whether a sectioning command is called at this pstart or not we print sectioning command or normal line,

```

2309 \xifinlist{\the\pstarts@typeset@L}{\eled@sections@@}%
2310 {\print@eledsection}%
2311 {\print@line}%
2312 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{\led@check@pb\led@check@nopb}{%}
2313 }%
2314 %

```

### VII.2.2 Process for “normal” line

`\print@line` `\print@line` is for normal line, i. e. line without sectioning command.

```

2315 \def\print@line{
2316 %

```

Insert the pstart number inside, if we are in the first line of a pstart.

```

2317 \affixpstart@num%
2318 %

```

The line will be boxed, to have the good width.

```

2319 \hb@xt@ \linewidth{%
2320 %

```

User hooks.

```

2321 \do@insidelinehook%
2322 \csuse{insidethis@the\absline@num @the\section@num}%
2323 \global\csundef{insidethis@the\absline@num @the\section@num}%
2324 %

```

Left line number

```

2325 \l@dld@ta%
2326 %

```

Prepare text to be inserted before notes.

```

2327 \if@firstlineofpage%
2328 \set@txtbeforenotes%
2329 \set@txtbeforenotesX%
2330 \global\@firstlineofpagefalse%
2331 \fi%
2332 %

```

Insert footnotes made of manuscripts data and critical footnotes.

```

2333 \ifdefstring{\ms@data@position}{msdata-regular}{%
2334 \insert@msdata%
2335 \add@inserts%
2336 \add@Xgroupbyline%
2337 }{%
2338 \add@inserts%
2339 \add@Xgroupbyline%
2340 \insert@msdata%
2341 }%
2342 %

```

Insert marginal notes.

```

2343 \affixside@note%
2344 %

```

Print left notes.

```

2345 \l@dlsn@te
2346 %

```

Boxes the line, writes information about new line in the numbered file.

```

2347 {\ledllfill\hb@xt@ \wd\one@line{%
2348 \new@line%
2349 %

```

If we use the continuousnumberingwithcolumns, we increase right line number.

```

2350 \continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext%
2351 %

```

If we use Lua $\TeX$  then restore the direction.

```

2352 \ifluatex%
2353 \texdir\l@luatextextdir@L%
2354 \fi%
2355 %

```

Insert, if needed, the hanging symbol.

```

2356 \inserthangingsymbol%
2357 %

```

And so, print the line.

```

2358 \l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}%
2359 %

```

Right line number

```

2360 \ledrlfill\l@drd@ta%
2361 %

```

Print right notes.

```

2362 \l@drsn@te%
2363 }}%
2364 %

```

And reinsert penalties (for page breaking)...

```
2365 \add@penalties%
2366 }
2367 %
```

### VII.2.3 Process for line containing \eledsection command

**\print@eledsection** \print@eledsection to print sectioning command with line number. It sets the correct spacing, depending whether a sectioning command was called at previous \pstart, calls the sectioning command, prints the normal line outside of the paper, to be able to have critical footnotes. Because of how this prints, a vertical spacing correction is added.

```
2368 \def\print@eledsection{%
2369   \disable@edindex%
2370   \if@firstlineofpage%
2371     \set@Xtxtbeforenotes%
2372     \set@txtbeforenotesX%
2373     \global\@firstlineofpagefalse%
2374   \fi%
2375   \ifdefstring{\ms@data@position}{msdata-regular}{%
2376     \insert@msdata%
2377     \add@inserts%
2378     \add@Xgroupbyline%
2379   }{%
2380     \add@inserts%
2381     \add@Xgroupbyline%
2382     \insert@msdata%
2383   }%
2384   \affixside@note%
2385   \numdef{\temp@}{\pstarts@typeset@L-1}%
2386   \xifinlist{\temp@}{\eled@sections@@}{\@nobreaktrue}{\@nobreakfalse}%
2387   \@eled@sectioningtrue%
2388   \csuse{eled@sectioning@the\pstarts@typeset@L}%
2389   \@eled@sectioningfalse%
2390   \global\csundef{eled@sectioning@the\pstarts@typeset@L}%
2391   \if@RTL%
2392     \hspace{-3\paperwidth}%
2393     {\hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}} \new@line}%
2394   \else%
2395     \hspace{3\paperwidth}%
2396     {\new@line \hbox{\l@dunhbox@line{\one@line}}}%
2397   \fi%
2398   \vskip-\baselineskip%
2399   \continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext%
2400   \restore@edindex%
2401 }
2402 %
```

### VII.2.4 Hooks

`\do@linehook` Two hooks into `\do@line`. The first is called at the beginning of `\do@line`, the second  
`\do@insidelinehook` is called in the line box. The second can, for example, have a `\markboth` command  
inside, the first can not.

```
2403 \newcommand*\do@linehook{}
2404 \newcommand*\do@insidelinehook{}
2405 %
```

`\dolinehook` These high level commands just redefine the low level commands. They have to be used  
`\doinsidelinehook` be user, without `\makeatletter`.

```
2406 \newcommand*\dolinehook[1]{\gdef\do@linehook{#1}}%
2407 \newcommand*\doinsidelinehook[1]{\gdef\do@insidelinehook{#1}}%
2408
2409 %
```

`\doinsidethislinehook` The `\doinsidethislinehook` can be called directly in the main flood of a text. It will  
`\@insidethisline` define a hook executed at a specific line, determined by the position of the command in  
the flood of the text.

```
2410 \newcommand{\doinsidethislinehook}[1]{%
2411   \leavevmode%In case it begins with a \pstart, ensure the \@insidethisline
      is written after \@nl
2412   \ifledRcol%
2413     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@insidethisline[\unexpanded{#1}]}%
2414   \else%
2415     \write\linenum@out{\string\@insidethisline[\unexpanded{#1}]}%
2416   \fi%
2417 }%
2418 %
```

The auxiliary files command just store the information to be executed when typesetting the specific line.

```
2419 \newcommand{\@insidethisline}[1]{%
2420   \ifledRcol%
2421     \csgappto{insidethisR@the\absline@numR @the\section@numR}{#1}%
2422   \else%
2423     \csgappto{insidethis@the\absline@num @the\section@num}{#1}%
2424   \fi%
2425 }%
2426 %
```

### VII.2.5 Sidenotes and marginal line number initialization

`\l@demptyd@ta` Nulls the `\. . .d@ta`, which may later hold line numbers. Similarly for `\l@dcsnotetext`,  
`\l@dld@ta` `\l@dcsnotetext@l`, `\l@dcsnotetext@r` for the texts of the sidenotes, left and right  
`\l@drd@ta` notes.  
`\l@dcsnotetext`  
`\l@dcsnotetext@l`  
`\l@dcsnotetext@r`

```

2427 \newcommand*{\l@emptyd@ta}{%
2428   \gdef\l@dld@ta{%
2429     \gdef\l@drd@ta{%
2430       \gdef\l@dcstetext@l{%
2431         \gdef\l@dcstetext@r{%
2432           \gdef\l@dcstetext{}
2433
2434 %

```

**\l@dlsn@te** Zero width boxes of the left and right sidenotes, together with their kerns, and, eventually, with additional space if we are in parallel columns typesetting.

**\l@drsn@te**

```

2435 \newcommand{\l@dlsn@te}{%
2436   \ifboolexpr{%
2437     bool {l@dprintingcolumns}%
2438     and bool {ledRcol@}%
2439   }{% If we are on a right column
2440     \@tempdima=\@morespace@leftnote@rightcolumn%
2441   }{%
2442     \@tempdima=\z@%
2443   }%
2444   \hb@xt@ \z@{\hss\box\l@dlp@rbox\kern\ledlsnotesep\hskip\@tempdima}%
2445 }%
2446 \newcommand{\l@drsn@te}{%
2447   \ifboolexpr{%
2448     bool {l@dprintingcolumns}%
2449     and not bool {ledRcol@}%
2450   }{% If we are on a left column
2451     \@tempdima=\@morespace@rightnote@leftcolumn%
2452   }{%
2453     \@tempdima=\z@%
2454   }%
2455   \hb@xt@ \z@{\hskip\@tempdima\kern\ledrsnotesep\box\l@drp@rbox\hss}%
2456 }%
2457
2458 %

```

**\ledllfill** These macros are called at the left (**\ledllfill**) and the right (**\ledrlfill**) of each numbered line. The initial definitions correspond to the original code for **\do@line**.

**\ledrlfill**

```

2459 \newcommand*{\ledllfill}{\hfil}
2460 \newcommand*{\ledrlfill}{\hfil}
2461
2462 %

```

## VIII Line and page number computation

**\getline@num** The **\getline@num** macro determines the page and line numbers for the line we are about to send to the vertical list.

```

2463 \newcommand*{\getline@num}{%
2464   \global\advance\absline@num \@ne%
2465   \do@actions
2466   \do@ballast
2467   \ifnumberline
2468     \ifsublines@
2469       \ifnum\sub@lock<\tw@
2470         \global\advance\subline@num \@ne
2471       \fi
2472     \else
2473       \ifnum\@lock<\tw@
2474         \global\advance\line@num \@ne
2475         \global\subline@num \z@
2476       \fi
2477     \fi
2478   \fi
2479 }
2480 %

```

`\do@ballast` The real work in the macro above is done in `\do@actions`, but before we plunge into that, let's get `\do@ballast` out of the way. This macro looks to see if there is an action to be performed on the *next* line, and if it is going to be a page break action, `\do@ballast` decreases the count `\ballast@count` counter by the amount of ballast. This means, in practice, that when `\add@penalties` assigns penalties at this point, T<sub>E</sub>X will be given extra encouragement to break the page here (see XII.2 p. 182).

`\ballast@count` First we set up the required counters; they are initially set to zero, and will remain so  
`\c@ballast` unless you type `\setcounter{ballast}{some figure}` in your document.

```

2481 \newcount\ballast@count
2482 \newcounter{ballast}
2483 \setcounter{ballast}{0}
2484 %

```

And here is `\do@ballast` itself. It advances `\absline@num` within the protection of a group to make its check for what happens on the next line.

```

2485 \newcommand*{\do@ballast}{\global\ballast@count \z@
2486   \begingroup
2487     \advance\absline@num \@ne
2488     \ifnum\next@actionline=\absline@num
2489       \ifnum\next@action>-1001\relax
2490         \global\advance\ballast@count by -\c@ballast
2491       \fi
2492     \fi
2493   \endgroup}
2494 %

```



`\do@actions`    The `\do@actions` macro looks at the list of actions to take at particular absolute line numbers, and does everything that is specified for the current line.

`\do@actions@next`

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using  $\TeX$ 's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\do@actions@next` that is always the last thing that `\do@actions` does. If there could be more actions to process for this line, `\do@actions@next` is set equal to `\do@actions`; otherwise it is just `\relax`.

```

2495 \newcommand*{\do@actions}{%
2496   \global\let\do@actions@next=\relax
2497   \ifnum\absline@num<\next@actionline\else
2498   %

```

First, page number changes, which will generally be the most common actions. If we are restarting lineation on each page, this is where it happens.

```

2499   \ifnum\next@action>-1001
2500     \global\page@num=\next@action
2501     \ifresumenumbering@start%
2502       \setbox0=\hbox{}}%Required to get the correct page number, when the
\resumenumbering is just after a \newpage
2503       \ifnum\pausenumbering@page@num<\page@num%
2504         \global\resumenumbering@startfalse%
2505       \fi%
2506     \fi%
2507     \ifboolexpr{%
2508       bool{resumenumbering@start}%
2509       and test {\ifdimgreater{\pagedepth}{\z@}}}%
2510     }%
2511     {}%
2512     {\global\@firstlineofpagetrue}%
2513     \ifcsdef{reset@line\the\absline@num @\the\section@num}%
2514     {%
2515       \global\line@num=\z@%
2516       \global\subline@num=\z@%
2517       \resetprevline@%
2518     }%
2519     {}%
2520     \global\resumenumbering@startfalse%
2521     \add@msdata@firstlineofpage%
2522   %

```

Next, we handle commands that change the line-number values. (We subtract 5001 rather than 5000 here because the line number is going to be incremented automatically in `\getline@num`.)

```

2523   \else
2524     \ifnum\next@action<-4999
2525       \@l@tempcnta=-\next@action
2526       \advance\@l@tempcnta by -5001
2527       \ifsublines@
2528         \global\subline@num=\@l@tempcnta

```

```

2529     \else
2530         \global\line@num=\@l@dttempcnta
2531     \fi
2532 %

```

We rescale the value in \@l@dttempcnta so that we can use a case statement.

```

2533     \else
2534         \@l@dttempcnta=-\next@action
2535         \advance\@l@dttempcnta by -1000
2536         \do@actions@fixedcode
2537     \fi
2538 \fi
2539 %

```

Now we get information about the next action off the list, and then set \do@actions@next so that we will call ourself recursively: the next action might also be for this line.

There is no warning if we find \actionlines@list empty, since that will always happen near the end of the section.

```

2540     \ifx\actionlines@list\empty
2541         \gdef\next@actionline{1000000}%
2542     \else
2543         \gl@p\actionlines@list\to\next@actionline
2544         \gl@p\actions@list\to\next@action
2545         \global\let\do@actions@next=\do@actions
2546     \fi
2547 \fi
2548 %

```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```

2549 \do@actions@next}
2550
2551 %

```

**\do@actions@fixedcode** This macro handles the fixed codes for \do@actions. It is one big case statement.

```

2552 \newcommand*{\do@actions@fixedcode}{%
2553     \ifcase\@l@dttempcnta
2554     \or% % 1001 = starting sublineation
2555         \global\sublines@true
2556     \or% % 1002 = ending sublineation
2557         \global\sublines@false
2558     \or% % 1003 = starting locking number
2559         \global\@lock=\@one
2560     \or% % 1004 = ending locking number
2561         \ifnum\@lock=\tw@
2562             \global\@lock=\thr@@
2563         \else
2564             \global\@lock=\z@
2565         \fi

```

```

2566 \or% % 1005 = starting locking subnumber
2567 \global\sub@lock=\@ne
2568 \or% % 1006 = ending locking subnumber
2569 \ifnum\sub@lock=\tw@
2570 \global\sub@lock=\thr@@
2571 \else
2572 \global\sub@lock=\z@
2573 \fi
2574 \or% % 1007 = skipping numbering
2575 \l@dskipnumbertrue
2576 \or% % 1008 = skipping numbering in stanza
2577 \l@dskipversenumbertrue%
2578 \or% % 1009 = hiding number
2579 \l@dhidenumbertrue
2580 \or% % 1010 = inserting msdata
2581 \add@msdata%
2582 \else
2583 \led@warn@BadAction
2584 \fi}
2585
2586
2587 %

```

## VIII.1 Continuous line numbering between parallel typesetting and normal typesetting

`\sync@linenumber@singletext`

The `\continuousnumberingwithcolumns` option allows to alternate between single text and two parallel texts, keeping the same line numbers when switching from one layout to the other. The lines counter for the text in a single column and for the text in the left column in parallel typesetting is the same. But the lines counter for the text in the same column is not the same.

When typesetting single column text, if the option is enabled, we need to “simulate” typesetting right line, in order to keep the two counters synchronized. That is the aim of the

`\continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext` macro.

```

2588 \newcommand{\continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext}{%
2589 \ifcontinuousnumberingwithcolumns%
2590 \unless\ifafterendnumberingR%
2591 \new@lineR%
2592 \xappto\next@line@list@stuffR{%
2593 \unexpanded{\global\line@numR=}\the\line@num%
2594 }%
2595 \fi%
2596 \fi%
2597 }%
2598 %

```

## IX Line number annotation

The `\linenumannotation` allows users to add manual annotations to line numbers, for example to refer to line numbers from an older edition.

That implies that annotations be added

- in marginal line numbers. This feature is implemented by associating annotations with the absolute line numbers when reading the auxiliary numbered files (.1, .2 etc.).
- in critical footnotes. This feature is implemented by associating start / end line number annotations with each `\edtext` when reading the auxiliary numbered files.
- to crossref commands which refer to line numbers (to be completed when I will have resolved this issue).

`\linenumannotation` First, the user-level command, which only writes commands to the numbered files, storing the annotation.

```

2599 \newcommand{\linenumannotation}[1]{%
2600   \leavevmode%In case it begins with a \pstart, ensure the \@annot is
written after \@nl
2601   \ifledRcol%
2602     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@annot[#1]}%
2603   \else%
2604     \write\linenum@out{\string\@annot[#1]}%
2605   \fi%
2606 }%
2607 %

```

`\Xlinenumannotationposition@side` The `\Xlinenumannotationposition@side` macro, to determine the position of line number annotations in lines printed in the side, relative to the line number position. The default value is “after”, but it can be changed to “before”, using the `\Xlinenumannotationposition` macro.

```

2608 \def\Xlinenumannotationposition@side{after}%
2609 %

```

`\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref` The `\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref` macro is applied to line annotations in crossref.

`\Xwraplinenumannotation@side` The `\Xwraplinenumannotation@side` macro is applied to line annotation in sides. They must be modified by users using `\Xwraplinenumannotation`. By default, they call `\textsuperscript`.

We also define toggle `Xnoidenticallylinenumannotation@ref` and `Xnoidenticallylinenumannotation@side`

```

2610 \def\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref{\textsuperscript}%
2611 \def\Xwraplinenumannotation@side{\textsuperscript}%
2612 \newtoggle{Xnoidenticallylinenumannotation@ref}%
2613 \newtoggle{Xnoidenticallylinenumannotation@side}%
2614 %

```

`\@annot` Then, the numbered files command `\@annot`, which

`\store@annot@to@absline`

- associates the annotation to the absolute lines number.
- stores the current annotation in a macro to be used by the `\@ref@reg` macro, which manages all things related to `\edtext` in numbered files. As we don't want to store it multiple times in the event of nested `\edtext`, we use an auxiliary macro, `\store@annot@to@absline`, which is set to `\@gobble` when we parse nested `\edtext` in numbered auxiliary files.

```

2615 \newcommand{\@annot}[1]{%
2616   \store@annot@to@absline{#1}%
2617   \def\current@annot{#1}%
2618 }%
2619 \newcommand{\store@annot@to@absline}[1]{%
2620   \ifledRcol%
2621     \ifcsdef{annotR@the\absline@numR @the\section@numR}{%
2622       \csgappto{annotR@the\absline@numR @the\section@numR}{\
@linenumannotationsep#1}%
2623     }{%
2624       \csgdef{annotR@the\absline@numR @the\section@numR}{#1}%
2625     }%
2626   \else%
2627     \ifcsdef{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}{%
2628       \csgappto{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}{\
@linenumannotationsep#1}%
2629     }{%
2630       \csgdef{annot@the\absline@num @the\section@num}{#1}%
2631     }%
2632   \fi%
2633 }%
2634 %

```

`\current@annot` By default, there is no annotation to a line number, so we store an empty `\current@annot`

```

2635 \let\current@annot=\empty%
2636 %

```

`\reset@current@annot` `\reset@current@annot` is called at each `\@n1` in numbered auxiliary files. It resets the annotation of line numbers at each line.

```

2637 \newcommand{\reset@current@annot}{%
2638   \unless\ifnoresetlinenumannotation@
2639     \let\current@annot\empty%
2640   \fi
2641 }%
2642 %

```

`\parse@annot` In the `\annot@list` list, each individual `\edtext` is associated with a starting and an ending line number annotation, which is stored this way: `start annotation|end annotation`. The `\parse@annot` reads the format and defines two global macros.

```
2643 \def\parse@annot#1|#2|{%
2644   \gdef\annot@start{#1}%
2645   \gdef\annot@end{#2}%
2646 }%
2647 %
```

`\setlinenumannotationsep` The separator between the annotations and the way to redefine it.

```
\@linenumannotationsep
2648 \newcommand{\setlinenumannotationsep}[1]{\gdef\@linenumannotationsep{#1}}%
2649 \def\@linenumannotationsep{, }%
2650 %
```

## X Line number printing

`\affixline@num` `\affixline@num` just puts a left line number into `\l@dld@ta` or a right line number into `\l@drd@ta` as required.

To determine whether we need to affix a line number to this line, we compute the following:

$$n = \text{int}((\text{linenum} - \text{firstlinenum}) / \text{linenumincrement})$$

$$m = \text{firstlinenum} + (n \times \text{linenumincrement})$$

(where *int* truncates a real number to an integer). *m* will be equal to *linenum* only if we are to paste a number on here. However, the formula breaks down for the first line to number (and any before that), so we check that case separately: if `\line@num ≤ \firstlinenum`, we compare the two directly instead of making these calculations.

We compute, in the scratch counter `\@l@tempcnta`, the number of the next line that should be printed with a number (*m* in the above discussion), and move the current line number into the counter `\@l@tempcntb` for comparison.

First, the case when we are within a sub-line range.

```
2651 \newcommand*{\affixline@num}{%
2652 %
```

No number is attached if `\ifl@dskipnumber` is TRUE (and then it is set to its normal FALSE value). No number is attached if `\ifnumberline` is FALSE (the normal value is TRUE).

```
2653 \ifl@groupnotesL@else
2654   \ifnumberline
2655     \ifl@dskipnumber
2656       \global\l@dskipnumberfalse
2657     \else
2658       \ifsublines@
2659         \@l@tempcntb=\subline@num
```

```

2660         \ifnum\subline@num>\c@firstsublinenum
2661             \@l@tempcnta=\subline@num
2662             \advance\@l@tempcnta by-\c@firstsublinenum
2663             \divide\@l@tempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
2664             \multiply\@l@tempcnta by\c@sublinenumincrement
2665             \advance\@l@tempcnta by\c@firstsublinenum
2666         \else
2667             \@l@tempcnta=\c@firstsublinenum
2668         \fi
2669     %

```

That takes care of computing the values for comparison, but if line number locking is in effect we have to make a further check. If this check fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```

2670         \chcksubl@ck
2671     %

```

Now the line number case, which works the same way.

```

2672         \else
2673             \@l@tempcntb=\line@num
2674     %

```

Check on the `\linenumberlist` If it is `\empty` use the standard algorithm.

```

2675         \ifx\linenumberlist\empty
2676             \ifnum\line@num>\c@firstlinenum
2677                 \@l@tempcnta=\line@num
2678                 \advance\@l@tempcnta by-\c@firstlinenum
2679                 \divide\@l@tempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
2680                 \multiply\@l@tempcnta by\c@linenumincrement
2681                 \advance\@l@tempcnta by\c@firstlinenum
2682             \else
2683                 \@l@tempcnta=\c@firstlinenum
2684             \fi
2685         \else
2686     %

```

The `\linenumberlist` was not `\empty`, so here is Wayne's numbering mechanism. This takes place in  $\TeX$ 's mouth.

```

2687             \@l@tempcnta=\line@num
2688             \edef\rem@inder{\,\linenumberlist,\number\line@num,}%
2689             \edef\sc@n@list{\def\noexpand\sc@n@list
2690                 ###1,\number\@l@tempcnta,###2|{\def\noexpand\rem@inder
2691 {####2}}}%
2692             \sc@n@list\expandafter\sc@n@list\rem@inder|
2693             \ifx\rem@inder\empty%
2694                 \advance\@l@tempcnta@ne
2695             \fi
2696     %

```

A locking check for lines, just like the version for sub-line numbers above.

```
2697     \ch@ck@l@ck
2698     \fi
2699 %
```

The following tests are true if we need to print a line number.

```
2700     \ifnum\@l@dttempcnta=\@l@dttempcntb
2701     \ifl@dskipversenumber\else
2702 %
```

If we got here, we are going to print a line number; so now we need to calculate a number that will tell us which side of the page will get the line number. We start from `\line@margin`, which asks for one side always if it is less than 2; and then if the side does depend on the page number, we simply add the page number to this side code—because the values of `\line@margin` have been devised so that this produces a number that is even for left-margin numbers and odd for right-margin numbers.

For  $\text{\LaTeX}$  we have to consider two column documents as well. In this case Peter Wilson thought we need to put the numbers at the outside of the column — the left of the first column and the right of the second. Do the twocolumn stuff before going on with the original code.

`\l@dld@ta` A left line number is stored in `\l@dld@ta` and a right one in `\l@drd@ta`.

```
\l@drd@ta
2703     \if@twocolumn
2704     \if@firstcolumn
2705         \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftlinenum}}%
2706     \else
2707         \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightlinenum}}%
2708     \fi
2709 \else
2710     \ifboolexpr{bool {l@dprintingcolumns} and test {\
ifnumgreater{\line@margin@columns}{\m@ne}}}%
2711         {\@l@dttempcntb=\line@margin@columns}%
2712         {\@l@dttempcntb=\line@margin}%
2713     \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\@ne
2714         \advance\@l@dttempcntb \page@num
2715     \fi
2716     \ifboolexpr{%
2717         bool {l@dprintingcolumns}%
2718         and (%
2719             (test {\ifdefstring{\linenum@OnlyPages@ForColumns}{left
}}%
2720             and test {\ifnumodd{\page@num}}%
2721             )%
2722             or%
2723             (test {\ifdefstring{\linenum@OnlyPages@ForColumns}{right
}}%
2724             and not test {\ifnumodd{\page@num}}%
2725             )%
```



```

2726         )%
2727     }%
2728     {}%
2729     {%
2730         \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
2731             \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{{\rightlinenum}}}%
2732         \else%
2733             \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{{\leftlinenum}}}%
2734         \fi%
2735     }%
2736     \fi
2737 \fi
2738 \fi
2739 %

```

Now fix the lock counters, if necessary. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

2740     \f@x@l@cks
2741     \fi
2742     \fi
2743     \fi
2744 }
2745 %
2746 %

```

`\ch@cksub@l@ck` These macros handle line number locking for `\affixline@num`. `\ch@cksub@l@ck` checks subline locking. If it fails, then we disable the line-number display by setting the counters to arbitrary but unequal values.

```

2747 \newcommand*{\ch@cksub@l@ck}{%
2748     \ifcase\sub@lock
2749     \or
2750         \ifnum\sublock@disp=\@ne
2751             \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2752         \fi
2753     \or
2754         \ifnum\sublock@disp=\tw@ \else
2755             \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2756         \fi
2757     \or
2758         \ifnum\sublock@disp=\z@
2759             \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2760         \fi
2761     \fi}
2762 %

```

Similarly for line numbers.

```

2763 \newcommand*{\ch@ck@l@ck}{%
2764     \ifcase\@lock

```

```

2765     \or
2766     \ifnum\lock@disp=\@ne
2767         \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2768     \fi
2769     \or
2770     \ifnum\lock@disp=\tw@ \else
2771         \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2772     \fi
2773     \or
2774     \ifnum\lock@disp=\z@
2775         \@l@tempcntb=\z@ \@l@tempcnta=\@ne
2776     \fi
2777 \fi}
2778 %

```

Fix the lock counters. A value of 1 is advanced to 2; 3 advances to 0; other values are unchanged.

```

2779 \newcommand*{\f@x@l@cks}{%
2780     \ifcase\@lock
2781     \or
2782         \global\@lock=\tw@
2783     \or \or
2784         \global\@lock=\z@
2785     \fi
2786     \ifcase\sub@lock
2787     \or
2788         \global\sub@lock=\tw@
2789     \or \or
2790         \global\sub@lock=\z@
2791     \fi}
2792 %
2793 %

```

## XI Pstart number printing inside

Inside, the printing of the pstart number runs like the printing of the line number. There are only a few differences:

`\affixpstart@num`  
`\pstartnum`

- The pstarts counter is upgraded in the `\pend` command. Consequently, the `\affixpstart@num` command has not to upgrade it, unlike the `\affixline@num` which upgrades the lines counter.
- To print the pstart number only at the beginning of a pstart, and not in every line, a boolean test is made. The `\pstartnum` boolean is set to TRUE at every `\pend`. It is tried in the `\leftpstartnum` and `\rightpstartnum` commands. After the try, it is set to FALSE.

```

\leftstartnum34
\rightstartnum35
\ifsidestartnum36
2797   \newif\ifsidestartnum
2798   \newcommand*{\affixpstart@num}{%
2799       \ifsidestartnum
2800       \if@twocolumn
2801           \if@firstcolumn
2802               \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftstartnum}}}%
2803           \else
2804               \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightstartnum}}}%
2805           \fi
2806       \else
2807           \@l@tempcntb=\line@margin%
2808           \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne
2809               \advance\@l@tempcntb \page@num
2810           \fi
2811           \ifodd\@l@tempcntb
2812               \gdef\l@drd@ta{\rlap{\rightstartnum}}}%
2813           \else
2814               \gdef\l@dld@ta{\llap{\leftstartnum}}}%
2815           \fi
2816       \fi
2817   }
2818   %
2819
2820   \newif\ifpstartnum
2821   \pstartnumtrue
2822   \newcommand*{\leftpstartnum}{
2823       \ifpstartnum\thepstart
2824       \kern\linenumsep\fi
2825       \global\pstartnumfalse
2826   }
2827   \newcommand*{\rightpstartnum}{
2828       \ifpstartnum
2829       \kern\linenumsep
2830       \thepstart
2831       \fi
2832       \global\pstartnumfalse
2833   }
2834   %

```

## XII Restoring footnotes and penalties

Because of the paragraph decomposition process in order to number line, `reledmac` must hack the standard way  $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{E}}\mathrm{X}$  works in order to manage insertion of footnotes, both critical and familiar.

We need to call the `\insert` commands not when the content of `\pstart... \pend`

is read by  $\text{\TeX}$  by when each individual line is typeset.

Consequently, when reading the content of `\pstart... \pend`, we store the insertion (footnotes) in an specific `reledmac`'s list, and we restore them to the vertical list when printing each individual line.

## XII.1 Add insertions to the vertical list

`\inserts@list` `\inserts@list` is the list macro that contains the inserts that we save up for one paragraph.

```
2835 \list@create{\inserts@list}
2836 %
```

`\add@inserts` `\add@inserts` is the penultimate macro used by `\do@line`; it takes insertions saved in a list macro and sends them onto the vertical list.

It may call itself recursively, and to do this efficiently (using  $\text{\TeX}$ 's optimization for tail recursion), we define a control-sequence called `\add@inserts@next` that is always the last thing that `\add@inserts` does. If there could be more inserts to process for this line, `\add@inserts@next` is set equal to `\add@inserts`; otherwise it is just `\relax`.

```
2837 \newcommand*{\add@inserts}{%
2838   \global\let\add@inserts@next=\relax
2839   %
```

If `\inserts@list` is empty, there are not any more notes or insertions for this paragraph, and we need not waste our time.

```
2840   \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else
2841   %
```

The `\next@insert` macro records the number of the line that receives the next footnote or other insert; it is empty when we start out, and just after we have affixed a note or insert.

```
2842   \ifx\next@insert\empty
2843     \ifx\insertlines@list\empty
2844       \global\noteschanged@true
2845       \gdef\next@insert{100000}%
2846     \else
2847       \gl@p\insertlines@list\to\next@insert
2848     \fi
2849   \fi
2850   %
```

If the next insert's for this line, tack it on (and then erase the contents of the insert macro, as it could be quite large). In that case, we also set `\add@inserts@next` so that we will call ourself recursively: there might be another insert for this same line.

```
2851   \ifnum\next@insert=\absline@num
2852     \gl@p\inserts@list\to\@insert
2853     \@insert
```

```

2854 \global\let\@insert=\undefined
2855 \global\let\next@insert=\empty
2856 \global\let\add@inserts@next=\add@inserts
2857 \fi
2858 \fi
2859 %

```

Make the recursive call, if necessary.

```

2860 \add@inserts@next}
2861
2862 %

```

**\add@Xgroupbyline** If you use \Xgroupbyline, the insertion of the critical footnotes are not made immediately in \add@inserts, but the content to be inserted is stored, in order to be inserted later in one block. This insertion in one block is made by \add@Xgroupbyline.

```

2863 \newcommand{\add@Xgroupbyline}{%
2864 \unless\ifnocritical@%
2865 \def\do##1{%Looping on the series
2866 \let\olddo\do%Save the old \do macro, that is this macro itself!
2867 \def\do####1{%Looping on the ##1@forinserting command
2868 \ifcsdef{##1@forinserting@####1}{%
2869 \X@beforeinsertion{##1}%
2870 \if@ledgroup%
2871 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp##1footins}=\vbox%
2872 \else%
2873 \insert\csname ##1footins\endcsname%
2874 \fi%
2875 {%
2876 \Xsetparindent{##1}%
2877 \ifcsdef{Xhsize\csuse{series@display##1}@##1}%
2878 {\hsize \csuse{Xhsize\csuse{series@display##1}@##1}}%
2879 }%
2880 \if@ledgroup%
2881 \unvbox\@nameuse{mp##1footins}%
2882 \fi%
2883 \X@atbegininsertion{##1}%
2884 \ifcsstring{series@display##1}{normal}%
2885 {%
2886 \Xledsetnormalparstuff{##1}%
2887 \rule\z@\splittopskip%
2888 }%
2889 }%
2890 \csuse{##1@forinserting@####1}%
2891 \strut\par%
2892 }%
2893 \global\csundef{##1@forinserting@####1}%
2894 }%
2895 }%
2896 }%

```

```

2897 \ifcsdef{##1@forinserting}{%
2898 \dolistcsloop{##1@forinserting}%
2899 }{}%
2900 \global\csundef{##1@forinserting}%
2901 \let\do\olddo%Restore old do
2902 }%
2903 \dolistloop{\@series}%
2904 \fi%
2905 }%
2906
2907
2908 %

```

## XII.2 Penalties

**\add@penalties** \add@penalties is the last macro used by \do@line. It adds up the club, widow, and interline penalties, and puts a single penalty of the appropriate size back into the paragraph; these penalties get removed by the \vsplit operation. \displaywidowpenalty and \brokenpenalty are not restored, since we have no easy way to find out where we should insert them.

In this code, \num@lines is the number of lines in the whole paragraph, and \par@line is the line we are working on at the moment. The count \@l@tempcnta is used to calculate and accumulate the penalty; it is initially set to the value of \ballast@count, which has been worked out in \do@ballast above (VIII p. 168). Finally, the penalty is checked to see that it does not go below  $-10000$ .

```

2909 \newcommand*{\add@penalties}{\@l@tempcnta=\ballast@count
2910 \ifnum\num@lines>\@ne
2911 \global\advance\par@line \@ne
2912 \ifnum\par@line=\@ne
2913 \advance\@l@tempcnta \clubpenalty
2914 \fi
2915 \@l@tempcntb=\par@line \advance\@l@tempcntb \@ne
2916 \ifnum\@l@tempcntb=\num@lines
2917 \advance\@l@tempcnta \widowpenalty
2918 \fi
2919 \ifnum\par@line<\num@lines
2920 \advance\@l@tempcnta \interlinepenalty
2921 \fi
2922 \fi
2923 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta=\z@
2924 \relax
2925 \else
2926 \ifnum\@l@tempcnta>-10000
2927 \penalty\@l@tempcnta
2928 \else
2929 \penalty -10000
2930 \fi
2931 \fi}

```

```
2932 %
2933 %
```

### XII.3 Printing leftover notes

**\flush@notes** The `\flush@notes` macro is called after the entire paragraph has been sliced up and sent on to the vertical list. If the number of notes to this paragraph has increased since the previous run of  $\TeX$ , then there can be leftover notes that have not yet been printed. An appropriate error message will be printed elsewhere; but it is best to go ahead and print these notes somewhere, even if it is not in quite the right place. What we do is dump them all out here, so that they should be printed on the same page as the last line of the paragraph. We can hope that is not too far from the proper location, to which they will move on the next run. For the first run, we do not flush the notes, as that means all the notes will be added at the end of numbered section, and so, very far of the expected position

```
2934 \newcommand*{\flush@notes}{%
2935   \iftoggle{notfirstrun@jobname.\extensionchars\the\section@num}{%
2936     \xloop%
2937     \ifx\inserts@list\empty \else%
2938       \gl@p\inserts@list\to\@insert%
2939       \@insert%
2940       \global\let\@insert=\undefined%
2941     \repeat%
2942   }{}%
2943 }%
2944
2945 %
2946 %
```

**\xloop** `\xloop` is a variant of the PLAIN  $\TeX$  `\loop` macro, useful when it's hard to construct a positive test using the  $\TeX$  `\if` commands—as in `\flush@notes` above. One types `\xloop ... \if ... \else ... \repeat`, and the action following `\else` is repeated as long as the `\if` test fails. (This macro will work wherever the PLAIN  $\TeX$  `\loop` is used, too, so we could just call it `\loop`; but it seems preferable not to change the definitions of any of the standard macros.)

This variant of `\loop` was introduced by Alois Kabsch in *TUGboat* 8 (1987), pp. 184–5.

```
2947 \def\xloop#1\repeat{%
2948   \def\body{#1\expandafter\body\fi}%
2949   \body}
2950
2951 %
```

## XII.4 Text before notes

**\set@Xtxtbeforenotes** The `\set@Xtxtbeforenotes` macro resets the `Xtxtbeforenotes@⟨series⟩@typeset` boolean to false. Just before the first note of the `⟨series⟩` in a page, the `\Xtextbeforenotes` will be inserted.

```

2952 \newcommand{\set@Xtxtbeforenotes}{%
2953   \unless\ifnocritical{%
2954     \def\do##1{%
2955       \nottoggle{Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce@##1}{%
2956         \global\togglefalse{Xtxtbeforenotes@##1@typeset}%
2957       }{}%
2958     }%
2959     \dolistloop{\@series}%
2960   \fi%
2961 }%
2962 %

```

**\set@txtbeforenotesX** The `\set@txtbeforenotesX` does the same for the `\textbeforenotesX`.

```

2963 \newcommand{\set@txtbeforenotesX}{%
2964   \unless\ifnofamiliar{%
2965     \def\do##1{%
2966       \nottoggle{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX@##1}{%
2967         \global\togglefalse{txtbeforenotesX@##1@typeset}%
2968       }{}%
2969     }%
2970     \dolistloop{\@series}%
2971   \fi%
2972 }%
2973 %

```

**\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes** `\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{⟨series⟩}`, called when inserting a familiar footnote, will insert the text before the note if it is not already inserted. For paragraphed footnotes, it will insert it as a component of the first footnote. For other types of footnotes, it will insert it as a regular footnote.

`\insert@txtbeforenotesX` is the same for familiar footnotes.

```

2974 \newcommand{\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes}[1]{%
2975   \nottoggle{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1@typeset}{%
2976     \global\toggletrue{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1@typeset}%
2977     \ifcvoid{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}{%
2978       \ifcsstring{series@display#1}{paragraph}%
2979       {\noindent\cuse{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}}%
2980       {\expandafter\insert\cename#1footins\endcename%
2981         \bgroup%
2982         \noindent%
2983         \ifcsdef{\cuse{series@display#1}@begin@insert}{%
2984           \cuse{\cuse{series@display#1}@begin@insert}{#1}%
2985         }{}%

```



```

2986         \strut\csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
2987         \csuse{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}%
2988     \egroup%
2989 }%
2990 }%
2991 }%
2992 {}%
2993 }%
2994
2995
2996 \newcommand{\insert@txtbeforenotesX}[1]{%
2997     \nottoggle{txtbeforenotesX@#1@typeset}{%
2998         \global\toggletrue{txtbeforenotesX@#1@typeset}%
2999         \ifcsvoid{txtbeforenotesX@#1}{%
3000             \ifcsstring{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}%
3001             {\noindent\csuse{txtbeforenotesX@#1}}%
3002             {\expandafter\insert\csname footins#1\endcsname%
3003                 \bgroup%
3004                 \noindent%
3005                 \ifcsdef{\csuse{series@displayX#1}@begin@insert}{%
3006                     \csuse{\csuse{series@displayX#1}@begin@insert}{#1}%
3007                 }{}%
3008                 \strut\csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}\csuse{txtbeforenotesX@#1}%
3009                 \egroup%
3010             }%
3011         }%
3012     }%
3013 {}%
3014 }%
3015
3016 %
3017 %

```

## XIII Critical footnotes

The footnote macros are adapted from those in PLAIN  $\text{\TeX}$ , but they differ in these respects: the outer-level commands must add other commands to a list macro rather than doing insertions immediately; there are many separate levels of the footnotes, not just one; and there are options to reformat footnotes into paragraphs or into multiple columns.

### XIII.1 Fonts

Before getting into the details of formatting the notes, we set up some font macros. It is the notes that present the greatest challenge for our font-handling mechanism, because we need to be able to take fragments of our main text and print them in different forms: it is common to reduce the size, for example, without otherwise changing the fonts used.

`\select@lemmafont` `\select@lemmafont` is provided to set the right font for the lemma in a note. This macro extracts the font specifier from the line and page number cluster, and issues the associated font-changing command, so that the lemma is printed in its original font.

```

3018 \def\select@lemmafont#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{\select@lemmafont#7|}
3019 \def\select@@lemmafont#1/#2/#3/#4|{%
3020   {\fontencoding{#1}\fontfamily{#2}\fontseries{#3}\fontshape{#4}%
3021    \selectfont}
3022
3023 %

```

### XIII.2 Individual note options

`\footnoteoptions@` The `\footnoteoption@[<side>]{<options>}{<value>}` changes the value of on options of Xfootnote, to switch between true and false.

```

3024 \newcommand*\footnoteoptions@[3]{%
3025   \def\do##1{%
3026     \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{% On the left side
3027       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\setkeys[mac]{#3footnoteoption}{\
3028         unexpanded{##1}}}{\to\inserts@list%
3029         \global\advance\insert@count \@ne% Increment the left insert
3030         counter.
3031         }%
3032         }%
3033       \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\setkeys[mac]{#3footnoteoption}{\
3034         unexpanded{##1}}}{\to\inserts@listR%
3035         \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne% Increment the right insert
3036         counter insert.
3037         }%
3038         }%
3039       \notblank{#2}{\docsvlist{#2}}}% Parsing all options
3040   }
3041 %

```

### XIII.3 Notes language

`\footnotelang@lua` `\footnotelang@lua` is called to remember the information about the direction of a lemma when Lua<sub>TEX</sub> is used.

```

3038 \newcommandx*\footnotelang@lua[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
3039   \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
3040     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}}}{\to\
3041     inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma
3042     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3043     \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}}}{\to\
3044     inserts@list%Know the dir of lemma
3045     \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3046     }%
3047   }%

```

```

3045 {%
3046 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexttextdir}{\the\textdir}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the dir of lemma
3047 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3048 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the dir of lemma
3049 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3050 }%
3051 }
3052 %

```

`\footnotelang@poly` `\footnotelang@poly` is called to remember the information about the language of a lemma when polyglossia is used.

```

3053 \newcommand*{\footnotelang@poly}[1][1=L,usedefault]{%
3054 \ifstrequal{#1}{L}{%
3055 \if@RTL%
3056 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language used in the lemma
3057 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3058 \else
3059 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
3060 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3061 \fi%
3062 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\expandonce\language}}}\
to\inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
3063 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
3064 }%
3065 {%
3066 \if@RTL
3067 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLtrue}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
3068 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3069 \else
3070 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@dir}{@RTLfalse}}}\to\
inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
3071 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3072 \fi
3073 \xright@appenditem{{\csxdef{footnote@lang}{\expandonce\language}}}\
to\inserts@listR%Know the language of lemma
3074 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
3075 }%
3076 }
3077 %

```

### XIII.4 General survey of the way we manage notes

The processing of each note is done by four principal macros: the `\vfootnote` macro takes the text of the footnote and does the `\insert`; it calls on the `\footfmt` macro

to select the right fonts, print the line number and lemma, and do any other formatting needed for that individual note. Within the output routine, the two other macros, `\footstart` and `\footgroup`, are called; the first prints extra vertical space and a footnote rule, if desired; the second does any reformatting of the whole set of the footnotes in this series for this page—such as paragraphing or division into columns—and then sends them to the page.

These four macros, and the other macros and parameters shown here, are distinguished by the ‘series letter’ that indicates which set of the footnotes we are dealing with—A, B, C, D, or E. The series letter always precedes the string `foot` in macro and parameter names. Hence, for the A series, the four macros are called `\Afootnote`, `\Afootfmt`, `\Afootstart`, and `\Afootgroup`.

These macros are changed depending of the footnotes arrangement: “normal”, “paragraphed”, “two columns” or “three columns”.

### XIII.5 General setup

`\footsplitskips` Some setup code that is common for a variety of the footnotes. The setup is for:

- `\interlinepenalty`.
- `\splittopskip` (skip before last part of notes that flow from one page to another).
- `\splitmaxdepth`.
- `\floatingpenalty`, that is penalty values being added when a long note flows from one page to another. Here, we let it to 0 when we are processing parallel pages in `eledpar`, in order to allow notes to flow from left to right pages and *vice-versa*. Otherwise, we let it to `\@MM`, which is the standard  $\TeX$  `\floatingpenalty`.

```

3078 \newcommand*{\footsplitskips}{%
3079   \interlinepenalty=\interfootnotelinepenalty
3080   \unless\ifl@dprintingpages%
3081     \floatingpenalty=\@MM%
3082   \fi%
3083   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox \splitmaxdepth=\dp\strutbox
3084   \leftskip=\z@skip \rightskip=\z@skip}
3085
3086 %
```

`\normalfootnoterule` `\normalfootnoterule` is a standard footnote-rule macro, for use by a `footstart` macro: just the same as the PLAIN  $\TeX$  footnote rule.

```

3087 \let\normalfootnoterule=\footnoterule
3088 %
```

## XIII.6 Footnotes arrangement

### XIII.6.1 User level macro

**\Xarrangement**  $\langle s \rangle \{ \langle arrangement \rangle \}$  The command calls, for each series, a specific command which set many counters and commands in order to define specific arrangement.

```

3089 \newcommand{\Xarrangement}[2][1,usedefault]{%
3090   \def\do##1{%
3091     \csname Xarrangement@#2\endcsname{##1}%
3092   }%
3093   \ifstrempy{#1}%
3094     {%
3095       \dolistloop{\@series}%
3096     }%
3097     {
3098       \docsvlist{#1}%
3099     }%
3100 }%
3101 %

```

### XIII.6.2 Normal footnote

**\Xarrangement@normal** We can now define all the parameters for the series of footnotes; initially they use the “normal” footnote formatting.

What we want to do here is to insert something like the following for each footnote series. (This is an example, not part of the actual `reledmac` code.)

```

\skip\Afootins=12pt plus5pt minus5pt
\count\Afootins=1000
\dimen\Afootins=0.8\vsiz
\let\vAfootnote=\normalvfootnote \let\Afootfmt=\normalfootfmt
\let\Afootstart=\normalfootstart \let\Afootgroup=\normalfootgroup
\let\Afootnoterule=\normalfootnoterule

```

(Read *The TeXbook* in order to understand what are the counter, skip and dimen associated to an insertion.)

Instead of repeating ourselves, we define a `\Xarrangement@normal` macro that makes all these assignments for us, for any given series letter. This command is called when people use `\Xarrangement[ $\langle series \rangle$ ]{normal}`

Now we set up the `\Xarrangement@normal` macro itself. It takes one argument: the footnote series letter.

```

3102 \newcommand*\Xarrangement@normal[1]{%
3103   \csgdef{series@display#1}{normal}
3104   \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\normalfootstart
3105   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\normalvfootnote
3106   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\normalfootfmt

```

```

3107 \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\normalfootgroup
3108 \expandafter\let\csname #1footnoterule\endcsname=
3109 \normalfootnoterule
3110 \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
3111 \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
3112 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3113 \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3114 %

```

The `reledpar` provides tools in order to confine notes to one side. The mechanism is explained in the `reledpar`'s handbook. For now, just retain we need to store default value of the counter associated to the notes  $\TeX$ 's inserts.

```

3115 \csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
3116 side only
3117 %

```

Now do the setup for minipage footnotes. We use as much as possible of the normal setup as we can (so the notes will have a similar layout).

```

3117 \ifnoledgroup@else%
3118 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
3119 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroup
3120 \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
3121 \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
3122 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3123 \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3124 \fi
3125 }
3126
3127 %

```

`\normalvfootnote` We now begin a series of commands that do ‘normal’ footnote formatting: a format much like that implemented in `PLAIN  $\TeX$` , in which each footnote is a separate paragraph.

`\normalvfootnote` takes the series letter as #1 and the entire text of the footnote is #2. It does the `\insert` for this note, calling on the `\footfmt` macro for this note series to format the text of the note.

```

3128 \notbool{parapparatus@}\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnote}[2]{%
3129 \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{%In the case we use \Xgroupbyline, the
3130 insertion is done later, in \add@Xgroupbyline.
3131 \prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\normalvfootnote@inserted}%
3132 }{%In the case we don't use \Xgroupbyline, the insertion is made directly
3133 \X@beforeinsertion{#1}%
3134 \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{%
3135 \X@atbegininsertion{#1}%
3136 \normalvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}%
3137 }%
3138 }%
3139 %

```

`\normalvfootnote@inserted` The `\normalvfootnote@inserted` macro is expanded to the content to be added to a `\insert` for normal critical footnote.

```

3140 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\
normalvfootnote@inserted}[2]{%
3141 \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{\noindent}{\csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
3142 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3143 \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{\strut}{}%
3144 \footsplitskips
3145 \ifl@dpairing\ifl@dpaging\else%
3146 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3147 \fi\fi%
3148 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3149 \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip%
3150 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}%
3151 }%
3152 %

```

```

\X@beforeinsertion53 \newcommand{\X@beforeinsertion}[1]{%
3154 \if@ledgroup\else%
3155 \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
3156 \fi%
3157 \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
3158 }%
3159 %

```

```

\beforeinsertion@X60 \newcommand{\beforeinsertion@X}[1]{%
3161 \if@ledgroup\else%
3162 \insert@txtbeforenotesX{#1}%
3163 \fi%
3164 \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
3165 }%
3166 %

```

```

\X@atbegininsertion67 \newcommand{\X@atbegininsertion}[1]{%
3168 \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
3169 }%
3170 %

```

And somewhat different versions of `\normalvfootnote` and `\normalvfootnote@inserted` for minipages.

```

\mpnormalvfootnote71 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\mpnormalvfootnote}[2]{%
3172 \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{%
3173 \prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\mpnormalvfootnote@inserted}%
3174 }%

```

```

3175 {%
3176   \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
3177   \vbox{%
3178     \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
3179     \mpnormalvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}%
3180   }%
3181 }%
3182 }%
3183
3184 %

```

```

\mpnormalvfootnote@inserted 3185 \newcommand{\mpnormalvfootnote@inserted}[2]{%
3186   \noindent\csuse{Xbhooknote@#1}%
3187   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3188   \hsize\columnwidth%
3189   \@parboxrestore%
3190   \color@begingroup%
3191   \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\color@endgroup%
3192 }%
3193 %

```

**\normalfootfmt** `\normalfootfmt` is a ‘normal’ macro to take the footnote line and page number information (see V.9 p. 111), and the desired text, and output what’s to be printed. Argument #1 contains the line and page number information and lemma font specifier; #2 is the lemma; #3 is the note’s text; #4 is the note’s series. This version is very rudimentary—it uses `\printlines` to print just the range of line numbers, followed by a square bracket, the lemma, and the note text.

```

3194 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalfootfmt}[4]{%
3195   \Xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
3196   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}{\Xledsetnormalparstuff{#4}}{}%
3197   \Xsethangindent{#4}%
3198   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}{\rule\z@\splittopskip}{}%
3199   {\printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}}%
3200   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
3201   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
3202   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}{\strut\par}{}%
3203 }%
3204 %

```

**\normalfootstart** `\normalfootstart` is a standard footnote-starting macro, called in the output routine whenever there are footnotes of this series to be printed: it skips a bit and then draws a rule.

Any `\footstart` macro must put onto the page something that takes up space exactly equal to the `\skip\Xfootins` value for the associated series of notes.  $\TeX$  makes page computations based on that `\skip` value, and the output pages will suffer from spacing problems if what you add takes up a different amount of space.



But if the skip `\Xprenotes@` is greater than 0 pt, it is used instead of `\skip\footins` for the first printed series in one page.

The `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` values are both zeroed here. Similarly, these skips are cancelled in the `\vfootnote` macros for the various types of notes. Strictly speaking, this is necessary only if you are using paragraphed footnotes, but we have put it here and in the other `\vfootnote` macros too so that the behavior of `reledmac` in this respect is general across all footnote types. What this means is that any `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` you specify applies to the main text, but not the footnotes. The footnotes continue to be of width `\hsize`.

```
3205 \newcommand*{\normalfootstart}[1]{%
3206 %
```

The first series of notes printed in a page can have a specific skip before it. In order to insert this specific skip without overlap the bottom margin of the page, Maïeul Rouquette have defined an algorithm explained in XIX p. 248. Here is part of this algorithm, when the block of notes are ready to be printed.

```
3207 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{}%
3208 {%
3209   \iftoggle{Xprenotes@}{%
3210     \togglefalse{Xprenotes@}%
3211     \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=%
3212     \glueexpr\csuse{Xprenotes@}+\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}\relax%
3213   }%
3214   }%
3215 }%
3216 \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
3217 %
```

And now, the problem of left and right skip for notes. Especially when using one feature of `reledpar` which allows to have the footnotes horizontal size as the size of columns printed by `\Columns`. Read XVI p. 246 for the general description of the problem.

```
3218 \leftskip0pt \rightskip0pt
3219 \ifl@dpairing\else%
3220   \hsize=\old@hsize%
3221 \fi%
3222 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3223 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3224 %
```

And now, print the footnote's rule to finish the footnote's introduction.

```
3225 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3226 }%
3227 %
```

`\normalfootgroup` `\normalfootgroup` is a standard footnote-grouping macro: it sends the contents of the footnote-insert box to the output page without alteration.

```

3228 \newcommand*\normalfootgroup}[1]{%
3229   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
3230   \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname%
3231   \hsize=\old@hsize%
3232 }%
3233
3234 %

```

`\mpnormalfootgroup` A somewhat different version for minipages. Note that, in this case, we do not make distinctions between the `\Xfootgroup` and `\Xfootstarts` macros.

```

3235 \unless\ifnoledgroup@
3236 \newcommand*\mpnormalfootgroup}[1]{%
3237   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
3238   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3239     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3240     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3241     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
3242   \fi\fi\normalcolor%
3243   \ifparledgroup%
3244     \ifl@dpairing%
3245     \else%
3246       \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3247       \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3248       \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3249     \fi%
3250   \else%
3251     \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3252     \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3253     \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3254   \fi%
3255   \setlength{\parindent}{0pt}
3256   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
3257   \unvbox\csname mp#1footins\endcsname}}
3258 \fi
3259 %

```

### XIII.6.3 Paragraphed footnotes

The paragraphed-footnote option reformats all the footnotes of one series for a page into a single paragraph; this is especially appropriate when the notes are numerous and brief. The code is based on *The TeXbook*, pp. 398–400, with alterations for our environment. This algorithm uses a considerable amount of save-stack space: a  $\TeX$  of ordinary size may not be able to handle more than about 100 notes of this kind on a page.

`\Xarrangement@paragraph` The `\Xarrangement@paragraph` macro sets up everything for one series of the footnotes so that they will be paragraphed; it takes the series letter as argument. We include

the setting of `\count\footins` to 1000 for the footnote series just in case user is switching to paragraphed footnotes after having columnar ones, since they change this value (see below).

The argument of `\Xarrangement@footparagraph` is the letter denoting the series of notes to be paragraphed.

```

3260 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@paragraph}[1]{%
3261   \csgdef{series@display#1}{paragraph}
3262   \expandafter\let\csname #1footstart\endcsname=\parafootstart
3263   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\paravfootnote
3264   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\parafootfmt
3265   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\parafootgroup
3266   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname=1000
3267   \csxdef{default@#1footins}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
3268   \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
3269   \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3270   \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3271   \para@footsetup{#1}
3272   %

```

And the extra setup for minipages.

```

3273 \ifnoledgroup@else
3274   \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpparavfootnote
3275   \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpparafootgroup
3276   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=1000
3277   \dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}
3278   \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3279   \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3280 \fi
3281 }
3282 %

```

`\footfudgefiddle` For paragraphed footnotes  $\TeX$  has to estimate the amount of space required. If it underestimates this then the notes may get too long and run off the bottom of the text block. `\footfudgefiddle` can be increased from its default 64 (say, to 70) to increase the estimate.

```

3283 \providecommand{\footfudgefiddle}{64}
3284 %

```

`\para@footsetup` `\footparagraph` calls the `\para@footsetup` macro to calculate a special fudge factor, which is the ratio of the `\baselineskip` to the `\hsize`. We assume that the proper value of `\baselineskip` for the footnotes (normally 9 pt) has been set already. The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

Peter Wilson thinks that `\columnwidth` should be used here for  $\LaTeX$  not `\hsize`. Peter Wilson have also included `\footfudgefiddle`.

```

3285 \newcommand*{\para@footsetup}[1]{\csuse{Xhookgroup@#1}\csuse{
Xnotefontsize@#1}

```

```

3286 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3287 \ifcsemt{Xwidth@#1}%
3288 {}%
3289 {\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax}%
3290 \dimen0=\baselineskip
3291 \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
3292 \divide \dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\
relax
3293 \csxdef{#1footfudgefactor}{%
3294 \expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
3295
3296 %

```

\strip@pt strip the characters pt from a dimen value.

**\parafootstart** \parafootstart is the same as \normalfootstart, but we give it again to ensure that \rightskip and \leftskip are zeroed (this needs to be done before \para@footgroup in the output routine). The size of paragraphed notes is calculated using a fudge factor which in turn is based on \hsize. So the paragraph of notes needs to be that wide.

The argument of the macro is again the note series letter.

```

3297 \newcommand*{\parafootstart}[1]{%
3298 \rightskip=0pt \leftskip=0pt%
3299 \Xsetparindent{#1}%
3300 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\Xprenotes@}{}%
3301 {}%
3302 \iftoggle{Xprenotes@}{%
3303 \togglefalse{Xprenotes@}%
3304 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=%
3305 \glueexpr\csuse{Xprenotes@}+\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}\relax%
3306 }%
3307 {}%
3308 }%
3309 \vskip\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname%
3310 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3311 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3312 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3313 \let\old@bidi@RTL@everypar\bidi@RTL@everypar%
3314 \let\bidi@RTL@everypar\@empty%
3315 \noindent\leavevmode%
3316 \let\bidi@RTL@everypar\old@bidi@RTL@everypar%
3317 }%
3318 %

```

**\paravfootnote** \paravfootnote is a version of the \vfootnote command that is used for paragraphed notes. It gets appended to the \inserts@list list by an outer-level footnote command like \Afootnote. The first argument is the note series letter; the second is the full text of the printed note itself, including line numbers, lemmata, and footnote text.

The initial model for this insertion is, of course, the `\insert\footins` definition in *The TeXbook*, p. 398. There, the footnotes are first collected up in `hboxes`, and these `hboxes` are later unpacked and stuck together into a paragraph.

However, Michael Downes has pointed out that because text in `hboxes` gets typeset in restricted horizontal mode, there are some undesirable side-effects if you later want to break such text across lines. In restricted horizontal mode, where  $\TeX$  does not expect to have to break lines, it does not insert certain items like `\discretionary`s. If you later unbox these `hboxes` and stick them together, as the *TeXbook* macros do to make these footnotes, you lose the ability to hyphenate after an explicit hyphen. This can lead to overfull `hboxes` when you would not expect to find them, and to the uninitiated it might be very hard to see why the problem had arisen.<sup>30</sup>

Wayne Sullivan pointed out to us another subtle problem that arises from the same cause:  $\TeX$  also leaves the `\language` whatsit nodes out of the horizontal list.<sup>31</sup> So changes from one language to another will not invoke the proper hyphenation rules in such footnotes. Since critical editions often do deal with several languages, especially in a footnotes, we really ought to get this bit of code right.

To get around these problems, Wayne suggested emendations to the *TeXbook* versions of these macros which are broadly the same as those described by Michael: the central idea (also suggested by Donald Knuth in a letter to Michael) is to avoid collecting the text in an `hbox` in the first place, but instead to collect it in a `vbox` whose width is (virtually) infinite. The text is therefore typeset in unrestricted horizontal mode, as a paragraph consisting of a single long line. Later, there is an extra level of unboxing to be done: we have to unpack the `vbox`, as well as the `hboxes` inside it, but that is not too hard. For details, we refer you to Michael's article, where the issues are clearly explained.<sup>32</sup> Michael's unboxing macro is called `\Xunvxh`: `unvbox`, extract the last line, and `unhbox` it.

Doing things this way has an important consequence: as Michael pointed out, you really can't put an explicit line-break into a note built in a `vbox` the way we are doing.<sup>33</sup> In other words, be very careful not to use `\break`, or `\penalty-10000`, or any equivalent inside your para-footnote. If you do, most of the note will probably disappear. You *are* allowed to make strong suggestions; in fact `\penalty-9999` will be quite okay. Just do not make the break mandatory. We have not applied any of Michael's solutions here, since we feel that the problem is exiguous, and `reledmac` is quite baroque enough already. If you think you are having this problem, look up Michael's solutions.

One more thing; we set `\leftskip` and `\rightskip` to zero. This has the effect of neutralizing any such skips which may apply to the main text (cf. XIII.6.2 p. 193 above). We need to do this, since `\footfudgefactor` is calculated on the assumption that the notes are `\hsize` wide.

So, finally, here is the modified foot-paragraph code, which sets the footnote in vertical mode so that language and discretionary nodes are included.

```
3319 \newcommand*{\paravfootnote}[2]{%
```

<sup>30</sup>Michael Downes, 'Line Breaking in `\unhboxed` Text', *TUGboat* 11 (1990), pp. 605–612.

<sup>31</sup>See *The TeXbook*, p. 455 (editions after January 1990).

<sup>32</sup>Wayne supplied his own macros to do this, but since they were almost identical to Michael's, Peter Wilson have used the latter's `\Xunvxh` macro since it is publicly documented.

<sup>33</sup>'Line Breaking', p. 610.

```

3320 \csuse{Xbeforeinserting@#1}%
3321 \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname
3322 \bgroup
3323 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
3324 \footplitskips
3325 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
3326 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
3327 \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
3328 \noindent\csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
3329 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}}%
3330 \setbox0=\hbox{\Xunvxh{0}{#1}}%
3331 \dp0=0pt
3332 \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0
3333 %

```

Here we produce the contents of the footnote from box 0, and add a penalty of 0 between boxes in this insert.

```

3334 \if@RTL\noindent \leavevmode\fi\box0%
3335 \penalty0
3336 \egroup}
3337 %
3338 %

```

The final penalty of 0 was added here at Wayne’s suggestion to avoid a weird page-breaking problem, which occurs on those occasions when  $\TeX$  attempts to split foot paragraphs. After trying out such a split (see *The TeXbook*, p. 124),  $\TeX$  inserts a penalty of  $-10000$  here, which nearly always forces the break at the end of the whole footnote paragraph (since individual notes can’t be split) even when this leads to an overfull vbox. The change above results in a penalty of 0 instead which allows, but does not force, such breaks. This penalty of 0 is later removed, after page breaks have been decided, by the `\unpenalty` macro in `\makehboxofhboxes`. So it does not affect how the footnote paragraphs are typeset (the notes still have a penalty of  $-10$  between them, which is added by `\parafootfmt`).

`\mpparavfootnote` This version is for minipages.

```

3339 \newcommand*{\mpparavfootnote}[2]{%
3340 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}\vbox{%
3341 \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
3342 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}
3343 \footplitskips
3344 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
3345 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
3346 \insert@Xtxtbeforenotes{#1}%
3347 \noindent\color@begingroup%
3348 \csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
3349 \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}\color@endgroup}%
3350 \setbox0=\hbox{\Xunvxh{0}{#1}}%
3351 \dp0=\z@
3352 \ht0=\csname #1footfudgefactor\endcsname\wd0

```

```

3353 \box0
3354 \penalty0
3355 }}
3356
3357 %

```

`\Xunvxh` Here is (modified) Michael’s definition of `\unvxh`, used above. Michael’s macro also takes care to remove some unwanted penalties and glue that T<sub>E</sub>X automatically attaches to the end of paragraphs. When T<sub>E</sub>X finishes a paragraph, it throws away any remaining glue, and then tacks on the following items: a `\penalty` of 10000, a `\parfillskip` and a `\rightskip` (*The TeXbook*, pp. 99–100). `\unvxh` cancels these unwanted paragraph-final items using `\unskip` and `\unpenalty`.

```

3358 \newcommand*{\Xunvxh}[2]{%
3359   \setbox0=\vbox{\unvbox#1%
3360     \global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
3361   \unhbox1
3362   \unskip           % remove \rightskip,
3363   \unskip           % remove \parfillskip,
3364   \unpenalty        % remove \penalty of 10000,
3365   \hskip\csuse{Xafternote@#2}\relax}% add the glue to go between the notes
3366
3367 %

```

`\parafootfmt` `\parafootfmt` is `\normalfootfmt` adapted to do the special stuff needed for paragraphed notes — leaving out the `\endgraf` at the end, sticking in special penalties and kern and leaving out the `\footstrut`. The first argument is the line and page number information, the second is the lemma, the third is the text of the footnote, and the fourth is the series (optional, for backward compatibility).

```

3368 \newcommand*{\parafootfmt}[4]{%
3369   \xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
3370   \xinsertparafootsep{#4}%
3371   \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
3372   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
3373   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
3374   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
3375   \penalty-10 }
3376 %

```

Note that in the above definition, the penalty of  $-10$  encourages a line break between notes, so that notes have a slight tendency to begin on new lines. The `\xinsertparafootsep` command is used to insert the `\Xparafootsep@series` between each note in the *same* page.

`\parafootgroup` This `footgroup` code is modelled on the macros in *The TeXbook*, p. 399. The only difference is the `\unpenalty` in `\makehboxofhboxes`, which is there to remove the penalty of 0 which was added to the end of each footnote by `\paravfootnote`.

The call to `\Xnotefontsize@<s>` is to ensure that the correct `\baselineskip` for the footnotes is used. The argument is the note series letter.

```

3377 \newcommand*{\parafootgroup}[1]{%
3378   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
3379   \unvbox\csname #1footins\endcsname
3380   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
3381   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
3382   \makehboxofhboxes
3383   \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
3384   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
3385   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3386   \unhbox0\par%
3387   \global\hsize=\oldhsize%
3388 }%
3389
3390 %

```

`\mpparafootgroup` The minipage version.

```

3391 \newcommand*{\mpparafootgroup}[1]{%
3392   \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3393   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
3394   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3395     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3396     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3397     \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
3398   \fi\fi\normalcolor
3399   \ifparledgroup%
3400     \ifl@dpairing%
3401     \else%
3402       \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3403       \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3404       \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3405     \fi%
3406   \else%
3407     \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3408     \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3409     \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3410   \fi%
3411   \unvbox\csname mp#1footins\endcsname
3412   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
3413   \ifcsstring{Xragged@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
3414   \makehboxofhboxes
3415   \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
3416   \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
3417   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3418   \Xsetparindent{#1}%
3419   \unhbox0\par}}
3420
3421 %

```



And finally, the two macros which are required to transform the long horizontal box stored in the insert' box to a printable text.

```
\makehboxofhboxes22 \newcommand*\makehboxofhboxes{\setbox0=\hbox{}}%
\removehboxes23 \loop
3424 \unpenalty
3425 \setbox2=\lastbox
3426 \ifhbox2
3427 \setbox0=\hbox{\box2\unhbox0}%
3428 \repeat}
3429
3430 \newcommand*\removehboxes{\setbox0=\lastbox
3431 \ifhbox0{\removehboxes}\unhbox0 \fi}
3432
3433 %
```

**Insertion of the footnotes separator** The command `\Xinsertparafootsep{<series>}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftm`.

```
\prevpage@num34 \newcommand{\Xinsertparafootsep}[1]{%
\Xinsertparafootsep35 \ifledRcol{%
3436 \ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@numR}}{\page@numR}%
3437 {\ifcsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
3438 {\ifcsequal{prevline#1}{lineinfo@}%
3439 {\ifcsequal{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}{}}%
3440 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}}%
3441 }%
3442 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
3443 }%
3444 }%
3445 \global\csname #1prevpage@numR\endcsname=\page@numR%
3446 \else%
3447 \ifnumequal{\csuse{#1prevpage@num}}{\page@num}%
3448 {\ifcsdef{prevline#1}% Be sur \prevline#1 exists.
3449 {\ifcsequal{prevline#1}{lineinfo@}%
3450 {\ifcsequal{Xsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}{}}%
3451 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}}%
3452 }%
3453 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
3454 }%
3455 }%
3456 \global\csname #1prevpage@num\endcsname=\page@num%
3457 \fi%
3458 }
3459 %
```

### XIII.6.4 Columnar footnotes

#### Common tools

`\rigidbalance` We will now define macros for three-column notes and two-column notes. Both sets of macros will use `\rigidbalance`, which splits a box (#1) into a number (#2) of columns, each with a space (#3) between the top baseline and the top of the `\vbox`. The `\rigidbalanceX` macro is taken from *The TeXbook*, p. 397, with a slight change to the syntax of the arguments so that they do not depend on white space. Note also the extra unboxing in `\splitoff`, which allows the new `\vbox` to have its natural height as it goes into the alignment.

The  $\TeX$  `\line` macro has no relationship to the TeX `\line`. The  $\TeX$  equivalent is `\@@line`.

We do not call directly `\rigidbalance`, but we call `\Xrigidbalance` for critical notes and `\rigidbalanceX` for familiar notes. Both of them call `\rigidbalance`.

```

3460 \newcount\@k \newdimen\@h
3461 \newcommand*\Xrigidbalance}[3]{%
3462   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@\@currentseries}\relax%
3463   \rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}%
3464 }%
3465
3466 \newcommand*\rigidbalanceX}[3]{%
3467   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@\@currentseries}\relax%
3468   \rigidbalance{#1}{#2}{#3}%
3469 }%
3470
3471 \newcommand*\rigidbalance}[3]{%
3472   \setbox0=\box#1 \@k=#2 \@h=#3%
3473   \@@line{\splittopskip=\@h \vbadness=\@M \hfilneg
3474     \valign{##\vfil\cr\dosplits}}}%
3475
3476 \newcommand*\dosplits{\ifnum\@k>0 \noalign{\hfil}\splitoff
3477   \global\advance\@k-1\cr\dosplits\fi}
3478
3479 \newcommand*\splitoff{\dimen0=\ht0
3480   \divide\dimen0 by\@k \advance\dimen0 by\@h
3481   \setbox2 \vsplit0 to \dimen0
3482   \unvbox2 }
3483
3484 %

```

#### Three columns

```

\Xarrangement@threecol85 \newcommand*\Xarrangement@threecol}[1]{%
3486   \csgdef{series@display#1}{threecol}
3487   \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\threecolvfootnote
3488   \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\threecolfootfmt
3489   \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\threecolfootgroup

```

```

3490 \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}%
3491 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3492 \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3493 \threecolfootsetup{#1}
3494 %

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

3495 \ifnoledgroup@else
3496   \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
3497   \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroup
3498   \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3499   \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
3500   \mpthreecolfootsetup{#1}
3501 \fi
3502 }
3503
3504 %

```

The `\footstart` and `\footnoterule` macros for these notes assume the normal values (XIII.6.2 p. 192 above).

**`\threecolfootsetup`** The `\threecolfootsetup` macro calculates and sets some numbers for three-column footnotes.

We set the `\count` of the foot insert to 333. Each footnote can be thought of as contributing only one third of its height to the page, since the footnote insertion has been made as a long narrow column, which then gets trisected by the `\rigidbalance` routine (inside `\threecolfootgroup`). These new, shorter columns are saved in a box, and then that box is *put back* into the footnote insert, replacing the original collection of the footnotes. This new box is, therefore, only about a third of the height of the original one.

The `\dimen` value for this note series has to change in the inverse way: it needs to be three times the actual limit on the amount of space these notes are allowed to fill on the page, because when  $\TeX$  is accumulating material for the page and checking that limit, it does not apply the `\count` scaling.

```

3505 \newcommand*{\threecolfootsetup}[1]{%
3506   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 333
3507   \csxdef{default@#1footins}{333}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
3508   \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
3509 %

```

**`\mpthreecolfootsetup`** The setup for minipages.

```

3510 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootsetup}[1]{%
3511   \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 333
3512   \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@}
3513
3514 %

```

`\threecolvfootnote` `\threecolvfootnote` This is the `\vfootnote` command for three-column notes. However, most of the code is deported on `\threecolvfootnote@inserted`. The call to `\Xnotefontsize@{s}` ensures that the `\splittopskip` and `\splitmaxdepth` take their values from the right `\strutbox`: the one used in a footnotes. Note especially the importance of temporarily reducing the `\hsize` to 0.3 of its normal value. This determines the widths of the individual columns. So if the normal `\hsize` is (say) 10 cm, then each column will be  $0.3 \times 10 = 3$  cm wide, leaving a gap of 1 cm spread equally between columns (i.e., .5 cm between each).

The arguments are #1 the note series letter and #1 the full text of the note (including numbers, lemma and text).

```

3515 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnote}[2]{%
3516   \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{%
3517     \prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}{\threecolvfootnote@inserted}%
3518   }%
3519   {%
3520     \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\relax%
3521     \X@beforeinsertion{#1}%
3522     \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{%
3523       \threecolvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}%
3524     }%
3525   }%
3526 }%
3527 %

```

```

\threecolvfootnote@inserted28 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\
threecolvfootnote@inserted}[2]{%
3529   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
3530   \noindent\csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
3531   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3532   \footsplitskips%
3533   \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}%
3534 }%
3535 %

```

`\threecolfootfmt` `\threecolfootfmt` is the command that formats one note. The arguments are #1 the line numbers, #2 the lemma and #4 the text of the `-footnote` command #4 optional (for backward compatibility): the series.

```

3536 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolfootfmt}[4]{%
3537   \Xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
3538   \threecol@begin@insert{#4}%
3539   \hspace{\parindent}%
3540   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
3541   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
3542   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
3543   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}%
3544     {\strut\par\allowbreak}%

```

```

3545 {}%
3546 }%
3547 %

```

**\threecol@begin@insert** The `\threecol@begin@insert` contains code used at the beginning of any `\insert` for critical footnotes in three columns. It is used both by `\threecolfootfmt` and by `\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes`.

```

3548 \newcommand{\threecol@begin@insert}[1]{%
3549   \normal@pars%
3550   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}%
3551   {\hsize \csuse{Xhsizethreecol@#1}}%
3552   {}%
3553   \Xsetparindent{#1}%
3554   \tolerance=5000%
3555   \Xsethangindent{#1}%
3556   \@tempdima=\parindent%
3557   \csuse{Xcolalign@#1}%
3558   \parindent=\@tempdima%
3559   \strut%
3560 }%
3561 %

```

**\threecolfootgroup** And here is the `footgroup` macro that is called within the output routine to regroup the notes into three columns. Once again, the call to `\Xnotefontsize@<s>` is there to ensure that it is the right `\splittopskip`—the one used in footnotes—which is used to provide the third argument for `\rigidbalance`. This third argument (`\@h`) is the `topskip` for the box containing the text of the footnotes, and does the job of making sure the top lines of the columns line up horizontally. In *The TeXbook*, p. 398, Donald Knuth suggests retrieving the output of `\rigidbalance`, putting it back into the insertion box, and then printing the box. Here, we just print the `\line` which comes out of `\rigidbalance` directly, without any re-boxing.

```

3562 \newcommand*{\threecolfootgroup}[1]{%
3563   \begingroup%
3564   \csuse{Xhookgroup@#1}%
3565   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3566   \par%
3567   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox%
3568   \expandafter%
3569   \Xrigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip%
3570   \endgroup%
3571 }%
3572 %

```

**\mpthreecolfootgroup** The setup for minipages.

```

3573 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroup}[1]{%
3574   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}

```

```

3575 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3576 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3577 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3578 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
3579 \fi\fi\normalcolor
3580 \ifparledgroup%
3581 \ifl@dpairing%
3582 \else%
3583 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3584 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3585 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3586 \fi%
3587 \else%
3588 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3589 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3590 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3591 \fi%
3592 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
3593 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
3594 \expandafter
3595 \Xrigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
3596
3597 %

```

## Two columns

```

\Xarrangement@twocol98 \newcommand*{\Xarrangement@twocol}[1]{%
3599 \csgdef{series@display#1}{twocol}
3600 \expandafter\let\csname v#1footnote\endcsname=\twocolvfootnote
3601 \expandafter\let\csname #1footfmt\endcsname=\twocolfootfmt
3602 \expandafter\let\csname #1footgroup\endcsname=\twocolfootgroup
3603 \dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xmaxhnotes@#1}%
3604 \skip\csname #1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3605 \advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}%
3606 \twocolfootsetup{#1}
3607 %

```

The additional setup for minipages.

```

3608 \ifnoledgroup@else
3609 \expandafter\let\csname mpv#1footnote\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnote
3610 \expandafter\let\csname mp#1footgroup\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroup
3611 \skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%
3612 \advance\skip\csname mp#1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterterrule@#1}%
3613 \mptwocolfootsetup{#1}
3614 \fi
3615 }
3616
3617 %

```

`\twocolfootsetup` Here is a series of macros which are very similar to their three-column counterparts. In this case, each note is assumed to contribute only a half a line of text. And the notes are set in columns giving a gap between them of one tenth of the `\hsize`.

```

\twocolvfootnote@inserted
\twocolfootgroup
\twocolfootfmt
\twocolfootgroup
3618 \newcommand*\twocolfootsetup}[1]{%
3619   \count\csname #1footins\endcsname 500
3620   \csxdef{default@#1footins}{500}%
3621   \multiply\dimen\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@}
3622   %

3623 \notbool{parapparatus@}\newcommand*\newcommand*\twocolvfootnote}[2]{%
3624   \iftoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}{%
3625     \prepare@Xgroupbyline{#1}{#2}\twocolvfootnote@inserted}%
3626   }{%
3627     \let\bid@RTL@everypar\relax%
3628     \X@beforeinsertion{#1}%
3629     \insert\csname #1footins\endcsname{%
3630       \twocolvfootnote@inserted{#1}{#2}%
3631     }%
3632   }%
3633 }%
3634 \notbool{parapparatus@}\newcommand*\newcommand*\twocolvfootnote@inserted}[2]{%
3635   \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{Xwidth@#1}\relax%
3636   \noindent\csuse{Xhooknote@#1}%
3637   \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3638   \footplitskips%
3639   \csname #1footfmt\endcsname #2{#1}%
3640 }%
3641 %

3642 \notbool{parapparatus@}\newcommand*\newcommand*\twocolfootfmt}[4]{% 4th
arg is optional, for backward compatibility
3643   \Xstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
3644   \twocol@begin@insert{#4}%
3645   \hspace{\parindent}%
3646   \printlinefootnote{#1}{#4}%
3647   \print@lemma{#1}{#2}{#4}%
3648   \csuse{Xwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
3649   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#4}%
3650   {\strut\par\allowbreak}%
3651   {}%
3652 }%
3653 %

3654 \newcommand{\twocol@begin@insert}[1]{%
3655   \normal@pars%
3656   \nottoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}%
3657   {\hsize \csuse{Xsizetwocol@#1}}%
3658   {}%

```

```

3659 \Xsetparindent{#1}%
3660 \tolerance=5000%
3661 \Xsethangindent{#1}%
3662 \@tempdima=\parindent%
3663 \csuse{Xcolalign@#1}%
3664 \parindent=\@tempdima%
3665 \strut%
3666 }%
3667
3668 \newcommand*{\twocolfootgroup}[1]{%
3669 \begin{group}%
3670 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}%
3671 \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
3672 \par%
3673 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox%
3674 \expandafter%
3675 \Xrigidbalance\csname #1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip%
3676 \endgroup%
3677 }%
3678
3679 %

```

`\mptwocolfootsetup` The versions for minipages.

`\mptwocolfootgroup`

```

3680 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootsetup}[1]{%
3681 \count\csname mp#1footins\endcsname 500
3682 \multiply\dimen\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@}
3683 %
3684
3685 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootgroup}[1]{%
3686 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}
3687 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
3688 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
3689 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
3690 \marks\parledgroup@type{Xfootnote}%
3691 \fi\fi\normalcolor
3692 \ifparledgroup%
3693 \ifl@dpairing%
3694 \else%
3695 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3696 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3697 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3698 \fi%
3699 \else%
3700 \setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3701 \setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
3702 \print@Xfootnoterule{#1}%
3703 \fi%
3704 \csuse{Xbhookgroup@#1}\par%
3705 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox

```



```

3705 \expandafter
3706 \Xrigidbalance\csname mp#1footins\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
3707
3708 %

```

### XIII.7 Footnote paragraph indent

**\Xsetparindent** These two commands set the paragraph indentation of the footnotes, depending of the  
**\setparindentX** settings of the user.

```

3709 \newcommand{\Xsetparindent}[1]{%
3710 \nottoggle{Xparindent@#1}{%
3711 \parindent=\z@%
3712 }%
3713 {%
3714 \ifdef{\parindent@beforestanza}{\parindent=\parindent@beforestanza}{}%
3715 }%
3716 }%
3717 \newcommand{\setparindentX}[1]{%
3718 \nottoggle{parindentX@#1}{%
3719 \parindent=\z@%
3720 }%
3721 {%
3722 \ifdef{\parindent@beforestanza}{\parindent=\parindent@beforestanza}{}%
3723 }%
3724 }%
3725 %

```

### XIII.8 Footnote hanging indent

**\Xsethangindent** \Xsethangindent sets the hangindent for a critical footnote, while \sethangindentX  
**\sethangindentX** does it for a familiar footnote.

```

3726 \newcommand{\Xsethangindent}[1]{%
3727 \if@RTL%
3728 \hangindent=-\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}%
3729 \everypar{\hangindent=-\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}}%
3730 \else%
3731 \hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}%
3732 \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{Xhangindent@#1}}%
3733 \fi%
3734 }%
3735 \newcommand{\sethangindentX}[1]{%
3736 \if@RTL%
3737 \hangindent=-\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
3738 \everypar{\hangindent=-\csuse{hangindentX@#1}}%
3739 \else%
3740 \hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}%
3741 \everypar{\hangindent=\csuse{hangindentX@#1}}%

```

```

3742 \fi%
3743 }%
3744 %

```

## XIII.9 Critical notes presentation

Here, we define some commons macro which are used in order to print a critical notes, that is a note with 1) line number 2) lemma 3) lemma separator 4) text associated to the lemma.

### XIII.9.1 Font tools

The fonts that are used for printing notes might not have the character mapping we expect: for example, the Computer Modern font that contains old-style numerals does not contain an en-dash or square brackets, and its period and comma are in odd locations. To allow use of the standard footnote macros with such fonts, we use the following macros for certain characters.

The `\endashchar` macro is simply an en-dash from the normal font and is immune to changes in the surrounding font. The same goes for the full stop. These two are used in `\printlines`. The right bracket macro is the same again; it crops up in `\normalfootfmt` and the other footnote macros for controlling the format of the footnotes.

Note that these commands are not directly called by `reledmac`, but are enclosed as default value of specific hooks. Consequently, people should not redefine them, but use instead the `\Xlinrangeseparator`, `\Xendlinrangeseparator`, `\Xsublinesep`, `\Xendsublinesep` and `\Xlemmaseparator` macros.

With `polyglossia`, each critical note has a `\footnote@lang` which shows the language of the lemma, and which can be used to switch the bracket from right to left.

```

3745 \def\endashchar{\textnormal{--}}
3746
3747 \newcommand*\fullstop{\textnormal{.}}
3748 \def\Xsublinesep@side{\fullstop}
3749
3750 \newcommand*\rbracket{\textnormal{%
3751   \csuse{text\csuse{footnote@lang}}{%
3752     \ifluatex%
3753       \ifdefstring{\footnote@luatextextdir}{TRT}{\thinspace[]}{\thinspace
3754     }}%
3755     \else%
3756     \thinspace[]%
3757     \fi}%
3758   }}
3759
3760 %

```

### XIII.9.2 Pstart number in footnote

`\printpstart` The `\printpstart` macro prints the pstart number for a note.

```

3761 \newcommand{\printpstart}[0]{%
3762   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3763     \ifledRcol%
3764       \thepstartR%
3765     \else%
3766       \thepstartL%
3767     \fi%
3768   }{%
3769     \thepstart%
3770   }%
3771 }
3772 %

```

### XIII.9.3 Lemma printing

`\print@lemma` `\print@lemma` is called inside critical footnotes to print the lemma and the lemma separator (#1: line number and font information, #2: lemma, #3: series).

```

3773 %
3774 \newcommand{\print@lemma}[3]{%
3775   \bgroup%
3776   \nottoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#3}%
3777   {\select@lemmafnt#1|}%
3778   }%
3779   \bgroup%
3780   \csuse{Xlemmafnt@#3}%Deprecated
3781   \csuse{Xwraplemma@#3}{#2}%
3782   \egroup%
3783   \egroup%
3784   \iftoggle{nosep@}{%
3785     \hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%
3786     \relax%
3787   }%
3788   {\ifcsemt{Xlemmaseparator@#3}%
3789     {%
3790       \hskip\csuse{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#3}%
3791       \relax%
3792     }%
3793     {%
3794       \nobreak%
3795       \hskip\csuse{Xbeforelemmaseparator@#3}%
3796       \csuse{Xlemmaseparator@#3}%
3797       \hskip\csuse{Xafterlemmaseparator@#3}%
3798       \relax%
3799     }%

```

```

3800 }%
3801 }%
3802 %

```

### XIII.9.4 Line number printing

**\Xstorelineinfo** The `\Xstorelineinfo` macro is used to store some data about line number of the current critical footnote, data which will be reused later for the `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline` and related setting.

#1 footnote specification for the current footnote; #2 footnote series.

```

3803 \newcommand{\Xstorelineinfo}[2]{%
3804   \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|}%
3805   \iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
3806     \xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub - \
3807       \l@dparsedendline - \l@dparsedendsub}%
3808     }%
3809     {%
3810       \xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartline - \l@dparsedstartsub}%
3811       }%
3812   }%
3813   %

```

**\printlinefootnote** The `\printlinefootnote` macro is called in each `\<type>footfmt` command. It controls whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote. The printing of the line number is shared in `\printlinefootnotenumbers`.

```

3813 \newcommand{\printlinefootnote}[2]{%
3814   \xdef\@currentseries{#2}%
3815   \iftoggle{nonum@}{%Try if the line number must printed for this specific
3816     not (by default, yes)
3817     \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
3818   }%
3819   {%
3820     \iftoggle{Xnonumber@#2}{%Try if the line number must printed (by
3821     default, yes)
3822     {%
3823       \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
3824     }%
3825     {%\iftoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#2}% If for this series the
3826     line number must be printed only in the first time.
3827     {%
3828       \ifcsdef{prevline#2}%
3829       {%Be sure the \prevline exists.
3830       \ifcsequal{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}%Try it
3831       }%

```

```

3831         \ifcsempy{Xsymlinenum@#2}%
3832         {%
3833             \hspace{\csuse{Xinplaceofnumber@#2}}%
3834         }%
3835         {\printsymlinefootnotearea{#2}}%
3836     }%
3837     {%
3838         \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3839     }%
3840 }%
3841 {%
3842     \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3843 }%
3844 }%
3845 {%
3846     \printlinefootnotearea{#1}{#2}%
3847 }%
3848 \csxdef{prevline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
3849 }%
3850 }%
3851 }%
3852 }%
3853 }
3854 %

```

**\printsymlinefootnotearea** This macro prints the space before the line symbol, changes the font, when prints the line symbol and the space after it.

```

3855 \newcommand{\printsymlinefootnotearea}[1]{%
3856     \hspace{\csuse{Xbeforesymlinenum@#1}}%
3857     \csuse{Xnotenumfont@#1}%
3858     \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}}{\z@}%
3859         {\csuse{Xsymlinenum@#1}}%
3860         {\hbox to \csuse{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}%
3861             {\csuse{Xsymlinenum@#1}\hfill}}%
3862     }%
3863     \hspace{\csuse{Xaftersymlinenum@#1}}%
3864 }%
3865 %

```

**\printlinefootnotearea** This macro prints the space before the line number, changes the font, then prints the line number and the space after it. It is called by `\printlinefootnote` depending of the options about repeating line numbers. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

3866 \newcommand{\printlinefootnotearea}[2]{%
3867     \printXbeforenumber{#2}%
3868     \csuse{Xnotenumfont@#2}%
3869     \boxfootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3870     \printXafternumber{#2}%

```

```

3871 }%
3872 %

```

**\boxfootnotenumbers** Depending on the user settings, this macro will box line numbers (or not). The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous `\printlinefootnotearea` calls it.

```

3873 \newcommand{\boxfootnotenumbers}[2]{%
3874   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}}{\Opt}{}%
3875     \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3876   }%
3877   {%
3878     \hbox to \csuse{Xboxlinenum@#2}%
3879     {%
3880       \IfSubStr{RC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
3881       \printlinefootnotenumbers{#1}{#2}%
3882       \IfSubStr{LC}{\csuse{Xboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}%
3883     }%
3884   }%
3885 }%
3886 %

```

**\printlinefootnotenumbers** This macro prints, if needed, the pstart number and the line number. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.) The previous `\boxlinefootnote` calls it.

```

3887 \newcommand{\printlinefootnotenumbers}[2]{%
3888   \get@pstartcounter%
3889   \ifboolexpr{%
3890     (togl{Xpstart@#2} and bool{numberpstart})%
3891     or togl{Xpstarteverytime@#2}%
3892     and not (%
3893       togl{Xpstartonlyfirst@#2}%
3894       and test {\ifnumequal{\csuse{Xprevpstart@#2}}{\current@pstart}}%
3895     )%
3896   }%
3897   {%
3898     \printpstart%
3899     \csuse{Xpstartseparator@#2}%
3900   }{}%
3901   \global\cslet{Xprevpstart@#2}{\current@pstart}%
3902   \get@stanzacounter%
3903   \ifboolexpr{%
3904     togl{Xstanza@#2}%
3905     and bool {numberstanza}%
3906     and not (%
3907       togl{Xpstartonlyfirst@#2}%
3908       and test {\ifnumequal{\csuse{Xprevstanza@#2}}{\current@stanza}}%
3909     )%
3910   }{%

```

```

3911 \printstanza%
3912 \csuse{Xstanzaseparator@#2}%
3913 }{}%
3914 \global\cslet{Xprevstanza@#2}{\current@stanza}%
3915 \iftoggle{Xonlypstart@#2}{}%
3916 \csuse{Xtxtbeforenumber@#2}%
3917 \printlines#1|\ifledRcol@{\@Rlineflag\fi}}%
3918 }%
3919 %

```

**\get@pstartcounter** A single macro to get the current pstart counter.

```

3920 \newcommand{\get@pstartcounter}[0]{%
3921 \ifboolexpr{bool{!@dprintingpages} or bool{!@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3922 {%
3923 \ifledRcol%
3924 \global\numdef\current@pstart{\the\c@pstartR}%
3925 \else%
3926 \global\numdef\current@pstart{\the\c@pstartL}%
3927 \fi%
3928 }%
3929 {%
3930 \global\numdef\current@pstart{\the\c@pstart}%
3931 }%
3932 }%
3933 %

```

**\get@stanzacounter** The same to get the current stanza counter.

```

3934 \newcommand{\get@stanzacounter}[0]{%
3935 \ifboolexpr{bool{!@dprintingpages} or bool{!@dprintingcolumns}}{%
3936 {%
3937 \ifledRcol%
3938 \global\numdef\current@stanza{\the\c@stanzaR}%
3939 \else%
3940 \global\numdef\current@stanza{\the\c@stanzaL}%
3941 \fi%
3942 }%
3943 {%
3944 \global\numdef\current@stanza{\the\c@stanza}%
3945 }%
3946 }%
3947 %

```

**\printXbeforenumber** This macro prints a space (before the line number) in footnote. It is called by \printlinefootnotearea. Its only argument is the note series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

3948 \newcommand{\printXbeforenumber}[1]{%
3949 \hspace{\csuse{Xbeforenumber@#1}}%
3950 }%
3951 %

```

`\printXafternumber` This macro prints the space, adding eventually a `\nobreak`, after the line number, in footnote. It is called by `\printlinefootnotearea`. Its only argument is the series

```

3952 \newcommand{\printXafternumber}[1]{%
3953   \iftoggle{Xnonbreakableafternumber@#1}{\nobreak}{}%
3954   \hspace{\csuse{Xafternumber@#1}}%
3955 }%
3956 %

```

If we have decided to print the line number in a specific notes, the `\printlines` macro prints the line numbers for a note—which, in the general case, is a rather complicated task. The seven parameters of the argument are the line numbers as stored in `\l@d@nums`, in the form described on V.9 p. 111: the starting page, line, and sub-line numbers, followed by the ending page, line, and sub-line numbers, and then the font specifier for the lemma.

edmac’ creator have defined six boolean in order to know which component of line number description we have to print:

- `\ifl@d@pnum` for page numbers;
- `\ifl@d@ssub` for starting sub-line;
- `\ifl@d@elin` for ending line;
- `\ifl@d@esl` for ending sub-line; and
- `\ifl@d@dash` for the dash between the starting and ending groups.

There is no boolean for the line number because it is always printed.

Maïeul Rouquette has added `\ifl@d@Xtwolines` and `\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines` to print a symbol which stands for “and subsequent” when there are two, three or more lines. Is also defines `\@annot@start@print` and `\@annot@end@print` which define annotations associated with the starting and ending line numbers in critical footnotes.

```

\ifl@d@pnum57 \newif\ifl@d@pnum
\ifl@d@ssub58 \newif\ifl@d@ssub
\ifl@d@elin59 \newif\ifl@d@elin
\ifl@d@esl60 \newif\ifl@d@esl
\ifl@d@dash61 \newif\ifl@d@dash
\ifl@d@Xtwolines3962 \newif\ifl@d@Xtwolines%
\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines3963 \newif\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
\@annot@start@print3964 \let\@annot@start@print\relax%
\@annot@end@print3965 \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
3966 %

```

`\l@dparsefootspec` `\l@dparsefootspec{⟨spec⟩}{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨text⟩}` parses a footnote specification. `⟨lemma⟩` and `⟨text⟩` are the lemma and text respectively. `⟨spec⟩` is the line and page number and lemma font specifier in `\l@d@nums` style format. The real work is done by `\l@dp@rsefootspec` which defines macros holding the numeric values. In many cases,

`\l@dparsestartpage`  
`\l@dparsestartline`  
`\l@dparsestartsub`  
`\l@dparseendpage`  
`\l@dparseendline`  
`\l@dparseendsub`



this last command is called directly. Just a reminder of the arguments:

```
\printlines      #1      |  #2  |   #3   |   #4   |  #5   |  #6   |   #7
\printlines start-page | line |  subline | end-page | line |  subline | fontflag
```

```
3967 \newcommand*\l@dp@rsefootspec}[3]{\l@dp@rsefootspec#1|}
3968 \def\l@dp@rsefootspec#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|{%
3969   \gdef\l@dparsedstartpage{#1}%
3970   \gdef\l@dparsedstartline{#2}%
3971   \gdef\l@dparsedstartsub{#3}%
3972   \gdef\l@dparsedendpage{#4}%
3973   \gdef\l@dparsedendline{#5}%
3974   \gdef\l@dparsedendsub{#6}%
3975 }
3976 %
```

Initialise the several number value macros.

```
3977 \def\l@dparsedstartpage{0}%
3978 \def\l@dparsedstartline{0}%
3979 \def\l@dparsedstartsub{0}%
3980 \def\l@dparsedendpage{0}%
3981 \def\l@dparsedendline{0}%
3982 \def\l@dparsedendsub{0}%
3983
3984 %
```

**\setprintlines** The macro `\setprintlines` does the work of deciding what numbers should be printed. Its arguments are the same as the first 6 of `\printlines`.

```
3985 \newcommand*\setprintlines}[6]{%
3986   \let\@annot@start@print\relax%
3987   \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
3988   \l@dpnumfalse%
3989   \l@d@dashfalse%
3990   \l@d@elinfalse%
3991   %
```

We print the page numbers only if: 1) we are doing the lineation by page, and 2) the ending page number is different from the starting page number.a

```
3992 \ifbypage@
3993   \ifnum#4=#1 \else
3994     \l@dpnumtrue
3995     \l@d@dashtrue
3996   \fi
3997 \fi
3998 %
```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we are printing the ending page number, or (2) the ending line number is different from the starting line number. If either of these conditions is true, we also print the annotation linked to the ending line number annotations.

```

3999 \ifbool{expr}{%
4000     bool{!@d@pnum}%
4001     or not test{\ifnumequal{#2}{#5}}}%
4002 }{%
4003     \l@d@elintrue%
4004     \l@d@dashtrue%
4005     \unless\ifx\relax\annot@end%
4006         \def\@annot@end@print{%
4007             \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@ \@currentseries}{\
annot@end}%
4008         }%
4009     \fi%
4010 }{%
4011 %

```

We define the starting line number annotation as a merge of the starting annotation and ending annotation if we don't print the ending line number. Otherwise, it is only the starting annotation.

```

4012 \ifl@d@elin%
4013     \def\@annot@start@print{%
4014         \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@ \@currentseries}{\
annot@start}%
4015     }%
4016     \else%
4017         \ifx\annot@start\annot@end%
4018             \unless\ifx\@annot@start\relax%
4019                 \def\@annot@start@print{%
4020                     \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@ \@currentseries}{\
annot@start}%
4021                 }%
4022             \fi%
4023         \else%
4024             \ifx\@annot@end@print\relax%
4025                 \def\@annot@start@print{%
4026                     \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@ \@currentseries}{%
4027                         \ifx\annot@start\empty\else%
4028                             \annot@start%
4029                             \ifdefined\linangesep%
4030                                 \linangesep%
4031                             \else%
4032                                 \csuse{Xlinangeseparator@ \@currentseries}%
4033                             \fi%
4034                         \fi%
4035                         \annot@end%
4036                     }%
4037                 }%
4038             \else%
4039                 \let\@annot@start@print\@annot@end@print%
4040                 \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
4041             \fi%

```

```

4042 \fi%
4043 \fi%
4044 %

```

We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

```

4045 \l@dsesubfalse
4046 \ifnum#3=0 \else
4047 \l@dsesubtrue
4048 \fi
4049 %

```

We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

4050 \l@deselfalse
4051 \ifnum#6=0 \else
4052 \ifnum#6=#3
4053 \ifl@delin \l@desltrue \else \l@deselfalse \fi
4054 \else
4055 \l@desltrue
4056 \l@dashtrue
4057 \fi
4058 \fi%
4059 %

```

However, if the `\Xtwolines` is set for the current series, we do not print the last line number.

```

4060 \ifl@dash%
4061 \ifboolexpr{togl{fulllines@} or test{\ifcempty{Xtwolines@}\
4062 @currentseries}}}%
4063 {%
4064 \setistwofollowinglines{#1}{#2}{#4}{#5}%
4065 \ifboolexpr{%
4066 (%
4067 togl {Xtwolinesbutnotmore@\@currentseries}%
4068 and not%
4069 (%
4070 bool {istwofollowinglines@}%
4071 )%
4072 )%
4073 or%
4074 (%
4075 (not test{\ifnumequal{#1}{#4}})%
4076 and togl{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@\@currentseries}%
4077 )%
4078 }%
4079 {%
4080 {%
4081 \l@dashfalse%

```

```

4082         \l@d@Xtwo linestrue%
4083         \l@d@elinfalse%
4084         \l@d@eslfalse%
4085         \ifcsemt{Xmorethantwo lines@\@currentseries}%
4086         {}%
4087         {\ifistwofollowinglines@\else%
4088         \l@d@Xmorethantwo linestrue%
4089         \fi%
4090         }%
4091     }%
4092 }%
4093 \fi%
4094 %

```

If the `\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation` is set for this series, we check if the ending annotation is identical to the starting. If true, we don't print the ending annotation

```

4095 \iftoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{%
4096 \ifx\annot@start\annot@end%
4097 \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
4098 \ifx\linenumrep\@gobble%Don't print the dash if we're not printing
the line number
4099 \l@d@dashedfalse%
4100 \fi%
4101 \fi%
4102 }{}%
4103 %

```

Finally, we check for `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst` and `\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo`, and we redefine, if required, `\@annot@start@print` and `\annot@end@print`. We also store the current line number annotations.

```

4104 \iftoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@\@currentseries}{%
4105 \ifboolexpr{%
4106 ( %
4107 togl{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}%
4108 and test{\ifcsequal{annot@start}{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}%
4109 and test{\ifcsequal{annot@end}{prevannot@end@\@currentseries}}%
4110 ) %
4111 or %
4112 ( %
4113 not togl{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}%
4114 test{\ifcsequal{annot@start}{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}%
4115 ) %
4116 }{%
4117 \def\@annot@start@print{%
4118 \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{\
csuse{Xsymlinenumannotation@\@currentseries}}%
4119 }%
4120 \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
4121 \ifx\linenumrep\@gobble%Don't print the dash if we're not printing
the line number

```

```

4122 \l@d@dashfalse%
4123 \fi%
4124 }{}%
4125 \global\cslet{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}{\annot@start}%
4126 \global\cslet{prevannot@end@\@currentseries}{\annot@end}%
4127 }%
4128 {}%
4129 %

End of \setprintlines.

4130 }%
4131 %

```

**\setistwofollowinglines** The `\ifistwofollowinglines` boolean, used by the `\Xtwolines` and related setting, is set to true by `\setistwofollowinglines`. This command takes the following arguments:

- #1 First page number.
- #2 First line number.
- #3 Last page number.
- #4 Last line number.

If  $\#3 - \#2 = 1$ , then that means the two lines are subsequent, and consequently `\ifistwofollowinglines` is set to true. However, if we use lineation by page, two given lines can be subsequent if:

- The first line number is equal to the last line number of the first page.
- The last line number is equal to 1.
- $\#3 - \#1$  is equal to 1.

```

4132 \newif\ifistwofollowinglines@%
4133 \newcommand{\setistwofollowinglines}[4]{%
4134   \ifcsdef{lastlinenumberon@#1}%
4135     {\numdef{\tmp}{\csuse{lastlinenumberon@#1}}}%
4136     {\numdef{\tmp}{0}}}%
4137   \istwofollowinglines@false%
4138   \ifnumequal{#4-#2}{1}%
4139     {\istwofollowinglines@true}%
4140     {\ifbypage@%
4141       \ifnumequal{#3-#1}{1}%
4142       {%
4143         \ifnumequal{#2}{\tmp}%
4144         {\ifnumequal{#4}{1}{\istwofollowinglines@true}}}%
4145       }%
4146     }%

```

```

4147     }%
4148     \fi%
4149   }%
4150 }%
4151 %

```

**\printlines** So, we have decided which part of line number sets will be printed depending of these value. Now we are ready to print them. If the lineation is by pstart, we print the pstart. Arguments are 1) start page number 2) start line number 3) start subline number 4) end page number 5) end line number 6) end subline number 7) font specification 8) side flag

```

4152 \def\printlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8|{%
4153   \begingroup%
4154 %

```

Decide which part of line number components we will print.

```

4155   \setprintlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%
4156 %

```

One subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could come after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period). So, first, print the start line number.

```

4157   \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxstartlinenum@}\@currentseries}{0pt}%
4158     {\bgroup}%
4159     {\leavevmode\hbox to \csuse{Xboxstartlinenum@}\@currentseries}{\bgroup\
hfill}}%
4160   \ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition@}\@currentseries}{before}%
4161     {\@annot@start@print}%
4162     {}%
4163   \ifl@d@pnum%
4164     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{#1}%
4165     \csuse{Xpagelinesep@}\@currentseries}%
4166   \fi%
4167   \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{%
4168     \linenumrep{#2}%
4169     \iftoggle{Xlineflag@}\@currentseries}{#8}{}%
4170   }%
4171   \ifl@d@ssub%
4172     \csuse{Xsublinesep@}\@currentseries}%
4173     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\sublinenumrep{#3}}%
4174   \fi
4175   \ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition@}\@currentseries}{after}%
4176     {\@annot@start@print}%
4177     {}%
4178   \egroup%
4179 %

```

Then print the dash + end line number, or the range symbol.

```

4180 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
4181   {\bgroup}%
4182   {\hbox to \csuse{Xboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup}%
4183 \ifl@d@Xtwolines%
4184   \ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
4185     \csuse{Xmorethantwolines@\@currentseries}%
4186   \else%
4187     \csuse{Xtwolines@\@currentseries}%
4188   \fi%
4189 \else%
4190   \ifl@d@dash%
4191     \ifdefined\linangesep%
4192       \linangesep%
4193     \else%
4194       \csuse{Xlinangeseparator@\@currentseries}%
4195     \fi%
4196   \fi%
4197   \ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{before}%
4198     {\@annot@end@print}%
4199     {}%
4200   \ifl@d@pnum%
4201     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{#4}%
4202     \csuse{Xpagelinesep@\@currentseries}%
4203   \fi%
4204   \ifl@d@elin%
4205     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{%
4206       \linenumrep{#5}%
4207       \iftoggle{Xlineflag@\@currentseries}{#8}{}%
4208     }%
4209   \fi%
4210   \ifl@d@esl%
4211     \ifl@d@elin%
4212       \csuse{Xsublinesep@\@currentseries}%
4213     \fi%
4214     \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{\sublinenumrep{#6}}%
4215   \fi%
4216   \ifcsstring{Xlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{after}%
4217     {\@annot@end@print}%
4218     {}%
4219   \fi%
4220 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
4221   {}%
4222   {\hfill}%Prevent underfull hbox
4223 \egroup%
4224 \endgroup%
4225 }%
4226 %

```

### XIII.9.5 Footnote grouped by line

`\prepare@Xgroupbyline` `\prepare@Xgroupbyline` is a macro called on the `\metaXXXvfootnote` if `\Xgroupbyline` is set to true, instead of calling `\insert` directly. #1 The series  
 #2 The content of the footnote, which is also the line number indication  
 #3 This macro, which prepares the contents of the insertion

```

4227 \newcommand{\prepare@Xgroupbyline}[3]{%
4228   \iftoggle{Xgroupbylineseparatetwolines@#1}{%
4229     \l@dparsfootspec#2%
4230     \ifcsdef{#1@forinserting@l@dparseendpage-l@dparseendline-l@
l@dparseendsub}%
4231     {%
4232       \csgappto{#1@forinserting@l@dparseendpage-l@dparseendline-l@
l@dparseendsub}{%
4233         \hskip\csuse{Xafternote@#1}\relax%
4234       }%
4235     }%
4236   }%
4237   \add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs{#1@forinserting@l@dparseendpage-l@
l@dparseendline-l@dparseendsub}%
4238   \add@hookarg@specific@to@cs{#1@forinserting@l@dparseendpage-l@
l@dparseendline-l@dparseendsub}%
4239   \csxappto%
4240     {#1@forinserting@l@dparseendpage-l@dparseendline-l@dparseendsub
}%
4241   {%
4242     \keep@this@crossref@forinserting%
4243     \unexpanded{%
4244       \ifcempty{Xsymlinenum@#1}%
4245         {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
4246       }%
4247       #3{#1}{#2}%
4248     }%
4249   }%
4250   \listcsxadd{#1@forinserting}{l@dparseendpage-l@dparseendline-l@
l@dparseendsub}%
4251 }{%
4252 \ifcsdef{#1@forinserting@all}{%
4253   \csgappto%
4254     {#1@forinserting@all}%
4255     {\hskip\csuse{Xafternote@#1}\relax}%
4256   }{%
4257     \add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs{#1@forinserting@all}%
4258     \add@hookarg@specific@to@cs{#1@forinserting@all}%
4259     \csxappto%
4260       {#1@forinserting@all}%
4261     }%
4262     \keep@this@crossref@forinserting%

```



```

4263 \unexpanded{%
4264 \ifcseempty{Xsymlinenumber@#1}%
4265 {\csuse{Xparafootsep@#1}}%
4266 {}%
4267 #3{#1}{#2}%
4268 }%
4269 }%
4270 }%
4271 \listcsgadd{#1@forinserting}{all}%
4272 }%
4273 %

```

`\this@crossref@forinserting` `\keep@this@crossref@forinserting` is called by `\prepare@Xgroupbyline`. It just ensures that `\@this@crossref@start` and `\this@crossref@end` value are kept in memory.

```

4274 \newcommand{\keep@this@crossref@forinserting}{%
4275 \unexpanded{\gdef\@this@crossref@start}{\@this@crossref@start}%
4276 \unexpanded{\gdef\@this@crossref@end}{\@this@crossref@end}%
4277 }%
4278 %

```

## XIV Familiar footnotes

### XIV.1 Adjacent footnotes

The original edmac provided users with five series of critical footnotes (`\Afootnote` `\Bfootnote` `\Cfootnote` `\Dfootnote` `\Efootnote`), and L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X provides a single numbered footnote. The `reledmac` package uses the edmac mechanism to provide six series of numbered footnotes.

First, though, the `footmisc` package has an option whereby two or more consecutive footnotes have their marks separated by commas. This seemed to Peter Wilson such a useful ability that it was provided automatically by `eledmac`.

Maïeul Rouquette has maintained this feature in `reledmac`, despite he thought that is not directly in relationship with the aim of `reledmac`.

`\multiplefootnotemarker` These macros may have been defined by the `memoir` class, are provided by the `footmisc` package and perhaps by other footnote packages. That is why we use `\multfootsep` `\providecommand` and not `\newcommand`.

```

4279 \providecommand*\multiplefootnotemarker{3sp}
4280 \providecommand*\multfootsep{\textsuperscript{\normalfont,}}
4281
4282 %

```

`\m@mmf@prepare` A pair of self-cancelling kerns. This may have been defined in the `memoir` class.

```

4283 \providecommand*\m@mmf@prepare}{%
4284 \kern-\multiplefootnotemarker
4285 \kern\multiplefootnotemarker\relax}
4286 %

```

**\m@mmf@check** This may have been defined in the memoir class. If it recognises the last kern as \multiplefootnotemarker it typesets \multfootsep.

```

4287 \providecommand*\m@mmf@check}{%
4288 \ifdim\lastkern=\multiplefootnotemarker\relax
4289 \edef\@x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
4290 \unkern
4291 \multfootsep
4292 \spacefactor\@x@sf\relax
4293 \fi}
4294
4295 %

```

We have to modify \@footnotetext and \@footnotemark. However, if memoir is used the modifications have already been made.

```

4296 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{}{%
4297 %

```

**\@footnotetext** Add \m@mmf@prepare at the end of \@footnotetext.

```

4298 \apptocmd{\@footnotetext}{\m@mmf@prepare}{}{}
4299 %

```

**\@footnotemark** Modify \@footnotemark to cater for adjacent \footnotes.

```

4300
4301 \patchcmd{\@footnotemark}
4302 {\nobreak}
4303 {\m@mmf@check
4304 \nobreak
4305 }
4306 {}{}
4307 \patchcmd{\@footnotemark}
4308 {\@makefnmark}
4309 {\@makefnmark
4310 \m@mmf@prepare
4311 }
4312 {}{}
4313 %

```

Finished the modifications for the non-memoir case.

```

4314 }
4315
4316 %

```

## XIV.2 Regular footnotes for numbered texts

`\l@doldold@footnotetext` In order to enable the regular `\footnotes` in numbered text we have to play around  
`\@footnotetext` with its `\@footnotetext`, using different forms for when in numbered or regular text.

```

4317 \pretocmd{\@footnotetext}{%
4318   \ifnumberedpar@
4319   \edtext{}\l@dbfnote{#1}}%
4320 \else
4321   {}{}
4322 \apptocmd{\@footnotetext}{\fi}{}{}%
4323 %

```

`\l@dbfnote` `\l@dbfnote` adds the footnote to the insert list, and `\vl@dbfnote` calls the original  
`\vl@dbfnote` `\@footnotetext`. We also patch `\footnote` in order to get the correct footnote  
`\vl@dbfnote` numbers when typesetting parallel texts. This is moved into a `\get@fnmark` command.

`\footnote`

`\get@fnmark`

`\get@thisfootnote`

```

4324 \get@thisfootnote
4325 \patchcmd%
4326   {\footnote}%
4327   {\stepcounter\@mpfn}%
4328   {%
4329   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
4330   l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
4331     \global\advance\footnote@reading by \@ne%
4332     \get@thisfootnote%
4333     \get@fnmark{\thisc@footnote}%
4334     \ifcsdef{footnotereading\the\footnote@reading=typeset}%
4335       {\setcounter{\@mpfn}{\csuse{footnotereading\the\footnote@reading=
4336       typeset}}}%
4337       {\setcounter{\@mpfn}{\footnote@reading}}%
4338     }{%
4339     \stepcounter\@mpfn%
4340     }%
4341   }%
4342   {}
4343   {}
4344 \newcommand{\get@thisfootnote}{%
4345   \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
4346   l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
4347     \protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\footnote@reading}%
4348     }{%
4349     \protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\c@footnote}%
4350     }%
4351   }%
4352 \newcommand{\l@dbfnote}[1]{%

```

```

4352 \get@thisfootnote%
4353 \gdef\@tag{#1\relax}%
4354 \ifledRcol%
4355 \xright@appenditem{%
4356 \ifdefined\Hy@footnote@currentHref%
4357 \noexpand\def\noexpand\Hy@footnote@currentHref{\
Hy@footnote@currentHref}%
4358 \fi%
4359 \noexpand\vl@dbfnote{\expandonce\@tag}}{\thisc@footnote}%
4360 }%
4361 \to\inserts@listR
4362 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
4363 \else%
4364 \xright@appenditem{%
4365 \ifdefined\Hy@footnote@currentHref%
4366 \noexpand\def\noexpand\Hy@footnote@currentHref{\
Hy@footnote@currentHref}%
4367 \fi%
4368 \noexpand\vl@dbfnote{\expandonce\@tag}}{\thisc@footnote}%
4369 }%
4370 \to\inserts@list
4371 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
4372 \fi
4373 \ignorespaces%
4374 }%
4375
4376 \newcommand{\get@fnmark}[1]{%
4377 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}%
4378 {%
4379 \stepcounter{footnote@typeset}%
4380 \setcounter{footnote}{\c@footnote@typeset}%
4381 \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
4382 \csgdef{footnotereading#1=typeset}{\the\c@footnote@typeset}%
4383 }%
4384 \def\@thefnmark{\thefootnote}%
4385 }%
4386 {%
4387 \setcounter{footnote}{#1}%
4388 \def\@thefnmark{\thefootnote}%
4389 }%
4390 }%
4391
4392 \newcommand{\vl@dbfnote}[2]{%
4393 \get@fnmark{#2}%
4394 \@footnotetext{#1}%
4395 }%
4396 %

```

### XIV.3 Footnote formats

Some of the code for the various formats is remarkably similar to that in section ??.

The following macros generally set things up for the ‘standard’ footnote format.

`\prebodyfootmark` Two convenience macros for use by `\...@footnotemark...` macros.  
`\postbodyfootmark`

```

4397 \newcommand*{\prebodyfootmark}{%
4398   \leavevmode
4399   \ifhmode
4400     \edef\x@sf{\the\spacefactor}%
4401     \m@mmf@check
4402     \nobreak
4403   \fi}
4404 \newcommand{\postbodyfootmark}{%
4405   \m@mmf@prepare
4406   \ifhmode\spacefactor\x@sf\fi\relax}
4407
4408 %

```

### XIV.4 Footnote arrangement

#### XIV.4.1 User level macro

`\arrangementX` `\arrangementX[⟨s⟩]{⟨arrangement⟩}` command calls, for each series, a specific command which set many counters and commands in order to define specific arrangement.

```

4409 \newcommandx{\arrangementX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
4410   \def\do##1{%
4411     \csname arrangementX@#2\endcsname{##1}%
4412   }%
4413   \ifstrepty{#1}%
4414     {%
4415       \dolistloop{\@series}%
4416     }%
4417     {
4418       \docsvlist{#1}%
4419     }%
4420   }%
4421 %

```

#### XIV.4.2 Normal footnotes

`\normal@footnotemarkX` `\normal@footnotemarkX{⟨series⟩}` sets up the typesetting of the marker at the point where the footnote is called for.

```

4422 \newcommand*{\normal@footnotemarkX}[1]{%
4423   \prebodyfootmark
4424   \wrapped@bodyfootmarkX{#1}%
4425   \postbodyfootmark}

```

```
4426
4427 %
```

`\normalbodyfootmarkX` The `\normalbodyfootmarkX{⟨series⟩}` really typesets the in-text marker. The style is the normal superscript.

```
4428 \newcommand*{\normalbodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
4429   \hbox{\textsuperscript{\normalfont\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}%
4430 }
```

`\normalvfootnoteX` `\normalvfootnoteX{⟨series⟩}{⟨text⟩}` does the `\insert` for the `⟨series⟩` and calls the series' `\footfmt...` to format the `⟨text⟩`.

```
4431 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\normalvfootnoteX}[2]{%
4432   \beforeinsertionX{#1}%
4433   \insert\@nameuse{footins#1}\bgroup
4434     \fontseries{seriesdefault}%
4435     \fontshape{shapedefault}%
4436     \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
4437     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4438     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
4439     \footplitskips
4440     \ifl@dpairing\ifl@dpageing\else%
4441       \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4442     \fi\fi%
4443     \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4444     \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip
4445     \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}\@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
4446
4447 %
```

`\mpnormalvfootnoteX` The minipage version.

```
4448 \newcommand*{\mpnormalvfootnoteX}[3]{%
4449   \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
4450   \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
4451   \ifstrempy{#3}{%
4452     \edef\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\c@name footnote#1@reading\endc@name}%
4453   }{%
4454     \edef\this@footnoteX@reading{###3}%
4455   }%
4456   \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
4457     \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4458     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4459     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
4460     \hsize\columnwidth
4461     \@parboxrestore
4462     \color@begingroup
4463     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}}
4464
4465 %
```

`\normalfootfmtX` `\normalfootfmtX{<series>}{<text>}` typesets the footnote text, prepended by the marker.

```

4466 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\newcommand}{\normalfootfmtX}[2]{%
4467   \ifluatex%
4468     \texdir\footnote@luatextextdir%
4469     \pardir\footnote@luatexpardir%
4470   \fi%
4471   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
4472     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
4473   }%
4474   \ledsetnormalparstuffX{#1}%
4475   \sethangindentX{#1}%
4476   \rule\z@\splittopskip%
4477   {{\csuse{notenunfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}}%
4478     \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
4479   \strut\par}}
4480
4481 %

```

`\normalfootfootmarkX` `\normalfootfootmarkX{<series>}` is called by `\normalfootfmtX` to typeset the footnote marker in the footer before the footnote text.

```

4482 \newcommand*{\normalfootfootmarkX}[1]{%
4483   \textsuperscript{\@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}}}
4484
4485 %

```

`\normalfootstartX` `\normalfootstartX{<series>}` is the `<series>` footnote starting macro used in the output routine.

```

4486 \newcommand*{\normalfootstartX}[1]{%
4487   \ifdimequal{Opt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
4488   {%
4489     \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%
4490       \togglefalse{prenotesX@}%
4491       \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=%
4492       \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
4493     }%
4494     {}%
4495   }%
4496   \vskip\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname%
4497   \leftskip=\z@
4498   \rightskip=\z@
4499   \ifl@dpairing\else%
4500     \hsize=\old@hsize%
4501   \fi%
4502   \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4503   \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4504   \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4505 }%

```

```
4506
4507 %
```

**\normalfootnoteruleX** The rule drawn before the footnote series group.

```
4508 \let\normalfootnoteruleX=\footnoterule
4509
4510 %
```

**\normalfootgroupX** **\normalfootgroupX{<series>}** sends the contents of the <series> insert box to the output page without alteration.

```
4511 \newcommand*\normalfootgroupX[1]{%
4512   \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
4513   \unvbox\@nameuse{footins#1}%
4514   \hsize=\old@hsize%
4515 }%
4516
4517 %
```

**\mpnormalfootgroupX** The minipage version.

```
4518 \newcommand*\mpnormalfootgroupX[1]{%
4519   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4520   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
4521     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
4522     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
4523     \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
4524     \fi\fi\normalcolor
4525     \ifparledgroup%
4526       \ifl@dpairing%
4527       \else%
4528         \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4529         \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4530         \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4531       \fi%
4532     \else%
4533       \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4534       \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4535       \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4536     \fi%
4537     \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
4538     \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}}
4539
4540 %
```

**\normalbfnoteX** #1 = footnote series, #2 = footnote content, #3 manual footnote number

```
4541
4542 \newcommand{\normalbfnoteX}[3]{%
```



```

4543 \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
4544 \ifledRcol%
4545 \ifluatex
4546 \footnotelang@lua[R]%
4547 \fi
4548 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
4549 {}%
4550 {\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
4551 \xright@appenditem{%
4552 \noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
4553 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\led@nums}%
4554 \unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{familiar}}%
4555 \unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading}{\the\csname footnote#1
@reading\endcsname}%
4556 \noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
4557 \noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
4558 \unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@ne}%
4559 }%
4560 \to\inserts@listR
4561 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
4562 \else%
4563 \ifluatex
4564 \footnotelang@lua%
4565 \fi
4566 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
4567 {}%
4568 {\footnotelang@poly}%
4569 \xright@appenditem{%
4570 \noexpand\led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
4571 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\led@nums}%
4572 \unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{familiar}}%
4573 \unexpanded{\def\this@footnoteX@reading}{\the\csname footnote#1
@reading\endcsname}%
4574 \noexpand\vbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
4575 \noexpand\led@reinit@index@fornote%
4576 \unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@ne}%
4577 }%
4578 \to\inserts@list
4579 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
4580 \fi
4581 \ignorespaces}
4582
4583 %

```

`\get@thisfootnoteX` The macro `\get@thisfootnote` command just saves the footnote number in the `\thisfootnote` macro, depending on the use of pairing environments.

```

4584 \newcommand{\get@thisfootnoteX}[1]{%
4585 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%

```

```

4586 \protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\cename footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}%
4587 }{%
4588 \protected@xdef\thisc@footnote{\the\cename c@footnote#1\endcsname}%
4589 }%
4590 }%
4591 %

```

**\vbfnoteX** This command calls the correct footnote-inserting commands. #1 footnote series, #2 footnote content, #3 footnote counter, #4 manual footnote mark

```

4592 \newcommand{\vbfnoteX}[4]{%
4593 \get@fnmarkX{#1}{#3}{#4}\relax%
4594 \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}%
4595 }%
4596 %

```

**\get@fnmarkX** This command gets the correct footnote number when typesetting parallel texts. #1 footnote series, #2 footnote counter, #3 manual footnote number

```

4597 \newcommand{\get@fnmarkX}[3]{%
4598 \ifstrempy{#3}{%
4599 \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
4600 {%
4601 \stepcounter{footnote#1@typeset}%
4602 \setcounter{footnote#1}{\value{footnote#1@typeset}}%
4603 \namedef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
4604 \immediate\write\@mainaux{%
4605 \csgdef{footnote#1reading#2=typeset}{\the\cename c@footnote#1
@typeset\endcsname}%
4606 }%
4607 }%
4608 {%
4609 \setcounter{footnote#1}{#2}%
4610 \namedef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
4611 }%
4612 }%
4613 {%
4614 \csdef{@thefnmark#1}{#3}%
4615 }%
4616 }%
4617 %
4618 %

```

**\vnumfootnoteX** #1 footnote series, #2 footnote content, #3 manual footnote mark

```

4619 \newcommand{\vnumfootnoteX}[3]{%
4620 \ifnumberedpar@
4621

```

```

4622 \edtext{}{\normalbfnoteX{#1}{#2}{#3}}%
4623 \else
4624 \def\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
4625 \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
4626 \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\expandonce\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
4627 \@nameuse{regvfootnote#1}{#1}{#2}%
4628 \fi}
4629 %

```

`arrangementX@normal` `\arrangementX@normal{<series>}` initialises the settings for the `<series>` footnotes. This should always be called for each series.

```

4630 \newcommand*{\arrangementX@normal}[1]{%
4631 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{normal}
4632 \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\normalfootstartX
4633 \@namedef{@footnotemark#1}{\normal@footnotemarkX{#1}}
4634 \@namedef{bodyfootmark#1}{\normalbodyfootmarkX{#1}}
4635 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\normalvfootnoteX
4636 \expandafter\let\csname vfootnote#1\endcsname=\vnumfootnoteX
4637 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\normalfootfmtX
4638 \@namedef{footfootmark#1}{\normalfootfootmarkX{#1}}
4639 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\normalfootgroupX
4640 \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
4641 \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
4642 \csxdef{default@footins#1}{1000}%Use to have note only for one side
4643 \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
4644 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4645 \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
4646 %

```

Additions for minipages.

```

4647 \ifnoledgroup@else%
4648 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
4649 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpnormalfootgroupX
4650 \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
4651 \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
4652 \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4653 \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
4654 \fi
4655 }
4656
4657 %

```

#### XIV.4.3 Two columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in two columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\arrangementX@twocol  \newcommand*\arrangementX@twocol}[1]{%
4659   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{twocol}
4660   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\twocolvfootnoteX
4661   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\twocolfootfmtX
4662   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\twocolfootgroupX
4663   \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
4664   \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4665   \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
4666   \twocolfootsetupX{#1}
4667   \ifnoledgroup@else%
4668     \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
4669     \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mptwocolfootgroupX
4670     \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4671     \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}
4672     \mptwocolfootsetupX{#1}
4673   \fi%
4674 }
4675
4676 %

```

```

\twocolfootsetupX \twocolfootsetupX{<series>}
\mptwocolfootsetupX
4677 \newcommand*\twocolfootsetupX[1]{%
4678   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 500
4679   \csxdef{default@footins#1}{500}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
4680   \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
4681 \newcommand*\mptwocolfootsetupX[1]{%
4682   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 500
4683   \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \tw@}
4684
4685 %

```

```

\twocolvfootnoteX \twocolvfootnoteX{<series>}
4686 \notbool{parapparatus@}\newcommand*\newcommand*\twocolvfootnoteX}[2]{%
4687   \beforeinsertion@X{#1}%
4688   \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\relax%
4689   \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup%
4690     \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
4691     \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4692     \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
4693     \footsplitskips%
4694     \spaceskip=\z@skip \xspaceskip=\z@skip%
4695     \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
4696
4697 %

```

```

\twocolfootfmtX \twocolfootfmtX{<series>}

```

```

4698 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\twocolfootfmtX}[2]{%
4699   \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
4700     \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
4701   }%
4702   \normal@pars%
4703   \sethangindentX{#1}%
4704   \hsize \csuse{hsizetwocolX@#1}%
4705   \setparindentX{#1}%
4706   \tolerance=5000\relax%
4707   \par%
4708   \@tempdima=\parindent%
4709   \csuse{colalignX@#1}%
4710   \parindent=\@tempdima%
4711   {\hspace{\parindent}%
4712    \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}\strut%
4713    \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
4714    \strut\par}%
4715   \allowbreak%
4716 }%
4717
4718 %

```

`\twocolfootgroupX`    `\twocolfootgroupX{<series>}`

`\mptwocolfootgroupX`

```

4719 \newcommand*{\twocolfootgroupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
notefontsizeX@#1}
4720   \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
4721   \expandafter
4722   \rigidbalanceX\csname footins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
4723
4724 \newcommand*{\mptwocolfootgroupX}[1]{%
4725   \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4726   \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup%
4727     \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
4728     \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
4729     \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
4730   \fi\fi\normalcolor
4731   \ifparledgroup%
4732     \ifl@dpairing%
4733     \else%
4734       \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4735       \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4736       \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4737     \fi%
4738   \else%
4739     \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4740     \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4741     \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4742   \fi%
4743   \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%

```

```

4744 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
4745 \expandafter
4746 \rigidbalanceX\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \tw@ \splittopskip}}
4747
4748 %

```

#### XIV.4.4 Three columns footnotes

The following macros set footnotes in three columns. It is assumed that the length of each footnote is less than the column width.

```

\arrangementX@threecol 4749 \newcommand*\arrangementX@threecol}[1]{%
4750   \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{threecol}
4751   \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\threecolvfootnoteX
4752   \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\threecolfootfmtX
4753   \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\threecolfootgroupX
4754   \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}%
4755   \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4756   \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}\relax%
4757   \threecolfootsetupX{#1}
4758   \ifnoledgroup@else%
4759     \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mpnormalvfootnoteX
4760     \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mpthreecolfootgroupX
4761     \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4762     \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \csuse{afterruleX@#1}
4763     \mpthreecolfootsetupX{#1}
4764   \fi%
4765 }
4766
4767 %

```

```

\threecolfootsetupX \threecolfootsetupX{<series>}
\mpthreecolfootsetupX
4768 \newcommand*\threecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
4769   \count\csname footins#1\endcsname 333
4770   \csxdef{default@footins#1}{333}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
4771   \multiply\dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}
4772 \newcommand*\mpthreecolfootsetupX}[1]{%
4773   \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname 333
4774   \multiply\dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by \thr@@}
4775
4776 %

```

```

\threecolvfootnoteX \threecolvfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}
4777 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*}{\newcommand}{\threecolvfootnoteX}[2]{
%
4778 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\relax%

```

```

4779 \beforeinsertionX{#1}%
4780 \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname\bgroup%
4781 \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
4782 \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4783 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
4784 \footsplitskips%
4785 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\egroup}
4786
4787 %

```

`\threecolfootfmtX` `\threecolfootfmtX{<series>}`

```

4788 \notbool{parapparatus@}{\newcommand*{\threecolfootfmtX}[2]{%
4789 \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
4790 \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
4791 }%
4792 \sethangindentX{#1}%
4793 \normal@pars%
4794 \hsize \csuse{hsizethreecolX@#1}%
4795 \setparindentX{#1}%
4796 \tolerance=5000\relax%
4797 \@tempdima=\parindent%
4798 \csuse{colalignX@#1}%
4799 \parindent=\@tempdima%
4800 {\hspace{\parindent}%
4801 \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}\wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}\strut%
4802 \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
4803 \strut\par}\allowbreak}
4804
4805 %

```

`\threecolfootgroupX` `\threecolfootgroupX{<series>}`  
`\mpthreecolfootgroupX`

```

4806 \newcommand*{\threecolfootgroupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
notefontsizeX@#1}
4807 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
4808 \expandafter
4809 \rigidbalanceX\csname footins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
4810
4811 \newcommand*{\mpthreecolfootgroupX}[1]{%
4812 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4813 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
4814 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
4815 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
4816 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
4817 \fi\fi\normalcolor
4818 \ifparledgroup%
4819 \ifl@dpairing%
4820 \else%
4821 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%

```

```

4822 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4823 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4824 \fi%
4825 \else%
4826 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4827 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4828 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4829 \fi%
4830 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
4831 \splittopskip=\ht\strutbox
4832 \expandafter
4833 \rigidbalanceX\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname \thr@@ \splittopskip}}
4834
4835 %

```

#### XIV.4.5 Paraphed footnotes

The following macros set footnotes as one paragraph.

`\arrangementX@paragraph` `\footparagraphX{<series>}`

```

4836 \newcommand*{\arrangementX@paragraph}[1]{%
4837 \csgdef{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}%
4838 \expandafter\let\csname footstart#1\endcsname=\parafootstartX
4839 \expandafter\let\csname regvfootnote#1\endcsname=\para@vfootnoteX
4840 \expandafter\let\csname footfmt#1\endcsname=\parafootfmtX
4841 \expandafter\let\csname footgroup#1\endcsname=\para@footgroupX
4842 \expandafter\let\csname footnoterule#1\endcsname=\normalfootnoteruleX
4843 \count\csname footins#1\endcsname=1000
4844 \csxdef{default@footins#1}{1000}%Use this to confine the notes to one
side only
4845 \dimen\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
4846 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4847 \advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
4848 \para@footsetupX{#1}
4849 \ifnoledgroup@else
4850 \expandafter\let\csname mpvfootnote#1\endcsname=\mppara@vfootnoteX
4851 \expandafter\let\csname mpfootgroup#1\endcsname=\mppara@footgroupX
4852 \count\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=1000
4853 \dimen\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{maxhnotesX@#1}
4854 \skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
4855 \advance\skip\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
4856 \fi
4857 }
4858
4859 %

```

`\para@footsetupX` `\para@footsetupX{<series>}`



```

4860 \newcommand*{\para@footsetupX}[1]{\csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}\csuse{
notefontsizeX@#1}
4861 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4862 \ifcempty{widthX@#1}%
4863 {}%
4864 {\columnwidth=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax}%
4865 \dimen0=\baselineskip
4866 \multiply\dimen0 by 1024
4867 \divide\dimen0 by \columnwidth \multiply\dimen0 by \footfudgefiddle\relax
4868 %
4869 \expandafter
4870 \xdef\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname{%
\expandafter\strip@pt\dimen0 }}
4871 %
4872 %

```

**\parafootstartX** \parafootstartX{<series>}

```

4873 \newcommand*{\parafootstartX}[1]{%
4874 \ifdimequal{0pt}{\prenotesX@}{}%
4875 {%
4876 \iftoggle{prenotesX@}{%
4877 \togglefalse{prenotesX@}%
4878 \skip\csname footins#1\endcsname=%
4879 \glueexpr\csuse{prenotesX@}+\csuse{afterterruleX@#1}\relax%
4880 }%
4881 }%
4882 }%
4883 \leftskip=\z@
4884 \rightskip=\z@
4885 \setparindentX{#1}%
4886 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{footins#1}%
4887 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4888 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4889 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4890 }
4891 %
4892 %

```

**\para@vfootnoteX** \para@vfootnoteX{<series>}{<text>}

**\mppara@vfootnoteX**

```

4893 \newcommand*{\para@vfootnoteX}[2]{%
4894 \csuse{beforeinsertingX@#1}%
4895 \insert\csname footins#1\endcsname%
4896 \bgroup
4897 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
4898 \footsplitskips
4899 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
4900 \let\bidir@RTL@everypar\@empty%
4901 \insert@txtbeforenotesX{#1}%

```

```

4902 \noindent\csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4903 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}}%
4904 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvxhX{0}{#1}}%
4905 \dp0=\z@
4906 \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
4907 \box0
4908 \penalty0
4909 \egroup}
4910 \newcommand*{\mppara@vfootnoteX}[3]{%
4911 \get@thisfootnoteX{#1}%
4912 \get@fnmarkX{#1}{\thisc@footnote}{#3}%
4913 \edef\this@footnoteX@reading{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname}%
4914 \global\setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}\vbox{%
4915 \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4916 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
4917 \footsplitskips
4918 \setbox0=\vbox{\hsize=\maxdimen%
4919 \let\bidirTL@everypar\@empty%
4920 \noindent\color@begingroup%
4921 \csuse{bhooknoteX@#1}%
4922 \@nameuse{footfmt#1}{#1}{#2}\color@endgroup}%
4923 \setbox0=\hbox{\unvxhX{0}{#1}}%
4924 \dp0=\z@
4925 \ht0=\csname footfudgefactor#1\endcsname\wd0
4926 \box0
4927 \penalty0}}
4928
4929 %

```

```

\unvxhX%0 \newcommand*{\unvxhX}[2]{% 2th is optional for retro-compatibility
4931 \setbox0=\vbox{\unvbox#1%
4932 \global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
4933 \unhbox1
4934 \unskip % remove \rightskip,
4935 \unskip % remove \parfillskip,
4936 \unpenalty % remove \penalty of 10000,
4937 \hskip\csuse{afternoteX@#2}%
4938 \relax}% but add the glue to go between the notes
4939
4940 %

```

**\parafootfmtX** \parafootfmtX{<series>}

```

4941 \newcommand*{\parafootfmtX}[2]{%
4942 \protected@edef\@currentlabel{%
4943 \@nameuse{@thefnmark#1}%
4944 }%
4945 \insertparafootsepX{#1}%
4946 \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%

```

```

4947 {\csuse{notenumfontX@#1}%
4948 \csuse{notenumfontX@#1}%
4949 \wrapped@footfootmarkX{#1}%
4950 \strut%
4951 \csuse{wrapcontentX@#1}{#2}%
4952 \penalty-10}}
4953
4954 %

```

```

\para@footgroupX \para@footgroupX{<series>}
\mppara@footgroupX
4955 \newcommand*{\para@footgroupX}[1]{%
4956 \hsize=\expandafter\dimexpr\csuse{widthX@#1}\relax%
4957 \unvbox\csname footins#1\endcsname
4958 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
4959 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
4960 \makehboxofhboxes
4961 \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
4962 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}
4963 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}
4964 \unhbox0\par}
4965
4966 \newcommand*{\mppara@footgroupX}[1]{%
4967 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4968 \vskip\skip\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}
4969 \ifl@dpairing\ifparledgroup
4970 \leavevmode%
4971 \leavevmode\marks\parledgroup@{begin}%
4972 \marks\parledgroup@series{#1}%
4973 \marks\parledgroup@type{footnoteX}%
4974 \fi\fi\normalcolor
4975 \ifparledgroup%
4976 \ifl@dpairing%
4977 \else%
4978 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4979 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4980 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4981 \fi%
4982 \else%
4983 \setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@{#1}%
4984 \setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@{#1}%
4985 \print@footnoteXrule{#1}%
4986 \fi%
4987 \unvbox\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname
4988 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{L}{\RaggedLeft}{}%
4989 \ifcsstring{raggedX@#1}{R}{\RaggedRight}{}%
4990 \makehboxofhboxes
4991 \setbox0=\hbox{\unhbox0 \removehboxes}%
4992 \csuse{bhookgroupX@#1}%
4993 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%

```

```

4994 \setparindentX{#1}%
4995 \unhbox0\par}}
4996
4997 %

```

**Insertion of the footnotes separator** The command `\insertparafootsepX{<series>}` must be called at the beginning of `\parafootftmX`.

```

\insertparafootsepX98 \newcommand{\insertparafootsepX}[1]{%
4999 \ifledRcol@%
5000 \ifnumequal{\csuse{prevpage#1@numR}}{\page@numR}%
5001 {\csuse{parafootsepX@#1}}%
5002 {}%
5003 \global\csname prevpage#1@numR\endcsname=\page@numR%
5004 \else%
5005 \ifnumequal{\csuse{prevpage#1@num}}{\page@num}%
5006 {\csuse{parafootsepX@#1}}%
5007 {}%
5008 \global\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname=\page@num%
5009 \fi%
5010 }
5011 %

```

## XIV.5 Wrapping footnote marks in hyperlink

`\wrapped@footfootmarkX` `\wrapped@footfootmarkX` prints the footnote mark of the footpage, wrapped in `hyperref` package's commands, if needed.

```

5012 \newcommand{\wrapped@footfootmarkX}[1]{%
5013 \ifdefined\hypertarget%
5014 \hyperlink%
5015 {\@bodyfootmark#1@this@footnoteX@reading}%
5016 {\@nameuse{footfootmark#1}}%
5017 \Hy@raisedlink{%
5018 \hypertarget%
5019 {\@footnotemark#1@this@footnoteX@reading}%
5020 {}%
5021 }%
5022 \else%
5023 \@nameuse{footfootmark#1}%
5024 \fi%
5025 }%
5026 %

```

`\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX` `\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX` prints the footnote mark of the text body, wrapped in `hyperref` package's commands, if needed.

```

5027 \newcommand{\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX}[1]{%
5028   \ifdefined\hypertarget%
5029     \hyperlink%
5030       {@footnotemark#1\expandafter\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}%
5031     {@nameuse{bodyfootmark#1}}%
5032   \Hy@raisedlink{%
5033     \hypertarget%
5034       {@bodyfootmark#1\expandafter\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}%
5035     {}%
5036   }%
5037   \else%
5038     \@nameuse{bodyfootmark#1}%
5039   \fi%
5040 }%
5041 %

```

## XV Code common to both critical and familiar footnote in normal arrangement

\par should always be redefined to \endgraf within the format macro (this is what \normal@pars does), to override tricky material in the main text to get the lines numbered automatically (as set up by \autopar, for example).

In the case of footnote arranged in a “normal” way, we also must set some setting for paragraph indent and text direction when using Lua<sup>®</sup>TeX.

That why we have defined \ledsetnormalparstuff@common in order to make this setting for both familiar and critical notes. This command is called by command to make specific setting to critical or familiar footnote.

```

\ledsetnormalparstuff@common 42 \newcommand*{\ledsetnormalparstuff@common}{%
\Xledsetnormalparstuff 43   \ifluatex%
\ledsetnormalparstuffX 44   \ifdefstring{\footnote@luatextextdir}{TLT}{}%
5045     {\textdir\footnote@luatextextdir}%
5046   \pardir\footnote@luatexpardir%
5047   \fi%
5048   \csuse{\csuse{footnote@dir}}%
5049   \normal@pars%
5050   \parfillskip \z@ \@plus 1fil}%
5051
5052 \newcommand*{\Xledsetnormalparstuff}[1]{%
5053   \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
5054   \Xsetparindent{#1}%
5055   \iftoggle{Xparindent@#1}{\hspace{\parindent}}{}%
5056 }%
5057
5058 \newcommand*{\ledsetnormalparstuffX}[1]{%

```

```

5059 \ledsetnormalparstuff@common%
5060 \setparindentX{#1}%
5061 \iftoggle{parindentX@#1}{\hspace{\parindent}}{}%
5062 }%
5063 %

```

## XVI Footnotes' width for two columns

We define here some commands which make sense only with `reledpar`, but must be called when defining notes parameters. These commands change the width of block notes to allow them to have the same size than two parallel columns.

`\old@hsize` These two commands are called at the beginning of critical or familiar notes groups. They set, if the option is enabled, the `\hsize`. They are also called at the on the setup for paragraphed notes.

`\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@`

`\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@`

```

5064
5065 \newdimen\old@hsize%
5066 \AtBeginDocument{\old@hsize=\hsize}%
5067
5068 \newcommand{\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
5069   \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
5070   \global\old@hsize=\hsize%
5071   \let\old@columnwidth=\columnwidth%
5072   \iftoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}%
5073     {%
5074       \setwidthliketwocolumns%
5075       \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
5076     }%
5077   {}%
5078   \let\hsize=\hsize@fornote%
5079   \let\columnwidth=\old@columnwidth%
5080 }%
5081
5082 \newcommand{\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@}[1]{%
5083   \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
5084   \global\old@hsize=\hsize%
5085   \let\old@columnwidth=\columnwidth%
5086   \iftoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}%
5087     {%
5088       \setwidthliketwocolumns%
5089       \global\let\hsize@fornote=\hsize%
5090     }%
5091   {}%
5092   \let\hsize=\hsize@fornote%
5093   \let\columnwidth=\old@columnwidth%
5094 }%
5095
5096 %

```

`\setnotespositionliketwocolumns@` These two commands set the position of the critical / familiar footnotes, depending on the hooks `Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns` and `noteswidthliketwocolumnsX`. They call commands which are defined only in `reledpar`, because this feature has no sense without `reledpar`.

```

5097 \newcommand{\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
5098   \iftoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}{%
5099     \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
5100   }{}%
5101 }%
5102
5103 \newcommand{\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@}[1]{%
5104   \iftoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}{%
5105     \csuse{setnotespositionliketwocolumns@\columns@position}%
5106   }{}%
5107 }%
5108
5109 %

```

## XVII Footnotes' order

`\fnpos` The `\fnpos` and `\mpfnpos` simply place their arguments in `\@fnpos` and `\@mpfnpos`, which will be used later in the output routine.

```

5110 \def\@fnpos{familiar-critical}
5111 \def\@mpfnpos{critical-familiar}
5112 \newcommand{\fnpos}[1]{\xdef\@fnpos{#1}}
5113 \newcommand{\mpfnpos}[1]{\xdef\@mpfnpos{#1}}
5114 %

```

## XVIII Footnotes' rule

Because the footnotes' rules can be shifted to the right when footnotes are set like two columns, we do not print them directly, but we put them in a `\vbox`.

```

\print@Xfootnoterule15 \newcommand{\print@Xfootnoterule}[1]{%
\print@footnoteXrule16   \vskip-\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{#1footins}
5117   \nointerlineskip%
5118   \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{#1footnoterule}}%
5119   \nointerlineskip%
5120   \vskip\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
5121 }%
5122
5123 \newcommand{\print@footnoteXrule}[1]{%
5124   \vskip-\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%Because count in \dimen\csuse{footins#1}
5125   \nointerlineskip%
5126   \moveleft-\leftskip\vbox{\csuse{footnoterule#1}}%

```

```

5127 \nointerlineskip%
5128 \vskip\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
5129 }%
5130
5131 %

```

## XIX Specific skip for first series of footnotes

### XIX.1 Overview

`\Xbeforenotes` inserts a specific skip for the first series of notes in a page. As we can't know in advance which series will be the first, we call `\prepare@Xprenotes` before inserting any critical notes in order to prevent page number overlapping.

1. If it is the first note of the current page, it changes the footnote skip for the series to the value specified to `\Xbeforenotes`. It also keeps the series of the note as the first one of the current page.
2. If it is not the first note of the current page:
  - If the current series is printed after the series kept as the first of the current page, then nothing happens.
  - If the current series is printed before the series kept as the first of the current page, then it changes the footnote skip of the current series to the value normally used by the series which was marked as the first of the page. It also keeps the current series as the new first one of the current page.

For example, suppose the series order is A,B. We call first a `\Bfootnote` and a `\Afootnote`. The only skips used are, finally, the skip specific to the first series of the page, and the skip for the B series. If we have not called `\Afootnote`, the only skip used is the skip specific to the first series of the page.

That is perfect.

The series skip and the first series of the current page are reset before the footnotes are printed. Then, the footstart macros manage the problem of the first series of the page.

After the rule, the space which is defined by `\Xafterrule` does not depend on whether the series is the first one of the page or not. So we use its normal value for each series.

And now, implementation !

### XIX.2 User level command

`\Xprenotes@` If user redefines `\Xprenotes@`, via `\Xprenotes` to a value greater than 0 pt, this skip will be added before first series notes instead of the notes skip.

```

5132 \newtoggle{Xprenotes@}%
5133 \toggletrue{Xprenotes@}%

```



```

5134 \newcommand{\Xprenotes@}{Opt}%
5135 \newcommand*{\Xprenotes}[1]{\renewcommand{\Xprenotes@}{#1}}%
5136 \newcommand{\preXnotes}[1]{\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated\Xprenotes{#1}}
    %For compatibility
5137 %

```

The same, but for familiar footnotes.

```

\Xprenotes 38 \newtoggle{prenotesX@}
\Xprenotes 39 \toggletrue{prenotesX@}
5140 \newcommand{\prenotesX@}{Opt}
5141 \newcommand*{\prenotesX}[1]{\renewcommand{\prenotesX@}{#1}}
5142 %

```

### XIX.3 Internal commands

```

firstXseries@ 43 \gdef\firstXseries@{}
prepare@Xprenotes 44 \newcommand{\prepare@Xprenotes}[1]{%
5145 \ifdimequal{Opt}{\Xprenotes@}%
5146 {}%
5147 {%
5148 \IfStrEq{\firstXseries@}{}{%
5149 \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\Xprenotes@%
5150 \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@
#1}%
5151 \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
5152 }%
5153 {%
5154 \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstXseries@}%
5155 {%
5156 \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@\firstXseries@}%
5157 \global\advance\skip\csname #1footins\endcsname by\csuse{Xafterrule@
#1}%
5158 \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
5159 }%
5160 {}%
5161 }%
5162 }%
5163 }
5164 %

```

The same thing is required for familiar notes and \prenotesX.

```

firstseriesX@ 65 \gdef\firstseriesX@{}
prepare@prenotesX 66 \newcommand{\prepare@prenotesX}[1]{%
5167 \ifdimequal{Opt}{\prenotesX@}%
5168 {}%

```

```

5169 {%
5170 \IfStrEq{\firstseriesX@}{}{%
5171 \global\skip\csuse{footins#1}=\prenotesX@%
5172 \global\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@
#1}%
5173 \gdef\firstseriesX@{#1}%
5174 }%
5175 {%
5176 \ifseriesbefore{#1}{\firstseriesX@}%
5177 {%
5178 \global\skip\csuse{footins#1}=\csuse{beforenotesX@\firstseriesX@}%
5179 \global\advance\skip\csname footins#1\endcsname by\csuse{afterruleX@
#1}%
5180 \gdef\firstXseries@{#1}%
5181 }%
5182 {}%
5183 }%
5184 }%
5185 }
5186 %

```

## XX Endnotes

First, check the noend option.

```

5187 \ifbool{noend@}{}{%Used instead of \ifnoend@ to prevent expansion problem
5188 %

```

### XX.1 Internal commands

`\l@dend@open` and `\l@dend@close` are the macros that are used to open and close the endnote file. Note that all our writing to this file is `\immediate`: all page and line numbers for the endnotes are generated by the same mechanism we use for the footnotes, so that there is no need to defer any writing to catch information from the output routine. The argument of these two command is the series letter.

```

5189 \newcommand{\l@dend@open}[1]{%
5190 \global\booltrue{l@dend@#1}%
5191 \expandafter\immediate%
5192 \expandafter\openout%
5193 \csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
5194 =\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end\relax%
5195 }%
5196 \newcommand{\l@dend@close}[1]{%
5197 \global\boolfalse{l@dend@#1}%
5198 \expandafter\immediate%
5199 \expandafter\closeout\csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
5200 }%

```

5201  
5202 %

**\l@dend@stuff** \l@dend@stuff is used by \beginnumbering to do everything that is necessary for the endnotes at the start of each section: it opens the \l@d@end file, if necessary, and writes the section number to the endnote file.

```
5203 \newcommand{\l@dend@stuff}{%
5204   \def\do##1{%
5205     \ifbool{l@dend@##1}{}%
5206     {\l@dend@open{##1}}}%
5207   \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@##1end\endcsname{\
string\l@d@section{\the\section@num}\@percentchar}%
5208   }%
5209   \dolistloop{@series}%
5210 }%
5211
5212 %
```

**\endprint** The \endprint here is nearly identical in its functioning to \normalfootfmt.  
**\l@d@section** The endnote file also contains \l@d@section commands, which supply the section numbers from the main text; standard reledmac does nothing with this information, but it is there if you want to write custom macros to do something with it. Arguments are:

- #1 Line numbers and font selection.
- #2 Lemma.
- #3 Note content.
- #4 Series.
- #5 Optional argument of \Xendnote.
- #6 Side (L or R).
- #7 Label for cross-referencing.

```
5213 \global\notbool{parapparatus@}{\long}\def\endprint#1#2#3#4#5#6#7{%
5214   \iftoggle{Xendfirstnote@#4}{%
5215     \global\togglefalse{Xendfirstnote@#4}%
5216     \csuse{Xendtxtbeforenotes@#4}%
5217   }{%
5218     \csuse{Xendbhooknote@#4}%
5219     \csuse{Xendnotefontsize@#4}%
5220     \hangindent=\csuse{Xendhangindent@#4}%
5221     \Xendstorelineinfo{#1}{#4}%
5222     \ifXendinsertsep%
5223       \hskip\csuse{Xendafternote@#4}\relax%
```

```

5224 \ifcsdef{prevendline#4}%
5225   {\ifcsequal{prevendline#4}{lineinfo@}%
5226     {\ifcseempty{Xendsymnum@#4}{\csuse{Xendsep@#4}}{}}%
5227     {\csuse{Xendsep@#4}}%
5228   }%
5229   {\csuse{Xendsep@#4}}%
5230 \else%
5231   \iftoggle{Xendparagraph@#4}%
5232     {\global\Xendinsertsep@true}%
5233     {}%
5234 \fi%
5235 \xdef\@currentseries{#4}%
5236 \def\do##1{%
5237   \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5238 }%
5239 \notblank{#5}{\docsvlist{#5}}{}%
5240 \IfStrEq{#6}{R}{\ledRcol@true}{}%
5241 \def\@this@crossref@start{#7:start}%
5242 \def\@this@crossref@end{#7:end}%
5243 \printlineendnote{#1}{#4}%
5244 \IfStrEq{#6}{R}{\ledRcol@false}{}%
5245 \nottoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#4}%
5246   {\select@lemmafnt#1}%
5247   {}%
5248 \bgroup%
5249   \csuse{Xendlemmafnt@#4}%
5250   \csuse{Xendwraplemma@#4}{#2}%
5251 \egroup%
5252 \ifboolexpr{%
5253   togl {nosep@}%
5254   or test{\ifcseempty{Xendlemmaseparator@#4}}%
5255 }%
5256   {\hskip\csuse{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator@#4}\relax}%
5257   {\nobreak%
5258     \hskip\csuse{Xendbeforelemmaseparator@#4}%
5259     \csuse{Xendlemmaseparator@#4}%
5260     \hskip\csuse{Xendafterlemmaseparator@#4}%
5261     \relax%
5262   }%
5263   \csuse{Xendwrapcontent@#4}{#3}%
5264   \nottoggle{Xendparagraph@#4}{\par}{}%
5265   \def\do##1{%
5266     \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
5267   }%
5268   \notblank{#5}{\docsvlist{#5}}{}%
5269 }}%
5270
5271 \let\l@d@section=\@gobble
5272
5273 %

```

**\Xendstorelineinfo** The \Xendstorelineinfo macro is used to store some data about line number of the current critical endnote, data which will be reused later for the \Xnumberonlyfirstinline and related setting.

#1 endnote specification for the current endnote; #2 endnote series.

```

5274 \newcommand{\Xendstorelineinfo}[2]{%
5275   \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|{%
5276   \iftoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#2}{%
5277     \xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \
5278       \l@dparsedstartsub - \l@dparsedendpage - \l@dparsedendline - \
5279       \l@dparsedendsub}%
5280     }%
5281     {\%
5282       \xdef\lineinfo@{\l@dparsedstartpage - \l@dparsedstartline - \
5283         \l@dparsedstartsub}%
5284       }%
5285     }%
5286   }%
5287   %

```

**\printlineendnote** This macro controls, in endnote, whether the line number is printed or not, according to the series options. Its first argument is the information about lines; its second is the series of the footnote.

```

5284 \newcommand{\printlineendnote}[2]{%
5285   \ifboolexpr{%
5286     togl {nonum@}%
5287     or togl {Xendnonumber@#2}%
5288   }%
5289   {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
5290   {%
5291     \iftoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline@#2}%
5292     {\ifcsdef{prevendline#2}%
5293       {\ifcsequal{prevendline#2}{lineinfo@}%
5294         {%
5295           \csuse{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#2}%
5296           \ifcsequal{Xendsymnum@#2}%
5297             {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofnumber@#2}}}%
5298             {\printlineendnotearea{#2}}}%
5299           \csuse{Xendahookinplaceofnumber@#2}%
5300         }%
5301         {\printlineendnotearea{#1}{#2}}}%
5302       {\printlineendnotearea{#1}{#2}}}%
5303     }%
5304     {\printlineendnotearea{#1}{#2}}%We keep every time line
5305     \csxdef{prevendline#2}{\lineinfo@}%
5306   }%
5307 }%
5308 %

```

```

\printsymlineendnotearea 5309 \newcommand{\printsymlineendnotearea}[1]{%
5310 \hspace{\csuse{Xendbeforeysymlinenum@#1}}%
5311 \csuse{Xendnotenumfont@#1}%
5312 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxsymlinenum@#1}}{\z@}%
5313 {\csuse{Xendsymlinenum@#1}}%
5314 {\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxsymlinenum@#1}%
5315 {\csuse{Xendsymlinenum@#1}\hfill}%
5316 }%
5317 \hspace{\csuse{Xendaftersymlinenum@#1}}%
5318 }%
5319 %

```

`\printlineendnotearea` This macro prints the space before the line number, changes the font, then prints the line number and the space after it. It is called by `\endprint` depending of the options about repeating line numbers. The first argument is line information, the second is the notes series (A, B, C, etc.)

```

5320 \newcommand{\printlineendnotearea}[2]{%
5321 \csuse{Xendbhooklinenumber@#2}%
5322 \hspace{\csuse{Xendbeforenumber@#2}}%
5323 \bgroup%
5324 \csuse{Xendnotenumfont@#2}%
5325 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxlinenum@#2}}{\Opt}%
5326 {\printendlines#1||\ifledRcol@{\@Rlineflag\fi}%
5327 {\leavevmode%
5328 \hbox to \csuse{Xendboxlinenum@#2}%
5329 {%
5330 \IfSubStr{RC}{\csuse{Xendboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}}%
5331 \printendlines#1||\ifledRcol@{\@Rlineflag\fi}%
5332 \IfSubStr{LC}{\csuse{Xendboxlinenumalign@#2}}{\hfill}{}}%
5333 }%
5334 \egroup%
5335 \hspace{\csuse{Xendafternumber@#2}}%
5336 \csuse{Xendahooklinenumber@#2}%
5337 }%
5338 %

```

## XX.2 User level commands

### XX.2.1 Inserting contents to endnotes

The `\Xendnotes` commands are defined above, when defining apparatus commands by series. Here, we define only `\toendnotes` command not specific to a series, in order to insert arbitrary code. The regular version writes an unexpanded argument, while the regular version writes a once-expanded argument.

```

\toendnotes 539 \newcommandx{\toendnotes}[2][1,usedefault]{%
\toendnotes* 540 \ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR}}{%

```

```

5341 \def\do##1{%
5342   \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@##1end\endcsname%
5343   {\unexpanded{#2}\@percentchar}%
5344 }%
5345 \ifstrempy{#1}%
5346   {\dolistloop{\@series}}%
5347   {\docsvlist{#1}}%
5348 }{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}%
5349 }%
5350 \WithSuffix\newcommandx\toendnotes*[2][1,usedefault]{%
5351   \ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR}}{%
5352     \def\do##1{%
5353       \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@##1end\endcsname%
5354       {#2\@percentchar}%
5355     }%
5356     \ifstrempy{#1}%
5357       {\dolistloop{\@series}}%
5358       {\docsvlist{#1}}%
5359     }{\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering}%
5360 }%
5361 %

```

### XX.2.2 Printing endnotes

**\doendnotes** \doendnotes is the command you use to print one series of endnotes; it takes one argument: the series letter of the note series you want to print. **\Xendinsertsep@** is set to true at the first note of the series, and to false at the last one.

```

5362 \newif\ifXendinsertsep@
5363 \newcommand*{\doendnotes}[1]{%
5364   \l@dend@close{#1}%
5365   \begingroup
5366     \csxdef{prevpagenum@#1}{}%
5367     \csxdef{prevpagerange@#1}{}%
5368     \global\toggletrue{Xendfirstnote@#1}%
5369     \makeatletter
5370     \expandafter\let\csname #1end\endcsname=\endprint
5371     \input\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end%
5372     \global\Xendinsertsep@false%
5373   \endgroup
5374 %

```

**\doendnotesbysection** \doendnotesbysection is a variant of the previous macro. While \doendnotes print endnotes for all of numbered sections \doendnotesbysection print the endnotes for the first numbered section at its first call for a series, then for the second section at its second call for the same series, then for the third section at its third call for the same series, and so on.

```

5375 \newcommand*{\doendnotesbysection}[1]{%

```

```

5376 \l@dend@close{#1}%
5377 \csxdef{prevpagenum@#1}{}%
5378 \csxdef{prevpagerange@#1}{}%
5379 \global\expandafter\advance\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname by 1%
5380 \begingroup%
5381   \makeatletter%
5382   \def\l@d@section##1{%
5383     \global\toggletrue{Xendfirstnote@#1}%
5384     \ifnumequal{##1}{\csname #1end@bysection\endcsname}%
5385       {\cslet{#1end}{\endprint}}%
5386       {\cslet{#1end}{\@gobbleseven}}%
5387   }%
5388   \input\l@auxdir\jobname.#1end%
5389   \global\Xendinsertsep@false%
5390 \endgroup%
5391 }%
5392 %

```

We close now the conditional period, which depends on `\ifnoend@`, because the following commands can be used by other commands than those specific to endnotes.

```

5393 }%
5394 %

```

**\setprintendlines** The `\printendlines` macro is similar to `\printlines` but is for printing endnotes rather than footnotes.

The principal difference between foot- and endnotes is that footnotes are printed on the page where they are specified but endnotes are printed at a different point in the document. We need an indication of the source of an endnote; `\setprintendlines` provides this by always printing the page number. The coding is slightly simpler than `\setprintlines`.

from the starting page number.

```

5395 \newcommand*{\setprintendlines}[6]{%
5396   \let\@annot@start@print\relax%
5397   \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
5398   \l@d@pnumfalse%
5399   \l@d@dashfalse%
5400   \l@d@elinfalse%
5401 %

```

First of all, we print the second page number only if the ending page number is different

```

5402   \ifnum#4=#1 \else
5403     \l@d@pnumtrue
5404     \l@d@dashtrue
5405   \fi
5406 %

```

We print the ending line number if: (1) we are printing the ending page number, or (2) the ending line is different from the starting line number.



```

5407 \ifboolexpr{%
5408     bool{l@d@pnum}%
5409     or not test{\ifnumequal{#2}{#5}}%
5410 }{%
5411     \l@d@elintrue%
5412     \l@d@dashtrue%
5413     \l@d@elintrue
5414     \l@d@dashtrue
5415     \unless\ifx\relax\annot@end%
5416     \def\@annot@end@print{%
5417         \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xendwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries
5418     }\@annot@end}%
5419     }%
5420     \fi%
5421 }%
5422 {}%
5423 %

```

We define the starting line number annotation as a merge of the starting annotation and ending annotation if we don't print the ending line number. Otherwise, it is only the starting annotation.

```

5423 \ifl@d@elin%
5424 \def\@annot@start@print{%
5425     \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xendwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{\
5426     \annot@start}%
5427     }%
5428     \else%
5429     \ifx\annot@start\annot@end%
5430     \unless\ifx\@annot@start\relax%
5431     \def\@annot@start@print{%
5432         \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xendwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries
5433     }\@annot@start}%
5434     }%
5435     \fi%
5436     \else%
5437     \ifx\@annot@end@print\relax%
5438     \def\@annot@start@print{%
5439         \l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox{Xendwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries
5440     }\@annot@start}%
5441     }%
5442     \fi%
5443     \else%
5444     \csuse{Xendlinangeseparator@\@currentseries}%
5445     \fi%
5446     \annot@end%
5447     }%
5448 }%

```

```

5449         \else%
5450             \let\@annot@start@print\@annot@end@print%
5451             \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
5452         \fi%
5453     \fi%
5454 \fi%
5455 %

```

We print the starting sub-line if it is nonzero.

```

5456     \l@d@ssubfalse
5457     \ifnum#3=0 \else
5458         \l@d@ssubtrue
5459     \fi
5460 %

```

We print the ending sub-line if it is nonzero and: (1) it is different from the starting sub-line number, or (2) the ending line number is being printed.

```

5461     \l@d@eslfalse
5462     \ifnum#6=0 \else
5463         \ifnum#6=#3
5464             \ifl@d@elin \l@d@esltrue \else \l@d@eslfalse \fi
5465         \else
5466             \l@d@esltrue
5467             \l@d@dashtrue
5468         \fi
5469     \fi%
5470 %

```

```

5471     \ifl@d@dash%
5472     \ifbool{expr{togl{fulllines@} or test{\ifcsemt{Xendtwolines@}\
@currentseries}}}%
5473     {%
5474     {%
5475     \setistwofollowinglines{#1}{#2}{#4}{#5}%
5476     \ifbool{expr{
5477         (%
5478             togl {Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@\@currentseries}%
5479             and not%
5480             (%
5481                 bool {istwofollowinglines@}%
5482             )%
5483         )%
5484         or%
5485         (%
5486             (not test{\ifnumequal{#1}{#4}})%
5487             and togl{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@\@currentseries}%
5488         )%
5489         }%
5490     }%
5491     {%

```

```

5492         \l@d@dashfalse%
5493         \l@d@Xtwolinestrue%
5494         \l@d@elinfalse%
5495         \l@d@eslfalse%
5496         \ifcempty{Xendmorethantwolines@\@currentseries}%
5497         {%
5498         {\ifistwofollowinglines@\else%
5499         \l@d@Xmorethantwolinestrue%
5500         \fi%
5501         }%
5502         }%
5503     }%
5504 \fi%
5505 %

```

If the `\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation` is set for this series, we check if the ending annotation is identical to the starting. If true, we don't print the ending annotation

```

5506 \iftoggle{Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation@\@currentseries}{%
5507     \ifx\annot@start\annot@end%
5508     \let\@annot@end@print\relax%
5509     \ifx\linenumrep\@gobble%Don't print the dash if we're not printing
the line number
5510     \l@d@dashfalse%
5511     \fi%
5512 \fi%
5513 }{%
5514 %

```

Finally, we check for `\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst` and `\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo`, and we redefine, if required, `\@annot@start@print` and `\annot@end@print`. We also store the current line number annotations.

```

5515 \iftoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst@\@currentseries}{%
5516     \ifbool{expr{%
5517         (%
5518         tog1{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}%
5519         and test{\ifcsequal{annot@start}{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}%
5520         and test{\ifcsequal{annot@end}{prevannot@end@\@currentseries}}%
5521         )%
5522         or%
5523         (%
5524         not tog1{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@\@currentseries}%
5525         test{\ifcsequal{annot@start}{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}}%
5526         )%
5527     }{%
5528         \def\@annot@start@print{%
5529             \l@wrapcs{ifnotemptybox{Xendwraplinenumannotation@\@currentseries
}{\csuse{Xendsymmlinenumannotation@\@currentseries}}}%
5530         }%

```

```

5531 \let\annot@end@print\relax%
5532 \ifx\linenumrep\gobble%Don't print the dash if we're not printing
the line number
5533 \l@d@dashfalse%
5534 \fi%
5535 \fi}%
5536 \global\cslet{prevannot@start@\@currentseries}{\annot@start}%
5537 \global\cslet{prevannot@end@\@currentseries}{\annot@end}%
5538 }%
5539 {}%
5540 %

End of \setprintendlines.

5541 }%
5542 %

```

**\printendlines** Now we are ready to print it all.

```

5543 \def\printendlines#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8|{%
5544 \begingroup
5545 \setprintendlines{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}{#5}{#6}%
5546 %

```

The only subtlety left here is when to print a period between numbers. But the only instance in which this is tricky is for the ending sub-line number: it could be coming after the starting sub-line number (in which case we want only the dash) or after an ending line number (in which case we need to insert a period).

So, first, start the starting line box, if needed.

```

5547 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}}{0pt}%
5548 {\bgroup}%
5549 {\leavevmode\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxstartlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup
\hfill}%
5550 %

```

Then, print the starting page number-

```

5551 \ifboolexpr{%
5552 (%
5553 test{\ifcsstring{prevpagenum@\@currentseries}{#1}}%
5554 and not%
5555 (togl{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle@\@currentseries} and bool{
l@d@pnum}})%
5556 )%
5557 or%
5558 (%
5559 test {\ifcsstring{prevpagerange@\@currentseries}{#1-#4}}%
5560 )%
5561 }%
5562 {%
5563 \ifcsempy{Xendsympagenum@\@currentseries}%

```

```

5564     {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofpagenumber@\@currentseries}}}%
5565     {\csuse{Xendsympagenum@\@currentseries}}}%
5566   }%
5567   {%
5568   \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{\printnpnum{#1}}%
5569   }%
5570 %

```

Then, determine what must be printed before the start line.

```

5571 \ifl@d@dash%
5572 \ifl@d@pnum%
5573   \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}%
5574 \else%
5575   \ifcempty{Xendlineprefixmore@\@currentseries}%
5576   {\csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}}%
5577   {\csuse{Xendlineprefixmore@\@currentseries}}%
5578 \fi%
5579 \else%
5580   \csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}%
5581 \fi%
5582 %

```

Then print the starting line, followed, if needed, by the side flag and the starting sub line number, then the line number annotation.

```

5583 \ifcsstring{Xendlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{before}%
5584   {\@annot@start@print}%
5585   {}%
5586 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{%
5587   \ifledRcol%
5588     \linenumrepR{#2}%
5589   \else%
5590     \linenumrep{#2}%
5591   \fi%
5592 }%
5593 \iftoggle{Xendlineflag@\@currentseries}{\ifledRcol@\@Rlineflag\fi}{}%
5594 \ifl@d@ssub%
5595   \csuse{Xendsublinesep@\@currentseries}%
5596   \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@start}{%
5597     \ifledRcol%
5598       \sublinenumrepR{#3}%
5599     \else%
5600       \sublinenumrep{#3}%
5601     \fi%
5602   }%
5603 \fi%
5604 \ifcsstring{Xendlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{after}%
5605   {\@annot@start@print}%
5606   {}%
5607 %

```

Close the box.

```
5608 \egroup%
5609 %
```

Open the box for the ending line number.

```
5610 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}}{Opt}%
5611 {\bgroup}%
5612 {\hbox to \csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@\@currentseries}\bgroup}%
5613 %
```

Print the dash + the ending line number, or the line number range symbol.

```
5614 \ifl@d@Xtwolines%
5615 \ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines%
5616 \csuse{Xendmorethantwolines@\@currentseries}%
5617 \else%
5618 \csuse{Xendtwolines@\@currentseries}%
5619 \fi%
5620 \else%
5621 \ifl@d@dash%
5622 \ifdefined\linangesep%
5623 \linangesep%
5624 \else%
5625 \csuse{Xendlinangeseparator@\@currentseries}%
5626 \fi%
5627 \fi%
5628 %
```

Print the ending page number.

```
5629 \ifl@d@pnum%
5630 \ifcsstring{prevpagerange@\@currentseries}{#1-#4}%
5631 {%
5632 \ifcempty{Xendsympagenum@\@currentseries}%
5633 {\hspace{\csuse{Xendinplaceofpagenumber@\@currentseries}}}%
5634 {\csuse{Xendsympagenum@\@currentseries}}%
5635 }%
5636 {%
5637 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}\printpnum{#4}%
5638 }%
5639 \fi%
5640 %
```

Print the ending line number, with, if needed, the line prefix, and followed by the side flag, the subline number, and line number annotation.

```
5641 \ifcsstring{Xendlinenumannotationposition@\@currentseries}{before}%
5642 {\@annot@end@print}%
5643 {%
5644 \ifl@d@elin%
5645 \ifl@d@pnum\csuse{Xendlineprefixsingle@\@currentseries}\fi%
5646 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{%
```

```

5647 \ifledRcol@%
5648 \linenumrepR{#5}%
5649 \else%
5650 \linenumrep{#5}%
5651 \fi%
5652 }%
5653 \iftoggle{Xendlineflag@ \@currentseries}{\ifledRcol@ \@Rlineflag\fi}{}%
5654 \fi%
5655 \ifl@d@esl%
5656 \ifl@d@elin%
5657 \csuse{Xendsublinesep@ \@currentseries}%
5658 \fi%
5659 \wrap@edcrossref{\@this@crossref@end}{%
5660 \ifledRcol@%
5661 \sublinenumrepR{#6}%
5662 \else%
5663 \sublinenumrep{#6}%
5664 \fi%
5665 }%
5666 \fi%
5667 \ifcsstring{Xendlinenumannotationposition@ \@currentseries}{after}%
5668 {\@annot@end@print}%
5669 {}%
5670 \fi%
5671 %

```

Close the ending line box.

```

5672 \ifdimequal{\csuse{Xendboxendlinenum@ \@currentseries}}{0pt}%
5673 {}%
5674 {\hfill}%Prevent underfull hbox
5675 \egroup%
5676 %

```

And, finally, save, if needed, the current page number for the Xendpagenumberonlyfirst hooks.

```

5677 \iftoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst@ \@currentseries}%
5678 {\iftoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo@ \@currentseries}%
5679 {\csxdef{prevpagerange@ \@currentseries}{#1-#4}}%
5680 {\csxdef{prevpagenum@ \@currentseries}{#4}}%
5681 }%
5682 {}%
5683 %

```

Now, the end of \printendlines macro.

```

5684 \endgroup%
5685 }%
5686 %
5687 %

```

`\printnpnum` A macro to print a page number in an endnote. Should not be override anymore

```
5688 \newcommand*\printnpnum}[1]{\csuse{Xendbeforepagenumber@\@currentseries
5689 }#1\csuse{Xendafterpagenumber@\@currentseries}}
5690 %
```

## XXI Generate series of notes

In this section, X means the name of the series (A, B etc.)

`\series` `\series` creates one more new series. It is a public command, which just loops on the private command `\newseries@`.

```
5691 \newcommand{\newseries}[1]{%
5692   \def\do##1{\newseries@{##1}}%
5693   \docsvlist{#1}
5694 }
5695 %
```

`\@series` The `\series@` macro is an etoolbox list, which contains the name of all series.

```
5696 \newcommand{\@series}{}
5697 %
```

The command `\newseries@` creates a new series of the footnote.

```
\newseries@% \newcommand{\newseries@}[1]{
5698 %
5699 %
```

### XXI.1 Test if series is still existing

```
5700 \xifinlist{#1}{\@series}{\led@warn@SeriesStillExist{#1}}%
5701 {%
5702 %
```

### XXI.2 Init specific to reledpar

When calling `\newseries@` after having loaded `reledpar`, we need to load specific setting.

```
5703 \ifdefined\newseries@par%
5704   \newseries@par{#1}%
5705 \fi%
5706 %
```



## XXI.3 For critical footnotes

Critical footnotes are those which start with letters. We look for the `\nocritical` option of `reledmac`.

```
5707 \unless\ifnocritical@
5708 %
```

### XXI.3.1 Options

```
5709 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@#1}
5710 \newtoggle{Xparindent@#1}
5711 \newtoggle{Xlemmadisablefontselection@#1}
5712 \csgdef{Xwrapcontent@#1}{}%
5713 \csgdef{Xbeforeinserting@#1}{}%
5714 \csgdef{Xhangindent@#1}{Opt}%
5715 \csgdef{Xragged@#1}{}%
5716 \csgdef{Xhsizetwocol@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
5717 \csgdef{Xhsizethreecol@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
5718 \csgdef{Xcolalign@#1}{\raggedright}%
5719 \csgdef{Xnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}%
5720 \csgdef{Xnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}%
5721 \csgdef{Xbhooknote@#1}{}%
5722 \csgdef{Xbhookgroup@#1}{}%
5723
5724 \csgdef{Xboxlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
5725 \csgdef{Xboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}%
5726
5727 \csgdef{Xboxstartlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
5728 \csgdef{Xboxendlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
5729
5730 \csgdef{Xboxsymlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
5731 \newtoggle{Xgroupbyline@#1}%
5732 \newtoggle{Xgroupbylineseparetwolines@#1}%
5733
5734 \newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
5735 \newtoggle{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
5736
5737 \newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@#1}%
5738 \newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@#1}%
5739
5740 \csgdef{Xtwolines@#1}{}%
5741 \csgdef{Xmorethantwolines@#1}{}%
5742 \csgdef{Xsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}%
5743 \csgdef{Xpagelinesep@#1}{\csname Xsublinesep@#1\endcsname}%for
backward compatibility, call Xsublinesep@#1
5744 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}%
5745 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}%
5746 \newtoggle{Xonlypstart@#1}%
5747 \newtoggle{Xpstarteverytime@#1}%
```

```

5748 \newtoggle{Xpstart@#1}%
5749 \newtoggle{Xpstartonlyfirst@#1}%
5750 \csdef{Xprevpstart@#1}{0}%Not a hook, but a tool for the hook
5751 Xpstartonlyfirst
5752 \csgdef{Xpstartseparator@#1}{}%
5753
5754 \newtoggle{Xstanza@#1}%
5755 \newtoggle{Xstanzaonlyfirst@#1}%
5756 \csdef{Xprevstanza@#1}{0}%Not a hook, but a tool for the hook
5757 Xstanzaonlyfirst
5758
5759 \csgdef{Xstanzaseparator@#1}{}%
5760
5761 \csgdef{Xsymlinenum@#1}{}%
5762 \csgdef{Xsymlinenumannotation@#1}{}%
5763
5764 \newtoggle{Xnonumber@#1}%
5765 \csgdef{Xbeforenumber@#1}{Opt}%
5766 \csgdef{Xtxtbeforenumber@#1}{}%
5767 \csgdef{Xafternumber@#1}{0.5em}%
5768 \newtoggle{Xnonbreakableafternumber@#1}%
5769 \csgdef{Xbeforemsymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xbeforenumber@#1}}%
5770 \csgdef{Xaftersymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xafternumber@#1}}%
5771 \csgdef{Xinplaceofnumber@#1}{1em}%
5772 \global\cslet{Xlemmaseparator@#1}{\rbracket}%
5773 \csgdef{Xbeforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}%
5774 \csgdef{Xafterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
5775 \csgdef{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{1em}%
5776 \csgdef{Xbeforenotes@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}%
5777 \csgdef{Xafterrule@#1}{Opt}%
5778
5779 \csgdef{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}{%
but internal
5780 \newtoggle{Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce@#1}%
5781
5782 \csgdef{Xmaxhnotes@#1}{0.8\vsizer}%
5783 \newtoggle{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns@#1}%
5784 \csgdef{Xparafootsep@#1}{}%
5785 \csgdef{Xafternote@#1}{1em plus.4em minus.4em}%
5786 \csgdef{Xlinrangeseparator@#1}{\endashchar}%
5787
5788 \csgdef{Xlemmafont@#1}{}%
5789 \csgdef{Xwraplemma@#1}{%
5790 \csgdef{Xwidth@#1}{\hsizer}%
5791 \csgdef{Xwraplinenumannotation@#1}{\textsuperscript}%
5792 \csgdef{Xlinenumannotationposition@#1}{after}%
5793 \expandafter\csgdef{Xinnotemark@#1}##1{\ledinnotemark{##1}}%
5794 \newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@#1}%

```

5795 %

### XXI.3.2 Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot

As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of *The TeXbook* by D. Knuth.

```
5796 \expandafter\newinsert\csname #1footins\endcsname%
5797 \unless\ifnoledgroup@%
5798 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mp#1footins\endcsname%
5799 \fi%
5800 %
```

### XXI.3.3 Create commands for critical apparatus, \Afootnote, \Bfootnote etc.

Note the double # in command: it is because command it is made inside another command.

```
5801 \global\newcommand\parapparatus@{\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter
*}{\expandafter\newcommand}\csname #1footnote\endcsname[2] [] {%
5802 \if@edtext@secondarg@%
5803 \ifledRcol%
5804 \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{L}{\
led@error@note@called@onrightside{#1footnote}}{%
5805 \else%
5806 \ifcsstring{Xonlyside@#1}{R}{\
led@error@note@called@onleftside{#1footnote}}{%
5807 \fi%
5808 \begingroup%
5809 \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
5810 \ifnumberedpar@%
5811 \ifledRcol%
5812 \ifluatex%
5813 \footnotelang@lua[R]%
5814 \fi%
5815 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
5816 {}%
5817 {\footnotelang@poly[R]}%
5818 \footnoteoptions@{R}{##1}{true}%
5819 \xright@appenditem{%
5820 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
5821 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%
5822 {}%
5823 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
5824 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%There is no note
number... so
5825 {}%
5826 \noexpand\Xnote@true%
5827 \unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{critical}}%
5828 \noexpand\prepare@Xprenotes{#1}%
5829 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\ld@nums}%
```

```

5830 \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\
unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \sw@inthisedtext
of current \edtext will be pushed to \sw@list@inedtext when the notes are
expanded.
5831 \noexpand\setcounter{stanzaR}{\the\c@stanzaR}%Save
stanzaR counter for footnote
5832 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:
start}%
5833 \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}%
5834 \expandonce{\@beforeinsertofthisedtext}% Internal for
now, no reason to make it public
5835 \noexpand\parse@annot\l@current@annotR|%
5836 \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}%
5837 {{\l@d@nums}{\expandonce\@tag}{\expandonce\content}}
%
5838 \noexpand\Xnote@false%
5839 \unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@one}%
5840 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
5841 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@index}}%
5842 {}%
5843 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
5844 {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@index}}%
5845 {}%
5846 }\to\inserts@listR
5847 \footnoteoptions@{R}{#1}{false}%
5848 \global\advance\insert@countR \@one%
5849 \else%
5850 \ifluatex%
5851 \footnotelang@lua%
5852 \fi%
5853 \@ifundefined{xpg@main@language}%if polyglossia
5854 {}%
5855 {\footnotelang@poly}%
5856 \footnoteoptions@{L}{#1}{true}%
5857 \xright@appenditem{%
5858 \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
5859 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%
5860 {}%
5861 \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
5862 {\unexpanded{\let\index\nindex}}%There is no note
number... so
5863 {}%
5864 \noexpand\Xnote@true%
5865 \unexpanded{\gdef\@currentnotetype{critical}}%
5866 \noexpand\prepare@Xprenotes{#1}%
5867 \noexpand\prepare@edindex@fornote{\l@d@nums}%
5868 \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}{\expandafter\
unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}%The value of the \sw@inthisedtext
of current edtext will be pushed to \sw@list@inedtext when the notes are
expanded.

```

```

5869         \ifl@pairing%
5870         \noexpand\setcounter{stanzaL}{\the\c@stanzaL}%Save
stanzaR counter for footnote
5871         \fi%
5872         \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@start}{\theedtext:
start}%
5873         \unexpanded{\def\@this@crossref@end}{\theedtext:end}%
5874         \expandonce{\@beforeinsertofthisedtext}%Internal for
now, no reason to make it public
5875         \noexpand\parse@annot\l@current@annot|%
5876         \noexpand\csuse{v#1footnote}%
5877         {#1}%
5878         {{\l@d@nums}{\expandonce\@tag}{\expandonce\content
}}%
5879         \noexpand\Xnote@false%
5880         \unexpanded{\advance\@edindex@fornote@m@ne}%
5881         \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
5882         {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%
5883         {}%
5884         \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
5885         {\unexpanded{\let\index\orig@@index}}%
5886         {}%
5887         }\to\inserts@list
5888         \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
5889         \footnoteoptions@{L}{#1}{false}%
5890         \fi
5891     \else
5892         \csuse{v#1footnote}{#1}{{0|0|0|0|0|0|0|0}{#1}}%
5893     \fi%
5894 \endgroup%
5895 \else%
5896     \led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext{#1}%
5897 \fi%
5898 \ignorespaces%
5899 }
5900 %

```

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

```

5901     \expandafter\newcount\csname #1prevpage@num\endcsname%
5902     \expandafter\newcount\csname #1prevpage@numR\endcsname%
5903 %

```

We need to be able to modify reledmac's footnote macros and restore their

```

5904     \global\csletcs{#1@@footnote}{#1footnote}
5905 %

```

### XXI.3.4 Set standard display

```

5906 \Xarrangement@normal{#1}%
5907 %

```

End of for critical footnotes.

```

5908 \fi
5909 %

```

## XXI.4 For familiar footnotes

Familiar footnotes are those which end with letters. We look for the `nofamiliar` option of `reledmac`.

```

5910 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
5911 %

```

### XXI.4.1 Options

```

5912 \newtoggle{parindentX@#1}
5913 \csgdef{wrapcontentX@#1}{}%
5914 \csgdef{hangindentX@#1}{Opt}%
5915 \csgdef{beforeinsertingX@#1}{}%
5916 \csgdef{raggedX@#1}{}%
5917 \csgdef{hsizetwocolX@#1}{0.45 \hsize}%
5918 \csgdef{hsizethreecolX@#1}{.3 \hsize}%
5919 \csgdef{colalignX@#1}{\raggedright}%
5920 \csgdef{notenumfontX@#1}{\normalfont}%
5921 \csgdef{notefontsizeX@#1}{\footnotesize}%
5922 \csgdef{bhooknoteX@#1}{}%
5923 \csgdef{bhookgroupX@#1}{}%
5924 \csgdef{afterruleX@#1}{Opt}
5925 \csgdef{beforenotesX@#1}{1.2em \@plus .6em \@minus .6em}
5926 \csgdef{maxhnotesX@#1}{0.8\vsiz}%
5927 \newtoggle{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX@#1}%
5928 \csgdef{parafootsepX@#1}{}%
5929 \csgdef{afternoteX@#1}{1em plus.4em minus.4em}
5930 \csgdef{widthX@#1}{\hsiz}%
5931 \expandafter\csgdef{innotemarkX@#1}##1{\ledinnotemark{##1}}%
5932 \csgdef{txtbeforenotesX@#1}{}%
5933 \newtoggle{txtbeforenotesX@#1@typeset}%Not directly used by user,
but internal
5934 \newtoggle{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX@#1}%
5935 % End of for familiar footnotes.
5936 % \subsubsection{Create inserts, needed to add notes in foot}
5937 % As regards inserts, see chapter 15 of the TeXBook by D. Knuth.
5938 % \begin{macrocode}
5939 \expandafter\newinsert\csname footins#1\endcsname%
5940 \unless\ifnoledgroup@%
5941 \expandafter\newinsert\csname mpfootins#1\endcsname%
5942 \fi%
5943 %

```

**XXI.4.2 Create tools for familiar footnotes (\footnoteX)**

First, create the \footnoteX command. Note the double # in command: it is because a command is called inside another command.

```

5944 \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1\endcsname [2] [] {%
5945     \begingroup%
5946     \prepare@prenotesX{#1}%
5947     \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
5948 %
5949 %

```

If we are using the \csquotes package, we reset the quotation level.

```

5950 \ifdefined\csq@qllevel%
5951     \csq@qllevel=0\relax%
5952 \fi%
5953 %

```

If we are preparing parallel typesetting, we cannot just increase the footnote counter. Read reledpar's handbook about that (V.1.2 p. 54). If we have a manual footnote mark, use it.

```

5954 \global\expandafter\advance\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname by \@ne%
5955 \ifstrempy{##1}{%
5956     \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or
bool{l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
5957         \ifcsdef{footnote#1reading\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname=typeset}%
5958             {\setcounter{footnote#1}{\csuse{footnote#1reading\the\
csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname=typeset}}}%
5959             {\setcounter{footnote#1}{\the\csname footnote#1@reading\
endcsname}}}%
5960     }{%
5961         \stepcounter{footnote#1}%
5962     }%
5963 }{%
5964 %

```

We also have to check consistency with \onlysideX setting.

```

5965 \ifledRcol%
5966     \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{L}{\
led@error@note@called@onrightside{footnote#1}}}%
5967     \else%
5968         \ifcsstring{onlysideX@#1}{R}{\
led@error@note@called@onleftside{footnote#1}}}%
5969     \fi%
5970 %

```

And now, the feature not depending of whether we are preparing parallel typesetting

```

5971         \ifstrempy{##1}%
5972         {\protected@csxdef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}}%
5973         {\protected@csxdef{@thefnmark#1}{##1}}%
5974         \nottoggle{nomk@}%Nomk is set to true when using \
footnoteXnomk with \parpackage
5975         {\csuse{@footnotemark#1}}%
5976         {}%
5977         \ifluatex%
5978         \xdef\footnote@luatextextdir{\the\textdir}%
5979         \xdef\footnote@luatexpardir{\the\pardir}%
5980         \fi%
5981         \if@ledgroup%
5982         \led@set@index@fornote{#1}%
5983         \fi%
5984         \csuse{vfootnote#1}{#1}{\expandonce\content}{##1}\
m@mmf@prepare%
5985         \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
5986         {\let\index\orig@@index}%
5987         {}%
5988         \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
5989         {\let\index\orig@@index}%
5990         {}%
5991         \endgroup%
5992     }
5993 %

```

Then define the counters. The  $\LaTeX$  counter `footnoteX` is the only one manipulated by the user. This is the one which is printed. The  $\TeX$  counter `\footnoteX@reading` is increased at each footnote. It is used for hyperlinks, for using `hyperlink` package, and for getting the correct footnote number when using parallel typesetting (V.1.2 p. 54).

```

5994     \newcounter{footnote#1}
5995     \global\expandafter\renewcommand\csname thefootnote#1\endcsname{\
arabic{footnote#1}}
5996     \expandafter\newcount\csname footnote#1@reading\endcsname%
5997 %

```

Create counter used to determine on which page the previous note was called.

```

5998     \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@num\endcsname%
5999     \expandafter\newcount\csname prevpage#1@numR\endcsname%
6000 %

```

Add `\let\footnoteX\@gobble` to `\no@expands`.

```

6001     \expandafter\gappto\expandafter\no@expands\expandafter{\expandafter\
let\csname footnote#1\endcsname\@gobble}%
6002 %

```

And now, define `\footnoteXmark` and `\footnoteXtext`, equivalent to classical `\footnotemark` and `\footnotetext`.

```

6003     \expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1mark\endcsname[1][\{

```



```

6004     \begingroup%
6005         \prepare@prenotesX{#1}%
6006         \ifstrempy{##1}{%
6007             \stepcounter{footnote#1}%
6008         }{%
6009             \setcounter{footnote#1}{##1}%
6010         }%
6011         \protected@csxdef{@thefnmark#1}{\csuse{thefootnote#1}}%
6012         \csuse{@footnotemark#1}%
6013         \m@mmf@prepare%
6014     \endgroup%
6015 }%
6016 \expandafter\newcommand\csname footnote#1text\endcsname[2][{}]{%
6017     \begingroup%
6018         \csuse{vfootnote#1}{#1}{\expandonce{##2}}{##1}%
6019     \endgroup%
6020 }%
6021 %

```

Do not forget to initialize the series.

```

6022     \arrangementX@normal{#1}%
6023 \fi
6024 %

```

## XXI.5 The endnotes

Endnotes are commands like `\Xendnote`, where `X` is a series letter. First, we check for the `noend` options.

```

6025 \unless\ifnoend@
6026 %

```

### XXI.5.1 The auxiliary file

`\l@d@Xend` Endnotes of all varieties are saved up in a file, one by series, typically named `<jobname>.Xend`.  
`\ifl@dend@X` `\l@d@end` is the output stream number for this file, and `\ifl@dend@X` is a flag that is  
`\l@dend@Xtrue` true when the file is open.  
`\l@dend@Xfalse`

```

6027     \expandafter\newwrite\csname l@d@#1end\endcsname%
6028     \expandafter\newif\csname ifl@dend@#1\endcsname%
6029 %

```

### XXI.5.2 The main macro

The `\Xendnote` macro functions to write one endnote to the `.Xend` file. We change `\newlinechar` so that in the file every space becomes the start of a new line; this generally ensures that a long note does not exceed restrictions on the length of lines in files.

```

6030      \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1endnote\endcsname[2][1,
6031      usedefault]{%
6032          \bgroup%
6033          \newlinechar='40%
6034          \global\@noneed@Footnotetrue%
6035          \newcommand{\content}{##2}%
6036          \stepcounter{labidx}%
6037          \expandafter\immediate\expandafter\write\csname l@d@#1end\
endcsname{%
6038          \unexpanded{\def\sw@list@inedtext}%
6039          {\expandafter\unexpanded\expandafter{\sw@inthisedtext}}}%
6040          \@percentchar\space%Explicit space, to add a linebreak in the
output file
6041          \noexpand\parse@annot\l@current@annot|\@percentchar\space%
6042          \expandafter\string\csname #1end\endcsname%
6043          {\ifnumberedpar@l@d@nums\fi}%
6044          {\ifnumberedpar@\expandonce\@tag\fi}%
6045          {\expandonce\content}%
6046          {\#1}%
6047          {\unexpanded{##1}}}%
6048          {\ifledRcol R\else L\fi}%
6049          {\theedtext}%
6050          \@percentchar%
6051      }%
6052      \egroup%
6053      \ignorespaces%
6054  }%
6055  %

```

### XXI.5.3 Tools

The `\Xtoendnotes` command inserts any arbitrary content into the endnote file. It is an alias of the more generalist `\addtoendnotes`

```

6056      \global\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\endcsname[1]{%
6057      \toendnotes[#1]{##1}%
6058      }%
6059
6060
6061      \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\newcommand\csname #1toendnotes\
endcsname*[1]{%
6062      \toendnotes*[#1]{##1}%
6063      }%
6064
6065  %

```

### XXI.5.4 Internal commands

`\Xendnote` commands called `\Xend` commands on to the endnote file; these are analogous to the various `footfmt` commands above, and they take the same arguments. When we process this file, we want to pick out the notes of one series and ignore all the rest. To do that, we equate the end command for the series we want to `\endprint`, and leave the rest equated to `\@gobbleseven`, which just skips over its seven arguments.

```
6066 \global\cslet{#1end}{\@gobbleseven}
6067
6068 %
```

We need to store the number of times `\doendnotesbysection` is called for one series.

```
6069 \global\expandafter\newcount\csname #1endbysection\endcsname%
6070 %
```

### XXI.5.5 The options

```
6071 \csgdef{Xendwraplemma@#1}{%
6072 \csgdef{Xendwrapcontent@#1}{}%
6073 \csgdef{Xendtwolines@#1}{}%
6074 \csgdef{Xendmorethantwolines@#1}{}%
6075 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@#1}{}%
6076 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@#1}{}%
6077 \newtoggle{Xendlemmadisablefontselection@#1}%
6078 \csgdef{Xendnotenumfont@#1}{\normalfont}%
6079 \csgdef{Xendnotefontsize@#1}{\footnotesize}%
6080 \csgdef{Xendbhooknote@#1}{}%
6081
6082 \csgdef{Xendsublinesep@#1}{\fullstop}%
6083
6084 \csgdef{Xendbeforenumber@#1}{0pt}
6085 \csgdef{Xendafternumber@#1}{0.5em}
6086
6087 \csgdef{Xendboxlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
6088 \csgdef{Xendboxlinenumalign@#1}{L}%
6089
6090 \csgdef{Xendboxstartlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
6091 \csgdef{Xendboxendlinenum@#1}{0pt}%
6092
6093 \csgdef{Xendlemmaseparator@#1}{}%
6094 \csgdef{Xendbeforelemmaseparator@#1}{0em}%
6095 \csgdef{Xendafterlemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
6096 \csgdef{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator@#1}{0.5em}%
6097
6098 \newtoggle{Xendparagraph@#1}%
6099 \csgdef{Xendafternote@#1}{1em plus.4em minus.4em}%
6100 \csgdef{Xendsep@#1}{}%
6101
```

```

6102 \csgdef{Xendinplaceofnumber@#1}{Opt}%
6103 \newtoggle{Xendnonumber@#1}%
6104
6105 \csgdef{Xendhangindent@#1}{Opt}%
6106
6107 \newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline@#1}%
6108 \newtoggle{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines@#1}%
6109
6110 \newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst@#1}%
6111 \newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo@#1}%
6112
6113 \csgdef{Xendbeforesymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xendbeforenumber@#1}}%
6114 \csgdef{Xendaftersymlinenum@#1}{\csuse{Xendafternumber@#1}}%
6115
6116 \csgdef{Xendsymlinenum@#1}{}%
6117 \csgdef{Xendsymlinenumannotation@#1}{}%
6118
6119 \csgdef{Xendboxsymlinenum@#1}{Opt}%
6120
6121 \csgdef{Xendbhooklinenumber@#1}{}%
6122 \csgdef{Xendehooklinenumber@#1}{}%
6123 \csgdef{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
6124 \csgdef{Xendehookinplaceofnumber@#1}{}%
6125
6126 \csgdef{Xendlinerangeseparator@#1}{\endashchar}%
6127
6128 \csgdef{Xendbeforepagenumber@#1}{p.}%
6129 \csgdef{Xendafterpagenumber@#1}{) }%
6130 \csgdef{Xendlineprefixsingle@#1}{}%
6131 \csgdef{Xendlineprefixmore@#1}{}%
6132
6133 \newtoggle{Xendlineflag@#1}
6134
6135 \csgdef{Xendlemmafont@#1}{}%
6136
6137 \csgdef{Xendlinenumannotationposition@#1}{after}%
6138 \csgdef{Xendwraplinenumannotation@#1}{\textsuperscript}%
6139 \newtoggle{Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation@#1}%
6140
6141 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst@#1}%
6142 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle@#1}%
6143 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo@#1}%
6144 \csgdef{Xendsympagenum@#1}{}%
6145 \csgdef{Xendinplaceofpagenumber@#1}{Opt}%
6146
6147 \csgdef{Xendtxtbeforenotes@#1}{}%
6148 \newtoggle{Xendfirstnote@#1}%Not a hook, but used to apply
Xendtxtbeforenotes
6149
6150 %

```

End of endnotes declaration

```
6151 \fi%
6152 %
```

Dump series in \@series

```
6153 \listxadd{\@series}{#1}
6154 }
6155 }% End of \newseries
6156 %
```

## XXI.6 Init standards series (A,B,C,D,E)

```
6157 \expandafter\newseries\expandafter{\default@series}
6158 %
```

## XXII Setting series display

### XXII.1 Change series order

**\seriesatbegin** `\seriesatbegin{⟨s⟩}` changes the order of series, to put the series `⟨s⟩` at the beginning of the list. The series can be the result of a command.

```
6159 \newcommand{\seriesatbegin}[1]{%
6160   \StrDel{\@series}{#1}[\@series]%
6161   \edef\@new{%
6162     \listxadd{\@new}{#1}%
6163     \listxadd{\@new}{\@series}%
6164     \xdef\@series{\@new}%
6165   }
6166   %
```

**\seriesatend** And `\seriesatend` moves the series to the end of the list.

```
6167 \newcommand{\seriesatend}[1]{%
6168   \StrDel{\@series}{#1}[\@series]%
6169   \edef\@new{%
6170     \listxadd{\@new}{\@series}%
6171     \listxadd{\@new}{#1}%
6172     \xdef\@series{\@new}%
6173   }
6174   %
```

### XXII.2 Test series order

**\ifseriesbefore** `\ifseriesbefore{⟨seriesA⟩}{⟨seriesB⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` expands to `⟨true⟩` if `⟨seriesA⟩` is printed before `⟨seriesB⟩`, or to `⟨false⟩` otherwise.

```

6175 \newcommand{\ifseriesbefore}[4]{%
6176   \StrPosition{\@series}{#1}[\@first]%
6177   \StrPosition{\@series}{#2}[\@second]%
6178   \ifnumgreater{\@second}{\@first}{#3}{#4}%
6179 }
6180 %

```

### XXII.2.1 Get the first series

In some specific case, we need to know the first series of the list of series.

```

\@getfirstseriesS81 \newcommand{\@getfirstseries}{%
6182   \ifdefempty{\@series}%
6183   {\xdef\@firstseries{}}%
6184   {\StrChar{\@series}{1}[\@firstseries]}%
6185 }%
6186 %

```

## XXII.3 Series setting

### XXII.3.1 General way of working

The setting's command (like `\numberonlyfirstinline`), also called “hooks” can be divided in two categories: those which require a string values and those which require a boolean value. The first category includes those which require a length value, because we store the length's expression send by user and we evaluate it only in the commands which requires to know the setting. The second category require boolean value only when it is set to FALSE. Otherwise, we understand the insinuated value is TRUE.

For each “hook” command, we store the value in commands (first category) or a `etoolbox`'s toggle (second category) which names are in the form `\<hook>@<series>`. For example, when calling `\twolines{sq}`, we store `sq`. in commands `\twolines@A`, `\twolines@B`, `\twolines@C`... for each series defined for use with `reledmac`, or, if the `[series]` optional argument was send, for each series of this argument.

These values are tested in some specific places, scattered in all the code, depending of their effects. The default values are defined by the `\newseries@` command.

In order to prevent code duplication, we have created some generic commands. Some of them change the value of any hook send as argument. Some other, getting a hook name, generate the user level commands.

### XXII.3.2 Tools to set options

`\settoggle@series` `\settoggle@series{series}{toggle}{value}` is a generic command to switch toggles for some series. The arguments are:

- #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the series will be affected.

- #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.
- #3 (mandatory): the new value of toggle (true or false).
- #4 (optional): if equal to `reload`, reload the footnote setting (call again `\Xarrangement` or `\arrangementX` or ... depending of the footnote display).
- #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-series, as `appref`.

```

6187 \newcommand{\settoggle@series}[5][4,5,usedefault]{%
6188   \def\do##1{%
6189     \ifcsdef{etb@tgl@#2@##1}{%
6190       \global\settoggle{#2@##1}{#3}%
6191     }{%
6192       \led@warn@BadHookSeries{##1}{#2}%
6193     }%
6194     \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{
6195       \csuse{Xarrangement@}\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}%
6196     }{
6197       \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{%
6198         \csuse{arrangementX@}\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}%
6199       }{%
6200     }%
6201     \ifstreempty{#1}{%
6202       \dolistloop{\@series}%
6203       \ifstreempty{#5}{%
6204         \docsvlist{#5}%
6205       }
6206     }%
6207     {%
6208       \docsvlist{#1}%
6209     }%
6210   }
6211   %

```

`\setcommand@series` `\setcommand@series{<series>}{<command>}{<value>}` is a generic command to store a hook's value into commands specific to some series. The arguments are:

- #1 (mandatory): the series for which the hooks should be set. If empty, all the series will be affected.
- #2 (mandatory): the name of the hook.
- #3 (mandatory): the new value of the hook/command.
- #4 (optional): if equal to `reload`, reload the footnote setting (call `\footnormal` or `\footparagraph` or ... depending of the footnote display).
- #5 (optional): if not empty, and if #1 is empty, change the hook setting for pseudo-series, as `appref`.

- #6 (optional): the number of arguments of the hook.

```

6212 \newcommandx{\setcommand@series}[6][4,5,6=0,usedefault]{%
6213   \def\do##1{
6214     \ifcsdef{#2@##1}{%
6215       \expandafter\global\expandafter\renewcommand\csname#2@##1\endcsname
6216       [#6]{#3}%
6217     }{%
6218       \led@warn@BadHookSeries{##1}{#2}%
6219     }%
6220     \ifstrequal{#4}{critical}{%
6221       \csuse{Xarrangement@\csuse{series@display##1}}{##1}%
6222     }{}
6223     \ifstrequal{#4}{familiar}{%
6224       \csuse{arrangementX@\csuse{series@displayX##1}}{##1}%
6225     }{}%
6226   }%
6227   \ifstreempty{#1}{%
6228     \dolistloop{\@series}%
6229     \ifstreempty{#5}{%
6230       \docsvlist{#5}
6231     }%
6232   }%
6233   \docsvlist{#1}%
6234 }%
6235 %
6236 %

```

### XXII.3.3 Tools to generate options commands

`\newhookcommand@series` `\newhookcommand@series\command` names is a generic command to add new commands for hooks, like `\Xhsizetwocol`. The first argument is the name of the hook, the second a comma-separated list of pseudo-series where the hook can be used, like `appref` in the case of `\Xtwolines`. The second argument is also used to create commands named `\<hookname><pseudoserries>`, like `\Xtwolinesappref`. The third argument

```

6237 \newcommandx{\newhookcommand@series}[3][2,3=0,usedefault]{%
6238   \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][]{%
6239     \setcommand@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[][#2][#3]%
6240   }%
6241   \ifstreempty{#2}{%
6242     \def\do##1{%
6243       \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1##1\endcsname
6244       [1]{%
6245         \csuse{#1}[##1]{####1}%
6246       }%
6247     }%
6248   }%
6249 }%

```



```

6247 \docsvlist{#2}%
6248 }%
6249 }
6250 %

```

**\newhooktoggle@series** \newhooktoggle@series\command names is a generic command to add new commands for a new toggle hook, like \Xnumberonlyfirstinline. The second argument is also used to create commands named \<hookname><pseudoseries>, like \Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref.

```

6251 \newcommand{\newhooktoggle@series}[2][2,usedefault]{%
6252 \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1,2={
true},usedefault]{%
6253 \settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[][#2]%
6254 }%
6255 \ifstrempy{#2}{}{%
6256 \def\do##1{%
6257 \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1##1\endcsname{%
6258 \csuse{#1}[##1]%
6259 }%
6260 }%
6261 \docsvlist{#2}%
6262 }%
6263 }
6264 %

```

**\newhookcommand@series@reload** \newhookcommand@toggle@reload does the same thing as \newhooktoggle@series but the commands created by this macro also reload the series arrangement, depending of type os notes

```

6265 \newcommand{\newhookcommand@series@reload}[2]{%
6266 \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][1,2={
true},usedefault]{%
6267 \settoggle@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]%
6268 }%
6269 }%
6270 %

```

**\newhookcommand@series@reload** \newhookcommand@series@reload does the same thing as \newhookcommand@series but the commands created by this macro also reload the series' arrangement.

```

6271 \newcommand{\newhookcommand@series@reload}[2]{%
6272 \global\expandafter\newcommand\expandafter*\csname #1\endcsname[2][]{%
6273 \setcommand@series{##1}{#1}{##2}[#2]%
6274 }%
6275 }
6276 %

```

### XXII.3.4 Options for critical notes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the critical notes, such as `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, `\Xlemmaseparator` and the like, we check the `nocritical` option.

```

6277 \unless\ifnocritical@
6278   \newhookcommand@series{Xwrapcontent}%
6279   \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforeinserting}%
6280   \newhookcommand@series{Xlemmafont}%
6281   \newhookcommand@series{Xwraplemma}%
6282   \newhooktoggle@series{Xparindent}
6283   \newhookcommand@series{Xhangindent}
6284   \newhookcommand@series{Xragged}
6285   \newhookcommand@series{Xhsizetwocol}
6286   \newhookcommand@series{Xhsizethreecol}
6287   \newhookcommand@series{Xcolalign}%
6288   \newhookcommand@series{Xnotenumfont}
6289   \newhookcommand@series{Xbhooknote}
6290   \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbhookgroup}{critical}
6291   \newhookcommand@series{Xboxsymlinenum}%
6292   \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenum}
6293   \newhookcommand@series{Xsymlinenumannotation}%
6294   \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforenumber}
6295   \newhookcommand@series{Xtxtbeforenumber}
6296   \newhookcommand@series{Xafternumber}
6297   \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforesymlinenum}
6298   \newhookcommand@series{Xaftersymlinenum}
6299   \newhookcommand@series{Xinplaceofnumber}
6300   \newhookcommand@series{Xlemmaseparator}
6301   \newhookcommand@series{Xbeforelemmaseparator}
6302   \newhookcommand@series{Xafterlemmaseparator}
6303   \newhookcommand@series{Xinplaceoflemmaseparator}
6304   \newhookcommand@series{Xtxtbeforenotes}
6305   \newhooktoggle@series{Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce}%
6306   \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xafterrule}{critical}
6307   \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstinline}
6308   \newhooktoggle@series{Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines}
6309   \newhooktoggle@series{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst}%
6310   \newhooktoggle@series{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo}%
6311   \newhooktoggle@series{Xgroupbyline}%
6312   \newhooktoggle@series{Xgroupbylineseparetwolines}%
6313   \newhooktoggle@series{Xnonumber}
6314
6315   \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstart}
6316   \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstartonlyfirst}%
6317   \newhooktoggle@series{Xpstarteverytime}%
6318   \newhookcommand@series{Xpstartseparator}%
6319
6320   \newhooktoggle@series{Xstanza}%

```

```

6321 \newhooktoggle@series{Xstanzaonlyfirst}%
6322 \newhookcommand@series{Xstanzaseparator}%
6323
6324 \newhooktoggle@series{Xonlypstart}
6325 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnonbreakableafternumber}
6326 \newhooktoggle@series{Xlemmadisablefontselection}
6327 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xmaxhnotes}{critical}
6328 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xbeforenotes}{critical}
6329 \newhooktoggle@series@reload{Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns}{critical}%
6330 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xnotefontsize}{critical}
6331
6332 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenum}%
6333 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxlinenumalign}%
6334
6335 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxstartlinenum}%
6336 \newhookcommand@series{Xboxendlinenum}%
6337
6338 \newhookcommand@series{Xafternote}%
6339 \newhookcommand@series{Xparafootsep}
6340 \newhookcommand@series@reload{Xwidth}{critical}%
6341
6342 \newhookcommand@series{Xinnotemark}{[] [1]}%
6343
6344 \ifundef{\Xhsize}%
6345 {%
6346   \newcommandx{\Xhsize}[2][1,usedefault]{%
6347     \led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated%
6348     \Xwidth[#1]{#2}%
6349   }%
6350 }%
6351 {}%
6352 \fi
6353 %

```

Now, hooks for critical notes which also apply to crossreferencing and line numbering at the sides of the page.

```

6354 \newhooktoggle@series{Xlineflag}[appref,SEref]
6355 \newhookcommand@series{Xtwolines}[appref,SEref]
6356 \newhookcommand@series{Xmorethantwolines}[appref,SEref]
6357 \newhookcommand@series{Xsublinesep}[appref,SEref,side]%
6358 \newhookcommand@series{Xpagelinesep}[appref,SEref,side]%
6359 \newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesbutnotmore}[appref,SEref]
6360 \newhooktoggle@series{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage}[appref,SEref]
6361 \newhookcommand@series{Xlinerrangeseparator}[appref,SEref]
6362 \newhookcommand@series{Xlinenumannotationposition}[side,appref,SEref]%
6363 \newhookcommand@series{Xwraplinenumannotation}[side,ref,appref,SEref]%
6364 \newhooktoggle@series{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation}[side,ref,appref,SEref]
6365 %

```

### XXII.3.5 Options for familiar notes

Before generating the optional commands for familiar notes, we check the `\nofamiliar` option.

```

6366 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
6367   \newhookcommand@series{wrapcontentX}%
6368   \newhookcommand@series{beforeinsertingX}%
6369   \newhooktoggle@series{parindentX}
6370   \newhookcommand@series{hangindentX}
6371   \newhookcommand@series{raggedX}
6372   \newhookcommand@series{hsize twocolX}
6373   \newhookcommand@series{hsize threecolX}
6374   \newhookcommand@series{colalignX}%
6375   \newhookcommand@series{notenumfontX}
6376   \newhookcommand@series{bhooknoteX}
6377   \newhookcommand@series@reload{bhookgroupX}{familiar}
6378   \newhookcommand@series@reload{beforenotesX}{familiar}
6379   \newhookcommand@series@reload{maxhnotesX}{familiar}
6380   \newhooktoggle@series@reload{noteswidthliketwocolumnsX}{familiar}%
6381   \newhookcommand@series@reload{afterruleX}{familiar}
6382   \newhookcommand@series@reload{notefontsizeX}{familiar}
6383   \newhookcommand@series{afternoteX}
6384   \newhookcommand@series{parafootsepX}
6385   \newhookcommand@series{txtbeforenotesX}%
6386   \newhooktoggle@series{txtbeforenotesonlyonceX}%
6387   \newhookcommand@series@reload{widthX}{familiar}%
6388   \newhookcommand@series{innotemarkX}[] [1]%
6389
6390   \ifundef{\hsizeX}%
6391     {%
6392       \newcommandx{\hsizeX}[2][1,usedefault]{%
6393         \led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated%
6394         \widthX[#1]{#2}%
6395       }%
6396     }%
6397   {}%
6398 \fi
6399 %

```

### XXII.3.6 Options for endnotes

Before generating the commands that are used to set the endnotes, such as `\Xnumberonlyfirstinline`, `\Xlemmaseparator+` and the like, we check the `noend` option.

```

6400 \unless\ifnoend@
6401   \newhookcommand@series{Xendwraplemma}
6402   \newhookcommand@series{Xendwrapcontent}
6403   \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotenumfont}
6404   \newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmafont}%

```

```

6405 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhooknote}
6406
6407 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxlinenum}%
6408 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxlinenumalign}%
6409
6410 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxstartlinenum}%
6411 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxendlinenum}%
6412
6413 \newhookcommand@series{Xendnotefontsize}
6414 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlemmadisablefontselection}
6415 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlemmaseparator}
6416 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforelemmaseparator}
6417 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafterlemmaseparator}
6418 \newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator}
6419
6420 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforenumber}%
6421 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafternumber}%
6422
6423 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendparagraph}
6424 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafternote}
6425 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsep}
6426
6427 \newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceofnumber}%
6428 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnonumber}%
6429
6430 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstinline}%
6431 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines}%
6432
6433 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst}%
6434 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo}%
6435
6436 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsymmlinenum}%
6437 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforesymmlinenum}%
6438 \newhookcommand@series{Xendaftersymmlinenum}%
6439 \newhookcommand@series{Xendboxsymmlinenum}%
6440
6441 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsymmlinenumannotation}%
6442
6443 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhooklinenumber}%
6444 \newhookcommand@series{Xendahooklinenumber}%
6445 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbhookinplaceofnumber}%
6446 \newhookcommand@series{Xendahookinplaceofnumber}%
6447
6448 \newhookcommand@series{Xendhangindent}%
6449
6450 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst}%
6451 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle}%
6452 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo}%
6453 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsympagenum}%
6454 \newhookcommand@series{Xendinplaceofpagenumber}%

```

```

6455 \newhookcommand@series{Xendtxtbeforenotes}%
6456
6457
6458 \fi
6459 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendlineflag}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6460 \newhookcommand@series{Xendtwolines}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6461 \newhookcommand@series{Xendmoreethantwolines}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6462 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6463 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage}[apprefwithpage,
SErefwithpage]
6464 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlinerangeseparator}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage
]
6465 \newhookcommand@series{Xendbeforepagenumber}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage,
SErefonlypage]
6466 \newhookcommand@series{Xendafterpagenumber}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6467 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlineprefixsingle}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6468 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlineprefixmore}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6469 \newhookcommand@series{Xendsublinesep}[apprefwithpage,SErefwithpage]
6470
6471 \newhookcommand@series{Xendlinenumannotationposition}[apprefwithpage,
SErefwithpage]%
6472 \newhookcommand@series{Xendwraplinenumannotation}[apprefwithpage,
SErefwithpage]%
6473 \newhooktoggle@series{Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation}[apprefwithpage,
SErefwithpage]%
6474 %

```

## XXII.4 Hooks for a particular footnote

`\newhooktoggle@specific` `\newhooktoggle@specific` is a generic command to create boolean hook specific to a note.

```

6475 \newcommand{\newhooktoggle@specific}[1]{%
6476 \newtoggle{#1}%
6477 \listgadd{\hooktoggle@specific}{#1}%
6478 \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}[]{\global\settoggle{#1}{true}}%
When enabling footnote option
6479 \define@key[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{#1}[]{\global\settoggle{#1}{false
}}
6480 }
6481 %

```

`\newhookarg@specific` `\newhookarg@specific` is a generic command to create argumen hook specific to a note.

```

6482 \newcommand{\newhookarg@specific}[1]{%
6483 \listgadd{\hookarg@specific}{#1}%
6484 \define@key[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{#1}{\csgdef{#1}{##1}}%When enabling
footnote option

```

```

6485 \define@key[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{#1}{\global\csundef{#1@}}%When
        disabling footnote option
6486 }
6487 %

```

`\hooktoggle@specific` The `\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs` macro stores to a macro all the current values of hook toggle specific to a command. It is useful for the `\Xgroupbyline` option, which does not immediately add notes to the inserts list. It uses the `\hooktoggle@specific` list.

```

6488 \def\hooktoggle@specific{%
6489 \newcommand{\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs}[1]{%
6490 \def\do##1{%
6491 \iftoggle{##1@}{%
6492 \ifcsdef{#1}{%
6493 \csgappto{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
6494 }{%
6495 \csgdef{#1}{\toggletrue{##1@}}%
6496 }%
6497 }{%
6498 \ifcsdef{#1}{%
6499 \csgappto{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
6500 }{%
6501 \csgdef{#1}{\togglefalse{##1@}}%
6502 }%
6503 }%
6504 }%
6505 \dolistloop{\hooktoggle@specific}%
6506 }%
6507 %

```

`\hookarg@specific` The same, but for optional argument of critical footnotes with assigned value.

```

\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs
6508 \def\hookarg@specific{%
6509 \newcommand{\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs}[1]{%
6510 \def\do##1{%
6511 \ifcsvoid{##1@}{%
6512 \ifcsdef{#1}{%
6513 \csxappto{#1}{%
6514 \noexpand\csdef%
6515 {##1@}{\csname##1@\endcsname}%
6516 }%
6517 }{%
6518 \csxdef{#1}{%
6519 \noexpand\csdef%
6520 {##1@}{\csname##1@\endcsname}%
6521 }%
6522 }%
6523 }%
6524 }%

```

```

6525 \dolistloop{\hookarg@specific}%
6526 }%
6527 %

```

And now, we define some hooks specific to a note.

```

6528 \newhooktoggle@specific{fulllines}%
6529 \newhooktoggle@specific{nonum}
6530 \newhooktoggle@specific{nosep}
6531 \newhooktoggle@specific{noprefix}%
6532 \newhooktoggle@specific{prefixmore}%
6533 \newhookarg@specific{linrangesep}
6534 %

```

`linrangesep@` `\linrangesep@` is defined by the option `linrangesep` of critical notes to change temporarily the line range separator for a specific line. As we have to define it before typesetting the line and undefine it after, we use the family of `xkeyval` package's key.

```

6535 %

```

`\nomk@` `\nomk@` toggle is used by `reledpar` to remove the footnote mark in the text when using `\footnoteXmk`. Read `reledpar` handbook.

```

6536 \newtoggle{nomk@}%
6537 %

```

## XXII.5 Alias

`\Xnolemmaseparator` `\Xnolemmaseparator` [*series*] is just an alias for `\Xlemmaseparator` [*series*] {}.

```

6538 \newcommandx*{\Xnolemmaseparator}[1][1]{\Xlemmaseparator[#1]}
6539 %

```

## XXIII Output routine

Now we begin the output routine and associated things.

### XXIII.1 Extra footnotes output

With luck we might only have to change `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts` of  $\TeX$ 's kernel. Since `reledmac`, we use `etoolbox`'s patching commands instead of overriding. It should provides better compatibility with other package which modify these commands

`\l@ddoxtrafeet` `\l@ddoxtrafeet` is the code extending `\@makecol` to cater for the extra `reledmac` feet. We have two categories of extra footnotes. By default, we order the footnote inserts so that the regular footnotes of  $\TeX$  are first, then familiar familiar footnotes and finally the critical footnotes.



```

6540 \newcommand*{\l@ddextrafeet}{%
6541   \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}
6542     {\do@feetX\do@Xfeet}%
6543     {%
6544       \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}%
6545       {\do@Xfeet\do@feetX}%
6546       {%
6547         \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
6548           \unvbox\@outputbox%
6549           \do@feet@custom@order}{\@fnpos}%
6550       }%
6551     }%
6552   }%
6553 }%
6554
6555 %

```

**\do@feet@custom@order** \do@feet@custom@order is called when \@fnpos is neither ‘familiar-critical’, nor ‘critical-familiar’, that is, when the order is more complex. In this case, people must define the order for all footnote series. If they don’t,  $\LaTeX$  could perform an infinite run.

```

6556 \newcommand{\do@feet@custom@order}[2]{%
6557   \def\do##1{%
6558     \edef\@notesseries{\@firstoftwo##1}%
6559     \edef\@notetype{\@secondoftwo##1}%
6560     \ifdefstring{\@notetype}{critical}%
6561       {\csuse{#1append@Xnotes}{\@notesseries}}%
6562       {\ifdefstring{\@notetype}{familiar}%
6563         {\csuse{#1append@notesX}{\@notesseries}}%
6564         {}%
6565       }%
6566     }%
6567   \expandafter\docsvlist\expandafter{#2}%
6568 }%
6569 %

```

**\do@Xfeet** \do@Xfeet is the code extending \@makecol to cater to the extra critical feet.

```

6570 \newcommand*{\do@Xfeet}{%
6571   \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
6572     \unvbox\@outputbox
6573     \@opXfeet}}
6574 %

```

**\@opXfeet** The extra critical feet to be added to the output. . A macro which appends critical notes to the output’s routine, also adding vertical space before notes

**\append@Xnotes**

**\print@Xnotes**

```

6575 \newcommand{\append@Xnotes}[1]{%
6576   \ifvoid\csuse{#1footins}\else%
6577     \global\skip\csuse{#1footins}=\csuse{Xbeforenotes@#1}%

```

```

6578 \global\advance\skip\csuse{#1footins} by\csuse{Xafterrule@#1}%
6579 \print@Xnotes{#1}%
6580 \fi%
6581 }%
6582 %

```

The normal way to add one series, `\print@Xnotes`, is replaced by `reledpar` when using `\Pages`.

```

6583 \newcommand\print@Xnotes[1]{%
6584 \xdef\@currentseries{#1}%
6585 \csuse{#1footstart}{#1}%
6586 \csuse{#1footgroup}{#1}%
6587 }%
6588 %

```

We print all series of notes by looping on them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

```

6589 \newcommand*\@opXfeet{%
6590 \unless\ifnocritical@%
6591 \gdef\firstXseries@{%
6592 \def\do##1{%
6593 \append@Xnotes{##1}%
6594 }%
6595 \dolistloop{\@series}%
6596 \fi%
6597 }%
6598 %

```

`\l@ddodoreintrafeet` `\l@ddodoreintrafeet` is the code catering for the extra footnotes within `\@reinserts`. We use the same category and ordering as in `\l@ddoxtrafeet`.

```

6599 \newcommand*\l@ddodoreintrafeet{%
6600 \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@fnpos}
6601 {\@doreinfeetX\X@doreinfeet}%
6602 {%
6603 \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@fnpos}%
6604 {\X@doreinfeet\@doreinfeetX}%
6605 {\@doreinfeetX\X@doreinfeet}%
6606 }%
6607 }
6608
6609 %

```

`\X@doreinfeet` `\X@doreinfeet` is the code for catering for the extra critical footnotes within `\@reinserts`.

```

6610 \newcommand*\X@doreinfeet{%
6611 \unless\ifnocritical@%
6612 \def\do##1{%
6613 \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%

```

```

6614     \insert\csuse{##1footins}{\unvbox\csuse{##1footins}}%
6615     \fi}%
6616     \dolistloop{\@series}
6617     \fi%
6618 }
6619 %
6620 %

```

`\print@notesX` We have to add all the new kinds of familiar footnotes to the output routine. A macro  
`\append@notesX` which appends the familiar footnotes of one series onto the output routine, also adding  
`\do@feetX` vertical skip before notes.  
`\@doreinfeetX`

```

6621 \newcommand{\append@notesX}[1]{%
6622   \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else%
6623     \global\skip\csuse{footins#1}=\csuse{beforenotesX@#1}%
6624     \global\advance\skip\csuse{footins#1} by\csuse{afterruleX@#1}%
6625     \print@notesX{#1}%
6626   \fi%
6627 }%
6628 %

```

The normal way to print one series of notes. `\print@Xnotes` is replaced by `reledpar` when using `\Pages`.

```

6629 \newcommand\print@notesX[1]{%
6630   \xdef\@currentseries{#1}%
6631   \csuse{footstart#1}{#1}%
6632   \csuse{footgroup#1}{#1}%
6633 }%
6634 %

```

We print all the series of notes by looping over them. We check before printing them that they are not voided.

```

6635 \newcommand*\do@feetX{%
6636   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
6637   \gdef\firstseriesX@{%
6638     \setbox\@outputbox \vbox{%
6639       \unvbox\@outputbox%
6640       \def\do##1{%
6641         \append@notesX{##1}%
6642       }%
6643       \dolistloop{\@series}}%
6644   \fi%
6645 }%
6646
6647 \newcommand{\@doreinfeetX}{%
6648   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
6649   \def\do##1{%
6650     \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else
6651     \insert%

```

```

6652         \csuse{footins##1}
6653         {\unvbox\csuse{footins##1}}%
6654     \fi%
6655 }%
6656 \dolistloop{\@series}%
6657 \fi%
6658 }%
6659 %
6660 %

```

## XXIII.2 Patching standard output's commands

The memoir class does not use the ‘standard’ versions of `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts`, due to its sidebar insert. We had better add that code if memoir is used. (It can be awkward dealing with `\if` code within `\if` code, so don't use `\ifl@dmemoir` here.)

```

6661 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
6662 %

```

memoir is loaded so we use memoir's built in hooks.

```

6663     \g@addto@macro{\m@mdoextrafeet}{\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
6664     \g@addto@macro{\m@mdodoreinextrafeet}{\l@ddodoreinextrafeet}%
6665 }{%
6666 %

```

memoir has not been loaded, so patch `\@makecol` and `\@reinserts`. If the `fancyhdr` package < version 3.8 has been loaded, we patch the `\latex@makecol` command, because this package redefines the standard `\@makecol` in the preamble to call `\latex@makecol`, which has been `\let` to `\@makecol`. If this package is not loaded, we directly patch `\@makecol`. If the `fancyhdr` package  $\geq$  version 3.8, we also directly patch `\@makecol`, because `fancyhdr` does its own patch `\AtBeginDocument`.

```

6667     \ifboolexpr{%
6668         test{\@ifpackageloaded{fancyhdr}}%
6669         and test {\ifdef{\latex@makecol}}%
6670     }{%
6671         \patchcmd%
6672             {\latex@makecol}%
6673             {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}}%
6674             {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
6675             {}%
6676             {\led@error@fail@patch@makecol}%
6677     }{%
6678         \patchcmd%
6679             {\@makecol}%
6680             {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}}%
6681             {\xdef\@freelist{\@freelist\@midlist}\l@ddoxtrafeet}%
6682             {}%
6683             {\led@error@fail@patch@makecol}%

```

```

6684 }%
6685
6686 \patchcmd%
6687 {\@reinserts}%
6688 {\ifvbox}%
6689 {\l@ddodoreinextrafeet\ifvbox}%
6690 {}%
6691 {\led@error@fail@patch@%reinserts}%
6692 }
6693
6694 %

```

It turns out that \@doclearpage also needs modifying.

`\if@led@nofoot` We have to check if there are any leftover feet.

```

6695 \newif\if@led@nofoot
6696
6697 %

```

```

6698 \@ifclassloaded{memoir}{%
6699 %

```

If the memoir class is loaded, we hook into its modified \@doclearpage.

```

\@mem@extranofeet%00 \g@addto@macro{\@mem@extranofeet}{%%
6701 \def\do#1{%
6702 \unless\ifnocritical@%
6703 \ifvoid\csuse{#1footins}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
6704 \fi%
6705 \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
6706 \ifvoid\csuse{footins#1}\else\@mem@nofootfalse\fi%
6707 \fi%
6708 }
6709 \dolistloop{\@series}%
6710 }%
6711 }{%
6712 %

```

As memoir is not loaded we have patch \@doclearpage.

```

\@led@testifnofoot%13 \newcommand*{\@led@testifnofoot}{%
\@doclearpage%14 \@led@nofoottrue%
6715 \ifvoid\footins\else%
6716 \@led@nofootfalse%
6717 \fi%
6718 \def\do##1{%
6719 \unless\ifnocritical@%
6720 \ifvoid\csuse{##1footins}\else%
6721 \@led@nofootfalse%

```

```

6722     \fi%
6723     \fi%
6724     \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
6725         \ifvoid\csuse{footins##1}\else%
6726             \led@nofootfalse%
6727         \fi%
6728     \fi%
6729 }%
6730 \dolistloop{\@series}%
6731 }%
6732
6733 \pretocmd%
6734 {\@docclearpage}%
6735 {\led@testifnofoot}%
6736 {}%
6737 {\led@error@fail@patch@@docclearpage}%
6738
6739 \patchcmd%
6740 {\@docclearpage}%
6741 {\ifvoid\footins}%
6742 {\if\led@nofoot}%
6743 {}%
6744 {\led@error@fail@patch@@docclearpage}%
6745
6746 }
6747
6748 %

```

## XXIV Page numbering in parallel typesetting

The `reledpar` package has two options which change the way page numbering works. We need to implement these options on `reledmac` and not on `reledpar` because they have some consequences for the `reledmac` auxiliary files (numbered file; see V.12 p. 132). The `sameparallelpagenumber` option allows the same page number on both left and right side. The `prevpgnotnumbered` option allows an empty (not numbered) right-side page before `\Pages`.

We cannot implement these two options by changing the value of the page counter, since its value is used by many  $\text{\TeX}$  features to determine whether a page is left (even numbered) or right (odd numbered). Consequently, we have to do it by patching `\thepage`, in order to use the value of the `par@page` counter instead of the value of the page counter.

This counter will be increased in a patched version of  $\text{\TeX}$ 's `\@outputpage` macro, as is the page counter in this macro. However, this increase will take account of the options.

`\par@patch@thepage`    `\par@patch@thepage` patches `\thepage` in order to use the value of `par@page` counter and not the value of `page`. It must be called after any redefinition of `\thepage`. That

is why we insert it at the end of the  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro `\pagenumbering`, which is called by some `\xxxmatter` commands. In cases when we are using the `memoir` class, we insert it at the end of `\@mempnum`. When using `\pagenumbering`, we also need to reset the `par@page` counter. Consequently, we put `\par@patch@thepage` and counter reset in `\par@patch@pagenumbering`. We also call `\par@patch@thepage` at the beginning of the document.

```

6749
6750 \newcommand{\par@patch@thepage}{%
6751   \ifboolexpr{%
6752     bool{sameparallelnumber}%
6753     or bool{prevpgnotnumbered}%
6754   }%
6755   {%
6756     \patchcmd{\thepage}%
6757       {page}{par@page}%
6758       {}{}%
6759       {\led@error@fail@patch@thepage}%
6760   }{}%
6761 }%
6762
6763 \newcommand{\par@patch@pagenumbering}{%
6764   \setcounter{par@page}{1}%
6765   \par@patch@thepage%
6766 }%
6767
6768 \ifl@dmemoir%
6769   \apptocmd{\@mempnum}%
6770     {\par@patch@pagenumbering}%
6771     {}{}%
6772     {\led@error@fail@patch@@mempnum}%
6773
6774 \else%
6775   \apptocmd{\pagenumbering}%
6776     {\par@patch@pagenumbering}%
6777     {}{}%
6778     {\led@error@fail@patch@pagenumbering}%
6779 \fi%
6780
6781 \AtBeginDocument{\par@patch@thepage}%
6782 %

```

**`\@outputpage`** As its name says, `\@outputpage` is a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  macro called in the output routine. It is this macro which increases the page counter. We patch it in order to increase, conditionally, the `par@page` counter.

```

6783 \AtBeginDocument{%
6784   \apptocmd{\@outputpage}{%
6785     \ifsameparallelnumber%
6786     \ifl@printingpages%

```

```

6787     \ifodd\c@page\else%
6788         \stepcounter{par@page}%
6789     \fi%
6790 \else%
6791     \stepcounter{par@page}%
6792 \fi%
6793 \else%
6794     \stepcounter{par@page}%
6795 \fi%
6796 }%
6797 {}%
6798 {\led@error@fail@patch@@outputpage}%
6799 }%
6800 %

```

**\thepar@page** The par@page counter.

```

6801 \newcounter{par@page}%
6802 \setcounter{par@page}{1}%
6803 %

```

## XXV Cross referencing

You can mark a place in the text using a command of the form `\edlabel{<foo>}`, and later refer to it using the label `<foo>` by typing `\edpageref{<foo>}`, or `\lineref{<foo>}` or `\sublineref{<foo>}` or `\pstartref`. These reference commands will produce, respectively, the page, line sub-line and pstart on which the `\edlabel{<foo>}` command occurred.

The reference macros warn you if a reference is made to an undefined label. If `{<foo>}` has been used as a label before, the `\edlabel{<foo>}` command will issue a complaint; subsequent `\edpageref` and `\edlineref` commands will refer to the latest occurrence of `\edlabel{<foo>}`.

**\labelref@list** Set up a new list, `\labelref@list`, to hold the page, line and sub-line numbers for each label.

```

6804 \list@create{\labelref@list}
6805 %

```

**\zz@@@** Two convenience macros to zero three / four labeling counters in one go.

```

\zz@@@
6806 \newcommand*{\zz@@@}{000|000|000}% Set three counters to zero in one go
6807 \newcommand*{\zz@@@}{000|000|000|000}% Set four counters to zero in one go
6808
6809 %

```



`\edlabel` The `\edlabel` command first writes a `\@lab` macro to the `\linenum@out` file. It then checks to see that the `\labelref@list` actually has something in it (if not, it creates a dummy entry), and pops the next value for the current label, storing it in `\label@refs`. Finally it defines the label to be `\empty` so that any future check will turn up the fact that it has been used.<sup>34</sup>

This version of the original `edmac \label` uses `\@bsphack` and `\@esphack` to eliminate extra space problems and also use the  $\TeX$  write methods for the `.aux` file.

Jesse Billett<sup>35</sup> found that the original code could be off by several pages. This version, hopefully cures that, and also allows for non-arabic page numbering.

```

6810 \newcommand*{\edlabel}[1]{%
6811   \leavevmode%
6812   \@bsphack%
6813   \ifboolexpr{bool{ledRcol} or bool{ledRcol@}}{%
6814     \ifXnote@%
6815     \protected@write\@auxout{%
6816       {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\l@dparsestartline|\l@dparsestartsub||\annot@start|\the\c@pstartR|{#1}}%
6817       \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6818         {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6819       {}%
6820     \else%
6821     \write\linenum@outR{\string\@lab}%
6822     \ifx\labelref@listR\empty%
6823     \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
6824     \else%
6825     \gl@p\labelref@listR\to\label@refs%
6826     \fi%
6827     \ifvmode%
6828       \advancelabel@refs%
6829     \fi%
6830   }%

```

Use code from the kernel `\label` command to write the correct page number. Also define an `hypertarget` if `hyperref` package is loaded.

```

6831   \protected@write\@auxout{%
6832     {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstartR|{#1}}%
6833     \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6834       {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6835     {}%
6836   \fi%
6837 }{%
6838   \ifXnote@%
6839     \ifl@dpairing%pstart or pstartL?
6840     \protected@write\@auxout{%

```

<sup>34</sup>The remaining macros in this section were kindly revised by Wayne Sullivan, who substantially improved their efficiency and flexibility.

<sup>35</sup>(jdb43@cam.ac.uk) via the `ctt` thread ‘`ledmac` cross referencing’, 25 August 2003.

```

6841      {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\l@dparsedstartline|\
l@dparsedstartsub|\annot@start|\the\c@pstartL|{#1}}}%
6842      \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6843      {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6844      {}%
6845      \else%
6846      \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6847      {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\l@dparsedstartline|\
l@dparsedstartsub|\annot@start|\the\c@pstartL|{#1}}}%
6848      \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6849      {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6850      {}%
6851      \fi%
6852      \else%
6853      \write\linenum@out{\string\@lab}%
6854      \ifx\labelref@list\empty%
6855      \xdef\label@refs{\zz@@@}%
6856      \else%
6857      \gl@p\labelref@list\to\label@refs%
6858      \fi%
6859      \ifvmode%
6860      \advancelabel@refs%
6861      \fi%
6862      \ifl@dpairing%Pstart or PstartL?
6863      \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6864      {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstartL
|{#1}}}%
6865      \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6866      {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6867      {}%
6868      \else%
6869      \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6870      {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\thepage|\label@refs|\the\c@pstart
|{#1}}}%
6871      \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6872      {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1}{}}}%
6873      {}%
6874      \fi%
6875      \fi%
6876      }%
6877      \@esphack}%
6878
6879      %

```

`\advancelabel@refs`  
`\labelrefsparseline`  
`\labelrefsparsesubline`

In cases where `\edlabel` is the first element in a paragraph, we have a problem with line counts, because line counts change only at the first horizontal box of the paragraph. Hence, we need to test `\edlabel` if it occurs at the start of a paragraph. To do so, we use `\ifvmode`. If the test is true, we must advance by one unit the amount of text we write into the `.aux` file. We do so with the `\advancelabel@refs` command.

```

6880 \newcounter{line}%
6881 \newcounter{subline}%
6882 \newcounter{absline}%
6883 \newcommand{\advancelabel@refs}{%
6884   \setcounter{line}{\expandafter\labelrefsparseline\label@refs}%
6885   \stepcounter{line}%
6886   \setcounter{absline}{\expandafter\labelrefsparseabsline\label@refs}%
6887   \stepcounter{absline}%
6888   \ifsublines@%
6889     \setcounter{subline}{\expandafter\labelrefsparsesubline\label@refs}%
6890   %
6891   \stepcounter{subline}{1}%
6892   \def\label@refs{\theline|\thesubline|\theabsline}%
6893   \else%
6894     \def\label@refs{\theline|0|\theabsline}%
6895   \fi%
6896 }
6897 \def\labelrefsparseline#1|#2|#3{#1}%
6898 \def\labelrefsparsesubline#1|#2|#3{#2}%
6899 \def\labelrefsparseabsline#1|#2|#3{#3}%
6900 %

```

**\l@dmake@labels** The `\l@dmake@labels` macro gets executed when the labels file is read. For each label it defines a macro, whose name is made up partly from the label you supplied, that contains the page, line and sub-line numbers. But first it checks to see whether the label has already been used (and complains if it has).

The initial use of `\newcommand` is to catch if `\l@dmake@labels` has been previously defined (by a class or package).

#1 page number, #2 line number, #3 sub-line number, #4 absolute line number, #5 line number annotation, #6 pstart number, #7 label.

```

6900 \newcommand*{\l@dmake@labels}{%
6901 \def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7{%
6902   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#7\endcsname%
6903     \relax%
6904   \else%
6905     \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{\csuse{XR@prefix}#7}%
6906   \fi
6907   \global\providetoggle{label@#7@ledRcol}%False is the default value of
this toggle, which tells us whether a label is linked to the right or left
side
6908   \csgdef{the@label\csuse{XR@prefix}#7}{#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|\relax}%
6909   \ignorespaces}
6910 %
6911 %

```

TeX reads the aux file at both the beginning and end of the document, so we have to switch off duplicate label checking after the first time the file is read.

```

6912 \AtBeginDocument{%
6913   \def\l@dmake@labels#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7{%
6914 }
6915
6916 %

```

**\@lab** The \@lab command, which appears in the \linenum@out file, appends the current value of page, line, sub-line, and absolute line to the \labelref@list. These values are defined by the earlier \@page, \@nl, and the \sub@on and \sub@off commands appearing in the \linenum@out file.

TeX uses the page counter for page numbers. However, it appears that this is not the right place to grab the page number. That task is now done in the \edlabel macro. This version of \@lab appends just the current line and sub-line numbers to \labelref@list.

```

6917
6918 \newcommand*{\@lab}{%
6919   \ifledRcol
6920     \xright@appenditem{\linenumr@p{\line@numR}}|{%
6921       \ifsublines@ \sublinenumr@p{\subline@numR}\else 0\fi|{%
6922       \the\absline@numR|{%
6923       \current@annot%
6924       }%
6925       \to\labelref@listR
6926   \else
6927     \xright@appenditem{%
6928       \linenumr@p{\line@num}|{%
6929       \ifsublines@ \sublinenumr@p{\subline@num}\else 0\fi|{%
6930       \the\absline@num|{%
6931       \current@annot%
6932       }%
6933       \to\labelref@list
6934   \fi}
6935 %

```

**\applabel** \applabel, if called in \edtext will insert automatically both a starting and an ending label for the current edtext lines.

```

6936 \newcommand*{\applabel}[1]{%
6937   \if@edtext@secondarg@%
6938 %

```

Label should not be already defined.

```

6939   \ifcsundef{the@label#1}{%
6940     \csdef{the@label#1}{applabel}%
6941   }%
6942   {%
6943     \led@warn@DuplicateLabel{#1 (applabel)}%
6944   }%
6945 %

```

Parse the `\edtext` line numbers and annotations.

```

6946 \expandafter\l@dp@rsefootspec\l@d@nums|%
6947 \expandafter\parse@annot\l@current@annot|%
6948 %

```

Use the  $\TeX$  standard hack for label.

```

6949 \@bsphack%
6950 %

```

And now, write the data in the auxiliary file.

```

6951 \ifledRcol%
6952 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6953 {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6954 \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6955 {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1:start}}}%
6956 {}%
6957 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6958 {\string\l@dmake@labelsR\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6959 \else%
6960 \ifl@d@p@i@r@i@g%pstart or pstartL?
6961 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6962 {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6963 \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6964 {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1:start}}}%
6965 {}%
6966 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6967 {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6968 \else%
6969 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6970 {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6971 \ifdef{\hypertarget}%
6972 {\Hy@raisedlink{\hypertarget{#1:start}}}%
6973 {}%
6974 \protected@write\@auxout{}%
6975 {\string\l@dmake@labels\space\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@p@a@g@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@l@n@e|\l@d@p@r@s@d@e@n@d@s@u@b|\l@annot@e@n@d|\the\c@p@s@t@r@L|{#1:end}}}%
6976 \fi%
6977 \fi%
6978 %

```

Use the  $\TeX$  standard hack for label.

```

6979 \@esphack%
6980 %

Warning if \applabel is called outside of \edtext.

6981 \else%
6982 \led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext{#1}%
6983 \fi%
6984 %

End of \applabel

6985 }%
6986 %

```

```

\edlabels \edlabels and \edlabelE are just used to mark the beginning and the end of a passage.
\edlabelE
\edlabelSE
6987 \newcommand{\edlabels}[1]{%
6988 \edlabel{#1:start}%
6989 }
6990 \newcommand{\edlabelE}[1]{%
6991 \edlabel{#1:end}%
6992 }
6993 \newcommand{\edlabelSE}[1]{%
6994 \edlabels{#1}%
6995 \edlabelE{#1}%
6996 }
6997 %

```

**\wrap@edcrossref** \wrap@edcrossref is called around all reledmac crossref commands, except those which start with x. It adds the hyperlink.

```

6998 \newrobustcmd{\wrap@edcrossref}[2]{%
6999 \ifdef{\hyperlink}%
7000 {\hyperlink{#1}{#2}}%
7001 {#2}%
7002 }
7003 %

```

**\edpageref** If the specified label exists, \edpageref gives its page number.

**\xpageref** For this reference command, as for the other two, a special version with prefix x is provided for use in places where the command is to be scanned as a number, as in \linenum. These special versions have two limitations: they do not print error messages if the reference is unknown, and they can't appear as the first label or reference command in the file; you must ensure that a \edlabel or a normal reference command appears first, or these x-commands will always return zeros.

TeX already defines a \pageref, so changing the name to \edpageref.

```

7004 \newcommand*{\edpageref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}}
7005 \newcommand*{\xpageref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}}

```

```
7006
7007 %
```

**\edlineref** If the specified label exists, \lineref gives its line number.

**\xlineref**

```
7008 \newcommand*{\edlineref}[1]{%
7009   \l@dref@undefined{#1}%
7010   \wrap@edcrossref{#1}{%
7011     \providetoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}%Required for the first run, when the
       label has not yet been parsed on the .aux file
7012     \iftoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}%
7013       {\linenumrepR{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}}%
7014       {\linenumrep{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}}%
7015     \xflagref{#1}%
7016   }%
7017 }%
7018 \newcommand*{\xlineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}}%
7019
7020 %
```

**\sublineref** If the specified label exists, \sublineref gives its sub-line number.

**\xsublineref**

```
7021 \newcommand*{\sublineref}[1]{%
7022   \l@dref@undefined{#1}%
7023   \wrap@edcrossref{#1}{%
7024     \providetoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}%Required for the first run, when the
       label has not yet been parsed on the .aux file
7025     \iftoggle{label@#1@ledRcol}%
7026       {\sublinenumrepR{\l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}}%
7027       {\sublinenumrep{\l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}}%
7028     }%
7029   }%
7030 \newcommand*{\xsublineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}}
7031
7032 %
```

**\xabslineref** If the specified label exists, \xabslineref gives its absolute line number. This is generally used only by reledmac internal macros.

```
7033 \newcommand*{\xabslineref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{4}{#1}}%
7034 %
```

**\annotationref** If the specified label exists, \edannotationref gives the line number annotation with which it is associated.

**\xannotationref**

```
7035 \newcommand*{\annotationref}[1]{%
7036   \l@dref@undefined{#1}%
7037   \wrap@edcrossref{#1}{%
7038     \l@wrap@ifnotemptybox{\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref}{%
7039       \l@dgetref@num{5}{#1}%

```

```

7040 }%
7041 }%
7042 }%
7043 \newcommand*\xannotationref}[1]{%
7044   \l@getref@num{5}{#1}%
7045 }%
7046 %

```

**\pstartref** If the specified label exists, \pstartref gives its pstart number.

```

\pstartref
7047 \newcommand*\pstartref}[1]{\l@dref@undefined{#1}\wrap@edcrossref{#1}{\l@getref@num{6}{#1}}}%
7048 \newcommand*\xpstartref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{6}{#1}}%
7049
7050 %

```

**\xflagref** \xflagref finds the side flag of any ref defined with \edlabel.

```

7051 \newcommand*\xflagref}[1]{\l@dgetref@num{7}{#1}}%
7052 %

```

The next three macros are used by the referencing commands above, and do the job of extracting the right numbers from the label macro that contains the page, line, and sub-line number.

**\l@dref@undefined** The \l@dref@undefined macro is called when you refer to a label with the normal referencing macros. Its argument is a label, and it just checks that the label has been defined.

```

7053 \newcommand*\l@dref@undefined}[1]{%
7054   \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax
7055     \led@warn@RefUndefined{#1}%
7056   \fi}
7057
7058 %

```

**\l@dgetref@num** Next, \l@dgetref@num fetches the number we want. It has two arguments: the first is simply a digit, specifying whether to fetch a page (1), line (2), sub-line (3), (4) pstart number or (5) side flag. (This switching is done by calling \l@dlabel@parse.) The second argument is the label-macro, which because of the \@lab macro above is defined to be a string of the type 123|456|789.

```

7059 \newcommand*\l@dgetref@num}[2]{%
7060   \expandafter
7061   \ifx\csname the@label#2\endcsname \relax
7062     000%
7063   \else
7064     \expandafter\expandafter\expandafter
7065     \l@dlabel@parse\csname the@label#2\endcsname|#1%

```



```

7066 \fi}
7067
7068 %

```

**\l@ddlabel@parse** Notice that we slipped another | delimiter into the penultimate line of \l@dgetref@num, to keep the ‘switch-number’ separate from the reference numbers. This | is used as another parameter delimiter by \l@ddlabel@parse, which extracts the appropriate number from its first argument. The |-delimited arguments consist of the expanded label-macro (three reference numbers), followed by the switch-number (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) which defines which of the former seven numbers to extract. (It was given earlier as the first argument of \l@dgetref@num.)

```

7069 \newcommand*{\l@ddlabel@parse}{%
7070 \def\l@ddlabel@parse#1|#2|#3|#4|#5|#6|#7|#8{%
7071 \ifcase #8%
7072 \or #1%
7073 \or #2%
7074 \or #3%
7075 \or #4%
7076 \or #5%
7077 \or #6%
7078 \or #7%
7079 \fi}
7080 %

```

**\xxref** The \xxref command takes two arguments, both of which are labels, e.g., \xxref{mouse}{elephant}. It first does some checking to make sure that the labels do exist (if one does not, those numbers are set to zero). Then it calls \linenum and sets the beginning page, line, and sub-line numbers to those of the place where \label{mouse} was placed, and the ending numbers to those at {elephant}. The point of this is to be able to manufacture footnote line references to passages which cannot be specified in the normal way as the first argument to \edtext for one reason or another. Using \xxref in the second argument of \edtext lets you set things up at least semi-automatically.

```

7081 \newcommand*{\xxref}[2]{%
7082 {%
7083 \expandafter\ifx\csname the@label#1\endcsname\relax%
7084 \let\@tempa\zz@@%
7085 \def\@tempc{}%
7086 \else%
7087 \def\@tempa{%
7088 \l@dgetref@num{1}{#1}|%
7089 \l@dgetref@num{2}{#1}|%
7090 \l@dgetref@num{3}{#1}%
7091 }%
7092 \edef\@tempc{%
7093 \l@dgetref@num{5}{#1}%
7094 }%
7095 \fi%

```

```

7096 \expandafter\ifx\cename the@label#2\endcsname\relax%
7097 \let\@tempb\zz@@@%
7098 \def\@tempd{}%
7099 \else%
7100 \def\@tempb{%
7101 \l@getref@num{1}{#2}|%
7102 \l@getref@num{2}{#2}|%
7103 \l@getref@num{3}{#2}%
7104 }%
7105 \edef\@tempd{%
7106 \l@getref@num{5}{#2}%
7107 }%
7108 \fi%
7109 \global\appto\@beforeinsertofthisedtext{%
7110 \def\@this@crossref@start{#1}%
7111 }%
7112 \global\appto\@beforeinsertofthisedtext{%
7113 \def\@this@crossref@end{#2}%
7114 }%
7115 \linenum{\@tempa|\@tempb}%
7116 \edef\@tempe{\@tempc|\@tempd}%
7117 \expandafter\lineannot\expandafter{\@tempe}%
7118 }%
7119 }%
7120
7121
7122 %

```

**\appref** \appref, \Seref, \apprefwithpage, \Serefwithpage and \SEonlypage print cross-  
**\apprefwithpage** ref to some start / end lines defined by specific commands. It prints the lines as they  
**\Seref** should be printed in the apparatus (critical notes for not suffixed versions, endnotes for  
**\Serefwithpage** suffixed versions).  
**\Serefwithpage**

Here we define hooks similar to some those related to critical footnotes or endnotes.

So, first declare the default value of the hooks for the pseudo-series. Also declare the internal toggle which are switch by `reledmac`.

```

7123 \def\Xtwolines@appref{}%
7124 \def\Xtwolines@Seref{}%
7125
7126 \def\Xmorethantwolines@appref{}%
7127 \def\Xmorethantwolines@Seref{}%
7128
7129 \def\Xlinerangeseparator@appref{\endashchar}%
7130 \def\Xlinerangeseparator@Seref{\endashchar}%
7131
7132 \def\Xsublinesep@appref{\fullstop}%
7133 \def\Xsublinesep@Seref{\fullstop}%
7134
7135 \def\Xpagelinesep@appref{\fullstop}%

```

```

7136 \def\Xpagelinesep@SEref{\fullstop}%
7137
7138
7139 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@appref}%
7140 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesbutnotmore@SEref}%
7141
7142 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@appref}%
7143
7144 \newtoggle{Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage@SEref}%
7145
7146 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@appref}%
7147 \toggletrue{Xlineflag@appref}%Here exception
7148 \newtoggle{Xlineflag@SEref}%
7149 \toggletrue{Xlineflag@SEref}%Here exception
7150
7151 \newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@SEref}%Never changed, just for the
7152 test in \setprintlines
7153 \newtoggle{Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst@appref}%Idem
7154
7154 \def\Xlinenumannotationposition@appref{after}%
7155 \def\Xlinenumannotationposition@SEref{after}%
7156
7157 \def\Xwraplinenumannotation@appref{\textsuperscript}%
7158 \def\Xwraplinenumannotation@SEref{\textsuperscript}%
7159 \newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@appref}%
7160 \newtoggle{Xnoidenticallinenumannotation@SEref}%
7161
7162 \def\Xendtwolines@apprefwithpage{}%
7163 \def\Xendtwolines@SErefwithpage{}%
7164
7165 \def\Xendmorethantwolines@apprefwithpage{}%
7166 \def\Xendmorethantwolines@SErefwithpage{}%
7167
7168 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@apprefwithpage{\endashchar}
7169 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefwithpage{\endashchar}
7170 \def\Xendlinerangeseparator@SErefonlypage{\endashchar}
7171
7172 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@apprefwithpage{p.}%
7173 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SErefwithpage{p.}%
7174 \def\Xendbeforepagenumber@SEonlypage{p.}%
7175
7176 \def\Xendafterpagenumber@apprefwithpage{} }%
7177 \def\Xendafterpagenumber@SErefwithpage{} }%
7178
7179
7180 \def\Xendlineprefixsingle@apprefwithpage{}%
7181 \def\Xendlineprefixsingle@SErefwithpage{}%
7182
7183 \def\Xendlineprefixmore@apprefwithpage{}%
7184 \def\Xendlineprefixmore@SErefwithpage{}%

```

```

7185 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@apprefwithpage}%
7186 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesbutnotmore@SErefwithpage}%
7187
7188
7189 \def\Xendsublinesep@apprefwithpage{\fullstop}%
7190 \def\Xendsublinesep@SErefwithpage{\fullstop}%
7191
7192 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@apprefwithpage}%
7193 \newtoggle{Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage@SErefwithpage}%
7194
7195 \newtoggle{Xendlineflag@apprefwithpage}
7196 \toggletrue{Xendlineflag@apprefwithpage}%Here, exception
7197 \newtoggle{Xendlineflag@SErefwithpage}
7198 \toggletrue{Xendlineflag@SErefwithpage}%Here, exception
7199
7200
7201 \newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst@SEref}%Never changed, just for
the test in \setprintendlines
7202 \newtoggle{Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst@appref}%Idem
7203
7204 \def\Xendlinenumannotationposition@apprefwithpage{after}%
7205 \def\Xendlinenumannotationposition@SErefwithpage{after}%
7206
7207 \def\Xendwraplinenumannotation@apprefwithpage{\textsuperscript}%
7208 \def\Xendwraplinenumannotation@SErefwithpage{\textsuperscript}%
7209
7210 \newtoggle{Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation@apprefwithpage}%
7211 \newtoggle{Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation@SErefwithpage}%
7212 %

```

Note that some of these hooks are declared but no user command can change their values. Such hooks are not pertinent for appref and apprefwithpage pseudo-series, but their values are nonetheless tested in some macros.

```

7213
7214 \gdef\Xboxstartlinenum@appref{Opt}
7215 \gdef\Xboxstartlinenum@SEref{Opt}
7216
7217 \gdef\Xboxendlinenum@appref{Opt}
7218 \gdef\Xboxendlinenum@SEref{Opt}
7219
7220 \gdef\Xendboxstartlinenum@apprefwithpage{Opt}
7221 \gdef\Xendboxstartlinenum@SErefwithpage{Opt}
7222
7223 \gdef\Xendboxendlinenum@apprefwithpage{Opt}
7224 \gdef\Xendboxendlinenum@SErefwithpage{Opt}
7225
7226 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst@apprefwithpage}
7227 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirst@SErefwithpage}
7228
7229 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle@apprefwithpage}

```

```

7230 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle@Serefwithpage}
7231
7232 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo@apprefwithpage}
7233 \newtoggle{Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo@Serefwithpage}
7234
7235 \gdef\Xendsympagenum@apprefwithpage{}
7236 \gdef\Xendsympagenum@Serefwithpage{}
7237
7238 \gdef\Xendinplaceofpagenumber@apprefwithpage{}
7239 \gdef\Xendinplaceofpagenumber@Serefwithpage{}
7240
7241 %

```

Now, declare the default values of \@apprefprefixsingle and \@apprefprefixmore, \@Serefprefix, \@Serefprefixmore and the commands which defines them.

```

7242 \newcommand\@apprefprefixsingle{}%
7243 \newcommand\@Serefprefixsingle{}%
7244
7245 \newcommand\@apprefprefixmore{}%
7246 \newcommand\@Serefprefixmore{}%
7247
7248 \newcommand{\setapprefprefixsingle}[1]{%
7249   \gdef\@apprefprefixsingle{#1}%
7250 }
7251 \newcommand{\setSerefprefixsingle}[1]{%
7252   \gdef\@Serefprefixsingle{#1}%
7253 }
7254
7255 \newcommand{\setapprefprefixmore}[1]{%
7256   \gdef\@apprefprefixmore{#1}%
7257 }
7258 \newcommand{\setSerefprefixmore}[1]{%
7259   \gdef\@Serefprefixmore{#1}%
7260 }
7261
7262 %

```

And not \setSerefonlypageprefixsingle and \setSerefonlypageprefixmore.

```

7263 \newcommand{\setSerefonlypageprefixsingle}[1]{%
7264   \gdef\Serefonlypage@prefixsingle{#1}%
7265 }%
7266 \newcommand{\setSerefonlypageprefixmore}[1]{%
7267   \gdef\Serefonlypage@prefixmore{#1}%
7268 }%
7269 %

```

And now, the main commands: \appref, \apprefwithpage, \Seref and \Serefwithpage. These commands call \reformatted@ and \reformattedwithpage, which calls \printlines and \printendlines . That is why we have previously declared all hooks values tested inside these last commands.

```

7270 \newcommandx{\appref}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformatted@{#1}{#2}{appref}}
7271 \newcommandx{\Seref}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformatted@{#1}{#2}{Seref}}
7272
7273
7274 \newcommandx{\apprefwithpage}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformattedwithpage@
7275 {#1}{#2}{appref}}
7276 \newcommandx{\Serefwithpage}[2][1,usedefault]{\reformattedwithpage@
7277 {#1}{#2}{Seref}}
7278
7279 \newcommand{\reformatted@}[3]{%
7280   \def\do##1{%
7281     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7282   }%
7283   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{%}%
7284   \xdef\@currentseries{#3}%
7285   \iftoggle{noprefix@}{}%
7286   {%
7287     \ifcsemt{#3prefixmore}%
7288     {\@apprefprefixsingle}%
7289     {%
7290       \IfEq{\xlineref{#2:start}}{\xlineref{#2:end}}%
7291       {\iftoggle{prefixmore@}%
7292        {\csuse{#3prefixmore}}%
7293        {\csuse{#3prefixsingle}}%
7294       }%
7295       {\csuse{#3prefixmore}}%
7296     }%
7297   }%
7298   \ifboolexpr{%
7299     test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}%
7300     or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}%
7301   }%
7302   {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}%
7303   {%
7304     \def\@this@crossref@start{#2:start}%
7305     \def\@this@crossref@end{#2:end}%
7306     \xdef\annot@start{\xannotationref{#2:start}}%
7307     \xdef\annot@end{\xannotationref{#2:end}}%
7308     \printlines\xpageref{#2:start}|\xlineref{#2:start}|\xsublineref{#2:
7309 start}|\xpageref{#2:end}|\xlineref{#2:end}|\xsublineref{#2:end}|\relax|
7310 xflagref{#2:start}|}%
7311   }%
7312   \def\do##1{%
7313     \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7314   }%
7315   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{%}%
7316 }%

```

```

7315 \newcommand{\reformattedwithpage@}[3]{%
7316   \def\do##1{%
7317     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7318   }%
7319   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{%
7320     \xdef\@currentseries{#3withpage}%
7321     \ifboolexpr{%
7322       test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}%
7323       or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}%
7324     }%
7325     {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}%
7326     {%
7327       \def\@this@crossref@start{#2:start}%
7328       \def\@this@crossref@end{#2:end}%
7329       \printendlines\xpageref{#2:start}|\xlineref{#2:start}|\xsublineref{#2:
7330 start}|\xpageref{#2:end}|\xlineref{#2:end}|\xsublineref{#2:end}|\relax|\
xflagref{#2:start}|\%
7331     }%
7332     \def\do##1{%
7333       \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7334     }%
7335     \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{%
7336     }%
7337
7338 \newcommand{\reformattedonlypage@}[3]{%
7339   \def\do##1{%
7340     \setkeys[mac]{truefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7341   }%
7342   \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}{%
7343     \xdef\@currentseries{#3onlypage}%
7344     \ifboolexpr{%
7345       test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:start}}%
7346       or test{\ifcsundef{the@label#2:end}}%
7347     }%
7348     {\led@warn@pairRefUndefined{#2}\nfss@text{\reset@font\bfseries ??}}%
7349     {\ifnumequal{\xpageref{#2:end}}{\xpageref{#2:start}}%
7350      {%
7351        \ifcsvoid{#3onlypage@prefixsingle}%
7352        {}%
7353        {\csletcs{Xendbeforepagenumber@#3onlypage}{#3onlypage@prefixsingle
7354 }}%
7355        \printnpnum{%
7356          \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}%
7357        }%
7358      }%
7359      {%
7360        \ifcsvoid{#3onlypage@prefixmore}%
7361        {}%
7362        {\csletcs{Xendbeforepagenumber@#3onlypage}{#3onlypage@prefixmore}}%

```

```

7362 \ifdefined\linrangesep%
7363 \printnpnum{%
7364 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}%
7365 \linrangesep%
7366 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:end}{\xpageref{#2:end}}%
7367 }%
7368 \else%
7369 \printnpnum{%
7370 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:start}{\xpageref{#2:start}}%
7371 \csuse{Xendlinrangeseparator@}\@currentseries}%
7372 \wrap@edcrossref{#2:end}{\xpageref{#2:end}}%
7373 }%
7374 \fi%
7375 }%
7376 }%
7377 \def\do##1{%
7378 \setkeys[mac]{falsefootnoteoption}{##1}%
7379 }%
7380 \notblank{#1}{\docsvlist{#1}}}%
7381 }%
7382 %

```

**\edmakelabel** Sometimes the `\edlabel` command cannot be used to specify exactly the page and line desired; you can use the `\edmakelabel` macro make your own label. For example, if you insert `\edmakelabel{elephant}{10|25|0}` you will have created a new label, and a later call to `\edpageref{elephant}` would print ‘10’ and `\lineref{elephant}` would print ‘25’. The sub-line number here is zero. `\edmakelabel` takes a label, followed by a page and a line number(s) as arguments.  $\TeX$  defines a `\makelabel` macro which is used in lists. Peter Wilson has changed the name to `\edmakelabel`.

```

7383 \newcommand*{\edmakelabel}[2]{\expandafter\xdef\csname the@label#1\
endcsname{#2}}
7384
7385 %

```

(If you are only going to refer to such a label using `\xxref`, then you can omit entries in the same way as with `\linenum` (see VI.3 p. 147 and V.9 p. 111), since `\xxref` makes a call to `\linenum` in order to do its work.)

## XXV.1 Compatibility with xref

Here, we provide compatibility with the `xref` to enable `reledmac`’s cross-referencing to external documents. We assume that the user loads `xref` *before* `reledmac`, but uses `\externaldocument` *after* loading `reledmac`.

**\XR@test** First, we patch the `xr` macro `\XR@test`, which is called on every line of the external .aux file, in order to also call macros specific to `reledmac`.

```

7386 \pretocmd{\XR@test}%
7387 {\XR@test@mac+++#1#2#3#4+++}%

```



```

7388   {}%
7389   {}%
7390   %

```

**\XR@test@mac** The `\XR@test@mac` takes the full content of a line of the external `.aux` files, with the three final dots added by `xr`.

```

7391 \long\def\xr@test@mac+++#1+++{\xr@test@mac@test#1}
7392 %

```

**\XR@test@mac@test** And finally, `\XR@test@mac@test` does the job. This code is based on the `\XR@test` macro of the `xr` package. However, note that the `\XR@prefix` is not called here, but it is integrated directly in `\l@dmake@labels` and `\l@dmake@labelsR`.

```

7393 \long\def\xr@test@mac@test#1#2...{%The triple dots (NOT \ldots) are because
of the line 22 of xr.sty v5.02 1994/05/28
7394 \ifx#1\l@dmake@labels%
7395 \l@dmake@labels#2%
7396 \else
7397 \ifx#1\l@dmake@labelsR%
7398 \l@dmake@labelsR #2%
7399 \fi%
7400 \fi%
7401 }%
7402 %

```

## XXVI Sidenotes

Regular `\marginpars` do not work inside numbered text — they do not produce any note but do put an extra unnumbered blank line into the text.

**\@xympar** Changing `\@xympar` a little at least ensures that `\marginpars` in numbered text do not disturb the flow.

```

7403 \pretocmd{\@xympar}%
7404 {\ifnumberedpar@
7405 \led@warn@NoMarginpars
7406 \@esphack
7407 \else}%
7408 {}%
7409 {}%
7410
7411 \apptocmd{\@xympar}%
7412 {\fi}%
7413 {}
7414 {}
7415
7416 %

```

We provide sidenotes as replacement for `\marginpar` in numbered text.

`\sidenote@margin` These are the sidenote equivalents to `\line@margin` and `\linenummargin` for specifying which margin. The default is the right margin (opposite to the default for line numbers). `\l@dgetsidenote@margin` returns the number associated to sidenote margin:

**left:** 0

**right:** 1

**outer:** 2

**inner:** 3

```

7417 \newcount\sidenote@margin
7418 \newcommand*{\sidenotemargin}[1]{%
7419   \l@dgetsidenote@margin{#1}%
7420   \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\m@ne
7421     \ifledRcol
7422       \global\sidenote@marginR=\@l@dttempcntb
7423     \else
7424       \global\sidenote@margin=\@l@dttempcntb
7425     \fi
7426   \fi}}
7427 \newcommand*{\l@dgetsidenote@margin}[1]{%
7428   \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{left}%
7429   \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7430     \@l@dttempcntb \z@
7431   \else
7432     \def\@tempb{right}%
7433     \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7434       \@l@dttempcntb \@ne
7435     \else
7436       \def\@tempb{outer}%
7437       \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7438         \@l@dttempcntb \tw@
7439       \else
7440         \def\@tempb{inner}%
7441         \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7442           \@l@dttempcntb \thr@@
7443         \else
7444           \led@warn@BadSidenotemargin
7445           \@l@dttempcntb \m@ne
7446         \fi
7447       \fi
7448     \fi
7449   \fi}
7450 \sidenotemargin{right}
7451
7452 %

```

`\l@dlp@rbox` We need two boxes to store sidenote texts.

```
\l@drp@rbox
7453 \newbox\l@dlp@rbox
7454 \newbox\l@drp@rbox
7455
7456 %
```

`\ledlsnotewidth` These specify the width of the left/right boxes (initialised to `\marginparwidth`), their  
`\ledrsnotewidth` distance from the text (initialised to `\linenumsep`), and the fonts used.

```
\ledlsnotesep
7457 \newdimen\ledlsnotewidth \ledlsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledrsnotesep
7458 \newdimen\ledrsnotewidth \ledrsnotewidth=\marginparwidth
\ledlsnotefontsetup
7459 \newdimen\ledlsnotesep \ledlsnotesep=\linenumsep
\ledrsnotefontsetup
7460 \newdimen\ledrsnotesep \ledrsnotesep=\linenumsep
7461 \newcommand*\ledlsnotefontsetup{\raggedleft\footnotesize}
7462 \newcommand*\ledrsnotefontsetup{\raggedright\footnotesize}
7463
7464 %
```

`\ledleftnote` `\ledleftnote`, `\ledrightnote`, `\ledinnernote`, `\ledouternote` are the user com-  
`\ledrightnote` mands for left, right, inner and outer sidenotes. The two last one are just alias for the  
`\ledinnernote` two first one, depending of the page number. `\ledsidenote{<text>}` is the command  
`\ledouternote` for a moveable sidenote.

```
\ledsidenote
7465 \newcommand*\ledleftnote[1]{\edtext{\l@dlsnote{#1}}}
7466 \newcommand*\ledrightnote[1]{\edtext{\l@drsnote{#1}}}
7467 \newcommand*\ledsidenote[1]{\edtext{\l@dcsnote{#1}}}%
7468 \newcommand*\ledinnernote[1]{\edtext{\l@disnote{#1}}}%
7469 \newcommand*\ledouternote[1]{\edtext{\l@dosnote{#1}}}%
7470 %
```

`\l@dlsnote` . The ‘footnotes’ for left, right, and moveable sidenotes. The whole scheme is reminis-  
`\l@drsnote` cent of the critical footnotes code.

```
\l@dcsnote
7471 \newif\ifrighnoteup
\l@desnote
7472 \righnoteuptrue
\l@disnote
7473
7474 \newcommand*\l@dlsnote[1]{%
7475 \begingroup%
7476 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
7477 \ifnumberedpar@
7478 \ifledRcol%
7479 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7480 \to\inserts@listR
7481 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
7482 \else%
7483 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dlsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7484 \to\inserts@list
7485 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
7486 \fi
```

```

7487 \fi%
7488 \ignorespaces%
7489 \endgroup%
7490 }%
7491
7492 \newcommand*{\l@drsnote}[1]{%
7493 \begingroup%
7494 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
7495 \ifnumberedpar@
7496 \ifledRcol%
7497 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@drsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7498 \to\inserts@listR
7499 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
7500 \else%
7501 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@drsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7502 \to\inserts@list
7503 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
7504 \fi
7505 \fi\ignorespaces%
7506 \endgroup%
7507 }%
7508
7509 \newcommand*{\l@dcsnote}[1]{%
7510 \begingroup%
7511 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
7512 \ifnumberedpar@
7513 \ifledRcol%
7514 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dcsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7515 \to\inserts@listR
7516 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
7517 \else%
7518 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@dcsnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7519 \to\inserts@list
7520 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
7521 \fi
7522 \fi\ignorespaces%
7523 \endgroup%
7524 }%
7525
7526 \newcommand*{\l@disnote}[1]{%
7527 \begingroup%
7528 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
7529 \ifnumberedpar@%
7530 \ifledRcol%
7531 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@disnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7532 \to\inserts@listR%
7533 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
7534 \else%
7535 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\vl@disnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7536 \to\inserts@list%

```

```

7537 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
7538 \fi%
7539 \fi\ignorespaces%
7540 \endgroup%
7541 }%
7542
7543 \newcommand*{\l@dosnote}[1]{%
7544 \begingroup%
7545 \newcommand{\content}{#1}%
7546 \ifnumberedpar%
7547 \ifledRcol%
7548 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dosnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7549 \to\inserts@listR%
7550 \global\advance\insert@countR \@ne%
7551 \else%
7552 \xright@appenditem{\noexpand\l@dosnote{\expandonce\content}}{%
7553 \to\inserts@list%
7554 \global\advance\insert@count \@ne%
7555 \fi%
7556 \fi\ignorespaces%
7557 \endgroup%
7558 }%
7559
7560 %

```

`\vl@dlsnote` Put the left/right text into boxes, but just save the moveable text. `\l@dcsnotetext`, `\vl@drsnote` `\l@dcsnotetext@l` and `\l@dcsnotetext@r` are etoolbox's lists which will store the content of sidenotes. We store the content in lists, because we need to loop later on them, in case many sidenote co-exist for the same line. That is there some special test `\vl@disnote` to do, in order to:

- Store the content of `\ledsidenote` to `\l@dcsnotetext` in any cases.
- Store the content of `\rightsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@r` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
- Store the content of `\leftsidenote` to:
  - `\l@dcsnotetext` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on left.
  - `\l@dcsnotetext@l` if `\ledsidenote` is to be put on right.

`\vl@disnote` and `\vl@dosnote` just call `\vl@dlsnote` or `\vl@drsnote`, depending of the page.

```

7561 \newcommand*{\vl@dlsnote}[1]{%
7562 \ifledRcol%
7563 \@l@dttempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
7564 \ifnum\@l@dttempcntb>\@ne%

```

```

7565     \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
7566     \fi%
7567   \else%
7568     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
7569     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
7570       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@num%
7571     \fi%
7572   \fi%
7573   \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
7574     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@l}{#1}%
7575   \else%
7576     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
7577   \fi
7578 }
7579 \newcommand*{\vl@drsnote}[1]{%
7580   \ifledRcol@%
7581     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@marginR%
7582     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
7583       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@numR%
7584     \fi%
7585   \else%
7586     \@l@tempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
7587     \ifnum\@l@tempcntb>\@ne%
7588       \advance\@l@tempcntb by\page@num%
7589     \fi%
7590   \fi%
7591   \ifodd\@l@tempcntb%
7592     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}%
7593   \else%
7594     \listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext@r}{#1}%
7595   \fi%
7596 }
7597 \newcommand*{\vl@dcsnote}[1]{\listgadd{\l@dcsnotetext}{#1}}
7598
7599 \newcommand{\vl@disnote}[1]{%
7600   \ifledRcol@%
7601     \@tempcnta=\page@numR%
7602   \else%
7603     \@tempcnta=\page@num%
7604   \fi%
7605   \ifodd\@tempcnta% ODD => right page => inner side = left side
7606     \vl@dlsnote{#1}%
7607   \else%
7608     \vl@drsnote{#1}%
7609   \fi%
7610 }%
7611
7612 \newcommand{\vl@dosnote}[1]{%
7613   \ifledRcol@%
7614     \@tempcnta=\page@numR%

```

```

7615 \else%
7616 \@tempcnta=\page@num%
7617 \fi%
7618 \ifodd\@tempcnta% ODD => right page => outer side = right side
7619 \vl@drsnote{#1}%
7620 \else%
7621 \vl@dlsnote{#1}%
7622 \fi%
7623 }%
7624
7625 %

```

`\setl@dlp@rbox` `\setl@dlprbox{<lednums>}{<tag>}{<text>}` puts `<text>` into the `\l@dlp@rbox` box. And similarly for the right side box. It is these boxes that finally get displayed in the margins.

```

7626 \newcommand*\setl@dlp@rbox}[1]{%
7627 \begingroup%
7628 \parindent\z@\hsize=\ledlsnotewidth%
7629 \ledlsnotefontsetup%We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect
the ragging
7630 \global\setbox\l@dlp@rbox%
7631 \ifleftnoteup%
7632 =\vbox to\z@{\{\ledlsnotefontsetup\vss #1}\}%We put \
ledlsnotefontsetup inside footnote because required for color command. Note
the {} to keep setting local.
7633 \else%
7634 =\vbox to 0.70\baselineskip{\{\ledlsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}\}%
7635 \fi%
7636 \endgroup%
7637 }
7638
7639 \newcommand*\setl@drp@rbox}[1]{%
7640 \begingroup%
7641 \parindent\z@\hsize=\ledrsnotewidth%
7642 \ledrsnotefontsetup%We kept it outside of the vbox, because can affect
the ragging
7643 \global\setbox\l@drp@rbox%
7644 \ifrightrightnoteup%
7645 =\vbox to\z@{\{\ledrsnotefontsetup\vss#1}\}%We put \ledrsnotefontsetup
inside footnote because required for color command. Note the {} to keep
setting local.
7646 \else%
7647 =\vbox to0.7\baselineskip{\{\ledrsnotefontsetup\strut#1\vss}\}%
7648 \fi%
7649 \endgroup%
7650 }%
7651 \newif\ifleftnoteup
7652 \leftnoteuptrue
7653 %

```

`\@sidenotesep` This macro is used to separate sidenotes of the same line.

```

7654 \newcommand{\setsidenotesep}[1]{\gdef\@sidenotesep{#1}}
7655 \newcommand{\@sidenotesep}{, }
7656 %

```

`\affixside@note` This macro puts any moveable sidenote text into the left or right sidenote box, depending on which margin it is meant to go in. It's a very much stripped down version of `\affixline@num`.

Before do it, we concatenate all moveable sidenotes of the line, using `\@sidenotesep` as separator. It is the result that we put on the sidenote.

```

7657 \newcommand*{\affixside@note}{%
7658   \prepare@edindex@for@note{\the\page@num|\the\line@num|\the\subline@num|\the\page@num|\the\line@num|\the\subline@num}%
7659   \def\sidenotecontent@{}%
7660   \numgdef\itemcount@{0}%
7661   \def\do##1{%
7662     \ifnumequal{\itemcount@}{0}%
7663     {%
7664       \appto\sidenotecontent@{##1}}% Not print not separator before
the 1st note
7665       {\appto\sidenotecontent@{\@sidenotesep ##1}}%
7666     }%
7667     \numgdef\itemcount@{\itemcount@+\@ne}%
7668   }%
7669   \dolistloop{\l@dcnotesetext}%
7670   \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManySidenotes}{}%
7671 %

```

And we do the same for left and right notes (not movable).

```

7672 \gdef\@templ@d{%
7673 \gdef\@templ@n{\l@dcnotesetext\l@dcnotesetext@l\l@dcnotesetext@r}%
7674 \ifx\@templ@d\@templ@n \else%
7675   \if@twocolumn%
7676     \if@firstcolumn%
7677       \setl@dlp@rbox{##1}{\sidenotecontent@}%
7678     \else%
7679       \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
7680     \fi%
7681   \else%
7682     \l@dttempcntb=\sidenote@margin%
7683     \ifnum\l@dttempcntb>\@ne%
7684       \advance\l@dttempcntb by\page@num%
7685     \fi%
7686     \ifodd\l@dttempcntb%
7687       \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
7688     \gdef\sidenotecontent@{}%
7689     \numgdef\itemcount@{0}%
7690     \dolistloop{\l@dcnotesetext@l}%

```



```

7691 \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyLeftnotes}{}%
7692 \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
7693 \else%
7694 \setl@dlp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
7695 \gdef\sidenotecontent@{%
7696 \numgdef{\itemcount@}{0}%
7697 \dolistloop{\l@dcstotetext@r}%
7698 \ifnumgreater{\itemcount@}{1}{\led@err@ManyRightnotes}{}%
7699 \setl@drp@rbox{\sidenotecontent@}%
7700 \fi%
7701 \fi%
7702 \fi%
7703 \advance\@edindex@for@note@m@one%
7704 }
7705 %

```

## XXVII Minipages and such

We can put footnotes into minipages. The preparatory code has been set up earlier, all that remains is to ensure that it is available inside a minipage box. This requires some alteration to the kernel code, specifically the `\@iiiminipage` and `\endminipage` macros. We will arrange this so that additional series can be easily added.

`\l@dfetbeginmini` These will be the hooks in `\@iiiminipage` and `\endminipage`.  
`\l@dfetendmini` They can be extended to handle other things if necessary.

```

7706 \ifnolegroup@{\else%
7707 \newcommand*{\l@dfetbeginmini}{\@ledgrouptrue\l@dedbeginmini\l@dfambeginmini}
7708 \newcommand*{\l@dfetendmini}{%
7709 \IfStrEq{critical-familiar}{\@mpfnpos}%
7710 {\l@dedendmini\l@dfamendmini}%
7711 {%
7712 \IfStrEq{familiar-critical}{\@mpfnpos}%
7713 {\l@dfamendmini\l@dedendmini}%
7714 {\do@feet@custom@order{mp@}{\@mpfnpos}}%
7715 }%
7716 }%
7717 %

```

`\l@dedbeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of critical footnotes in a minipage environment.

```

7718 \l@dedendmini
7719 \mp@append@Xnotes
7720 \newcommand*{\l@dedbeginmini}{%
7721 \unless\ifnocritical@%
7722 \def\do##1{%
7723 \csletcs{v##1footnote}{mpv##1footnote}%
7724 }%
7725 \dolistloop{\@series}%
7726 \fi%

```

```

7725 }
7726 \newcommand*{\l@dedendmini}{%
7727   \unless\ifnocritical@%
7728     \ifl@dpairing%
7729       \ifledRcol%
7730         \flush@notesR%
7731       \else%
7732         \flush@notes%
7733       \fi%
7734     \fi
7735     \def\do##1{%
7736       \mp@append@Xnotes{##1}%
7737     }%
7738     \dolistloop{\@series}%
7739   \fi%
7740 }%
7741 \newcommand{\mp@append@Xnotes}[1]{%
7742   \ifvoid\csuse{mp#1footins}\else%
7743     \ifl@dpairing%
7744       \ifparledgroup%
7745         \ifledRcol%
7746           \dingdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+\skip
\@nameuse{mp#1footins}}%
7747         \else%
7748           \dingdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+
skip\@nameuse{mp#1footins}}%
7749         \fi%
7750       \fi%
7751     \fi%
7752     \ifcsstring{series@display#1}{paragraph}{%
7753       \setbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}=\vbox{%
7754         \csuse{Xnotefontsize@#1}%
7755         \ifcsdef{Xhsize}\csuse{series@display#1}@#1{%
7756           \hsize\csuse{Xhsize}\csuse{series@display#1}@#1}%
7757         }{%
7758           \noindent\csuse{Xtxtbeforenotes@#1}%
7759           \unvbox\@nameuse{mp#1footins}%
7760           \@parboxrestore%
7761         }%
7762       }%
7763       \csuse{mp#1footgroup}{#1}%
7764     \fi%
7765   }%
7766   %

```

`\l@dfambeginmini` These handle the initiation and closure of familiar footnotes in a minipage environment.

`\l@dfamendmini`

`\mp@append@notesX`

```

7767 \newcommand*{\l@dfambeginmini}{%
7768   \unless\ifnofamiliar@%
7769     \def\do##1{\csletcs{vfootnote##1}{mpvfootnote##1}}%

```

```

7770 \dolistloop{\@series}%
7771 \fi%
7772 }%
7773
7774 \newcommand*\l@dfamendmini}{%
7775 \unless\ifnofamiliar%
7776 \def\do##1{%
7777 \mp@append@notesX{##1}%
7778 }%
7779 \dolistloop{\@series}%
7780 \fi%
7781 }%
7782 \newcommand{\mp@append@notesX}[1]{%
7783 \ifvoid\csuse{mpfootins#1}\else%
7784 \ifcsstring{series@displayX#1}{paragraph}{}%
7785 \setbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}=\vbox{%
7786 \csuse{notefontsizeX@#1}%
7787 \ifcsdef{hsize\csuse{series@display#1}X@#1}{%
7788 \hsize\csuse{hsize\csuse{series@display#1}X@#1}%
7789 }{}%
7790 \noindent\csuse{txtbeforenotesX@#1}%
7791 \unvbox\@nameuse{mpfootins#1}%
7792 \@parboxrestore%
7793 }%
7794 }%
7795 \csuse{mpfootgroup#1}{#1}%
7796 \fi%
7797 }%
7798 %

```

`\@iiiminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\@iiiminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

7799 \patchcmd%
7800 {\@iiiminipage}%
7801 {\let\@footnotetext\mpfootnotetext}%
7802 {\let\@footnotetext\mpfootnotetext\l@dfetbeginmini}%
7803 {}%
7804 {\led@error@fail@patch@\@iiiminipage}%
7805 %

```

`\endminipage` This is our extended form of the kernel `\endminipage` defined in `ltboxes.dtx`.

```

7806 \patchcmd%
7807 {\endminipage}%
7808 {\footnoterule}%
7809 {\footnoterule\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}%
7810 {}%
7811 {\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}
7812
7813 \patchcmd%

```

```

7814 {\endminipage}%
7815 {\@minipagefalse}%
7816 {\l@dfeetendmini\@minipagefalse}%
7817 {}%
7818 {\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage}
7819
7820 %

```

`\l@dunboxmpfoot` `\@ldunboxmpfoot` insert normal footnotes for ledgroup.  
`\advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes`

```

7821 \newcommand*{\l@dunboxmpfoot}{%
7822   \vskip\skip\@mpfootins
7823   \normalcolor
7824   \footnoterule
7825   \l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes
7826   \unvbox\@mpfootins%
7827 }
7828 %

```

When using parallel ledgroup, we need to store the vertical space added before footnote, in order to compensate them between left and right pages.

```

7829 \newcommand{\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes}{%
7830   \ifparledgroup
7831     \ifl@dpairing
7832       \ifledRcol
7833         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesR}{\parledgroup@beforenotesR+
skip\@mpfootins}
7834       \else
7835         \dimgdef{\parledgroup@beforenotesL}{\parledgroup@beforenotesL+
skip\@mpfootins}
7836       \fi
7837     \fi
7838   \fi
7839 }
7840 %

```

`ledgroup` This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, fixed width minipage.

```

7841 \newenvironment{ledgroup}{%
7842   \resetprevpage@num%
7843   \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@%
7844   \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
7845   \l@dfeetbeginmini%
7846 }{%
7847   \par
7848   \unskip
7849

```

```

7850 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else
7851   \l@dunboxmpfoot
7852 \fi
7853 \l@dfeetendmini%
7854 \@ledgroupfalse%
7855 }
7856
7857
7858 %

```

```

\ledgroupsize \begin{ledgroupsize}[\langle pos \rangle]{\langle width \rangle}

```

This environment puts footnotes at the end, even if that happens to be in the middle of a page, or crossing a page boundary. It is a sort of unboxed, variable  $\langle width \rangle$  minipage. The optional  $\langle pos \rangle$  controls the sideways position of numbered text.

```

7859 \newenvironment{ledgroupsize}[2][1]{%
7860 %

```

Set the various text measures.

```

7861 \hspace #2\relax
7862 %

```

Initialize fills for centering.

```

7863 \let\ledllfill\hfil
7864 \let\ledrlfill\hfil
7865 \def\@tempa{#1}\def\@tempb{1}%
7866 %

```

Left adjusted numbered lines

```

7867 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7868 \let\ledllfill\relax
7869 \else
7870 \def\@tempb{r}%
7871 \ifx\@tempa\@tempb
7872 %

```

Right adjusted numbered lines

```

7873 \let\ledrlfill\relax
7874 \fi
7875 \fi
7876 %

```

Set up the footnoting.

```

7877 \def\@mpfn{mpfootnote}\def\thempfn{\thempfootnote}\c@mpfootnote\z@
7878 \let\@footnotetext\@mpfootnotetext
7879 \l@dfeetbeginmini%
7880 }{%
7881 \par
7882 \unskip
7883 \ifvoid\@mpfootins\else

```

```

7884 \l@dunboxmpfoot
7885 \fi
7886 \l@dfeetendmini%
7887 }
7888
7889 %

```

Close the \ifnoledgroup@\else.

```

7890 \fi%
7891 %

```

`\ifledgroupnotesL@` These boolean tests check if we are in the notes of a ledgroup. If we are, we do not  
`\ifledgroupnotesR@` number the lines. It could be useful for parallel ledgroup of `reledpar`.

```

7892 \newif\ifledgroupnotesL@
7893 \newif\ifledgroupnotesR@
7894 %

```

## XXVIII Indexing

Here is some code for indexing using page and line numbers.

### XXVIII.1 Looking on package order

First, ensure that `imakeidx` or `indextools` is loaded *before* `eledmac`.

```

7895 \AtBeginDocument{%
7896 \unless\ifl@imakeidx%
7897 \@ifpackageloaded{imakeidx}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{imakeidx}}{}
7898 %
7899 \fi%
7900 \unless\ifl@indextools%
7901 \@ifpackageloaded{indextools}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{indextools}}{}%
7902 \fi%
7903 \unless\ifl@footmisc%
7904 \@ifpackageloaded{footmisc}{\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac{footmisc}}{}
7905 %
7906 \fi%
7907 }
7908 %

```

### XXVIII.2 Auxiliary macros for `\edindex`

`\pagelinesep` In order to get a correct line number we have to use the label/ref mechanism. These  
`\edindexlab` macros are for that.  
`\c@labidx`

```

7907 \newcommand{\pagelinesep}{-}
7908 \newcommand{\edindexlab}{$&}
7909 \newcounter{labidx}
7910 \setcounter{labidx}{0}
7911
7912 %

```

`\doedindexlabel` This macro sets an `\edlabel`.

```

7913 \newcommand{\doedindexlabel}{%
7914   \stepcounter{labidx}%
7915   \edlabel{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
7916 }
7917
7918 %

```

`\thepageline` This macro makes up the page/line number combo from the label/ref. The associated counter is never directly used, but it is required in order to not have any error message with `\edgls`.

```

7919 \newcounter{pageline}%
7920 \renewcommand{\thepageline}{%
7921   \thepage%
7922   \pagelinesep%
7923   \xlineref{\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
7924 }
7925 %

```

`\thestartpageline` These macros make up the page/line start/end number when the `\edindex` command is called in critical notes.

`\theendpageline`

```

7926 \newcommand{\thestartpageline}{%
7927   \l@dparsedstartpage%
7928   \pagelinesep%
7929   \l@dparsedstartline%
7930 }
7931 \newcommand{\theendpageline}{%
7932   \l@dparsedendpage%
7933   \pagelinesep%
7934   \l@dparsedendline%
7935 }
7936 %

```

### XXVIII.3 Code specific to `\edindex` in critical footnotes

`\@edindex@fornote@` This counter is incremented at the beginning of each note (either a footnote or a side-note), and decremented at the end of each note. If its value is greater than 0, that means we are inside a note.

```

7937 \newcount\@edindex@fornote@
7938 %

```

**\prepare@edindex@fornote** This macro is called at the beginning of each critical note. It switches some parameters, to allow index referring to this note, with reference to page and line number. It also defines `\@ledinnote@command` which will be printed as an encapsulating command after the |.

```

7939 \newcommand{\prepare@edindex@fornote}[1]{%
7940     \l@dp@rsefootspec#1|}%
7941     \advance\@edindex@fornote@\@ne%
7942 }
7943 %

```

**\get@edindex@ledinnote@command** The `\get@edindex@ledinnote@command` macro defines a `\@ledinnote@command` command which is added as an attribute (text inserted after |) of the next index entry.

Consequently, we write the definition of the location reference attribute in the .xdy file.

```

7944 \newcommand{\get@edindex@ledinnote@command}{%
7945     \ifxindy%
7946         \gdef\@ledinnote@command{%
7947             ledinnote\thelabidx%
7948         }%
7949         \ifxindyhyperref%
7950             \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%
7951                 (define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx"))^^J
7952                 \space\space(markup-locref^^J
7953                 \eledmacmarkuplocrefdepth^^J
7954                 :open "\string\ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command
7955                 }\@currentseries}{\@currentnotetype}"^^J
7956                 :close "}"^^J
7957                 :attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"^^J
7958             )
7959         }%
7960     \else%
7961         \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%
7962             (define-attributes ("ledinnote\thelabidx"))^^J
7963             \space\space(markup-locref^^J
7964             \eledmacmarkuplocrefdepth^^J
7965             :open "\string\ledinnote{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\
7966             \@currentnotetype}"^^J
7967             :close "}"^^J
7968             :attr "ledinnote\thelabidx"^^J
7969         )
7970     }%
7971 \fi%
7972 %

```

If we do not use xindy option, `\@ledinnote@command` will produce something like `ledinnote{formattingcommand}`.



```

7971 \else%
7972 \gdef\@ledinnote@command{%
7973 \ledinnote[\edindexlab\thelabidx]{\@index@command}{\@currentseries}{\
@currentnotetype}%
7974 }%
7975 \fi%
7976 }
7977 %

```

## XXVIII.4 Analysis of command in indexed text

`\get@index@command` This macro is used to analyze if a text to be indexed has a command after a |.

```

7978 \def\get@index@command#1|#2+{%
7979 \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
7980 \gdef\@index@command{#2}%
7981 \xdef\@index@parenthesis{}%
7982 \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{(}{%
7983 \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command@]%
7984 \global\let\@index@command\@index@command@%
7985 \xdef\@index@parenthesis{(%}%
7986 }{}}%
7987 \IfBeginWith{\@index@command}{)}{%
7988 \StrGobbleLeft{\@index@command}{1}[\@index@command@]%
7989 \global\let\@index@command\@index@command@%
7990 \xdef\@index@parenthesis{)}%
7991 }{}}%
7992 }
7993 %

```

## XXVIII.5 Code for the formatted index

`\ledinnote` These macros are used to specify that an index reference points to a note. Arguments  
`\ledinnotemark` of `\ledinnote` are:

- #1 (optional): the label for the hyperlink;
- #2: command applied to the number;
- #3: the note series;
- #4: the type of note (critical/familiar).
- #5: the number itself.

```

7994 \newcommandx{\ledinnote}[5][1,usedefault]{%
7995 \IfStrEq{#4}{critical}{%
7996 \def\tmp{Xinnotemark}%
7997 }{

```

```

7998 \def\tmp{innotemarkX}%
7999 }%
8000 \ifboolexpr{%
8001   test{\ifdefequal{\iftrue}{\ifHy@hyperindex}}%
8002   or%
8003   bool {xindyhyperref@}%
8004   }%
8005   {%
8006     \csuse{#2}{\hyperlink{#1}{\csuse{\tmp @#3}{#5}}}%
8007   }%
8008   {%
8009     \csuse{#2}{\csuse{\tmp @#3}{#5}}%
8010   }%
8011 }%
8012 \newcommand{\ledinnotemark}[1]{#1\emph{n}}%
8013 %

```

## XXVIII.6 Main code

Eledmac and ledmac were using the specific indexing tools of the memoir in order to allow multiple index. However, elledmac used imakeidx or indextools tools when one these two package was loaded. This system forced to maintained a double code, which was not very useful. Since reledmac, we use only the imakeidx or indextools tools.

The memoir class provides more flexible indexing than the standard classes. We need different code if the memoir class is being used, except if imakeidx or indextools is used.

```

\edindex Write the index information to the idx file.
\@wredindex
\dummy@edindex
8014 \newcommandx{\@wredindex}[2][1=\expandonce\jobname,usedefault]{%#1 = the
index name, #2 = the text
8015 \begingroup%
8016 \let\emph\@firstofone%
8017 \let\textbf\@firstofone%
8018 \let\textit\@firstofone%
8019 \let\textmd\@firstofone%
8020 \let\textnormal\@firstofone%
8021 \let\textrm\@firstofone%
8022 \let\textsc\@firstofone%
8023 \let\textsf\@firstofone%
8024 \let\textsl\@firstofone%
8025 \let\texttt\@firstofone%
8026 \let\textup\@firstofone%
8027 \xdef\@tmp{#2}%To be used in IfSubStr instead of #2 directly. Avoid
some expansion bugs (for example with \edindex{textsc{something}})
8028 \endgroup%
8029 \ifl@imakeidx%
8030 \ifnum\@edindex@fornote@>\z@%

```

```

8031 \IfSubStr[1]{\@tmp}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}
8032 %
8033 \get@edindex@ledinnote@command%
8034 \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|(\@ledinnote@command
}{\thestartpageline}%
8035 \expandafter\imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt|)\@ledinnote@command
}{\theendpageline}%
8036 \else%
8037 \get@edindex@hyperref{#2}%
8038 \imki@wrindexentry{#1}{\@index@txt\@edindex@hyperref}{\thepageline}%
8039 \fi%
8040 \else%
8041 \ifnum\@edindex@fornote@>\z@%
8042 \IfSubStr[1]{\@tmp}{|}{\get@index@command#2+}{\get@index@command#2|+}
8043 %
8044 \get@edindex@ledinnote@command%
8045 \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{}%
8046 {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|(\@ledinnote@command}{\thestartpageline}
}{%
8047 \expandafter\protected@write\@indexfile{}%
8048 {\string\indexentry{\@index@txt|)\@ledinnote@command}{\theendpageline}
}{%
8049 \else%
8050 \protected@write\@indexfile{}%
8051 {\string\indexentry{#2}{\thepageline}
}{%
8052 \fi%
8053 \fi%
8054 \endgroup
8055 \@esphack%
8056 }
8057 %
8058

```

Need to add the definition of `\edindex` to `\makeindex`, and initialise `\edindex` to do nothing.

```

8059 \pretocmd{\makeindex}{%
8060 \def\edindex{%
8061 \ifboolexpr{bool{numbering} or bool{numberingR} or bool{
1@dprintingpages} or bool{1@dprintingcolumns}}{%
8062 \@bsphack%
8063 \doedindexlabel%
8064 \begingroup%
8065 \@sanitize%
8066 \@wredindex%
8067 }%
8068 {%
8069 \led@warn@edinde@outsidenumbering%
8070 \index%
8071 }%
8072 }%

```

```

8073 }%
8074 {}%
8075 {\led@error@fail@patch@makeindex}%
8076 \newcommand{\edindex}[1]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
8077 \newcommandx{\dummy@edindex}[2][1=\expandonce\jobname,usedefault]{}%
8078 \newcommand{\disable@edindex}{\let\old@edindex\edindex\let\edindex\
dummy@edindex}%
8079 \newcommand{\restore@edindex}{\let\edindex\old@edindex}%
8080 %

```

## XXVIII.7 Hyperlink

**\hyperlinkformat** \hyperlinkformat command is to be used to have both a internal hyperlink and a format, when indexing.

```

8081 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformat}[3]{%
8082   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8083   {\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}%
8084   {\csuse{#1}{\hyperlink{#2}{#3}}}%
8085 }%
8086 %

```

**\hyperlinkR** \hyperlinkR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink and \ledRflag, when indexing.

```

8087 \newcommand{\hyperlinkR}[2]{%
8088   \hyperlink{#1}{#2\@Rlineflag}%
8089 }%
8090 %
8091 %

```

**\hyperlinkformatR** \hyperlinkformatR command is to be used to create a internal hyperlink, a format and a \@Rlineflag, when indexing.

```

8092 \newcommand{\hyperlinkformatR}[3]{%
8093   \hyperlinkformat{#1}{#2}{#3\@Rlineflag}%
8094 }%
8095 %
8096 %

```

**\get@edindex@hyperref** \get@edindex@hyperref is to be used to define the \@edindex@hyperref macro, which, in index, links to the point where the index was called (with hyperref).

```

8097 \newcommand{\get@edindex@hyperref}[1]{%
8098 %

```

We have to disable temporary spaces to work through a xstring bug (or feature?)

```

8099   \edef\temp@{%
8100   \catcode`\ =9 %space need for catcode

```

```

8101 \detokenize{#1}%For active character in unicode
8102 \catcode`\ =10 % space need for catcode
8103 }%
8104 %

```

Now, we define `\@edindex@hyperref` if the hyperindex of `hyperref` is enabled.

```

8105 \ifdefequal{\iftrue}{\ifHy@hyperindex}{%
8106   \IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}%
8107   {\get@index@command#1+%
8108     \ifledRcol%
8109     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
8110       hyperlinkformatR{\@index@command}%
8111       {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
8112   \else%
8113     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@index@parenthesis %space kept
8114       hyperlinkformat{\@index@command}%
8115       {\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
8116   \fi%
8117 }%
8118 {\get@index@command#1|+%
8119   \ifledRcol%
8120   \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlinkR{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
8121   \else%
8122   \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\hyperlink{\edindexlab\thelabidx}}%
8123   \fi%
8124 }%
8125 }%
8126 %

8127 % If we use both xindy and hyperref, first get the \protect\cs{
index@command} command.
8128 % Then define \protect\cs{@edindex@hyperref} in the form \verb+eledmacXXX+
8129 % \begin{macrocode}
8130 {\ifxindyhyperref%
8131   \IfSubStr{\temp@}{|}%
8132   {\get@index@command#1+%
8133     {\get@index@command#1|+%
8134     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\eledmac\thelabidx}%
8135   }%

```

If we start a reference range by a opening parenthesis, store the `\thelabidx` for the current `\edindex`, then define `\@edindex@hyperref` in the form `| (eledmac\thelabidx`.

```

8136   \IfStrEq{\@index@parenthesis}{(%}%
8137   {%
8138     \csxdef{xindyparenthesis@{\@index@txt}{\thelabidx}%
8139     \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{| (eledmac\thelabidx}%
8140   }%
8141   {}%
8142 %

```

This `\thelabidx` will be called back at the closing parenthesis, to have the same number in `\@edindex@hyperref` command that we had at the opening parenthesis. `\@edindex@hyperref` start by a closing parenthesis, then followed by `eledmacXXX` where `XXX` is the `\thelabidx` of the opening `\edindex`.

```

8143 \IfStrEq{\@index@parenthesis}{})}%
8144 {%
8145 \xdef\@edindex@hyperref{|\@edmac\csuse{xindy@parenthesis@
8146 \@index@txt}}}%
8147 \global\csundef{xindy@parenthesis@\@index@txt}}%
8147 }%
8148 %

```

Write in the `.xdy` file the attributes of the location.

```

8149 {%
8150 \immediate\write\eledmac@xindy@out{%
8151 (define-attributes ("eledmac\thelabidx"))^^J
8152 \space\space(markup-locref^^J
8153 \eledmacmarkuplocdepth^^J
8154 :open "\string\hyperlink%
8155 \ifledRcol R\fi%
8156 {\edindexlab\thelabidx}%
8157 {\ifdefempty{\@index@command}%
8158 {}%
8159 {\@backslashchar\@index@command}%
8160 {"^^J
8161 :close "}}^^J
8162 :attr "eledmac\thelabidx"^^J
8163 )
8164 }%
8165 }%
8166 %

```

And now, in any other case.

```

8167 \else%
8168 \gdef\@index@txt{#1}%
8169 \gdef\@edindex@hyperref{}%
8170 \fi%
8171 }%
8172 }
8173 %

```

## XXVIII.8 ‘innote’ and ‘notenumber’ option of `indextols` package

`\led@set@index@fornote` The `\led@set@index@fornote` is called when a familiar footnote is inserted — and not when it is read — and changes the `\index` command depending of the option of the `indextools` package. Its only argument is the note series.

```

8174 \newcommand{\led@set@index@fornote}[1]{%
8175   \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
8176     {\let\index\nindex}%
8177   }%
8178   \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
8179     {%
8180       \renewcommand{\index}[2][\indtl@jobname]{%
8181         \orig@@index[##1]{%
8182           ##2|innotenumber{\this@footnoteX@reading}%
8183         }%
8184       }%
8185     }%
8186   }%
8187 }%
8188 %

```

`\led@reinit@index@fornote` The `\led@reinit@index@fornote` just reset the default value of `\index`.

```

8189 \newcommand{\led@reinit@index@fornote}{%
8190   \ifbool{indtl@innote}%
8191     {\let\index\orig@@index}%
8192   }%
8193   \ifbool{indtl@notenumber}%
8194     {\let\index\orig@@index}%
8195   }%
8196 }%
8197 %

```

## XXIX Glossaries

Here, we define the `\gls`-like commands prefixed by `ed`, only if the package `glossaries` is loaded.

```

8198 \AtBeginDocument{%
8199   \@ifpackageloaded{glossaries}{%
8200     %

```

First those which arguments are `[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]`.

```

8201   \gdef\edglsomo{}%
8202   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{gls}%
8203   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Gls}%
8204   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLS}%
8205   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{glspl}%
8206   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glspl}%
8207   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSpl}%
8208   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{glsstext}%
8209   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLstext}%
8210   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLStext}%
8211   \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsfirst}%

```

```

8212 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSfirst}%
8213 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsplural}%
8214 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsplural}%
8215 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSplural}%
8216 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsfirstplural}%
8217 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsfirstplural}%
8218 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSfirstplural}%
8219 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsname}%
8220 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsname}%
8221 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSname}%
8222 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsymbol}%
8223 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsymbol}%
8224 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSsymbol}%
8225 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsdesc}%
8226 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsdesc}%
8227 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSdesc}%
8228 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseri}%
8229 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseri}%
8230 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuseri}%
8231 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuserii}%
8232 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuserii}%
8233 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuserii}%
8234 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseriii}%
8235 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseriii}%
8236 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuseriii}%
8237 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseriv}%
8238 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuseriv}%
8239 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuseriv}%
8240 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuserv}%
8241 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuserv}%
8242 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuserv}%
8243 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuservi}%
8244 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{Glsuservi}%
8245 \listgadd{\edglsomo}{GLSuservi}%
8246 \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
8247 \expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname[3][1,3,
usedefault]{%
8248 \doedindexlabel%
8249 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8250 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}{}}%
8251 }{}%
8252 \csname#1\endcsname[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}[##3]%
8253 }%
8254 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommand\csname ed
#1\endcsname*[3][1,3,usedefault]{%
8255 \doedindexlabel%
8256 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8257 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}{}}%
8258 }{}%
8259 \csname#1\endcsname*[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}[##3]%

```



```

8260 }%
8261 }%
8262 \dolistloop{\edglsomo}%
8263 %

```

Then those which arguments are [*options*]{*label*}{*link text*}.

```

8264 \gdef\edglsomm{%
8265 \listgadd\edglsomm{glsdisp}%
8266 \listgadd\edglsomm{glslink}%
8267 \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
8268 \expandafter\DeclareRobustCommandx\csname ed#1\endcsname[3][1,
usedefault]{%
8269 \doedindexlabel%
8270 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8271 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}}}%
8272 }{}%
8273 \csname#1\endcsname[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}{##3}%
8274 }%
8275 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommandx\csname ed
#1\endcsname*[3][1,usedefault]{%
8276 \doedindexlabel%
8277 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8278 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}}}%
8279 }{}%
8280 \csname#1\endcsname*[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}{##3}%
8281 }%
8282 }%
8283 \dolistloop{\edglsomm}%
8284 %

```

Then those which arguments are [*options*]{*label*}.

```

8285 \gdef\edglsom{%
8286 \listgadd\edglsom{glsadd}%
8287 \renewcommand{\do}[1]{%
8288 \expandafter\DeclareRobustCommandx\csname ed#1\endcsname[2][1,
usedefault]{%
8289 \doedindexlabel%
8290 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8291 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}}}%
8292 }{}%
8293 \csname#1\endcsname[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}%
8294 }%
8295 \expandafter\WithSuffix\expandafter\DeclareRobustCommandx\csname ed
#1\endcsname*[2][1,usedefault]{%
8296 \doedindexlabel%
8297 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8298 \Hy@raisedlink@left{\hypertarget{pageline.\thepageline}}}%
8299 }{}%
8300 \csname#1\endcsname*[counter=pageline,##1]{##2}%
8301 }%

```

```

8302 }%
8303 \dolistloop{\edglsom}%
8304 %

```

`\l@noexpands@edgl` is a macro to avoid expanding glossaries macros in `\edtext` first argument. It is called by `\no@expands`. Its definition is made dynamically.

```

\l@noexpands@edgl 8305 \def\l@noexpands@edgl{%
8306 \renewcommand\do[1]{%
8307 \xappto\l@noexpands@edgl{%
8308 \noexpand\RenewDocumentCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname{omos}{}%
8309 }%
8310 }%
8311 \dolistloop{\edglsomo}%
8312 \renewcommand\do[1]{%
8313 \xappto\l@noexpands@edgl{%
8314 \noexpand\RenewDocumentCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname{omms}{}%
8315 }%
8316 }%
8317 \dolistloop{\edglsomm}%
8318 \renewcommand\do[1]{%
8319 \xappto\l@noexpands@edgl{%
8320 \noexpand\RenewDocumentCommand\csname ed#1\endcsname{oms}{}%
8321 }%
8322 }%
8323 \dolistloop{\edglsom}%
8324 }{\let\l@noexpands@edgl\relax}%
8325 }%
8326 %

```

## XXX Verse

The original code is principally Wayne Sullivan's code from `edstanza`. However, the code has been many time modified by Maïeul Rouquette in order to obtain new features and improved compatibility with `reledpar`.

### XXX.1 Hanging symbol management

`\@hangingsymbol` The macro `\@hangingsymbol` is used to insert a symbol on each hanging of verses. It is set by user level macro `\sethangingsymbol`.  
`\sethangingsymbol`  
`\ifinstanza` For example, in French typography, the symbol is '['. We obtain it by means of the following code:

```
\sethangingsymbol{[,}
```

The `\ifinstanza` boolean is used to ensure that we are in a stanza part.

```

8327 \def\@hangingsymbol{%
8328 \newcommand*\sethangingsymbol[1]{%

```

```

8329 \gdef\@hangingsymbol{#1}%
8330 }%
8331 \newif\ifinstanza
8332 %

```

`\inserthangingsymbol` The boolean `\ifinserthangingsymbol` is set to TRUE when `\@lock` is greater than 1, i.e. when we are not in the first line of a verse. The switch of `\ifinserthangingsymbol` is made in `\do@line` before the printing of line but after the line number calculation.

```

8333 \newif\ifinserthangingsymbol
8334 \newcommand{\inserthangingsymbol}{%
8335 \ifinserthangingsymbol%
8336 \ifinstanza%
8337 \@hangingsymbol%
8338 \fi%
8339 \fi%
8340 }
8341 %

```

## XXX.2 Using & character

`\ampersand` Within a stanza the `\&` macro is going to be usurped. We need an alias in case an `&` needs to be typeset in a stanza. Define it rather than letting it in case some other package has already defined it.

```

8342 \newcommand*{\ampersand}{\char`\&}
8343
8344 %

```

## XXX.3 Code category setting

`\stanza@count` Before we can define the main macros we need to save and reset some category codes.  
`\stanzaindentbase` To save the current values we use `\next` and `\body` from the `\loop` macro.

```

8345 \chardef\body=\catcode`\@
8346 \catcode`\@=11
8347 \chardef\next=\catcode`\&
8348 \catcode`\&=\active
8349
8350 %

```

## XXX.4 Stanza count and indent

A count register is allocated for counting lines in a stanza; also allocated is a dimension register which is used to specify the base value for line indentation; all stanza indentations are multiples of this value. The default value of `\stanzaindentbase` is 20pt.

```

8351 \newcount\stanza@count
8352 \newlength{\stanzaindentbase}
8353 \setlength{\stanzaindentbase}{20pt}
8354
8355 %

```

`\strip@szacnt` The indentations of stanza lines are non-negative integer multiples of the unit called `\stanzaindentbase`. To make it easier for the user to specify these numbers, some list macros are defined. These take numerical values in a list separated by commas and assign the values to special control sequences using `\mathchardef`. Though this does limit the range from 0 to 32767, it should suffice for most applications, including *penalties*, which will be discussed below.

```

8356 \def\strip@szacnt#1,#2|{\def\@tempb{#1}\def\@tempa{#2|}}
8357 \newcommand*\setstanzavalues[2]{\def\@tempa{#2,,|}%
8358   \stanza@count\z@
8359   \def\next{\expandafter\strip@szacnt\@tempa
8360     \ifx\@tempb\empty\let\next\relax\else
8361       \expandafter\mathchardef\csname #1@\number\stanza@count
8362       \@endcsname\@tempb\relax
8363       \advance\stanza@count\@ne\fi\next}%
8364   \next}
8365
8366 %

```

`\setstanzaindents` In the original edmac, `\setstanzavalues{sza}{\langle...⟩}` had to be called to set the indents, and similarly `\setstanzavalues{szp}{\langle...⟩}` to set the penalties. `\setstanzaindents` and `\setstanzapenalties` macros are a convenience to give the user one less thing to worry about (misspelling the first argument).

```

8367 \newcommand*\setstanzaindents[1]{\setstanzavalues{sza}{#1}}
8368 \newcommand*\setstanzapenalties[1]{\setstanzavalues{szp}{#1}}
8369 %
8370 %

```

`\managestanza@modulo` Since the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter can be used when the indentation is repeated every  $n$  verses.

The `startstanzaindentrepetition` counter tells in which line of verse the repetition of indent starts.

The `\managestanza@modulo` macro modifies the counter `stanza@modulo`. The command adds 1 to `stanza@modulo`, but if `stanza@modulo` is equal to the `stanzaindentrepetition` counter, the command restarts it.

```

8371 \newcounter{stanzaindentrepetition}
8372 \newcounter{startstanzaindentrepetition}%
8373 \setcounter{startstanzaindentrepetition}{1}%
8374 \newcount\stanza@modulo
8375
8376 \newcommand*\managestanza@modulo[0]{%

```

```

8377 \advance\stanza@modulo\@ne%
8378 \ifnum\stanza@modulo>\value{stanzaindentrepetition}%
8379 \stanza@modulo\@ne%
8380 \fi%
8381 }
8382 %

```

**\stanzaindent** The macro `\stanzaindent`, when called at the beginning of a verse, changes the indentation normally defined for this verse by `\setstanzaindent`. The starred version **\stanzaindent\*** skips the current verse for the repetition of stanza indent.

```

8383 \newcommand{\stanzaindent}[1]{%
8384 \hspace{\dimexpr#1\stanzaindentbase-\parindent\relax}%
8385 \ignorespaces%
8386 }%
8387 \WithSuffix\newcommand\stanzaindent*[1]{%
8388 \stanzaindent{#1}%
8389 \global\advance\stanza@modulo-\@ne%
8390 \ifnum\stanza@modulo=0%
8391 \global\stanza@modulo=\value{stanzaindentrepetition}%
8392 \fi%
8393 \ignorespaces%
8394 }%
8395 %

```

## XXX.5 Numbering stanza

Here, macro for numbering stanza. First, the stanza counter.

```

\thestanza% \newcounter{stanza}
8396
8397 \renewcommand{\thestanza}{%
8398 \textbf{\arabic{stanza}}%
8399 }
8400 %

```

**\ifnumberstanza** Then, macro to activate automatically numbering of stanza.

```

8401 \newif\ifnumberstanza%
8402 %

```

**\@insertstanzanumber** Now, macro called at the first line of verse of a stanza.

```

8403 \newcommand{\@insertstanzanumber}[0]{%
8404 \ifnumberstanza%
8405 \ifl@dpairing%
8406 \ifledRcol%
8407 \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanzaR}%
8408 \else%
8409 \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanzaL}%

```

```

8410     \fi%
8411     \else%
8412         \stanzanumwrapper{\thestanza}%
8413     \fi%
8414     \setline{1}%
8415     \fi%
8416 }%
8417 %

```

`\@advancestanzanumber` Also a command to advance the counter of stanza.

```

8418 \newcommand{\@advancestanzanumber}[0]{%
8419     \ifnumberstanza%
8420         \ifl@dpairing%
8421             \ifledRcol%
8422                 \addtocounter{stanzaR}{1}%
8423             \else%
8424                 \addtocounter{stanzaL}{1}%
8425             \fi%
8426         \else%
8427             \addtocounter{stanza}{1}%
8428         \fi%
8429     \fi%
8430 }%
8431 %

```

`\stanzanumwrapper` And finally, the wrapper for stanza number

```

8432 \newcommand{\stanzanumwrapper}[1]{%
8433     \flagstanza{#1}%
8434 }%
8435 %

```

### XXX.6 Stanza number in note

Here, the command called when printing stanza number in notes.

```

8436 \newcommand{\printstanza}[0]{%
8437     \ifboolexpr{bool{l@dpairing} or bool{l@dprintingpages} or bool{
8438         l@dprintingcolumns}}{%
8439         \ifledRcol%
8440             \thestanzaR%
8441         \else%
8442             \thestanzaL%
8443         \fi%
8444     }{%
8445         \thestanza%
8446     }%
8447 }%

```

## XXX.7 Main work

`\stanza@line` Now we arrive at the main works. `\stanza@line` sets the indentation for the line and starts a numbered paragraph—each line is treated as a paragraph. `\stanza@hang` sets the hanging indentation to be used if the stanza line requires more than one print line.

`\stanza@indent` If it is known that each stanza line will fit on one print line, it is advisable to set the hanging indentation to zero. `\sza@penalty` places the specified penalty following each stanza line. By default, this facility is turned off so that no penalty is included. However, the user may initiate these penalties to indicate good and bad places in the stanza for page breaking.

```

8448 \newcommandx{\stanza@line}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
8449   \stanza@indent%
8450   \pstart[#1][#2]\stanza@hang\ignorespaces%
8451 }%
8452 \newcommand{\stanza@indent}{%
8453   \ifboolexpr{%
8454     test {\ifnumequal{\value{stanzaindentrepetition}}{0}}%
8455     or%
8456     test {\ifnumless{\number\stanza@count}{\value{
8457       startstanzaindentrepetition}}}%
8458   }{%
8459     \ifcsdef{sza@number\stanza@count @}{%
8460       {%
8461         \parindent=\csname sza@number\stanza@count @\endcsname\
8462         stanzaindentbase%
8463       }{%
8464         \led@err@StanzaIndentNotDefined%
8465       }%
8466     }{%
8467       \ifcsdef{sza@number\stanza@modulo @}{%
8468         \count0=\numexpr%
8469         \stanza@modulo%
8470         - 1%
8471         + \value{startstanzaindentrepetition}%
8472         \relax%
8473         \parindent=\csname sza@number\count0 @\endcsname\
8474         stanzaindentbase%
8475         \managestanza@modulo%
8476       }%
8477     }%
8478   }%
8479   \xdef\stanza@hang{\noexpand\leavevmode\noexpand\startlock
8480     \hangindent\expandafter
8481     \noexpand\csname sza@0@\endcsname\stanzaindentbase
8482     \hangafter\@ne}
8483   \def\sza@penalty{\count@\csname szp@number\stanza@count @\endcsname

```

```

8484 \ifnum\count@>\@M\advance\count@-\@M\penalty-\else
8485 \penalty\fi\count@}
8486 %

```

\@startstanza Now we have the components of the \stanza macro, which appears at the start of a  
 \stanza group of lines. This macro initializes the count and checks to see if hanging indentation  
 \@stopstanza and penalties are to be included. Hanging indentation suspends the line count, so that  
 \AtEveryStopStanza the enumeration is by verse line rather than by print line. If the print line count is desired,  
 \AtEveryStanza invoke \let\startlock\relax and do the same for \endlock. Here and above we  
 \AtStartEveryStanza have used \xdef to make the stored macros take up a bit less space, but it also makes  
 \BeforeEveryStopStanza them more obscure to the reader. Lines of the stanza are delimited by ampersands &.  
 \newverse The last line of the stanza must end with \&.

```

8487 \xdef\@startstanza[#1][#2]{%
8488 \noexpand\instanzatrue\expandafter
8489 \begingroup%
8490 \catcode`\noexpand\&\active%
8491 \unexpanded{\newdimen\parindent@beforestanza%
8492 \parindent@beforestanza=\parindent}%Keep in memory the standard \
parindent
8493 \global\stanza@count\@one\stanza@modulo\@one
8494 \noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\noexpand\csname sza@0@\endcsname=\z@%
8495 \let\noexpand\stanza@hang\relax%
8496 \let\noexpand\endlock\relax%
8497 \noexpand\else%
8498 \interlinepenalty%
8499 \@M\righskip\z@ plus 1fil\relax%
8500 \noexpand\fi%
8501 \noexpand\ifnum\expandafter\noexpand\csname szp@0@\endcsname=\z@%
8502 \let\noexpand\sza@penalty%
8503 \relax\noexpand\fi%
8504 \def\noexpand&{%
8505 \noexpand\newverse[] []}%
8506 \def\noexpand\&{\noexpand\@stopstanza}%
8507 \noexpand\@advancestanzanumber%
8508 \noexpand\stanza@line[#1][#2]%
8509 \noexpand\@insertstanzanumber%
8510 \let\par\relax\ignorespaces%No paragraph in verses
8511 }
8512
8513 \newcommandx{\stanza}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
8514 \ifboolexpr{%
8515 not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stanza}}%
8516 and test{\ifstrempy{#1}}%
8517 and test{\ifstrempy{#2}}}%
8518 {\@startstanza[][\at@every@stanza]\at@start@every@stanza}%
8519 {\@startstanza[#1][#2]\at@start@every@stanza}%
8520 }%
8521

```



```

8522 \newcommandx{\@stopstanza}[2][1,2,usedefault]{%
8523   \unskip%
8524   \endlock%
8525   \ifboolexpr{%
8526     not test{\ifdefvoid{\at@every@stop@stanza}}%
8527     and test{\ifstrempy{#1}}%
8528     and test{\ifstrempy{#2}}}%
8529     {\before@every@stop@stanza\pend[][\at@every@stop@stanza]}%
8530     {\before@every@stop@stanza\pend[#1][#2]}%
8531   \endgroup%
8532   \instanzafalse%
8533   \global\undef\parindent@beforestanza%
8534 }
8535
8536 \newcommand{\AtEveryStopStanza}[1]{%
8537   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8538     {\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{}}%
8539     {\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{\noindent#1}}%
8540 }%
8541 \WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryStopStanza*[1]{%
8542   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8543     {\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{}}%
8544     {\gdef\at@every@stop@stanza{#1}}%
8545 }%
8546 \def\at@every@stop@stanza{}%
8547
8548 \newcommand{\AtEveryStanza}[1]{%
8549   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8550     {\gdef\at@every@stanza{}}%
8551     {\gdef\at@every@stanza{\noindent#1}}%
8552 }%
8553 \WithSuffix\newcommand\AtEveryStanza*[1]{%
8554   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8555     {\gdef\at@every@stanza{}}%
8556     {\gdef\at@every@stanza{#1}}%
8557 }%
8558
8559
8560
8561 \newcommand{\AtStartEveryStanza}[1]{%
8562   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8563     {\gdef\at@start@every@stanza{}}%
8564     {\gdef\at@start@every@stanza{#1}}%
8565 }%
8566 \def\at@start@every@stanza{}%
8567
8568 \newcommand{\BeforeEveryStopStanza}[1]{%
8569   \ifstrempy{#1}%
8570     {\gdef\before@every@stop@stanza{}}%
8571     {\gdef\before@every@stop@stanza{#1}}%

```

```

8572 }%
8573 \def\before@every@stop@stanza{%
8574
8575 \newcommand*{\newverse}[4][1,2,3,4,usedefault]{%
8576   \unskip%
8577   \endlock\pend[#1][#3]\sza@penalty\global%
8578   \advance\stanza@count\@ne\stanza@line[#2][#4]%
8579 }
8580
8581 %

```

**\flagstanza** Use `\flagstanza[len]{text}` at the start of a line to put *text* a distance *len* before the start of the line. The default for *len* is `\stanzaindentbase`.

```

8582 \newcommand*{\flagstanza}[2][\stanzaindentbase]{%
8583   \hskip -#1\llap{#2}\hskip #1\ignorespaces}
8584
8585 %

```

### XXX.8 Restore catcode and penalties

The ampersand & is used to mark the end of each stanza line, except the last, which is marked with `\&`. This means that `\halign` may not be used directly within a stanza line. This does not affect macros involving alignments defined outside `\stanza \&`. Since these macros usurp the control sequence `\&`, the replacement `\ampersand` is defined to be used if this symbol is needed in a stanza. Also we reset the modified category codes and initialize the penalty default.

```

8586 \catcode`\&=\next
8587 \catcode`\@=\body
8588 \setstanzavalues{szp}{0}
8589
8590 %

```

### XXX.9 Dealing with antilabe

**\firsthalf@antilabe@wd** If the antilabe option is enabled, after having vboxed the content of `\pstart...pend` structure, we get the width of the last line of the `\pend`.

```

\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd
\antilabe
8591 \ifantilabe{%
8592   \newdimen\firsthalf@antilabe@wd%
8593   \newcommand\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd{%
8594     \ifboolexpr{bool {instanza} or bool {inastanzaL} or bool {inastanzaR}}{
%
8595       \vbadness=10000%
8596       \splittopskip=\z@%
8597       \ifl@dpairing%
8598       \ifledRcol%
8599       \setbox0=\copy\cename{l@dRcolrawbox\the\l@dnumpstartsR\endcename}%

```

```

8600     \else%
8601         \setbox0=\copy\csname l@dLcolrawbox\the\l@dnumstartsL\endcsname%
8602     \fi%
8603     \else%
8604         \setbox0=\copy\raw@text%
8605     \fi%
8606     \dimen0=\dimexpr\ht0+\dp0-\baselineskip\relax%
8607     \ifdim\dimen0>0pt%
8608         \setbox1=\vsplit0 to \dimen0%
8609     \fi%
8610     \setbox0=\vbox{\unvbox0\global\setbox1=\lastbox}%
8611     \setbox1=\hbox{\noindent\unhbox1}%
8612     \global\firsthalf@antilabe@wd=\wd1%
8613 }{}%
8614 }%
8615 \def\beforeantilabe{}%
8616 \def\afterantilabe{}%
8617 \newcommand{\antilabe}[1]{%
8618     \beforeantilabe\hbox to\firsthalf@antilabe@wd{#1\hfill}\afterantilabe%
8619 }%
8620 \else%
8621     \let\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd\relax%
8622 \fi%
8623 %

```

## XXXI Apparatus of Manuscripts

### XXXI.1 User level macro

**\msdata** The user level `\msdata` command only writes the manuscripts data in a numbered auxiliary file. There are two associated etoolbox counters.

```

\msdata@cR
8624 \def\msdata@c{}%
8625 \def\msdata@cR{}%
8626 \newcommand{\msdata}[1]{%
8627     \leavevmode%
8628     \unless\ifstopmsdata@inserted@%
8629         \stopmsdata%
8630         \led@warning@msdatawithoutstop%
8631     \fi%
8632     \global\stopmsdata@inserted@false%
8633     \unless\ifledRcol%
8634         \numgdef{\msdata@c}{\msdata@c+1}%
8635         \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8636             \edlabel{\msdata@c:start:msdata}%
8637         }{}%
8638         \protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
8639             \string\@msd{#1}%
8640         }%

```

```

8641 \else%
8642 \numgdef{\msdata@cR}{\msdata@cR+1}%
8643 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8644 \edlabel{\msdata@cR:start:msdata}%
8645 }{}%
8646 \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
8647 \string\@msd{#1}%
8648 }%
8649 \fi%
8650 }%
8651 %

```

**\stopmsdata** The user level `\stopmsdata` command only writes information about the end of manuscripts data in numbered auxiliary file.

```

8652 \newcommand{\stopmsdata}[0]{%
8653 \leavevmode%
8654 \unless\ifledRcol%
8655 \protected@write\linenum@out{}{%
8656 \string\@stopmsd%
8657 }%
8658 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8659 \edlabel{\msdata@c:end:msdata}%
8660 }{}%
8661 \else%
8662 \protected@write\linenum@outR{}{%
8663 \string\@stopmsd%
8664 }%
8665 \ifdef{\hypertarget}{%
8666 \edlabel{\msdata@cR:end:msdata}%
8667 }{}%
8668 \fi%
8669 \global\stopmsdata@inserted@true%
8670 }%
8671 %

```

**\ifstopmsdata@inserted@** The `\ifstopmsdata@inserted@` boolean is set to TRUE at every `\stopmsdata` and reset to FALSE at all `\msdata`. It also set to TRUE at every `\beginnumbering`. It is used to automatically insert `\stopmsdata` if forgotten before `\msdata`

```

8672 \newif\ifstopmsdata@inserted@%
8673 %

```

## XXXI.2 Setting macro

Setting macros for the manuscripts apparatus tools is very easy: they just save their argument in an internal macro.

**\setmsdataseries** In which series of notes will be printed the apparatus of manuscripts?

```

8674 \newcommand{\setmsdataseries}[1]{%
8675   \gdef\@msdata@series{#1}%
8676 }%
8677 \def\@msdata@series{A}%
8678 %

```

**\setmsdataposition** The label for the manuscripts data.

```

8679 \def\ms@data@position{msdata-regular}%
8680 \newcommand{\setmsdataposition}[1]{%
8681   \gdef\ms@data@position{#1}%
8682 }%
8683 %

```

**\setmsdatalabel** The label for the manuscripts data.

```

8684 \def\ms@data@label{Ms.}%
8685 \newcommand{\setmsdatalabel}[1]{%
8686   \gdef\ms@data@label{#1}%
8687 }%
8688 %

```

### XXXI.3 Counters and lists

**\@msd@c** \@msd@c is a counter incremented at each \@msd read in auxiliary file.

```

8689 \numdef{\@msd@c}{0}
8690 \numdef{\@msd@cR}{0}
8691 %

```

**\add@msd@** \add@msd@ is a counter incremented at each \add@msddata, that is at each time we prepare the insertion of manuscripts data footnote.

```

8692 \numdef{\add@msd@c}{0}%
8693 \numdef{\add@msd@cR}{0}%
8694 %

```

**\@msdata@list** The \@msdata@list will contain, for each line, the lists of command to be executed to insert the manuscripts apparatus. It will be filled on \add@msdata and looped on \insert@msdata, then emptied.

```

8695 \def\@msdata@list{}%
8696 %

```

### XXXI.4 Auxiliary file macros

**\@msd** The \@msd macro is written in the auxiliary file. It just defines three macros by \@msdata macro, which allow us to know the manuscripts data, the line number and the absolute line number where it was called

It also stores the action code 1010 in the list of actions by line.

```

8697 \newcommand{\@msd}[1]{%
8698   \unless\ifledRcol%
8699     \global\newdef{\@msd@c}{\@msd@c+\@one}%
8700     \csgdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @data}{#1}%
8701     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @linenumber}{\the\line@num}%
8702     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @sublinenumber}{\the\subline@num}%
8703     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @abslinenumber}{\the\absline@num}%
8704     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@num}\to\actionlines@list%
8705     \xright@appenditem{-1010}\to\actions@list%
8706   \else%
8707     \global\newdef{\@msd@cR}{\@msd@cR+\@one}%
8708     \csgdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @dataR}{#1}%
8709     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @linenumberR}{\the\line@numR}%
8710     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @sublinenumberR}{\the\subline@numR}%
8711     \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @abslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR}%
8712     \xright@appenditem{\the\absline@numR}\to\actionlines@listR%
8713     \xright@appenditem{-1010}\to\actions@listR%
8714   \fi%
8715 }%
8716 %

```

**\@stopmsd** Inserted in the auxiliary file by \@stopmsd, the \@stopmsd macro will store in two commands the line number and the absolute line number on which it is called.

```

8717 \newcommand{\@stopmsd}[0]{%
8718   \unless\ifledRcol%
8719     \ifcsundef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{%
8720       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}{\the\absline@num}%
8721       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stoplinenumber}{\the\line@num}%
8722       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@c @stopsublinenumber}{\the\subline@num}%
8723     }%
8724   \else%
8725     \ifcsundef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{%
8726       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}{\the\absline@numR}%
8727       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}{\the\line@numR}%
8728       \csxdef{\@msdata@\@msd@cR @stopsublinenumberR}{\the\subline@numR}%
8729     }%
8730   }%
8731   \fi%
8732 }%
8733 %

```

## XXXI.5 Action macro

`\add@msdata` `\add@msdata` is executed on each line when action code 1010 is seen. It will not insert immediately the manuscript data footnote, as action code are executed before the line be typeset, and, consequently, could be on the previous page. So it just stores the manuscript data footnote to `\@msdata@list`.

```

8734 \newcommand{\add@msdata}{%
8735   \bgroup%
8736   \normalfont%
8737   \unless\ifledRcol%
8738     \numgdef{\add@msd@c}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
8739     \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}{%
8740       \letcs{@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
8741       \edef\l@d@nums{%
8742         000|% Start page = we don't print it
8743         \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @linenumber}|% Start line number
8744         \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @sublinenumber}|% Start subline number
8745         000|% End page number, we don't print it
8746         \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%
8747         {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stoplinenumber}}}%End line number if
in the same page
8748         {\csuse{@lastline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
8749         |%
8750         \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%
8751         {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopsublinenumber}}}%End subline
number if in the same page
8752         {\csuse{@lastsubline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%Otherwise, last
subnumber of the page
8753         |%
8754         \edfont@info%Font
8755       }%
8756       \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
8757       \if%firstlineofpage%Try if the data are for the full page. If yes
, will add options to the list.
8758       \unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
8759       \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}{\csuse{
@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}+\@ne}%
8760       {%
8761       \numdef{@tmp}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
8762       \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}%
8763       {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%
8764       {}%
8765       {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8766       }%
8767       {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%

```

```

8768     }%
8769     {}%
8770     \fi%
8771 \fi%
8772 \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
8773   \@msd@options@iffullpage%
8774   \ifluatex%
8775     \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}%
8776     \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}%
8777   \fi%
8778   \csdef{@this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@c:start:msdata}%
8779   \csdef{@this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@c:end:msdata}%
8780   \unexpanded{%
8781     \def\annot@start{}%
8782     \def\annot@end{}%
8783   }%
8784   \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\@
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\data}}%
8785   \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
8786 }%
8787 }%
8788 {}%
8789 \else%
8790   \numgdef{\add@msd@cR}{\add@msd@cR+\@one}%
8791   \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}{%
8792     \letcs{\@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}%
8793     \edef\l@d@nums{%
8794       000| % Start page = we don't print it
8795       \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @linenumberR}| % Start line number
8796       \csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @sublinenumberR}| % Start subline
number, for now, not used
8797       000| % End page number, we don't print it
8798       \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\
csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%
8799       {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}}%End line number
if in the same page
8800       {\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
8801       |%
8802       \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\
csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%
8803       {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopsublinenumberR}}%End subline
number if in the same page
8804       {\csuse{@lastsubline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
8805       000| % End sub line number, for now, not used
8806       \edfont@info%Font
8807     }%
8808     \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
8809     \if@firstlineofpageR%

```



```

8810         \unless\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
8811             \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}{\
csuse{@msdata@add@msd@c @stopabslinenumberR}+\@ne}%
8812             {%
8813                 \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@cR+\@ne}%
8814                 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}%
8815                     {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpageR@the\page@numR}}}%
8816                     {}%
8817                     {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8818                 }%
8819                 {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8820             }%
8821             {}%
8822             \fi%
8823         \fi%
8824         \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
8825             \@msd@options@iffullpage%
8826             \ifluatex%
8827                 \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}%
8828                 \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}%
8829             \fi%
8830             \csdef{@this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@cR:start:msdata}%
8831             \csdef{@this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@cR:end:msdata}%
8832             \unexpanded{%
8833                 \def\annot@start{%
8834                     \def\annot@end{%
8835                         }%
8836                     \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\data}}%
8837             \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
8838             }%
8839             }%
8840             {}%
8841             \fi%
8842             \egroup%
8843         }%
8844         %

```

**@insertedfrompreviouspage** The `\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage` boolean is set to TRUE if `reledmac` automatically inserts data from previous page in the first line of a page.

```

8845 \newif\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage%
8846 %

```

**dd@msdata@firstlineofpage** `\add@msdata@firstlineofpage` is called at the first line of every page. It inserts manuscript data which start on one of the previous pages and continue on this page.

```

8847 \newcommand{\add@msdata@firstlineofpage}{%
8848     \bgroup%

```

```

8849 \normalfont%
8850 \unless\ifledRcol@%
8851 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}{%
8852 \ifnumless{\the\absline@num-\@ne}{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c
@stopabslinenumber}}}%
8853 {%
8854 \global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagetrue%
8855 \letcs{\@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@c @data}%
8856 \edef\l@d@nums{%
8857 000|}% Start page = we don't print it
8858 \numexpr\the\line@num+\@ne\relax|}% Start line number = first line
of the page. As \add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called before line number
has been incremented, we increment it for printing
8859 000|}% Start subline number, for now, not used
8860 000|}% End page number, we don't print it
8861 \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}%
8862 {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@c @stoplinenumber}}}%End line number if
in the same page
8863 {\csuse{@lastline@forpage@\the\page@num}}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
8864 |%
8865 000|}% End sub line number, for now, not used
8866 \edfont@info%Font
8867 }%
8868 \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
8869 \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}{\csuse{
@msdata@\add@msd@c @stopabslinenumber}+\@ne}%We will test if the ms data is
for the full page
8870 {%
8871 \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@c+\@ne}%
8872 \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}%
8873 {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumber}}{\csuse{
@lastabsline@forpage@\the\page@num}}%
8874 {}%
8875 {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8876 }%
8877 {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8878 }%
8879 {}%
8880 \listxadd{\@msdata@list}{%
8881 \@msd@options@iffullpage%
8882 \ifluatex%
8883 \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}%
8884 \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}%
8885 \fi%
8886 \csdef{@this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@c:start:msdata}%
8887 \csdef{@this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@c:end:msdata}%
8888 \unexpanded{%
8889 \def\annot@start{%

```

```

8890         \def\annot@end{}%
8891     }%
8892     \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\@
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\data}}%
8893     \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
8894 }%
8895 }%
8896 {\global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagefalse}%
8897 }{}%
8898 \else%
8899     \ifcsdef{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}{%
8900     \ifnumless{\the\absline@numR-\@one}{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR
@stopabslinenumberR}}%
8901     {%
8902     \global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagetrue%
8903     \letcs{@data}{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @dataR}%
8904     \edef\l@d@nums{%
8905     000}% Start page = we don't print it
8906     \numexpr\the\line@numR+\@one\relax}% Start line number = first
line of the page. As \add@msdata@firstlineofpage is called before line
number has been incremented, we increment it for printing
8907     000}% Start subline number, for now, not used
8908     000}% End page number, we don't print it
8909     \ifnumless{\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}}{\@
csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%
8910     {\csuse{@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stoplinenumberR}}%End line number
if in the same page
8911     {\csuse{@lastline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}%Otherwise, last
number of the page
8912     |%
8913     000}% End sub line number, for now, not used
8914     \edefont@info%Font
8915     }%
8916     \@msd@options@fullpagefalse%
8917     \ifnumless{\csuse{@lastabsline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}{\@csuse{
@msdata@\add@msd@cR @stopabslinenumberR}+\@one}%
8918     {%
8919     \numdef{\@tmp}{\add@msd@cR+\@one}%
8920     \ifcsdef{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}%
8921     {\ifnumequal{\csuse{@msdata@\@tmp @abslinenumberR}}{\@csuse{
@lastabsline@forpageR@\the\page@numR}}}%
8922     }%
8923     {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8924     }%
8925     {\@msd@options@fullpagetrue}%
8926     }%
8927     }{}%
8928     \listxadd{@msdata@list}{%
8929     \@msd@options@iffullpage%
8930     \ifluatex%

```

```

8931 \csxdef{footnote@luatextextdir}{\the\textdir}%
8932 \csxdef{footnote@luatexpardir}{\the\pardir}%
8933 \fi%
8934 \csdef{@this@crossref@start}{\add@msd@cR:start:msdata}%
8935 \csdef{@this@crossref@end}{\add@msd@cR:end:msdata}%
8936 \unexpanded{%
8937 \def\annot@start{}%
8938 \def\annot@end{}%
8939 }%
8940 \noexpand\csuse{v\@msdata@series footnote}{\@msdata@series}{\{
expandonce\l@d@nums}{\ms@data@label}{\expandonce\@data}}%
8941 \reset@msd@options@iffullpage%
8942 }%
8943 }%
8944 {\global\@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspagefalse}%
8945 }{}%
8946 \fi%
8947 \egroup%
8948 }%
8949 %

```

### XXXI.6 Inserting footnote

Just before inserting standard insert (familiar and critical footnotes, sidenotes), we call `\insert@msdata` to insert manuscripts data's footnotes.

```

\insert@msdata%
8951 \newcommand{\insert@msdata}{%
8952 \def\do##1{##1}%
8953 \dolistloop{\@msdata@list}%
8954 \global\let\@msdata@list\relax%
8955 }%
8956 %

```

### XXXI.7 Other

`\@msd@options@iffullpage` `\@msd@options@iffullpage` sets some options if the manuscripts data are for all the page. `\reset@msd@options@iffullpage` resets them after the footnote. `\if@msd@options@fullpage` is switch to true in `add@msdata@firstlineofpage` if these option must be inserted.

```

8956 \newif\if@msd@options@fullpage%
8957 \newcommand{\@msd@options@iffullpage}[0]{%
8958 \if@msd@options@fullpage%
8959 \noexpand\toggletrue{nonum}%
8960 \ifdefvoid{\ms@data@label}%
8961 {\noexpand\toggletrue{nosep}}%
8962 }%
8963 \fi%
8964 }%

```

```

8965 \newcommand{\reset@msd@options@iffullpage}[0]{%
8966   \noexpand\togglefalse{nonum@}%
8967   \noexpand\togglefalse{nosep@}%
8968 }%
8969 %

```

## XXXII Arrays and tables

### XXXII.1 Preamble: macro as environment

The following is borrowed, and renamed, from the `amsmath` package. See also the CTT thread ‘`eeq` and `amstex`’, 1995/08/31, started by Keith Reckdahl and ended definitively by David M. Jones.

Several of the `[math]` macros scan their body twice. This means we must collect all text in the body of an environment form before calling the macro.

`\@emptytoks` This is actually defined in the `amsgen` package.

```

8970 \newtoks\@emptytoks
8971
8972 %

```

The rest is from `amsmath`.

`\l@denbody` A token register to contain the body.

```

8973 \newtoks\l@denbody
8974
8975 %

```

`\addtol@denbody` `\addtol@denbody{arg}` adds `arg` to the token register `\l@denbody`.

```

8976 \newcommand{\addtol@denbody}[1]{%
8977   \global\l@denbody\expandafter{\the\l@denbody#1}}
8978 %

```

`\if@edtabular` A boolean set to true inside a `reledmac`’ tabular environment.

```

8979 \newif\if@edtabular%
8980 %

```

`\l@dcollect@body` The macro `\l@dcollect@body` starts the scan for the `\end{<env>}` command of the current environment. It takes a macro name as argument. This macro is supposed to take the whole body of the environment as its argument. For example, given `cenv#1{...}` as a macro that processes `#1`, then the environment form, `\begin{env}` would call `\l@dcollect@body\cenv`.

```

8981 \newcommand{\l@dcollect@body}[1]{%
8982   \\\%Ensure that we don't have spurious indentation at the very first line,
      caused by some text before.
8983   \l@denbody{\expandafter#1\expandafter{\the\l@denbody}}%
8984   \edef\processl@denbody{\the\l@denbody\noexpand\end{\@currentenv}}%
8985   \l@denbody\@emptytoks \def\l@dbegin@stack{b}%
8986   \begingroup
8987     \edtabulartrue%
8988     \expandafter\let\csname\@currentenv\endcsname\l@dcollect@@body
8989     \edef\processl@denbody{\expandafter\noexpand\csname\@currentenv\endcsname}%
8990     \processl@denbody%
8991   }%
8992
8993 %

```

**\l@dpush@begins** When adding a piece of the current environment's contents to \l@denbody, we scan it to check for additional \begin tokens, and add a 'b' to the stack for any that we find.

```

8994 \def\l@dpush@begins#1\begin#2{%
8995   \ifx\end#2\else b\expandafter\l@dpush@begins\fi}
8996
8997 %

```

**\l@dcollect@@body** \l@dcollect@@body takes two arguments: the first will consist of all text up to the next \end command, and the second will be the \end command's argument. If there are any extra \begin commands in the body text, a marker is pushed onto a stack by the \l@dpush@begins function. Empty state for this stack means we have reached the \end that matches our original \begin. Otherwise we need to include the \end and its argument in the material we are adding to the environment body accumulator.

```

8998 \def\l@dcollect@@body#1\end#2{%
8999   \edef\l@dbegin@stack{\l@dpush@begins#1\begin\end
9000     \expandafter\@gobble\l@dbegin@stack}%
9001   \ifx\@empty\l@dbegin@stack
9002     \endgroup
9003     \@checkend{#2}%
9004     \addtol@denbody{#1}%
9005   \else
9006     \addtol@denbody{#1\end{#2}}%
9007   \fi
9008   \processl@denbody % A little tricky! Note the grouping
9009 }
9010
9011 %

```

There was a question on CTT about how to use \collect@body for a macro taking an argument. The following is part of that thread.

From: Heiko Oberdiek <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>  
 Newsgroups: comp.text.tex  
 Subject: Re: Using \collect@body with commands that take >1 argument  
 Date: Fri, 08 Aug 2003 09:03:20 +0200

eed132@psu.edu (Evan) wrote:

```
> I'm trying to make a new Latex environment that acts like the>
> \colorbox command that is part of the color package. I looked through
> the FAQ and ran across this bit about using the \collect@body command
> that is part of AMSLaTeX:
> http://www.tex.ac.uk/cgi-bin/texfaq2html?label=cmdasenv
>
> It almost works. If I do something like the following:
> \newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
>
> \makeatletter
> \newenvironment{redbox}{\collect@body \redbox}{}
```

You will get an error message: Command \redbox already defined.  
 Thus you must rename either the command \redbox or the environment  
 name.

```
> \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
> Yadda yadda yadda... this is on a blue background...
> \end{coloredbox}
> and can't figure out how to make the \collect@body take this.

> \collect@body \colorbox{red}
> \collect@body {\colorbox{red}}
```

The argument of \collect@body has to be one token exactly.

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage{color}
\usepackage{amsmath}

\newcommand{\redbox}[1]{\colorbox{red}{#1}}
\makeatletter
\newenvironment{coloredbox}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\colorbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%

% ignore spaces at begin and end of environment
\newenvironment{coloredboxII}[1]{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredbox{#1}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}{%
\newcommand{\mycoloredbox}[2]{%
  \colorbox{#1}{\ignorespaces#2\unskip}%
```

```

}

% support of optional color model argument
\newcommand\coloredboxIII\endcsname{}
\def\coloredboxIII#1#{%
  \@coloredboxIII{#1}%
}
\def\@coloredboxIII#1#2{%
  \def\next@{\mycoloredboxIII{#1}{#2}}%
  \collect@body\next@
}
\newcommand{\mycoloredboxIII}[3]{%
  \colorbox#1{#2}{\ignorespaces#3\unskip}%
}

\makeatother

\begin{document}
  Black text before
  \begin{coloredbox}{blue}
    Hello World
  \end{coloredbox}
  Black text after

  Black text before
  \begin{coloredboxII}{blue}
    Hello World
  \end{coloredboxII}
  Black text after

  Black text before
  \begin{coloredboxIII}[rgb]{0,0,1}
    Hello World
  \end{coloredboxIII}
  Black text after

\end{document}

Yours sincerely
Heiko <oberdiek@uni-freiburg.de>

```

## XXXII.2 Tabular environments

This is based on the work by Herbert Breger in developing `tabmac.tex`.

The original `tabmac.tex` file was void of comments or any explanatory text other than the above notice. The algorithm is Breger's. Peter Wilson have made some cosmetic changes to the original code and reimplemented some things so they are more LaTeX-like. All the commentary are from Peter Wilson, as are any mistake or errors.



However, Maïeul Rouquette has modified code in order to add new features of `eledmac` and `reledmac`.

### XXXII.2.1 Disabling and restoring commands

`\l@dtabnoexpands` More no expansion for critical and familiar footnotes in tabular environment.

```

9012 \newcommand*{\l@dtabnoexpands}{%
9013   \let\rtab=0%
9014   \let\ctab=0%
9015   \let\ltab=0%
9016   \let\rtabtext=0%
9017   \let\ltabtext=0%
9018   \let\ctabtext=0%
9019   \let\edbeforetab=0%
9020   \let\edaftertab=0%
9021   \let\edatleft=0%
9022   \let\edatright=0%
9023   \let\edvertline=0%
9024   \let\edvertdots=0%
9025   \let\edrowfill=0%
9026 }
9027
9028 %

```

`\disable@familiarnotes` Macros to disable and restore familiar notes, to prevent them from printing multiple times in `edtabularx` and `edarrayx` environments.

`\restore@familiarnotes`

```

9029 \newcommand{\disable@familiarnotes}{%
9030   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
9031     \def\do##1{%
9032       \csletcs{footnote@##1}{footnote##1}%
9033       \expandafter\renewcommand \csname footnote##1\endcsname[1]{%
9034         \protected@csxdef{@thefnmark##1}{\csuse{thefootnote##1}}%
9035         \csuse{@footnotemark##1}%
9036       }%
9037     }%
9038     \dolistloop{\@series}%
9039   \fi%
9040 }%
9041 \newcommand{\restore@familiarnotes}{%
9042   \unless\ifnofamiliar%
9043     \def\do##1{%
9044       \csletcs{footnote##1}{footnote@##1}%
9045     }%
9046     \dolistloop{\@series}%
9047   \fi%
9048 }%
9049
9050 %

```

`\disable@sidenotes` The same for sidenotes.

```
\restore@sidenotes
9051 \newcommand{\disable@sidenotes}{%
9052   \let\@@ledrightnote\ledrightnote%
9053   \let\@@ledleftnote\ledleftnote%
9054   \let\@@ledsidenote\ledsidenote%
9055   \let\ledrightnote\@gobble%
9056   \let\ledleftnote\@gobble%
9057   \let\ledsidenote\@gobble%
9058 }%
9059 \newcommand{\restore@sidenotes}{%
9060   \let\ledrightnote\@@ledrightnote%
9061   \let\ledleftnote\@@ledleftnote%
9062   \let\ledsidenote\@@ledsidenote%
9063 }%
9064 %
```

`\disable@endnotes` The same for endnotes.

```
\restore@endnotes
9065 \newcommand{\disable@endnotes}{%
9066   \unless\ifnoend{%
9067     \def\do##1{%
9068       \csletcs{##1@endnote}{##1endnote}%
9069       \expandafter\renewcommand \csname ##1endnote\endcsname[1]{}%
9070     }%
9071     \dolistloop{\@series}%
9072   \fi%
9073 }%
9074 \newcommand{\restore@endnotes}{%
9075   \unless\ifnofamiliar{%
9076     \def\do##1{%
9077       \csletcs{##1endnote}{##1@endnote}%
9078     }%
9079     \dolistloop{\@series}%
9080   \fi%
9081 }%
9082 %
```

`\disable@notes` Disable/restore side, familiar and end notes.

```
\restore@notes
9083 \newcommand{\disable@notes}{%
9084   \disable@sidenotes%
9085   \disable@familiarnotes%
9086   \disable@endnotes%
9087 }%
9088 \newcommand{\restore@notes}{%
9089   \restore@sidenotes%
9090   \restore@familiarnotes%
9091   \restore@endnotes%
9092 }%
9093 %
```

**\EDTEXT** We need to be able to modify the `\edtext` macros and also restore their original definitions.  
**\xedtext**

```
9094 \let\EDTEXT=\edtext
9095 \newcommand{\xedtext}[2]{\EDTEXT{#1}{#2}}
9096 %
```

**\EDLABEL** We need to be able to modify and restore the `\edlabel` macro.  
**\xedlabel**

```
9097 \let\EDLABEL=\edlabel
9098 \newcommand*\xedlabel[1]{\EDLABEL{#1}}
9099 %
```

**\xedindex** Macros supporting modification and restoration of `\edindex`.  
**\nulledindex**

```
9100 \AtBeginDocument{\let\xedindex\edindex}%
9101 \newcommand{\nulledindex}[2][\jobname]{\@bsphack\@esphack}
9102 %
9103 %
```

**\@line@num** Macro supporting restoration of `\linenum`.

```
9104 \let\@line@num=\linenum
9105 %
```

**\l@dgobbleoptarg** `\l@dgobbleoptarg[⟨arg⟩]{⟨arg⟩}` replaces these two arguments (first is optional) by `\relax`.

```
9106 \newcommand*\l@dgobbleoptarg[2][\relax]%
9107 %
9108 %
```

**\l@secondmandarg** `\l@secondoptarg[⟨arg⟩]{⟨arg⟩}` gobble the first (optional) argument, and expand to the second (mandatory) argument.

```
9109 \NewExpandableDocumentCommand{\l@secondmandarg}{om}{#2}%
9110 %
```

**\Relax**<sub>11</sub> `\let\Relax=\relax`

**\NEXT**<sub>12</sub> `\let\NEXT=\next`

```
9113 %
9114 %
```

**\l@dmodforedtext** Modify and restore various macros for when `\edtext` is used.  
**\l@restoreforedtext**

```
9115 \newcommand{\l@dmodforedtext}{%
9116 \let\edtext\relax
9117 \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{\l@dgobbleoptarg}}%
9118 \dolistloop{\@series}%
```

```

9119 \let\edindex\nulledindex
9120 \let\linenum@gobble}
9121 \newcommand{\l@drestoreforedtext}{%
9122 \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@footnote}}
9123 \dolistloop{\@series}%
9124 \let\edindex\xedndex}
9125 %

```

**\l@dnullfills** Nullify and restore some column fillers, etc.

```

\l@drestorefills
9126 \newcommand{\l@dnullfills}{%
9127 \def\edlabel##1{}%
9128 \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{}%
9129 }
9130 \newcommand{\l@drestorefills}{%
9131 \def\edrowfill##1##2##3{\@EDROWFILL@{##1}{##2}{##3}}%
9132 }
9133 %
9134 %

```

**\letsforverteilen** Gathers some lets and other code that is common to the *\*verteilen\** macros.

```

9135 \newcommand{\letsforverteilen}{%
9136 \let\edtext\xedndex
9137 \let\edindex\xedndex
9138 \def\do##1{\global\csletcs{##1footnote}{##1@footnote}}
9139 \dolistloop{\@series}%
9140 \let\linenum@line@num
9141 \hilfsskip=\l@dcwidth%
9142 \advance\hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox
9143 \def\edlabel##1{\xedlabel{##1}}
9144 %
9145 %

```

**\disablel@dtabfeet** Declarations for using or using \edtext inside tabulars. The default at this point is for  
**\enablel@dtabfeet** \edtext.

```

9146 \newcommand\disablel@dtabfeet{\l@dmodforedtext}%
9147 \newcommand\enablel@dtabfeet{\l@drestoreforedtext}%
9148 %

```

### XXXII.2.2 Counters, boxes and lengths

**\l@dampcount** \l@dampcount is a counter for the & column dividers and \l@dcolcount is a counter  
**\l@dcolcount** for the columns.

```

9149 \newcount\l@dampcount
9150 \l@dampcount=1\relax
9151 \newcount\l@dcolcount

```

```

9152 \l@dcolcount=0\relax
9153
9154 %

```

```

\hilfsbox Some (temporary) helper items.
\hilfsskip
\Hilfsbox
\hilfscount
9155 \newbox\hilfsbox
9156 \newskip\hilfsskip
9157 \newbox\Hilfsbox
9158 \newcount\hilfscount
9159
9160 %

```

30 columns should be adequate (compared to the original 60). These are the column widths. (Originally these were German spelled numbers e.g., \eins, \zwei, etc).

```

9161 \newdimen\dcoli
9162 \newdimen\dcolii
9163 \newdimen\dcoliii
9164 \newdimen\dcoliv
9165 \newdimen\dcolv
9166 \newdimen\dcolvi
9167 \newdimen\dcolvii
9168 \newdimen\dcolviii
9169 \newdimen\dcolix
9170 \newdimen\dcolx
9171 \newdimen\dcolxi
9172 \newdimen\dcolxii
9173 \newdimen\dcolxiii
9174 \newdimen\dcolxiv
9175 \newdimen\dcolxv
9176 \newdimen\dcolxvi
9177 \newdimen\dcolxvii
9178 \newdimen\dcolxviii
9179 \newdimen\dcolxix
9180 \newdimen\dcolxx
9181 \newdimen\dcolxxi
9182 \newdimen\dcolxxii
9183 \newdimen\dcolxxiii
9184 \newdimen\dcolxxiv
9185 \newdimen\dcolxxv
9186 \newdimen\dcolxxvi
9187 \newdimen\dcolxxvii
9188 \newdimen\dcolxxviii
9189 \newdimen\dcolxxix
9190 \newdimen\dcolxxx
9191 \newdimen\dcolerr % added for error handling
9192
9193 %

```

`\l@dcwidth` This is a cunning way of storing the columnwidths indexed by the column number `\l@dcwidth`, like an array. (was `\Dimenzuordnung`)

```

9194 \newcommand{\l@dcwidth}{\ifcase \the\l@dcwidth \dcoli %???
9195 \or \dcoli \or \dcolii \or \dcoliii
9196 \or \dcoliv \or \dcolv \or \dcolvi
9197 \or \dcolvii \or \dcolviii \or \dcolix \or \dcolx
9198 \or \dcolxi \or \dcolxii \or \dcolxiii
9199 \or \dcolxiv \or \dcolxv \or \dcolxvi
9200 \or \dcolxvii \or \dcolxviii \or \dcolxix \or \dcolxx
9201 \or \dcolxxi \or \dcolxxii \or \dcolxxiii
9202 \or \dcolxxiv \or \dcolxxv \or \dcolxxvi
9203 \or \dcolxxvii \or \dcolxxviii \or \dcolxxix \or \dcolxxx
9204 \else \dcolerr \fi}
9205
9206 %

```

`\step@dcwidth` This increments the column counter, and issues an error message if it is too large.

```

9207 \newcommand*\step@dcwidth{\advance\l@dcwidth\@ne
9208 \ifnum\l@dcwidth>30\relax
9209 \led@err@TooManyColumns
9210 \fi}
9211
9212 %

```

`\l@dcsetmaxwidth` Sets the column width to the maximum value seen so far.

```

9213 \newcommand{\l@dcsetmaxwidth}{%
9214 \ifdim\l@dcwidth < \wd\hilfsbox
9215 \l@dcwidth = \wd\hilfsbox
9216 \else \relax \fi}
9217
9218 %

```

`\measurecell` Measure (recursively) the width required for a math cell.

```

9219 \def\measurecell #1{%
9220 \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcwidth=0\let\NEXT\relax%
9221 \else\l@dccheckcols%
9222 \l@dcwidth=0%
9223 \let\NEXT\measurecell%
9224 \fi%
9225 \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9226 \step@dcwidth%
9227 \l@dcsetmaxwidth%
9228 \let\NEXT\measurecell%
9229 \fi\NEXT}
9230
9231 %

```

**\measuretcell** Measure (recursively) the width required for a text cell.

```

9232 \def\measuretcell #1{%
9233   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dc@lcount=0\let\NEXT\relax%
9234     \else\l@dcheckcols%
9235       \l@dc@lcount=0%
9236       \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
9237     \fi%
9238   \else\setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
9239     \step\l@dc@lcount%
9240     \l@dsetmaxcolwidth%
9241     \let\NEXT\measuretcell%
9242   \fi\NEXT}
9243
9244 %

```

**\measuremrow** Measure (recursively) the width required for a math row.

```

9245 \def\measuremrow #1\{%
9246   \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax%
9247   \else\measuretcell #1&\&\&%
9248     \let\NEXT\measuremrow%
9249   \fi\NEXT}
9250 %

```

**\measuretrow** Measure (recursively) the width required for a text row.

```

9251 \def\measuretrow #1\{%
9252   \ifx #1&\let\NEXT\relax%
9253   \else\measuretcell #1&\&\&%
9254     \let\NEXT\measuretrow%
9255   \fi\NEXT}
9256
9257 %

```

**\edtabcolsep** The length \edtabcolsep controls the distance between columns.

```

9258 \newskip\edtabcolsep
9259 \global\edtabcolsep=10pt
9260
9261 %

```

**\variab<sub>62</sub>** \newcommand{\variab}{\relax}

```

9263
9264 %

```

**\l@dcheckcols** Check that the number of columns is consistent.

```

9265 \newcommand*{\l@dcheckcols}{%
9266   \ifnum\l@dcolcount=1\relax
9267   \else
9268     \ifnum\l@dampcount=1\relax
9269     \else
9270       \ifnum\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount\relax
9271       \else
9272         \l@d@err@UnequalColumns
9273       \fi
9274     \fi
9275     \l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount
9276   \fi}
9277
9278 %

```

**\edfilldimen** A length.

```

9279 \newdimen\edfilldimen
9280 \edfilldimen=0pt
9281
9282 %

```

**\c@addcolcount** A counter to hold the number of a column. We use a roman number so that we can grab the column dimension from `\dcol`. We do not use the `\roman`  $\TeX$  command, because some packages, like `babel` can override it in some specific cases (Greek, for example).

**\theadcolcount**

```

9283 \newcounter{addcolcount}
9284 \renewcommand{\theadcolcount}{\romannumeral \c@addcolcount}
9285 %

```

### XXXII.2.3 Tabular typesetting

**\setmcellright** Typeset (recursively) cells of display math right justified.

```

9286 \def\setmcellright #1{\def\edlabel##1{}%
9287   \let\edindex\nulledindex
9288   \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0%\removelastskip
9289     \let\Next\relax%
9290   \else\l@dcolcount=0%
9291     \let\Next=\setmcellright%
9292   \fi%
9293   \else%
9294     \disablel@dtabfeet%
9295     \stepl@dcolcount%
9296     \disable@notes%
9297     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9298     \restore@notes%
9299     \letsforverteilen%
9300     \hskip\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$%

```



```

9301         \hskip\edtabcolsep%
9302         \let\Next=\setmcellright%
9303     \fi\Next}
9304
9305 %

```

**\settcclright** Typeset (recursively) cells of text right justified.

```

9306 \def\settcclright #1{\def\edlabel##1{%
9307     \let\edindex\nulledindex
9308     \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0%\removelastskip
9309         \let\Next\relax%
9310     \else\l@dcolcount=0%
9311         \let\Next=\settcclright%
9312     \fi%
9313 \else%
9314     \disablel@dtabfeet%
9315     \step1@dcolcount%
9316     \disable@notes%
9317     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
9318     \restore@notes%
9319     \letsforverteilen%
9320     \hskip\hilfsskip#1%
9321     \hskip\edtabcolsep%
9322     \let\Next=\settcclright%
9323 \fi\Next}
9324 %

```

**\setmcellleft** Typeset (recursively) cells of display math left justified.

```

9325 \def\setmcellleft #1{\def\edlabel##1{%
9326     \let\edindex\nulledindex
9327     \ifx #1\ \ifnum\l@dcolcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
9328         \else\l@dcolcount=0%
9329         \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
9330     \fi%
9331 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
9332     \step1@dcolcount%
9333     \disable@notes%
9334     \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9335     \restore@notes%
9336     \letsforverteilen%
9337     $\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
9338     \let\Next=\setmcellleft%
9339 \fi\Next}
9340
9341 %

```

**\settcclleft** Typeset (recursively) cells of text left justified.

```

9342 \def\settcclleft #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
9343 \let\edindex\nulledindex
9344 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcclcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
9345 \else\l@dcclcount=0%
9346 \let\Next=\settcclleft%
9347 \fi%
9348 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
9349 \stepl@dcclcount%
9350 \disable@notes%
9351 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%
9352 \restore@notes%
9353 \letsforverteilen%
9354 #1\hskip\hilfsskip\hskip\edtabcolsep%
9355 \let\Next=\settcclleft%
9356 \fi\Next}
9357 %

```

**\setmcellcenter** Typeset (recursively) cells of display math centered.

```

9358 \def\setmcellcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
9359 \let\edindex\nulledindex
9360 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcclcount=0\let\Next\relax%
9361 \else\l@dcclcount=0%
9362 \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
9363 \fi%
9364 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
9365 \stepl@dcclcount%
9366 \disable@notes%
9367 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9368 \restore@notes%
9369 \letsforverteilen%
9370 \hskip 0.5\hilfsskip$\displaystyle{#1}$\hskip0.5\hilfsskip%
9371 \hskip\edtabcolsep%
9372 \let\Next=\setmcellcenter%
9373 \fi\Next}
9374 %
9375 %

```

**\settcclcenter** Typeset (recursively) cells of text centered.

```

9376 \def\settcclcenter #1&{\def\edlabel##1{}}%
9377 \let\edindex\nulledindex
9378 \ifx #1\\ \ifnum\l@dcclcount=0 \let\Next\relax%
9379 \else\l@dcclcount=0%
9380 \let\Next=\settcclcenter%
9381 \fi%
9382 \else \disablel@dtabfeet%
9383 \stepl@dcclcount%
9384 \disable@notes%
9385 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{#1}%

```

```

9386         \restore@notes%
9387         \letsforverteilen%
9388         \hskip 0.5\hlfsskip #1\hskip 0.5\hlfsskip%
9389         \hskip\edtabcolsep%
9390         \let\Next=\settcellcenter%
9391     \fi\Next}
9392
9393 %

```

```

\NEXT94 \let\NEXT=\relax
9395
9396 %

```

**\setmrowright** Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified math.

```

9397 \def\setmrowright #1\{\%
9398     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
9399     \else \centerline{\setmcellright #1&\&\&}
9400         \let\NEXT=\setmrowright
9401     \fi\NEXT}
9402 %

```

**\settroright** Typeset (recursively) rows of right justified text.

```

9403 \def\settroright #1\{\%
9404     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
9405     \else \centerline{\settcclright #1&\&\&}
9406         \let\NEXT=\settroright
9407     \fi\NEXT}
9408
9409 %

```

**\setmrowleft** Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified math.

```

9410 \def\setmrowleft #1\{\%
9411     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
9412     \else \centerline{\setmcellleft #1&\&\&}
9413         \let\NEXT=\setmrowleft
9414     \fi\NEXT}
9415 %

```

**\settrorleft** Typeset (recursively) rows of left justified text.

```

9416 \def\settrorleft #1\{\%
9417     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
9418     \else \centerline{\settcclleft #1&\&\&}
9419         \let\NEXT=\settrorleft
9420     \fi\NEXT}
9421
9422 %

```

**\setmrowcenter** Typeset (recursively) rows of centered math.

```

9423 \def\setmrowcenter #1\{\%
9424     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax%
9425     \else \centerline{\setmcellcenter #1&\&\&\&}
9426         \let\NEXT=\setmrowcenter
9427     \fi\NEXT}
9428 %

```

**\setttrowcenter** Typeset (recursively) rows of centered text.

```

9429 \def\setttrowcenter #1\{\%
9430     \ifx #1& \let\NEXT\relax
9431     \else \centerline{\setttcellcenter #1&\&\&\&}
9432         \let\NEXT=\setttrowcenter
9433     \fi\NEXT}
9434 %
9435 %

```

**\nullsetzen**<sup>36</sup> \newcommand{\nullsetzen}{\%

```

9437     \stepl@dc@colcount%
9438     \l@dc@colwidth=0pt%
9439     \ifnum\l@dc@colcount=30\let\NEXT\relax%
9440         \l@dc@colcount=0\relax
9441     \else\let\NEXT\nullsetzen%
9442     \fi\NEXT}
9443 %
9444 %

```

**\edatleft** \edatleft[ $\langle math \rangle$ ]{ $\langle symbol \rangle$ }{ $\langle len \rangle$ }. Left  $\langle symbol \rangle$ ,  $2\langle len \rangle$  high with prepended  $\langle math \rangle$  vertically centered.

```

9445 \newcommand{\edatleft}[3][\@empty]{\%
9446     \ifx#1\@empty
9447         \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{\$ \left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
9448             depth 0pt \right. \$\hss}\vfil}
9449     \else
9450         \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{\$#1\left#2\vrule width0pt height #3
9451             depth 0pt \right. \$}\vfil}
9452     \fi}
9453 %

```

**\edatright** \edatright[ $\langle math \rangle$ ]{ $\langle symbol \rangle$ }{ $\langle len \rangle$ }. Right  $\langle symbol \rangle$ ,  $2\langle len \rangle$  high with appended  $\langle math \rangle$  vertically centered.

```

9454 \newcommand{\edatright}[3][\@empty]{\%
9455     \ifx#1\@empty
9456         \vbox to 10pt{\vss\hbox{\$ \left.\vrule width0pt height #3
9457             depth 0pt \right#2 \$\hss}\vfil}

```

```

9458 \else
9459 \vbox to 4pt{\vss\hbox{$\left.\vrule width0pt height #3
9460         depth 0pt \right#2 #1 $\}\vfil}
9461 \fi}
9462
9463 %

```

**\edvertline** `\edvertline{<len>}` vertical line <len> high.

```

9464 \newcommand{\edvertline}[1]{\vbox to 8pt{\vss\hbox{\vrule height #1}\vfil}}
9465
9466 %

```

**\edvertdots** `\edvertdots{<len>}` vertical dotted line <len> high.

```

9467 \newcommand{\edvertdots}[1]{\vbox to 1pt{\vss\vbox to #1%
9468     {\cleaders\hbox{$\math\hbox{.}\vbox to 0.5em{ }\$}\vfil}}}
9469
9470 %

```

**\l@dtabaddcols** `\l@dtabaddcols{<startcol>}{<endcol>}` adds the widths of the columns <startcol> through <endcol> to `\edfilldimen`. It is a  $\text{\LaTeX}$  style reimplementation of the original `\@add@`.

```

9471 \newcommand{\l@dtabaddcols}[2]{%
9472 \l@dccheckstartend{#1}{#2}%
9473 \ifl@dstartendok
9474 \setcounter{addcolcount}{#1}%
9475 \@whilenum \value{addcolcount}<#2\relax \do
9476 {\advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
9477 \advance\edfilldimen by \edtabcolsep
9478 \stepcounter{addcolcount}}%
9479 \advance\edfilldimen by \the \csname dcol\theaddcolcount\endcsname
9480 \fi
9481 }
9482
9483 %

```

**\ifl@dstartendok** `\l@dccheckstartend{<startcol>}{<endcol>}` checks that the values of <startcol> and <endcol> are sensible. If they are then `\ifl@dstartendok` is set TRUE, otherwise it is set FALSE.

```

9484 \newif\ifl@dstartendok
9485 \newcommand{\l@dccheckstartend}[2]{%
9486 \l@dstartendoktrue
9487 \ifnum #1<\@ne
9488 \l@dstartendokfalse
9489 \led@err@LowStartColumn
9490 \fi
9491 \ifnum #2>30\relax
9492 \l@dstartendokfalse

```

```

9493 \led@err@HighEndColumn
9494 \fi
9495 \ifnum #1>#2\relax
9496 \l@dstartendokfalse
9497 \led@err@ReverseColumns
9498 \fi
9499 }
9500
9501 %

```

**\edrowfill** **\edrowfill{<startcol>}{<endcol>}** fill fills columns *<startcol>* to *<endcol>* inclusive with *<fill>* (e.g. `\hrulefill`, `\upbracefill`). This is a  $\TeX$  style reimplementation and generalization of the original `\waklam`, `\Waklam`, `\waklamec`, `\wastricht` and `\wapunktel` macros.

```

9502 \newcommand*{\edrowfill}[3]{%
9503 \l@dtabaddcols{#1}{#2}%
9504 \hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hb@xt@ \the\edfilldimen{#3}\hss}}
9505 \let\@edrowfill=\edrowfill
9506 \def\@EDROWFILL@#1#2#3{\@edrowfill@{#1}{#2}{#3}}
9507
9508 %

```

**\edbeforetab** The macro `\edbeforetab{<text>}{<math>}` puts *<text>* at the left margin before array cell entry *<math>*. Conversely, the macro `\edaftertab{<math>}{<text>}` puts *<text>* at the right margin after array cell entry *<math>*. `\edbeforetab` should be in the first column and `\edaftertab` in the last column. The following macros support these.

**\leftltab** `\leftltab{<text>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ltab`.

```

9509 \newcommand{\leftltab}[1]{%
9510 \hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
9511 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}}
9512
9513 %

```

**\leftrtab** `\leftrtab{<text>}{<math>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\rtab`.

```

9514 \newcommand{\leftrtab}[2]{%
9515 #2\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
9516 \advance\Hilfsskip by\dcoli%
9517 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}}
9518
9519 %

```

**\leftctab** `\leftctab{<text>}{<math>}` for `\edbeforetab` in `\ctab`.

```

9520 \newcommand{\leftctab}[2]{%
9521 \hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%

```

```

9522 \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\dcoli%
9523 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9524 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
9525 \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
9526 \moveleft\Hilfsskip\hbox{\ #1}}\hss}%
9527 #2}
9528
9529 %

```

**\rightctab** `\rightctab{<math><math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\ctab`.

```

9530 \newcommand{\rightctab}[2]{%
9531 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9532 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
9533 #1\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
9534 \advance\Hilfsskip by 0.5\l@dcolwidth%
9535 \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%
9536 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9537 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9538 \advance\Hilfsskip by -0.5\wd\hilfsbox%
9539 \advance\Hilfsskip by \edtabcolsep%
9540 \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
9541 }
9542
9543 %

```

**\rightltab** `\rightltab{<math><math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\ltab`.

```

9544 \newcommand{\rightltab}[2]{%
9545 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9546 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}\l@dampcount=\l@dcolcount%
9547 #1\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%
9548 \advance\Hilfsskip by \l@dcolwidth%
9549 \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%
9550 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9551 \disablel@dtabfeet$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9552 \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%
9553 \advance\Hilfsskip by \edtabcolsep%
9554 \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
9555 }
9556
9557 %

```

**\rightrtab** `\rightrtab{<math><math>}{<text>}` for `\edaftertab` in `\rtab`.

```

9558 \newcommand{\rightrtab}[2]{%
9559 \setbox\hilfsbox=\hbox{\def\edlabel##1}%
9560 \disablel@dtabfeet#2}%
9561 #1\hb@xt@\z@\vbox{\edtabindent%
9562 \advance\Hilfsskip by -\wd\hilfsbox%

```

```

9563         \advance\Hilfsskip by\edtabcolsep%
9564         \moveright\Hilfsskip\hbox{ #2}}\hss}%
9565     }
9566
9567 %

```

**\rtab** `\rtab{⟨body⟩}` typesets `⟨body⟩` as an array with the entries right justified.

**\edbeforetab** The process is first to measure the `⟨body⟩` to get the column widths, and then in a

**\edaftertab** second pass to typeset the body.

```

9568 \newcommand{\rtab}[1]{%
9569     \l@dnnullfills
9570     \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\lefttrtab{##1}{##2}}%
9571     \def\edaftertab##1##2{\righttrtab{##1}{##2}}%
9572     \measuretbody{#1}%
9573     \l@drestorefills
9574     \variab
9575     \setmrowright #1\&\&%
9576     \enablel@dtabfeet}
9577
9578 %

```

**\measuretbody** `\measuretbody{⟨body⟩}` measures the array `⟨body⟩`.

```

9579 \newcommand{\measuretbody}[1]{%
9580     \disablel@dtabfeet%
9581     \l@dcolcount=0%
9582     \nullsetzen%
9583     \l@dcolcount=0
9584     \measuremrow #1\&\&%
9585     \global\l@dampcount=1}
9586
9587 %

```

**\rtabtext** `\rtabtext{⟨body⟩}` typesets `⟨body⟩` as a tabular with the entries right justified.

```

9588 \newcommand{\rtabtext}[1]{%
9589     \l@dnnullfills
9590     \measuretbody{#1}%
9591     \l@drestorefills
9592     \variab
9593     \settroright #1\&\&%
9594     \enablel@dtabfeet}
9595
9596 %

```

**\measuretbody** `\measuretbody{⟨body⟩}` measures the tabular `⟨body⟩`.



```

9597 \newcommand{\measuretbody}[1]{%
9598   \disable@notes%
9599   \disablel@dtabfeet%
9600   \l@dcolcount=0%
9601   \nullsetzen%
9602   \l@dcolcount=0
9603   \measuretrrow #1\\&\\%
9604   \restore@notes%
9605   \global\l@dampcount=1}
9606
9607 %

```

**\ltab** Array with entries left justified.

```

\edbeforetab
\edaftertab
9608 \newcommand{\ltab}[1]{%
9609   \l@dnnullfills
9610   \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftltab{##1}{##2}}%
9611   \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightltab{##1}{##2}}%
9612   \measuretbody{#1}%
9613   \l@drestorefills
9614   \variab
9615   \setmrowleft #1\\&\\%
9616   \enablel@dtabfeet}
9617
9618 %

```

**\ltabtext** Tabular with entries left justified.

```

9619 \newcommand{\ltabtext}[1]{%
9620   \l@dnnullfills
9621   \measuretbody{#1}%
9622   \l@drestorefills
9623   \variab
9624   \settrrowleft #1\\&\\%
9625   \enablel@dtabfeet}
9626
9627 %

```

**\ctab** Array with centered entries.

```

\edbeforetab
\edaftertab
9628 \newcommand{\ctab}[1]{%
9629   \l@dnnullfills
9630   \def\edbeforetab##1##2{\leftctab{##1}{##2}}%
9631   \def\edaftertab##1##2{\rightctab{##1}{##2}}%
9632   \measuretbody{#1}%
9633   \l@drestorefills
9634   \variab
9635   \setmrowcenter #1\\&\\%
9636   \enablel@dtabfeet}
9637
9638 %

```

`\ctabtext` Tabular with entries centered.

```

9639 \newcommand{\ctabtext}[1]{%
9640   \l@dnnullfills
9641   \measuretbody{#1}%
9642   \l@drestorefills
9643   \variab
9644   \setrowcenter #1\\&\\%
9645   \enablel@dtabfeet}
9646
9647 %

```

`\spreadtext` 48 `\newcommand{\spreadtext}[1]{%\l@dcolcount=\l@dampcount%`  
`\hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{#1}\hss}}`  
`%`

`\spreadmath` 51 `\newcommand{\spreadmath}[1]{%`  
`\hb@xt@ \the\l@dcolwidth{\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}\hss}}`  
`%`

`\HILFSskip` More helpers.

`\Hilfsskip`  
`\newskip\HILFSskip`  
`\newskip\Hilfsskip`  
`%`

`\EDTABINDENT` 59 `\newcommand{\EDTABINDENT}{%`  
`\ifnum\l@dcolcount=30\let\NEXT\relax\l@dcolcount=0%`  
`\else\step\l@dcolcount%`  
`\advance\Hilfsskip by\l@dcolwidth%`  
`\ifdim\l@dcolwidth=0pt\advance\hilfscount\@ne`  
`\else\advance\Hilfsskip by \the\hilfscount\edtabcolsep%`  
`\hilfscount=1\fi%`  
`\let\NEXT=\EDTABINDENT%`  
`\fi\NEXT}%`  
`%`

`\edtabindent` (was `\tabindent`)

```

9669 \newcommand{\edtabindent}{%
9670   \l@dcolcount=0\relax
9671   \Hilfsskip=0pt%
9672   \hilfscount=1\relax
9673   \EDTABINDENT%
9674   \hilfsskip=\hsize%

```

```

9675 \advance\hilfsskip -\Hilfsskip%
9676 \Hilfsskip=0.5\hilfsskip%
9677 }%
9678
9679 %

```

**\EDTAB** (was \TAB)

```

9680 \def\EDTAB #1|#2|{%
9681 \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#1}$}%
9682 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{$\displaystyle{#2}$}%
9683 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
9684 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
9685 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
9686 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%
9687
9688 %

```

**\EDTABtext** (was \TABtext)

```

9689 \def\EDTABtext #1|#2|{%
9690 \setbox\tabhilfbox=\hbox{#1}%
9691 \setbox\tabHilfbox=\hbox{#2}%
9692 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabhilfbox%
9693 \advance\tabelskip -\wd\tabHilfbox%
9694 \unhbox\tabhilfbox\hskip\tabelskip%
9695 \unhbox\tabHilfbox}%
9696 %

```

**\tabhilfbox** Further helpers.

**\tabHilfbox**

```

9697 \newbox\tabhilfbox
9698 \newbox\tabHilfbox
9699
9700 %

```

### XXXII.2.4 Environments

**edarrayl edarrayc edarrayr** The ‘environment’ forms for \ltab, \ctab and \rtab.

```

9701 \newenvironment{edarrayl}{\l@dcollect@body\ltab}{\}
9702 \newenvironment{edarrayc}{\l@dcollect@body\ctab}{\}
9703 \newenvironment{edarrayr}{\l@dcollect@body\rtab}{\}
9704
9705 %

```

**edtabularl edtabularc edtabularr** The ‘environment’ forms for \ltabtext, \ctabtext and \rtabtext.

```

9706 \newenvironment{edtabularl}{\l@collect@body\ltabtext}{\}
9707 \newenvironment{edtabularc}{\l@collect@body\ctabtext}{\}
9708 \newenvironment{edtabularr}{\l@collect@body\rtabtext}{\}
9709
9710 %

```

## XXXIII Quotation's commands

`\initnumbering@quote` This macro, called at the beginning of any numbered section, locally redefines the quotation and quote environments, in order to allow their use inside of numbered sections.

```

\quotation \initnumbering@quote defines quotation environment.
\endquotation
\quote
\endquote
9711 \newcommand{\initnumbering@quote}{
9712   \ifnoquotation@
9713   \renewcommand{\quotation}{\par\leavevmode%
9714     \parindent=1.5em%
9715     \skipnumbering%
9716     \ifautopar%
9717       \vskip-\parskip%
9718     \else%
9719       \vskip\topsep%
9720     \fi%
9721     \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
9722     \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
9723   }
9724   \renewcommand{\endquotation}{\par%
9725     \global\leftskip=0pt%
9726     \global\rightskip=0pt%
9727     \leavevmode%
9728     \skipnumbering%
9729     \ifautopar%
9730       \vskip-\parskip%
9731     \else%
9732       \vskip\topsep%
9733     \fi%
9734   }
9735   \renewcommand{\quote}{\par\leavevmode%
9736     \parindent=0pt%
9737     \skipnumbering%
9738     \ifautopar%
9739       \vskip-\parskip%
9740     \else%
9741       \vskip\topsep%
9742     \fi%
9743     \global\leftskip=\leftmargin%
9744     \global\rightskip=\leftmargin%
9745   }

```

```

9746 \renewcommand{\endquote}{\par%
9747 \global\leftskip=0pt%
9748 \global\rightskip=0pt%
9749 \leavevmode%
9750 \skipnumbering%
9751 \ifautopar%
9752 \vskip-\parskip%
9753 \else%
9754 \vskip\topsep%
9755 \fi%
9756 }
9757 \fi
9758 }
9759 %

```

## XXXIV Section's title commands

### XXXIV.1 Commands to disable some feature

**\ledsectnotoc** The `\ledsectnotoc` only disables the `\addcontentsline` macro.

```

9760 \newcommand{\ledsectnotoc}{\let\addcontentsline\@gobblethree}
9761 %

```

**\ledsectnomark** The `\ledsectnomark` only disables the `\chaptermark`, `\sectionmark` and `\subsectionmark` macros.

```

9762 \newcommand{\ledsectnomark}{%
9763 \let\chaptermark\@gobble%
9764 \let\sectionmark\@gobble%
9765 \let\subsectionmark\@gobble%
9766 }
9767 %

```

### XXXIV.2 General overview

The system of `\eledxxxx` commands to section text work like this:

1. When one of these commands is called, `reledmac` writes to an auxiliary files:
  - The section level.
  - The section title.
  - The side (when `reledpar` is used).
  - The pstart where the command is called.
  - If we have starred version or not.
2. `reledmac` adds the title of the section to pstart, as normal content. This is to enable critical notes.

3. When  $\LaTeX$  is run a other time, this file is read. That:

- Adds the pstart number to a list of pstarts where a sectioning command is used.
- Defines a command, the name of which contains the pstart number, and which calls the normal  $\LaTeX$  sectioning command.

4. This last command is called when the pstart is effectively printed.

### XXXIV.3 `\beforeeledchapter` command

We do not define commands for `\eledsection` and related if the `noeledsec` option is loaded. We use `etoolbox` tests and not the `\ifxxx...\else...\fi` structure to prevent problem of expansions with command after the `\ifxxx` which contains `\fi`. As we patch command inside this test, we need to change the category code of # character *before* `\notbool` statement, because the second argument is read with the standard `catcode` (read *The TeXbook* to understand when the `catcode`'s change has effect).

```
9768 \catcode`\#=12
9769 \notbool{@noeled@sec}{%
9770 %
```

`\beforeeledchapter` For technical reasons, not yet solved, page-breaking before chapters can't be made automatically by `eledmac`. Users have to use `\beforeeledchapter`.

```
9771 \ifl@dmemoir
9772 \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{%
9773 \clearforchapter%
9774 }
9775 \else
9776 \newcommand\beforeeledchapter{%
9777 \if@openright%
9778 \cleardoublepage%
9779 \else%
9780 \clearpage%
9781 \fi%
9782 }
9783 \fi
9784 %
```

### XXXIV.4 Auxiliary commands

`\print@leftmargin@eledsection` `\print@leftmargin@eledsection` and `\print@rightmargin@eledsection` are added by `reledmac` inside the code of sectioning command, in order to affix lines numbers. They include tests for RTL languages.

```
9785 \def\print@rightmargin@eledsection{%
9786 \if@eled@sectioning%
9787 \begingroup%
```

```

9788 \if@RTL%
9789 \let\llap\rlap%
9790 \let\leftlinenum\rightlinenum%
9791 \let\leftlinenumR\rightlinenumR%
9792 \let\l@drd@ta\l@dld@ta%
9793 \let\l@drsn@te\l@dlsn@te%
9794 \fi%
9795 \hfill\l@drd@ta \csuse{LR}{\l@drsn@te}%
9796 \endgroup%
9797 \fi%
9798 }%
9799
9800 \def\print@leftmargin@eledsection{%
9801 \if@eled@sectioning%
9802 \leavevmode%
9803 \begingroup%
9804 \if@RTL%
9805 \let\rlap\llap%
9806 \let\rightlinenum\leftlinenum%
9807 \let\rightlinenumR\leftlinenumR%
9808 \let\l@dld@ta\l@drd@ta%
9809 \let\l@dlsn@te\l@drsn@te%
9810 \fi%
9811 \l@dld@ta\csuse{LR}{\l@dlsn@te}%
9812 \endgroup%
9813 \fi%
9814 }%
9815
9816 %

```

## XXXIV.5 Patching standard commands

`\M@ssect`  
`\@mem@old@ssect`  
`\@makechapterhead`  
`\@makechapterhead`  
`\@makeschapterhead`  
`\@ssect`  
`\@ssect`

We have to patch `LATEX`, book and memoir sectioning commands in order to:

- Disable `\edtext` inside.
- Disable page breaking (for `\chapter`).
- Add line numbers and sidenotes.

Unfortunately, Maïeul Rouquette was not able to try if memoir is loaded. That is why `eledmac` tries to define for both standard class and memoir class.

```

9817 \AtBeginDocument{%
9818
9819
9820 \pretocmd{\M@ssect}
9821 {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
9822 \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
9823 }

```

```

9824 {}
9825 {}
9826
9827 \apptocmd{\M@sect}
9828 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
9829 {}
9830 {}
9831
9832 \patchcmd{\M@sect}
9833 { #9}
9834 { #9%
9835 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9836 }
9837 {}
9838 {}
9839
9840 \patchcmd{\M@sect}
9841 {\hskip #3\relax}
9842 {\hskip #3\relax%
9843 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9844 }
9845 {}
9846 {}
9847
9848 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
9849 {#5}
9850 {#5%
9851 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9852 }
9853 {}
9854 {}
9855
9856 \patchcmd{\@mem@old@ssect}
9857 {\hskip #1}
9858 {\hskip #1%
9859 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9860 }
9861 {}
9862 {}
9863
9864
9865
9866 \patchcmd{\scr@startchapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{%
9867 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
9868 \ifl@dprintingpages\else%
9869 \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi%No clearpage inside a
9870 \Pages: will keep critical notes from printing on the title page. Here for
\fi%

```



```

9871 \fi%
9872 }
9873 {}
9874 {}
9875
9876 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}
9877   {#1}
9878   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9879     #1%
9880   \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9881   }
9882   {}
9883   {}
9884
9885 \patchcmd{\@makechapterhead}% For BIDI
9886   {\if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi}%
9887   {\if@eled@sectioning\else%
9888     \if@RTL\raggedleft\else\raggedright\fi%
9889   \fi%
9890   }%
9891   {}%
9892   {}%
9893
9894 \patchcmd{\@makeschapterhead}
9895   {#1}
9896   {\print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9897     #1%
9898   \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9899   }
9900   {}
9901   {}
9902
9903 \pretocmd{\@sect}
9904   {\let\old@edtext=\edtext
9905   \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
9906   }
9907   {}
9908   {}
9909
9910 \apptocmd{\@sect}
9911   {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
9912   {}
9913   {}
9914
9915 \pretocmd{\@ssect}
9916   {\let\old@edtext=\edtext%
9917   \let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma%
9918   }
9919   {}
9920   {}

```

```

9921 \apptocmd{\@ssect}
9922 {\let\edtext=\old@edtext}
9923 {}
9924 {}
9925 {}
9926
9927 %

```

hyperref also redefines \@sect. That is why, when manipulating arguments, we patch \@sect and the same only if hyperref is not used. If it is, we patch the \NR commands.

```

9928 \@ifpackageloaded{nameref}{
9929
9930   \patchcmd{\NR@sect}
9931     {#8}
9932     {#8%
9933       \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9934     }
9935     {}
9936     {}
9937
9938   \patchcmd{\NR@sect}
9939     {\hskip #3\relax}
9940     {\hskip #3\relax%
9941       \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9942     }
9943     {}
9944     {}
9945
9946   \patchcmd{\NR@ssect}
9947     {#5}
9948     {#5%
9949       \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9950     }
9951     {}
9952     {}
9953
9954   \patchcmd{\NR@ssect}
9955     {\hskip #1}
9956     {\hskip #1%
9957       \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9958     }
9959     {}
9960     {}
9961   }%
9962   {
9963     \patchcmd{\@sect}
9964       {#8}
9965       {#8%
9966         \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9967       }

```

```

9968 {}
9969 {}
9970
9971 \patchcmd{\@sect}
9972 {\hskip #3\relax}
9973 {\hskip #3\relax%
9974 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9975 }
9976 {}
9977 {}
9978
9979 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
9980 {#5}
9981 {#5%
9982 \print@rightmargin@eledsection%
9983 }
9984 {}
9985 {}
9986
9987 \patchcmd{\@ssect}
9988 {\hskip #1}
9989 {\hskip #1%
9990 \print@leftmargin@eledsection%
9991 }
9992 {}
9993 {}
9994 }%
9995 }%
9996 %

```

Close the `\notbool{@noeled@sec}` statement. Also, we have finished patching the commands, using `#` with a catcode equal to 12, so we are restoring the normal catcode for `#`.

```

9997 {}}%
9998 \protect\catcode`\#=6 %Space NEEDS by \catcode
9999 %

```

**\chapter** We patch the `\chapter` command even if the `noeledsec` option is called, because we can use `\chapter` in the optional argument of a `\pstart` in parallel typesetting.

```

10000 \AtBeginDocument{%
10001 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\clearforchapter}{%
10002 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
10003 \ifl@dprintingpages\else%
10004 \clearforchapter%
10005 \fi%
10006 \fi%
10007 }%
10008 {}%
10009 {}%

```

```

10010 \patchcmd{\chapter}{\if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}{%
10011 \if@eled@sectioning\else%
10012 \ifl@dprintingpages%
10013 \endgraf%
10014 \else%
10015 \if@openright\cleardoublepage\else\clearpage\fi}%No clearpage inside a
10016 \Pages: will keep critical notes from printing on the title page. Here for
classical classes
10017 \fi%
10018 \fi%
10019 }%
10020 {}%
10021 {}%
10022 }%
10023 %

```

**\if@eled@sectioning** The boolean \if@eled@sectioning is set to true when a sectioning command is called by a \eledxxx command, and set to false after. It is used to enable/disable line number printing.

```

10024 \newif\if@eled@sectioning%
10025 %

```

We reopen a new \notbool{@noeled@sec} statement, as we will define the \elesection commands.

```

10026 \notbool{@noeled@sec}{%
10027 %

```

## XXXIV.6 Main code of \eledxxx commands

**\eled@sectioning@out** \eled@sectioning@out is the output file, to dump the pstarts where a sectioning command is used.

```

10028 \newwrite\eled@sectioning@out
10029 %

```

**\eledchapter** And now, the user sectioning commands, which write to the file, and also add content as a “normal” line.

```

10030 \eledsection \newcommand{\eledchapter}[2] [] {%
10031 \disable@familiarnotes%
10032 #2%
10033 \restore@familiarnotes%
10034 \eledsubsection* \ifl@Rcol%
10035 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10036 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumstartR}{R}
10037 }%

```

```

10038 \else%
10039 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10040 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{-}{-}%
10041 }%
10042 \fi%
10043 }
10044
10045 \newcommand{\eledsection}[2][{}]{%
10046 \disable@familiarnotes%
10047 #2%
10048 \restore@familiarnotes%
10049 \ifledRcol%
10050 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10051 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dumpstartsR}{-}{R}
10052 }%
10053 \else%
10054 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10055 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{-}{-}%
10056 }%
10057 \fi%
10058 }
10059
10060 \newcommand{\eledsubsection}[2][{}]{%
10061 \disable@familiarnotes%
10062 #2%
10063 \restore@familiarnotes%
10064 \ifledRcol%
10065 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10066 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dumpstartsR}{-}{R}
10067 }%
10068 \else%
10069 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10070 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{-}{-}
10071 }%
10072 \fi%
10073 }
10074 \newcommand{\eledsubsubsection}[2][{}]{%
10075 \disable@familiarnotes%
10076 #2%
10077 \restore@familiarnotes%
10078 \ifledRcol%
10079 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10080 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dumpstartsR}
10081 }{-}{R}
10082 }%
10083 \else%
10084 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10085 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}

```

```

}{}{}%
10085 }%
10086 \fi%
10087 }
10088
10089
10090 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledchapter*[2] [] {%
10091 \disable@familiarnotes%
10092 #2%
10093 \restore@familiarnotes%
10094 \ifledRcol%
10095 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10096 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
10097 }%
10098 \else%
10099 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10100 \string\eled@chapter{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{*}{}%
10101 }%
10102 \fi%
10103 }
10104
10105 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsection*[2] [] {%
10106 \disable@familiarnotes%
10107 #2%
10108 \restore@familiarnotes%
10109 \ifledRcol%
10110 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10111 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{R}
10112 }%
10113 \else%
10114 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10115 \string\eled@section{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L}{*}{}%
10116 }%
10117 \fi%
10118 }
10119
10120 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsection*[2] [] {%
10121 \disable@familiarnotes%
10122 #2%
10123 \restore@familiarnotes%
10124 \ifledRcol%
10125 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10126 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dnumpstartsR}{*}{
R}
10127 }%
10128 \else%
10129 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10130 \string\eled@subsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L
}{*}{}%
10131 }%

```

```

10132 \fi%
10133 }
10134
10135 \WithSuffix\newcommand\eledsubsubsection*[2] [] {%
10136 \disable@familiarnotes%
10137 #2%
10138 \restore@familiarnotes%
10139 \ifledRcol%
10140 \immediate\write\eled@sectioningR@out{%
10141 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\l@dumpstartsR
10142 }{*}{R}
10143 }%
10144 \else%
10145 \immediate\write\eled@sectioning@out{%
10146 \string\eled@subsubsection{#1}{\unexpanded{#2}}{\the\pstarts@read@L
10147 }{*}{}}%
10148 }%
10149 \fi%
10150 }
10151 %

```

### XXXIV.7 Macros written in the auxiliary file

`\eled@chapter`  
`\eled@section`  
`\eled@subsection`  
`\eled@subsubsection`

The sectioning macros, called in the auxiliary file. They have five arguments:

1. Optional arguments of  $\LaTeX$  sectioning command.
2. Mandatory arguments of  $\LaTeX$  sectioning command.
3. Pstart number.
4. Side: R if right, nothing if left.
5. Starred or not.

```

10150 \def\eled@chapter#1#2#3#4#5{%
10151 \ifstrempy{#4}%
10152 {%
10153 \ifstrempy{#1}%
10154 {%
10155 \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter{#2}}%
10156 \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark
{#2}}%
10157 }%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
10158 {%
10159 \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter[#1]{#2}}%
10160 \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\chaptermark
{#2}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.

```

```

10161     }%
10162   }%
10163   {%
10164     \ifstrempy{#1}%
10165     {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter*{#2}}}%
10166     {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext@showlemma\
chapter*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
10167   }%
10168   \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
10169   }
10170 \def\eled@section#1#2#3#4#5{%
10171   \ifstrempy{#4}%
10172     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10173       {%
10174         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section{#2}}%
10175         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark
{#2}}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
10176       }%
10177       {%
10178         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section[#1]{#2}}%
10179         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\sectionmark
{#1}}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox.
10180       }%
10181     }%
10182     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10183       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#2}}}%
10184       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\section*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!
10185     }
10186     \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
10187   }
10188 \def\eled@subsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
10189   \ifstrempy{#4}%
10190     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10191       {%
10192         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection{#2}}%
10193         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{
subsectionmark}{#2}}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox. \csuse in
case of \subsectionmark is not defined (book)
10194       }%
10195       {%
10196         \csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection[#1]{#2}}%
10197         \csgdef{eled@sectmark@#3#5}{\let\edtext=\dummy@edtext{}\csuse{
subsectionmark}{#1}}}%Need for \pairs, because of using parbox. \csuse in
case of \subsectionmark is not defined (book)
10198       }%
10199     }%
10200     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10201       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#2}}}%
10202       {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsection*{#1}{#2}}}%Bug in LaTeX!

```



```

10203     }
10204     \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
10205     }
10206 \def\eled@subsubsection#1#2#3#4#5{%
10207     \ifstrempy{#4}%
10208     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10209      {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection{#2}}}%
10210      {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection[#1]{#2}}}%
10211     }%
10212     {\ifstrempy{#1}%
10213      {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*{#2}}}%
10214      {\csgdef{eled@sectioning@#3#5}{\subsubsection*[#1]{#2}}}%Bug in
LaTeX!
10215     }
10216     \listcsgadd{eled@sections#5@@}{#3}%
10217     }
10218
10219 %

```

End of the conditional test about noeledsec option.

```

10220 }{}
10221 %

```

## XXXV Page breaking or no page breaking depending of specific lines

By default, page breaks are automatic. However, the user can define lines which will force page breaks, or prevent page breaks around one specific line. On the first run, the line-list file records the line number of where the page break is being changed (either forced, or prevented). On the next run, page breaks occur either before or after this line, depending on how the user sets the command. The default setting is after the line.

**\normal@page@break** \normal@page@break is an etoolbox list which contains the absolute line number of the last line, for each page.

```

10222 \def\normal@page@break{}
10223 %

```

**\prev@pb** The \l@prev@pb macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines in which page breaks occur (before or after). The **\prev@nopb** macro is a etoolbox list, which contains the lines with NO page break before or after.

```

10224 \def\l@prev@pb{}
10225 \def\l@prev@nopb{}
10226 %

```

`\ledpb` The `\ledpb` macro writes the call to `\led@pb` in line-list file. The `\ledpbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@pbnum` in line-list file. The `\lednopb` macro writes the call to `\led@nopb` in line-list file. The `\lednopbnum` macro writes the call to `\led@nopbnum` in line-list file.

```

10227 \newcommand{\ledpb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pb}}
10228 \newcommand{\ledpbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@pbnum{#1}}}
10229 \newcommand{\lednopb}{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopb}}
10230 \newcommand{\lednopbnum}[1]{\write\linenum@out{\string\led@nopbnum{#1}}}
10231 %

```

`\led@pb` The `\led@pb` adds the absolute line number in the `\prev@pb` list. The `\led@pbnum` adds the argument in the `\prev@pb` list. The `\led@nopb` adds the absolute line number in the `\prev@nopb` list. The `\led@nopbnum` adds the argument in the `\prev@nopb` list.

```

10232 \newcommand{\led@pb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{\the\absline@num}}
10233 \newcommand{\led@pbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@pb}{#1}}
10234 \newcommand{\led@nopb}{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{\the\absline@num}}
10235 \newcommand{\led@nopbnum}[1]{\listxadd{\l@prev@nopb}{#1}}
10236 %

```

`\ledpbsetting` The `\ledpbsetting` macro only changes the value of `\led@pb@macro`, for which the default value is before.

`\led@pb@setting`

```

10237 \def\led@pb@setting{before}
10238 \newcommand{\ledpbsetting}[1]{\gdef\led@pb@setting{#1}}
10239 %

```

`\led@check@pb` The `\led@check@pb` and `\led@check@nopb` are called before or after each line. They check if a page break must occur, depending on the current line and on the content of `\l@pb`.

`\led@check@nopb`

```

10240 \newcommand{\led@check@pb}{\xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@pb}{\pagebreak[4]}}
10241 \newcommand{\led@check@nopb}{%
10242   \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
10243     \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}{%
10244       {\numdef{\abs@prevline}{\the\absline@num-1}}%
10245       \xifinlist{\abs@prevline}{\normal@page@break}{%
10246         {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}%
10247       }%
10248     }%
10249   }%
10250 }%
10251 \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
10252   \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\l@prev@nopb}{%
10253     \xifinlist{\the\absline@num}{\normal@page@break}{%
10254       {\nopagebreak[4]\enlargethispage{\baselineskip}}%
10255     }%
10256 }%

```

```

10257     {}}%
10258     {}%
10259     {}%
10260 }
10261 %

```

## XXXVI Long verse: prevents being separated by a page break

`\iflednopbinverse` The `\lednopbinverse` boolean is set to false by default. If set to true, `reledmac` will automatically prevent page breaks inside verse. The declaration is made at the beginning of the file, because it is used as a package option.

`\check@pb@in@verse` The `\check@pb@in@verse` checks if a verse is broken in two page. If true, it adds:

- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@pb` list, if the page break must occur before the verse.
- The absolute line number of the first line of the verse -1 in the `\led@nopb` list, if the page break must occur after the verse.

```

10262 \newcommand{\check@pb@in@verse}{%
10263   \ifinstanza\iflednopbinverse\ifinserthangingsymbol% Using stanzas and
    enabling page breaks in verse control, while on a hanging verse.
10264   \ifnum\page@num=\last@page@num\else%If we have change page
10265     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{before}{%
10266       \numdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
10267       \ledpbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
10268     }{}%
10269     \IfStrEq{\led@pb@setting}{after}{%
10270       \numdef{\abs@line@verse}{\the\absline@num-1}%
10271       \lednopbnum{\abs@line@verse}%
10272     }{}%
10273   \fi%
10274 \fi\fi\fi%
10275 }
10276 %

```

## XXXVII Tools for hyperref package

`\Hy@raisedlink@left` The `hyperref` package provides a `\Hy@raisedlink` command, to be used to add an anchor to the top of a line and not to the bottom of it.<sup>36</sup>

<sup>36</sup><http://tex.stackexchange.com/a/17138/7712>.

However, this command disrupts the line breaking mechanism when it is called before any word. This is why `reledmac` defines `\Hy@raisedlink@left` that is called to the left of words, at the beginning of `\edtext` or inside the `\edlabel` commands.<sup>37</sup>

```

10277 \def\Hy@raisedlink@left#1{%
10278   \ifvmode
10279     #1%
10280   \else
10281     \Hy@SaveSpaceFactor
10282     \llap{\smash{%
10283       \begingroup
10284         \let\HyperRaiseLinkLength\@tempdima
10285         \setlength\HyperRaiseLinkLength\HyperRaiseLinkDefault
10286         \HyperRaiseLinkHook
10287       \expandafter\endgroup
10288       \expandafter\raise\the\HyperRaiseLinkLength\hbox{%
10289         \Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor
10290         #1%
10291         \Hy@SaveSpaceFactor
10292       }%
10293     }}%
10294     \Hy@RestoreSpaceFactor
10295     \penalty\@M\hskip\z@ \relax
10296   \fi
10297 }
10298 %

```

## XXXVIII Compatibility with eledmac

Here, we define some commands for the `eledmac-compat` option.

```

10299 \ifeledmaccompat%
10300
10301   \newcommand{\footnormalX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{normal}}%
10302   \newcommand{\footparagraphX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{paragraph}}%
10303   \newcommand{\foottwocolX}[1]{\arrangementX[#1]{twocol}}%
10304   \newcommand{\footthreecolX}[1]{\XarrangementX[#1]{threecol}}%
10305
10306   \unless\ifnocritical@
10307     \newcommand{\footnormal}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{normal}}%
10308     \newcommand{\footparagraph}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{paragraph}}%
10309     \newcommand{\foottwocol}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{twocol}}%
10310     \newcommand{\footthreecol}[1]{\Xarrangement[#1]{threecol}}%
10311     \let\hsizetwocol\Xhsizetwocol
10312     \let\hsizethreecol\Xhsizethreecol
10313     \let\bhookXnote\Xbhooknote

```

<sup>37</sup>The code is inspired by an answer given by @unbonpetit. Thanks to him. <http://texnique.fr:80/osqa/questions/781/hyraisedlink-perturbe-la-maniere-dont-se-fait-la-coupure-de-ligne/801>.

```

10314 \let\boxsymlinenum\Xboxsymlinenum
10315 \let\symlinenum\Xsymlinenum
10316 \let\beforenumberinfootnote\Xbeforenumber
10317 \let\afternumberinfootnote\Xafternumber
10318 \let\beforeXsymlinenum\Xbeforesymlinenum
10319 \let\afterXsymlinenum\Xaftersymlinenum
10320 \let\inplaceofnumber\Xinplaceofnumber
10321 \let\Xlemmaseparator\lemmaseparator
10322 \let\afterlemmaseparator\Xafterlemmaseparator
10323 \let\beforelemmaseparator\Xbeforelemmaseparator
10324 \let\inplaceoflemmaseparator\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator
10325 \let\txbeforeXnotes\Xtxbeforenotes
10326 \let\afterXrule\Xafterrule
10327 \let\numberonlyfirstinline\Xnumberonlyfirstinline
10328 \let\numberonlyfirstintwolines\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines
10329 \let\nonumberinfootnote\Xnonumberinfootnote
10330 \let\pstartinfootnote\Xpstart
10331 \let\pstartinfootnoteeverytime\Xpstarteverytime
10332 \let\onlyXpstart\Xonlypstart
10333 \let\Xnonumberinfootnote\Xnonumber
10334 \let\nonbreakableafternumber\Xnonbreakableafternumber
10335 \let\maxhXnotes\Xmaxhnotes
10336 \let\beforeXnotes\Xbeforenotes
10337 \let\boxlinenum\Xboxlinenum
10338 \let\boxlinenumalign\Xboxlinenumalign
10339 \let\boxstartlinenum\Xboxstartlinenum
10340 \let\boxendlinenum\Xboxendlinenum
10341 \let\twolines\Xtwolines
10342 \let\morethantwolines\Xmorethantwolines
10343 \let\twolinesbutnotmore\Xtwolinesbutnotmore
10344 \let\twolinesonlyinsamepage\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage
10345 \fi
10346
10347 \unless\ifnofamiliar@
10348 \let\notesXwidthliketwocolumns\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX
10349 \fi
10350 \newcommandx{\parafootsep}[2][1,usedefault]{%
10351 \Xparafootsep[#1]{#2}%
10352 \parafootsepX[#1]{#2}
10353 }%
10354
10355 \newcommandx{\afternote}[2][1,usedefault]{%
10356 \Xafternote[#1]{#2}%
10357 \afternoteX[#1]{#2}%
10358 }%
10359
10360 \unless\ifnoend@
10361 \let\XendXtwolines\Xendtwolines
10362 \let\XendXmorethantwolines\Xendmorethantwolines
10363 \let\bhookXendnote\Xendbhooknote

```

```

10364 \let\boxXendlinenum\Xendboxlinenum%
10365 \let\boxXendlinenumalign\Xendboxlinenumalign%
10366 \let\boxXendstartlinenum\Xendboxstartlinenum%
10367 \let\boxXendendlinenum\Xendboxendlinenum%
10368 \let\XendXlemmaseparator\Xendlemmaseparator
10369 \let\XendXbeforelemmaseparator\Xendbeforelemmaseparator
10370 \let\XendXafterlemmaseparator\Xendafterlemmaseparator
10371 \let\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator
10372 \fi
10373
10374 \AtBeginDocument{%
10375   \ifdef\lineref{}\let\lineref\edlineref%
10376 }%
10377
10378
10379 \fi%
10380 %

```

</code>

## Appendix A Things to do when changing versions

### A.1 Migrating from edmac to ledmac

If you have never used edmac, ignore this section. If you have used edmac and are starting on a completely new document, ignore this section. Only read this section if you are converting an original edmac document to use ledmac.

The package still provides the original `\text` command, but it is (a) deprecated, and (b) its name has been changed<sup>38</sup> to `\critext`; use the `\edtext` macro instead. However, if you do use `\critext` (the new name for `\text`), the following is a reminder.

`\critext` Within numbered paragraphs, footnotes and endnotes are generated by forms of the `\critext` macro:

```
\critext{⟨lemma⟩}{⟨commands⟩/}
```

The `⟨lemma⟩` argument is the lemma in the main text: `\critext` both prints this as part of the text, and makes it available to the `⟨commands⟩` you specify to generate notes. The `/` at the end terminates the command; it is part of the macro's definition so that spaces after the macro will be treated as significant.

For example:

<pre>I saw my friend \critext{Smith} \Afootnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.</pre>	<pre>1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D.</pre>
---	---

The lemma Smith is printed as part of this sentence in the text, and is also made available to the footnote that specifies a variant, Jones C, D. The footnote macro is supplied with the line number at which the lemma appears in the main text.

The `⟨lemma⟩` may contain further `\critext` commands. Nesting makes it possible to print an explanatory note on a long passage together with notes on variants for individual words within the passage. For example:

<pre>\critext{I saw my friend \critext{Smith}{\Afootnote{Jones C, D.}/ on Tuesday.} \Bfootnote{The date was July 16, 1954.} /}</pre>	<pre>1 I saw my friend 2 Smith on Tuesday. 2 Smith] Jones C, D. 1-2 I saw my friend Smith on Tuesday.] The date was July 16, 1954.</pre>
--	--

However, `\critext` cannot handle overlapping but unnested notes—for example, one note covering lines 10–15, and another covering 12–18; a `\critext` that starts in the `⟨lemma⟩` argument of another `\critext` must end there, too. (The `\lemma` and `\linenum` commands may be used to generate overlapping notes if necessary.)

The second argument of the `\critext` macro, `⟨commands⟩`, is the same as the second argument to the `\edtext` macro.

It is possible to define aliases for `\critext`, which can be easier to type. You can make a single character substitute for `\critext` by saying this:

```
\catcode'\<=\active
```

<sup>38</sup>A name like `\text` is likely to be defined by other  $\TeX$  packages (it certainly is by the AMS packages) and it seems sensible to try and avoid clashes with other definitions.

```
\let<=\critext
```

Then you might say `<{Smith}\variant{Jones}/`. This of course destroys the ability to use `<` in any new macro definitions, so long as it remains in effect; hence it should be used with care.

Changing the character at the end of the command requires more work:

```
\catcode'\<=\active
\def\xtext#1#2>{\critext{#1}{#2}/}
\let<=\xtext
```

This allows you to say `<{Smith}\Afootnote{Jones}>`.

Aliases for `\critext` of the first kind shown here also can't be nested—that is, you can't use the alias in the text that forms the first argument to `\critext`. (See VI p. 138 to find out why.) Aliases of the second kind may be nested without any problem.

If you really have to use `\critext` in any of the tabular or array environments, then `\edtext` must not be used in the same environment. If you use `\critext` in one of these environments then you have to issue the declaration `\usingcritext` beforehand. The declaration `\usingedtext` must be issued to revert to the default assumption that `\edtext` will be used.

## A.2 Migration from ledmac to eledmac

In `eledmac`, some changes were made in the code to allow easy customization. This may cause problems for people who have already made their own. The next sections explain how to handle this.

If you have created your own series using `\addfootins` and `\addfootinsX`, you must use instead the `\newseries` command (see 6.7.1 p. 41), and remove any `\Xfootnote` command.

If you have customized the `\XXXXXfmt` command, please check whether you can achieve the same by the commands documented for display options (7 p. 43) or `\Xfootnote` options (6.2.2 p. 30). Otherwise please add a new ticket on Github to request a new function for doing this.<sup>39</sup>

If for some reason you do not want to make the modifications to use the new functions of `eledmac`, you can continue using your own `\XXXXXfmt` command, but you must replace:

```
\renewcommand*{XXXXfmt}[3]
```

with

```
\renewcommandx*{XXXXfmt}[4][4=Z]
```

---

<sup>39</sup><https://github.com/maieul/ledmac/issues>



If you do not make that, you will get a spurious [X], where X is series letter.

If you used a `\protect` command inside a `\footnote` command inside a numbered section, you must change the `\protect` to `\noexpand`. Otherwise the command after the `\protect` will be discarded.

### A.3 Migration to *eledmac* 1.5.1

The version 1.5.1 corrects a bug in `stanzaindentsrepetition` (cf. 9.3 p. 58). This bug had two consequences:

1. `stanzaindentsrepetition` did not work when its value was greater than 2.
2. `stanzaindentsrepetition` worked wrong when its value was equal to 2.

So, if you used `stanzaindentsrepetition` with a value equal to 2, you had to change your `\setstanzaindents`. Explanation:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
```

This code, in versions prior to 1.5.1, made the first line have an indentation of 0, the second line of 1, the third verse of 0, the fourth verse of 1 and so forth.

But this code should have instead achieved quite the contrary: the first line would have an indentation of 1, the second line of 0, the third line of 1, the fourth line of 0 and so forth.

So version 1.5.1 corrected this bug. If you want to keep the former presentation, you must change:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,1,0}
```

to:

```
\setcounter{stanzaindentsrepetition}{2}
\setstanzaindents{5,0,1}
```

### A.4 Migration to *eledmac* 1.12.0

The migration to *eledmac* 1.12.0 is easy:

- You must first delete all the auxiliary files, then compile your document three times as usual.
- If you have modified `\l@reg`, which is not advisable, you must rename it to `\@nl@reg`.

There is an additional problem. If you have put text into brackets just after `\pstart` or `\pend`, this text will be considered to be an optional argument of `\pstart` or `\pend` (see 5.2.3 p. 19). If so, add a `\relax` between `\pstart`/`\pend` and the first bracket.

The version 1.12.0 also introduce a better way to handle sectional divisions inside numbered text. Please read 16.2 p. 76.

## A.5 Migration to eledmac 17.1

This version changes the default setting of `\Xpstart`. Henceforth, `pstart` numbers will be printed in footnotes within the section of text where you have called `\numberpstarttrue`.

We do not see any reason to print them in the other sections. However, if you want to print the `\pstart` numbers in every footnote, whatever the section, without having to use `\numberpstarttrue`, you can use `\Xpstarteverytime`.

## A.6 Migration to eledmac 1.21.0

### A.6.1 `\Xledsetnormalparstuff` and `\ledsetnormalparstuffX`

The `\ledsetnormalparstuff` has been split into two different commands:

- `\Xledsetnormalparstuff` for critical notes;
- `\ledsetnormalparstuffX` for familiar notes.

Both commands can take an optional argument which is the series letter. If you have redefined `\ledsetnormalparstuff` or any of the commands which call them, you must change them accordingly.

### A.6.2 Endnotes

In any case, delete the `.end` file before the next run.

The previous version of Eledmac had a bug: there were two spaces between the starting page number and the starting line number, but only one space between the ending page number and the ending line number.

As a matter of fact, a spurious space was added after the first `\printnnum`. This spurious space has been deleted. However, if you want to keep the previous spurious space, you may load the package with the `oldprintnnumspace` option.

If you have redefined `\endprint`, you must:

- Contact us and ask for the feature that required your hack, in order to avoid such a hack in the future.
- Use the new fifth argument.
- Add `\xdef\@currentseries{#4}` at the beginning of your own command.

## A.7 Migration to eledmac 1.22.0

The `\ledinnote` command now takes a first optional argument, which is the label for the hyperreference. If you have redefined it, change your redefinition, and check whether you can avoid this redefinition by only redefining `\ledinnotemark`.

## A.8 Migration to eledmac 1.23.0

You must delete the numbered auxiliary files before compiling with the new version of eledmac.

## A.9 Migration from eledmac to reledmac

There are many changes in reledmac which require the user to make modifications.

### A.9.1 Risk of ‘no room for a new’

The risk to obtain a ‘no room for a new something’ error is greater in reledmac than it is in eledmac. See 19.1.3 p. 79 in order to know how to limit it.

### A.9.2 Multiple indices with memoir

Eledmac and ledmac used the specific indexing tools of the memoir class designed to produce multiple indices. However, eledmac could also use imakeidx or indextools tools independently of the memoir class. This system forced to maintain redundant code. Since reledmac, we use only the imakeidx or indextools tools.

Consequently: Users of memoir are invited to use indextool or imakeidx to produce multiple indices.

### A.9.3 Deprecated commands and options

The table of deprecated commands and their alternatives follows. Note that the way some commands must be used may have changed. Please read the handbook.

<i>Deprecated command</i>	<i>Replaced with</i>
<code>\addfootins</code>	<code>\newseries</code>
<code>\addfootinsX</code>	<code>\newseries</code>
<code>\critext</code>	<code>\edtext</code>
<code>\falseverse</code>	<code>\newverse</code>
<code>\interparanoteglue</code>	<code>\Xafternote</code> and <code>\afternoteX</code>
<code>\ledchapter</code>	<code>\eledchapter</code>
<code>\ledsection</code>	<code>\eledsection</code>
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuff</code>	<code>\Xledsetnormalparstuff</code> and <code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code>
<code>\ledsubsection</code>	<code>\eledsubsection</code>
<code>\ledsubsubsection</code>	<code>\eledsubsubsection</code>
<code>\noeledsec</code>	Package option <code>noeledsec</code>
<code>\noendnotes</code>	Package option <code>noendnotes</code>
<code>\pageparbreak</code>	<code>\ledpb</code>

The `ledsecnolinenumber` option has been removed, because it was related to deprecated commands.

The `oldprintnpnumspace` option has been removed too, because it was related to a historical bug. The `\usingedtext` and `\usingcritext` commands are also deprecated.

#### A.9.4 `\renewcommand` replaced by command

Many uses of `\renewcommand` have been replaced with uses of specific commands. Please read handbook about specific commands.

<i>Deprecated <code>\renewcommand</code></i>	<i>Replaced with</i>
<code>\@led@extranofeet</code>	<code>\newseries</code>
<code>\apprefprefixmore</code>	<code>\setapprefprefixmore</code>
<code>\apprefprefixsingle</code>	<code>\setapprefprefixsingle</code>
<code>\endstanzaextra</code>	Optional argument of <code>\&amp;</code>
<code>\hangingsymbol</code>	<code>\sethangingsymbol</code>
<code>\ledfootinsdim</code>	<code>\Xmaxhnotes</code> and <code>\maxhnotesX</code>
<code>\parafootftmsep</code>	<code>\Xparafootsep</code> and <code>\parafootsepX</code>
<code>\notenumfont</code>	<code>\Xnotenumfont</code> , <code>\Xendnotenumfont</code> and <code>\notenumfontX</code>
<code>\notefontsetup</code>	<code>\Xnotefontsize</code> , <code>\Xendnotefontsize</code> and <code>\notefontsizeX</code>
<code>\sidenotesep</code>	<code>\setsidenotsep</code>
<code>\startstanzahook</code>	Optional argument of <code>\stanza</code>
<code>\symplinenum</code>	<code>\Xsymplinenum</code>

#### A.9.5 Commands the names of which have been changed

In order to help the migration from `eledmac` to `reledmac`, you may load `reledmac` with `eledmac-compat` option. However, it is advised not to, and to change the command names themselves instead. In many cases, you use only a few of them, except the `\footparagraph` command.

<i>Old command</i>	<i>New command</i>
<code>\footparagraph</code>	<code>\Xarrangement</code>
<code>\footnormal</code>	<code>\Xarrangement</code>
<code>\foottwocol</code>	<code>\Xarrangement</code>
<code>\footthreecol</code>	<code>\Xarrangement</code>
<code>\footparagraphX</code>	<code>\arrangementX</code>
<code>\footnormalX</code>	<code>\arrangementX</code>
<code>\foottwocolX</code>	<code>\arrangementX</code>
<code>\footthreecolX</code>	<code>\arrangementX</code>
<code>\afterlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xafterlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\afternote</code>	<code>\Xafternote</code> and <code>\afternoteX</code>
<code>\afternumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xafternumber</code>
<code>\afterXrule</code>	<code>\Xafterrule</code>
<code>\afterXsymplinenum</code>	<code>\Xaftersymplinenum</code>
<code>\beforelemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xbeforelemmaseparator</code>
<code>\beforenumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xbeforenumber</code>
<code>\beforeXnotes</code>	<code>\Xbeforenotes</code>
<code>\beforeXsymplinenum</code>	<code>\Xbeforesymplinenum</code>

<i>Old command</i>	<i>New command</i>
<code>\bhookXnote</code>	<code>\Xbhookendnote</code>
<code>\bhookXnote</code>	<code>\Xbhooknote</code>
<code>\boxendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxendlinenum</code>
<code>\boxlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxlinenum</code>
<code>\boxlinenumalign</code>	<code>\Xboxlinenumalign</code>
<code>\boxstartlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxstartlinenum</code>
<code>\boxsymlinenum</code>	<code>\Xboxsymlinenum</code>
<code>\boxXendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xendboxlinenum</code>
<code>\boxXendlinenumalign</code>	<code>\Xendboxlinenumalign</code>
<code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code>	<code>\boxXendstartlinenum</code>
<code>\letboxXendendlinenum</code>	<code>\Xendletboxendlinenum</code>
<code>\hsizetwocol</code>	<code>\Xhsizetwocol</code>
<code>\hsizethreecol</code>	<code>\Xhsizethreecol</code>
<code>\inplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>
<code>\inplaceofnumber</code>	<code>\Xinplaceofnumber</code>
<code>\lemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\maxhXnotes</code>	<code>\Xmaxhnotes</code>
<code>\morethantwolines</code>	<code>\Xmorethantwolines</code>
<code>\nonumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xnonumber</code>
<code>\notesXwidthliketwocolumns</code>	<code>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</code>
<code>\noXlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xnolemmaseparator</code>
<code>\numberonlyfirstinline</code>	<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code>
<code>\numberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code>
<code>\nonbreakableafternumber</code>	<code>\Xnonbreakableafternumber</code>
<code>\onlyXpstart</code>	<code>\Xonlypstart</code>
<code>\parafootsep</code>	<code>\Xparafootsep</code> and <code>\parafootsepX</code>
<code>\pstartinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xpstart</code>
<code>\pstartinfootnoteeverytime</code>	<code>\Xpstarteverytime</code>
<code>\symlinenum</code>	<code>\Xsymlinenum</code>
<code>\twolines</code>	<code>\Xtwolines</code>
<code>\twolinesbutnotmore</code>	<code>\Xtwolinesbutnotmore</code>
<code>\twolinesonlyinsamepage</code>	<code>\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code>
<code>\txtbeforeXnotes</code>	<code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code>
<code>\XendXafterlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendafterlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXbeforelemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendbeforelemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXlemmaseparator</code>	<code>\Xendlemmaseparator</code>
<code>\XendXmorethantwolines</code>	<code>\Xendmorethantwolines</code>
<code>\XendXtwolines</code>	<code>\Xendtwolines</code>
<code>\Xnonumberinfootnote</code>	<code>\Xnonumber</code>
<code>\lineref</code>	<code>\edlineref</code>

### A.9.6 Endnotes

With `reledmac`, there is now one auxiliary file for each endnotes set (`.Aend`, `.Bend`, `.Cend` etc.). If you have overridden `\doendnotes` (which you should not have done) you must adapt your code.

### A.9.7 Z Series

The ‘Z’ series of notes has been removed. Only five series are provided now by default: A, B, C, D, E.

### A.9.8 Internal commands

Users who have overridden internal commands, which is wrong, must adapt according to the following. Or better, they should not override any of such commands and use `reledmac` options instead.

- If you have modified `\Xfootfmt`, note that the fourth argument is now mandatory.
- `\unvxh` has been replaced with `\Xunvxh` and `\unvxhX` with two mandatory arguments.

### A.10 Migration to `reledmac 2.1.0`

`Reledmac 2.1.0` fix some bugs when using `\Xbhooknote` and `\bhooknoteX` not in order to execute code at the beginning of each notes, but to insert content of at the beginning of each notes.

People who use these commands to do it, which is not the original idea, must change the following:

1. Horizontal space is no longer automatically added after the content of the `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX` argument. You must include it manually. So instead of `\Xbhooknote{content}`, use `\Xbhooknote{content }.`
2. Indent is no longer automatically added before the content of the `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX` argument. If you want to keep it, add `\indent` to the argument of `\Xbhooknote/\bhooknoteX`.

### A.11 Migration to `reledmac 2.1.3`

`Reledmac 2.1.3` fix an historical bug, (style in `ledmac 0.7!`) which doubled the space before the rules of paragraphed familiar footnotes. Consequently, if you use paragraphed familiar footnotes, you should maybe adapt it, playing with `\beforenotesX`.

### A.12 Migration to `reledmac 2.3.0`

Before `reledmac 2.3.0`, for typesetting verse, any empty line was considered a paragraph inside verses. Counting empty lines this created breaking verse, hanging verses, and also added spurious vertical spaces. Version 2.3.0 disables paragraph in stanza. If you want vertical space, use the optional argument of `\stanza` or `\endverse`.

**A.13 Migration to reledmac 2.4.0**

It is not mandatory, but strongly recommended, to change any `\renewcommand{\endashchar}{\langle...\rangle}` to the use of `\Xlinerrangeseparator` or `/` and `\Xendlinerrangeseparator` (7.2.5 p. 46).

**A.14 Migration to reledmac 2.5.0**

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\printnpnum` and to use the hooks documented in 7.2.4 p. 46.

`\xlineref` does not print anymore the side flag (R for right side), because it is incompatible with numerical test. Use `\xflagref` to obtain it.

The `\printlines` and `\printendlines` commands take now an eighth argument, which is the side flag. It is strongly recommended to NEVER redefine these two commands and to use the setting commands instead (or to ask for new setting commands if the actual does not answer to your needs). However, if you have done it, just change your redefinition to have a new argument.

It is strongly recommended to stop redefining `\fullstop` and to use `\Xsublinesep` instead.

**A.15 Migration to reledmac 2.7.0**

`\Serefonlypage` (introduced in reledmac 2.5.0) added an parenthesis after the page number. This was just an error, linked to a bad imitation of `\Serefwithpage`. That has been deleted. And so, the `\XendafterpagenumberSerefonlypage` to set it was also deleted.

`\rigidbalance` is split to two new commands: `\Xrigidbalance` for critical footnotes and `\rigidbalanceX` for familiar footnotes. If you have redefined it — but why should you have ? —, you should split your single redefinition in two redefinitions.

**A.16 Migration to reledmac 2.7.2**

`\Xhsize` is already defined in the `floatrow` package. It becomes `\Xwidth`, and, consequently, `\hsizeX` becomes `\widthX`.

The ancient names are temporarily maintained as aliases.

**A.17 Migration to reledmac 2.8.0**

Reledmac 2.8.0 fix spurious indents for paragraphed critical and familiar footnotes in `ledgroup` and `minipage`. You can re-establish the indent with `\Xparindent` and `\parindentX`.

**A.18 Migration to reledmac 2.13.1**

Reledmac 2.5.0 added a bug, which makes the right flag to be printed on the right side of critical footnotes, even if not explicitly requested by using `\Xlineflag`.

Version 2.13.1 solves this issue. Please use `\Xlineflag` if you want to add the right flag.

### A.19 Migration to reledmac 2.18.0

After updating reledmac, and before any new compilation, you need to clean your `.aux` files, if you use `\edlabel` or related.

### A.20 Migration to reledmac 2.21.0

Previously, there was a bug, which meant that the description in the handbook was incorrect. If you wrote

```
The \edtext{creature\edindex{elephant} was quite
  unafraid}{\Afootnote{Of the mouse, that is.}}
```

“elephant” was indexed in the main text and in the critical footnotes. With the new version of reledmac, it is indexed only in main text. If you also want to index it in critical footnotes, do

```
The \edtext{creature\edindex{elephant} was quite
  unafraid}{\Afootnote{\edindex{elephant}Of the mouse, that is.}}
```

### A.21 Migration to reledmac 2.24.0

When using `\labelpstarttrue`, a spurious space<sup>a</sup> was introduced after the `pstart` number (only for normal typesetting, not while typesetting in parallel). The new version of the package has deleted this spurious space. If you consider that it was NOT a spurious space, you should add it manually in your definition of `\thepstart`.

### A.22 Migration to reledmac 2.26.0

You must delete your `.aux` file after having upgraded to this new version of reledmac.

### A.23 Migration to reledmac 2.27.1

This release fixes spurious space in `\hidenumbering`. If you considered this spurious space as normal, you must insert it manually using.

```
xx\hidenumbering\ xx
```

To get the space after `xx`.

### A.24 Migration to reledmac 2.30.0

If you have multiple annotations for the same line, these are now separated with a comma in the margin. You can use `\setlinenumannotationsep` to change the separator.



### A.25 Migration to reledmac 2.31.1

If you use `\Xgroupbyline`, the indentation of the notes has been deleted, in order to have the same behavior as for normal critical notes.

Use `\Xparindent` to restore indentation.

### A.26 Migration to reledmac 2.32.7

For paragraphed familiar footnotes, the separator between notes was `\Xparafootsep` instead of `\parafootsepX`. This release fixes this bug. You may adapt your settings.

### A.27 Migration to reledmac 2.33.0

You should not redefine anymore `\ledinnotemark`, but use instead `\innotemarkX` and `\xinnotemark`.

If you have personal script which parses for `\ledinnote` or if you redefine `\ledinnote` (but normally, you should not), this macro have new arguments. Look at the code for more details.

## Appendix B Auxiliary softwares

This appendix lists some software and tools related to reledmac that may be useful.

### B.1 *samewords*

The *samewords* program (Michael Stenskjær Christensen) automatically adds `\sameword` commands (6.3 p. 33) into a `.tex` file.

<https://samewords.readthedocs.io/en/latest/>

### B.2 critical-keys for *Emacs*

The *Emacs* editor has a package to help inserting reledmac's commands (Juan Manuel Macías Chaín).

<https://gitlab.com/maciaschain/critical-keys>

### B.3 critical-marks for *Emacs*

A set of functions for *Emacs* that run in the export process from Org Mode to LaTeX and replace a series of simple textual marks with the basic reledmac's commands (Juan Manuel Macías Chaín) <https://gitlab.com/maciaschain/critical-marks>

### B.4 Import from TEI

### B.5 Import from TEI

There are multiple tools to convert from XML-TEI to *reledmac*. Here is a non exhaustive-list:

- <http://ciham-digital.huma-num.fr/teicat/>
- [https://github.com/fizzbucket/tei\\_transformer](https://github.com/fizzbucket/tei_transformer)
- <https://github.com/TEIC/Stylesheets>
- <http://lombardpress.org/print/>
- <https://github.com/Jean-Baptiste-Camps/TEItoLaTeX>

Please, tell us if you know of other tools.

## References

- [Bre96] Herbert Breger. `tabmac`. October 1996. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/tabmac`)
- [Bur01] John Burt. ‘Typesetting critical editions of poetry’. *TUGboat*, **22**, 4, pp 353–361, December 2001. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/poemscol`)
- [Eck03] Matthias Eckermann. *The Parallel-Package*. April 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/parallel`)
- [Fai03] Robin Fairbairns. *footmisc—a portmanteau package for customising footnotes in L<sup>A</sup>T<sub>E</sub>X*. February 2003. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/footmisc`)
- [LW90] John Lavagnino and Dominik Wujastyk. ‘An overview of edmac: a PLAIN TeX format for critical editions’. *TUGboat*, **11**, 4, pp. 623–643, November 1990. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Lüc03] Uwe Lück. ‘ednotes—critical edition typesetting with LaTeX’. *TUGboat*, **24**, 2, pp. 224–236, 2003. (Code available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ednotes`)
- [Sul92] Wayne G. Sullivan. *The file edstanza.doc*. June 1992. (Available from CTAN in `macros/plain/contrib/edmac`)
- [Wil02] Peter Wilson. *The memoir class for configurable typesetting*. November 2002. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/memoir`)
- [Wil04] Peter Wilson and Maïeul Rouquette. *Parallel typesetting for critical editions: the eledpar package*. December 2004. (Available from CTAN in `macros/latex/contrib/ledmmac`)

## Index

### Symbols

<code>\&amp;</code>	57
<code>\@EDROWFILL@</code>	1
<code>\@adv</code>	1
<code>\@advancestanzaanumber</code>	1
<code>\@annot</code>	1
<code>\@annot@end@print</code>	1
<code>\@annot@start@print</code>	1
<code>\@beforeinsertofthisedtext</code>	1
<code>\@check@edtext@args</code>	1
<code>\@doclearpage</code>	1
<code>\@doreinfeetX</code>	1

<code>\@edindex@fornote@</code>	1
<code>\@edindex@hyperref</code>	1
<code>\@edrowfill@</code>	1
<code>\@edtext@level</code>	1
<code>\@emptytoks</code>	1
<code>\@fnpos</code>	1
<code>\@footnotemark</code>	1
<code>\@footnotetext</code>	1
<code>\@getfirstseries</code>	1
<code>\@gobblefour</code>	1
<code>\@gobbleseven</code>	1
<code>\@gobblethree</code>	1
<code>\@h</code>	1
<code>\@hangingsymbol</code>	1
<code>\@iiiminipage</code>	1
<code>\@insertstanzanumber</code>	1
<code>\@insidethisline</code>	1
<code>\@k</code>	1
<code>\@l@dttempcnta</code>	1
<code>\@l@dttempcntb</code>	1
<code>\@lab</code>	1
<code>\@led@testifnofoot</code>	1
<code>\@lemma</code>	1
<code>\@line@num</code>	1
<code>\@linenumannotationsep</code>	1
<code>\@lock</code>	1
<code>\@lopL</code>	1
<code>\@lopR</code>	1
<code>\@makechapterhead</code>	1
<code>\@makeschapterhead</code>	1
<code>\@mem@extranofeet</code>	1
<code>\@mem@old@ssect</code>	1
<code>\@mpfnpos</code>	1
<code>\@msd</code>	1
<code>\@msd@c</code>	1
<code>\@msd@options@iffullpage</code>	1
<code>\@msdata@list</code>	1
<code>\@nl</code>	1
<code>\@nl@reg</code>	1
<code>\@opXfeet</code>	1
<code>\@outputpage</code>	1
<code>\@page</code>	1
<code>\@pend</code>	1
<code>\@pendR</code>	1
<code>\@ref</code>	1
<code>\@ref@reg</code>	1
<code>\@ref@reg@parse</code>	1
<code>\@sect</code>	1
<code>\@series</code>	1
<code>\@set</code>	1

\@sidenoteseop	1
\@ssect	1
\@startstanza	1
\@stopmsd	1
\@stopstanza	1
\@sw	1
\@tag	1
\@wredindex	1
\@xloop	1
\@xympar	1
CLASSarticle	79
CLASSbook	79, 383
CLASSmemoir	225, 226, 292, 293, 295, 330, 383, 403, 468, 472
CLASSscrbook	472
COMMAND\*footnote	80
COMMAND\...\@footnotemark...	229
COMMAND\...d@ta	166
COMMAND\<hook	
@<series	278
COMMAND\<hookname	
<pseudoseries	280, 281
COMMAND\<type	
footfmt	212
COMMAND\@@line	202
COMMAND\@MM	188, 469
COMMAND\@Rlineflag	332, 469
COMMAND\@Srefprefix	309
COMMAND\@Srefprefixmore	309
COMMAND\@add@	373
COMMAND\@adv	121
COMMAND\@annot	173
COMMAND\@annot@end@print	216
COMMAND\@annot@start@print	216, 220, 259
COMMAND\@apprefprefixmore	309
COMMAND\@apprefprefixsingle	309
COMMAND\@beforeinsertofthisedtext	144, 145
COMMAND\@bsphack	297
COMMAND\@doclearpage	293, 462, 472
COMMAND\@doreinfeetX	472
COMMAND\@dprintingcolumns	469
COMMAND\@edindex@hyperref	332–334
COMMAND\@edtext@level	142
COMMAND\@esphack	297
COMMAND\@firstofone	38
COMMAND\@fnpos	247, 289
COMMAND\@footnotemark	226, 462, 472
COMMAND\@footnotetext	226, 227, 462
COMMAND\@gobble	27, 37, 140, 173, 272
COMMAND\@gobblefive	471
COMMAND\@gobblefour	468

COMMAND\@gobbleseven	275
COMMAND\@gobblethree	461
COMMAND\@h	205
COMMAND\@hangingsymbol	338
COMMAND\@iiiminipage	321, 323, 461, 472
COMMAND\@iiiminpage	321
COMMAND\@l	466
COMMAND\@l@tempcnta	170, 174, 182
COMMAND\@l@tempcntb	174
COMMAND\@l@reg	466
COMMAND\@lab	117, 297, 300, 304, 461
COMMAND\@ldunboxmpfoot	324
COMMAND\@led@extranofeet	404
COMMAND\@ledinnote@command	328
COMMAND\@lemma	144, 147
COMMAND\@lock	111, 339
COMMAND\@lopL	462
COMMAND\@lopR	462
COMMAND\@makecol	288, 289, 292, 472
COMMAND\@mempnum	295
COMMAND\@mpfnpos	247
COMMAND\@msd	349, 350
COMMAND\@msd@c	349
COMMAND\@msd@options@iffullpage	356
COMMAND\@msdata@list	349, 351
COMMAND\@nl	117–122, 132, 173, 300, 461, 462
COMMAND\@nl@reg	118, 401, 462, 466
COMMAND\@opXfeet	462
COMMAND\@opfeetX	472
COMMAND\@opextrafeeti	472
COMMAND\@outputpage	294, 295
COMMAND\@page	118, 119, 300
COMMAND\@pend	462
COMMAND\@pendR	462
COMMAND\@ref	117, 127–129, 133, 134, 139
COMMAND\@ref@later	129, 135
COMMAND\@ref@reg	128, 173, 462
COMMAND\@ref@reg@parsearg	129
COMMAND\@reinserts	288, 290, 292, 472
COMMAND\@secondoftwo	81
COMMAND\@sect	386
COMMAND\@series	277
COMMAND\@set	122
COMMAND\@sidenotesep	320
COMMAND\@stopmsd	350
COMMAND\@sw	129, 149, 152, 153
COMMAND\@tag	141, 142, 147
COMMAND\@tempcnta	95
COMMAND\@tempcntb	95
COMMAND\@this@crossref@start	225

COMMAND\@toksa	102
COMMAND\@toksb	102
COMMAND\@xloop	183
COMMAND\@xympar	313, 472
COMMAND\Aendnote	17, 30
COMMAND\Afootfmt	188
COMMAND\Afootgroup	188
COMMAND\Afootnote	9, 17, 29, 30, 33, 143, 196, 225, 248, 267, 471
COMMAND\Afootstart	188
COMMAND\AtBeginDocument	292
COMMAND\AtEndEveryPend	20, 478
COMMAND\AtEveryPend	19, 20, 61, 160, 468, 470, 472, 478
COMMAND\AtEveryPend*	20
COMMAND\AtEveryPstart	19, 20, 61, 468, 470, 472, 475, 478
COMMAND\AtEveryPstart*	20
COMMAND\AtEveryStanza	60, 476, 478
COMMAND\AtEveryStopStanza	61, 476, 478
COMMAND\AtStartEveryPstart	20, 478
COMMAND\AtStartEveryStanza	60, 478
COMMAND\BeforeEveryStopStanza	61, 478
COMMAND\Bendnote	17, 29
COMMAND\Bfootnote	9, 17, 225, 248, 267
COMMAND\Centering	53
COMMAND\Cfootnote	225
COMMAND\Columns	95, 156, 193
COMMAND\Dfootnote	225
COMMAND\Efootnote	225
COMMAND\Gls	72
COMMAND\Hy@raisedlink	395
COMMAND\Hy@raisedlink@left	396
COMMAND\LTR	53
COMMAND\NR	386
COMMAND\Pages	95, 156, 290, 291, 294
COMMAND\ProcessOptionsX	85
COMMAND\RL	52
COMMAND\RaggedLeft	53
COMMAND\RaggedRight	53
COMMAND\RenewExpandableDocumentCommand	38, 151
COMMAND\SEonlypage	306, 474
COMMAND\SEref	65–68, 306, 309, 475, 477, 481
COMMAND\SErefonlypage	65–68, 407, 474
COMMAND\SErefwithpage	65, 67, 68, 306, 309, 407, 474, 476
COMMAND\Stanza	467
COMMAND\Waklam	374
COMMAND\X@doreinfect	290, 472
COMMAND\XR@prefix	313
COMMAND\XR@test	312, 313
COMMAND\XR@test@mac	313
COMMAND\XR@test@mac@test	313
COMMAND\XXXXXXfmt	400

COMMAND\XXXXXfmt	400
COMMAND\Xafterenumber	48
COMMAND\Xafterlemmaseparator	50, 404
COMMAND\Xafternote	53, 54, 403, 404
COMMAND\Xafternumber	48, 404
COMMAND\Xafterrule	55, 248, 404, 467, 470
COMMAND\Xaftersymlinenum	48, 404
COMMAND\Xarrangement	43, 54, 80, 189, 279, 404
COMMAND\Xarrangement@footparagraph	195
COMMAND\Xarrangement@normal	189
COMMAND\Xarrangement@paragraph	194
COMMAND\Xbeforeinserting	52, 53
COMMAND\Xbeforelemmaseparator	50, 404
COMMAND\Xbeforenotes	55, 248, 404, 467, 470
COMMAND\Xbeforenumber	48, 404
COMMAND\Xbeforesymlinenum	48, 404
COMMAND\Xbhookendnote	405
COMMAND\Xbhookgroup	55, 474, 475
COMMAND\Xbhooknote	52, 405, 406, 472, 473
COMMAND\Xboxendlinenum	49, 405, 471
COMMAND\Xboxlinenum	48, 49, 405
COMMAND\Xboxlinenumalign	49, 405, 471
COMMAND\Xboxstartlinenum	49, 405, 471
COMMAND\Xboxsymlinenum	49, 405
COMMAND\Xcolalign	53, 470
COMMAND\Xdo@feet	472, 477
COMMAND\Xemdnoidenticallinenumannotation	67
COMMAND\Xend	275
COMMAND\XendXafterlemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\XendXbeforelemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\XendXinplaceoflemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\XendXlemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\XendXmorethantwolines	405
COMMAND\XendXtwolines	405
COMMAND\Xendafterenumber	48, 473
COMMAND\Xendafterlemmaseparator	50, 405
COMMAND\Xendafternote	56, 475
COMMAND\Xendafternumber	49
COMMAND\Xendafterpagenumbe	476
COMMAND\Xendafterpagenumber	46, 67
COMMAND\XendafterpagenumberSErefonlypage	407
COMMAND\Xendaftersymlinenum	48, 50, 473
COMMAND\Xendahookinplaceofnumber	50, 473
COMMAND\Xendahooklinenum	49, 473
COMMAND\Xendbeforelemmaseparator	50, 405
COMMAND\Xendbeforelinenum	49
COMMAND\Xendbeforenumber	48, 473
COMMAND\Xendbeforepagenumber	46, 66, 67
COMMAND\XendbeforepagenumberSErefonlypage	66
COMMAND\Xendbeforesymlinenum	48, 50, 473



COMMAND\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber	50, 473
COMMAND\Xendbhooklinenum	49, 473
COMMAND\Xendbhooknote	52
COMMAND\Xendboxendlinum	49, 471
COMMAND\Xendboxlinenum	49, 405, 469
COMMAND\Xendboxlinenumalign	49, 405, 471
COMMAND\Xendboxstartlinenum	49, 471
COMMAND\Xendboxsymlinenum	49, 473
COMMAND\Xendhangindent	52, 473, 475
COMMAND\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator	31, 50, 405
COMMAND\Xendinplaceofnumber	48, 472
COMMAND\Xendinplaceofpagenumber	45, 477
COMMAND\Xendinsertsep@	255
COMMAND\Xendlemmadisablefontselection	51
COMMAND\Xendlemmafont	51, 474
COMMAND\Xendlemmaseparator	31, 50, 405
COMMAND\Xendletboxendlinum	405
COMMAND\Xendlineflag	67
COMMAND\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst	45, 259, 481
COMMAND\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo	45, 259, 481
COMMAND\Xendlinenumannotationposition	27, 67
COMMAND\Xendlineprefixmore	46, 67
COMMAND\Xendlineprefixsingle	46, 67
COMMAND\Xendlinangeseparator	46, 67, 210, 407, 473
COMMAND\Xendmorethantwolines	31, 47, 67, 405, 470, 471
COMMAND\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation	28, 259, 480
COMMAND\Xendnonumber	47, 472
COMMAND\Xendnote	251, 273, 275, 470
COMMAND\Xendnotefontsize	51, 404
COMMAND\Xendnotenumfont	49–51, 404
COMMAND\Xendnotes	254
COMMAND\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline	44, 473
COMMAND\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines	44, 473
COMMAND\Xendpagenumberonlyfirst	45, 477
COMMAND\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle	45, 477
COMMAND\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo	45, 477
COMMAND\Xendparagraph	56, 467
COMMAND\Xendsep	56, 481
COMMAND\Xendstorelineinfo	253
COMMAND\Xendsublinesep	48, 67, 210
COMMAND\Xendsymlinenum	44, 473, 481
COMMAND\Xendsymlinenumannotation	45, 481
COMMAND\Xendsympagenum	45, 477
COMMAND\Xendtwolines	31, 46, 47, 67, 405, 470, 471
COMMAND\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore	47, 67, 470, 471
COMMAND\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage	47, 67, 470, 471
COMMAND\Xendtxtbeforenotes	54, 479
COMMAND\Xendwrapcontent	52, 476
COMMAND\Xendwraplemma	52, 476
COMMAND\Xendwraplinenumannotation	27, 67

COMMAND\Xfootfmt	406
COMMAND\Xfootgroup	194
COMMAND\Xfootins	192
COMMAND\Xfootnote	64, 70, 141, 400, 464, 468–470, 474, 476
COMMAND\Xfootstarts	194
COMMAND\Xgroupbyline	54, 181, 224, 287, 409, 479–481
COMMAND\Xgroupbylines	477
COMMAND\Xgroupbylineseparetwolines	54
COMMAND\Xhangindent	52, 473, 481
COMMAND\Xhsize	407, 474, 475
COMMAND\Xsizethreecol	53, 56, 405
COMMAND\Xsizetwocol	53, 56, 280, 405
COMMAND\Xinnotemark	70, 409, 482
COMMAND\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator	30, 50, 405
COMMAND\Xinplaceofnumber	30, 48, 405, 469, 471
COMMAND\Xinsertparafootsep	199, 201
COMMAND\Xledsetnormalparstuff	402, 403, 470
COMMAND\Xlemmadisablefontselection	51
COMMAND\Xlemmafont	51, 474
COMMAND\Xlemmaseparator	50, 210, 282, 284, 288, 405
COMMAND\Xlineflag	66, 407, 408, 476
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst	44, 45, 220, 481
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo	45, 220, 481
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationposition	26, 27, 67, 172
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationposition@side	172
COMMAND\Xlinenumannotationpositionside	27
COMMAND\Xlinrangeseparator	46, 67, 210, 407, 473
COMMAND\Xmaxhnotes	55, 79, 80, 404, 405, 467, 469
COMMAND\Xmorethantwolines	30, 46, 47, 67, 405, 469
COMMAND\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation	28, 67, 220, 480
COMMAND\Xnoindent	473
COMMAND\Xnolemmaseparator	50, 288, 405
COMMAND\Xnonbreakableaftersnumber	48, 405, 465
COMMAND\Xnonumber	47, 405
COMMAND\Xnonumberinfootnote	405
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize	51, 404
COMMAND\Xnotefontsize@(<s>)	199, 204, 205
COMMAND\Xnotenumberfont	51, 404
COMMAND\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns	56, 468
COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstinline	44, 46, 54, 114, 212, 253, 281, 282, 284, 405, 464, 469, 478
COMMAND\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines	44, 54, 405, 464, 478
COMMAND\Xonlypstart	47, 405, 464, 469
COMMAND\Xpagelinesep	48, 477
COMMAND\Xparafootsep	54, 114, 404, 405, 409, 476, 478, 479
COMMAND\Xparafootsep@series	199
COMMAND\Xparindent	52, 407, 409, 470, 473, 475, 481
COMMAND\Xprenotes	55, 248, 476
COMMAND\Xprenotes@	193, 248, 464
COMMAND\Xprintlines	113
COMMAND\Xpstart	47, 402, 405, 464, 469

COMMAND\Xpstarteverytime	47, 402, 405, 469
COMMAND\Xpstartonlyfirst	47, 482
COMMAND\Xpstartseparator	47, 482
COMMAND\Xragged	54
COMMAND\Xrigidbalance	202, 407, 474
COMMAND\Xsethangindent	209
COMMAND\Xstanza	47, 61
COMMAND\Xstanzaonlyfirst	47, 482
COMMAND\Xstanzaseparator	47
COMMAND\Xstorelineinfo	212
COMMAND\Xsublinesep	23, 47, 48, 67, 210, 407
COMMAND\Xsublinesepside	23, 48
COMMAND\Xsymlinenum	44, 54, 404, 405, 471, 478
COMMAND\Xsymlinenumannotation	45, 481
COMMAND\Xtextbeforenotes	184
COMMAND\Xtoendnotes	32, 274
COMMAND\Xtwolines	30, 46, 47, 67, 219, 221, 280, 405, 469
COMMAND\Xtwolinesappref	280
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmore	46, 47, 67, 405, 470
COMMAND\Xtwolinesbutnotmoreappref	281
COMMAND\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage	46, 47, 67, 405, 470
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenotes	54, 55, 405, 476, 477, 479
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce	54, 479
COMMAND\Xtxtbeforenumber	46
COMMAND\Xunvxh	197, 406
COMMAND\Xwidth	56, 407, 475
COMMAND\Xwrapcontent	52, 476
COMMAND\Xwraplemma	51–53, 476
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumannotation	27, 67, 172
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref	172
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumannotation@side	172
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumannotationref	27
COMMAND\Xwraplinenumannotationside	27
COMMAND\&	404
COMMAND\absline@num	110, 111, 168
COMMAND\accent	140
COMMAND\actionlines@list	112, 170
COMMAND\actions@list	112
COMMAND\add@Xgroupbyline	181
COMMAND\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs	287
COMMAND\add@inserts	111, 180, 181
COMMAND\add@inserts@next	180
COMMAND\add@msd@	349
COMMAND\add@msdata	349, 351
COMMAND\add@msdata@firstlineofpage	353
COMMAND\add@msddata	349
COMMAND\add@penalties	168, 182
COMMAND\addcontentsline	381
COMMAND\addfootins	400, 403
COMMAND\addfootinsX	400, 403

COMMAND\addtoendnotes	274
COMMAND\advancelabel@refs	298
COMMAND\advanceline	24, 113, 121, 136, 472
COMMAND\affixline@num	174, 177, 178, 320, 462
COMMAND\affixpstart@num	178
COMMAND\afterXrule	404
COMMAND\afterXsymlinenum	404
COMMAND\afterantilabe	62
COMMAND\aftergroup	139, 144
COMMAND\afterlemmaseparator	404
COMMAND\afternote	404
COMMAND\afternoteX	54, 403, 404
COMMAND\afternumberinfootnote	404
COMMAND\afterruleX	55, 467, 470
COMMAND\annot@end@print	220, 259
COMMAND\annot@list	113, 174
COMMAND\annotationref	27, 63
COMMAND\antilabe	16, 62, 482
COMMAND\applabel	66, 300, 302, 470, 476
COMMAND\appref	64, 66–68, 306, 309, 474, 475, 481
COMMAND\apprefprefixmore	66, 404
COMMAND\apprefprefixsingle	66, 404
COMMAND\apprefwithpage	66–68, 306, 309, 471, 474
COMMAND\arrangementX	43, 80, 229, 279, 404
COMMAND\arrangementX@normal	235
COMMAND\article	16
COMMAND\at@every@pend	160
COMMAND\autopar	19, 156, 161, 162, 245, 463, 465, 466, 470, 480
COMMAND\ballast	80
COMMAND\ballast@count	168, 182
COMMAND\baselineskip	43, 195, 199
COMMAND\beforeXnotes	404
COMMAND\beforeXsymlinenum	404
COMMAND\beforeantilabe	62
COMMAND\beforeelectedchapter	11, 77, 382
COMMAND\beforeinsertingX	52
COMMAND\beforelemmaseparator	404
COMMAND\beforenotesX	55, 406, 466, 467, 470
COMMAND\beforenumberinfootnote	404
COMMAND\begin	358
COMMAND\beginnumbering	18–21, 96, 97, 100, 101, 110, 114, 115, 131, 161, 251, 348, 464, 467, 471, 472, 477, 478
COMMAND\beginnumberingR	96
COMMAND\bf	464
COMMAND\bfseries	51, 464
COMMAND\bhookXnote	405
COMMAND\bhookgroupX	55, 474
COMMAND\bhooknoteX	52, 406, 472, 473
COMMAND\body	339
COMMAND\bodyfootmarkA	40

COMMAND\book	16
COMMAND\boxXendlinenum	405
COMMAND\boxXendlinenumalign	405
COMMAND\boxXendstartlinenum	405
COMMAND\boxendlinenum	405
COMMAND\boxlinefootnote	214
COMMAND\boxlinenum	405
COMMAND\boxlinenumalign	405
COMMAND\boxstartlinenum	405
COMMAND\boxsymlinenum	405
COMMAND\break	44, 197
COMMAND\brokenpenalty	182
COMMAND\c@page	132
COMMAND\c@page@page	132
COMMAND\centering	53
COMMAND\ch@ck@l@ck	462
COMMAND\ch@cksub@l@ck	177, 462
COMMAND\chapter	76, 383, 387, 467, 470, 472, 476
COMMAND\chaptermark	381
COMMAND\check@pb@in@verse	395
COMMAND\colalignX	53, 470
COMMAND\collect@body	358
COMMAND\color	476
COMMAND\colorbox	81
COMMAND\columns	56
COMMAND\columnwidth	195, 468
COMMAND\command names	280, 281
COMMAND\continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext	171
COMMAND\copyright	140
COMMAND\correct@Xfootins@box	469
COMMAND\correct@footinsX@box	469
COMMAND\count	203
COMMAND\critex	463
COMMAND\critext	147, 399, 400, 403
COMMAND\curname	85
COMMAND\csquotes	271
COMMAND\ctab	374, 375, 379
COMMAND\ctabtext	379
COMMAND\current@annot	173
COMMAND\dc col	368
COMMAND\def	82, 99
COMMAND\dimen	203
COMMAND\dimexpr	56
COMMAND\discretionary	197
COMMAND\displaywidowpenalty	182
COMMAND\do@Xfeet	289, 462, 472, 477
COMMAND\do@actions	168–170, 462
COMMAND\do@actions@fixedcode	462
COMMAND\do@actions@next	169, 170
COMMAND\do@ballast	168, 182

COMMAND\do@feet@custom@order	289
COMMAND\do@insidelinehook	465
COMMAND\do@line	111, 138, 158, 162, 166, 167, 180, 182, 339, 462, 463, 465, 467
COMMAND\do@linehook	462
COMMAND\do@lockoff	112
COMMAND\do@lockon	112
COMMAND\dodoreintrafeet	461
COMMAND\doendnotes	31, 255, 406, 471, 478
COMMAND\doendnotesbysection	31, 255, 275, 471, 478
COMMAND\doennotes	478
COMMAND\doinsidelinehook	28, 467
COMMAND\doinsidethislinehook	28, 166, 480
COMMAND\dolinehook	28, 467
COMMAND\doreintrafeeti	472
COMMAND\doreintrafeetii	472
COMMAND\doxtrafeet	461
COMMAND\doxtrafeeti	472
COMMAND\doxtrafeetii	472
COMMAND\dummy@ref	139
COMMAND\edaftertab	75, 374, 375
COMMAND\edannotationref	303
COMMAND\edatleft	75, 372
COMMAND\edatright	75, 372
COMMAND\edbeforetab	75, 374
COMMAND\edfilldimen	373
COMMAND\edfont@info	146
COMMAND\edgls	72, 327
COMMAND\edgls...	475
COMMAND\edglsadd	478
COMMAND\edindex	38, 70, 72, 326, 327, 331, 333, 334, 363, 465, 467, 469, 472, 473, 477–479, 481
COMMAND\edindexlab	72
COMMAND\edlabel	63– 66, 68, 140, 296–298, 300, 302, 304, 312, 327, 363, 396, 408, 461, 464–466, 469, 474, 479
COMMAND\edlabelE	65, 302
COMMAND\edlabelS	65, 302
COMMAND\edlabelSE	65
COMMAND\edlineref	63, 296, 405, 469, 471, 474, 478
COMMAND\edmakelabel	65, 312
COMMAND\edpageref	63, 296, 302, 312
COMMAND\edrowfill	374
COMMAND\edsublineref	63
COMMAND\edtabcolsep	367
COMMAND\edtext	7, 25, 26, 29, 30, 32, 33, 35–37, 57, 63, 64, 66, 70, 73, 80, 99, 111, 113, 127, 129, 133, 134, 138–145, 147, 149, 150, 152, 154, 172– 174, 300–302, 305, 338, 363, 364, 383, 396, 399, 400, 403, 461, 463, 465, 467–471, 477–481
COMMAND\edtext@level	471
COMMAND\edtextlater	130
COMMAND\edvertdots	76, 373
COMMAND\edvertline	75, 76, 373
COMMAND\elechapter	77

COMMAND\eled@sectioning@out	388
COMMAND\eledchapter	76, 403, 467, 472
COMMAND\eledchapter*	76
COMMAND\eledmac@error	461
COMMAND\eledsection	7, 17, 76, 139, 165, 382, 403, 469, 478, 480, 481
COMMAND\eledsection*	76
COMMAND\eledsubsection	76, 403
COMMAND\eledsubsection*	76
COMMAND\eledsubsubsection	76, 403
COMMAND\eledsubsubsection*	76
COMMAND\eledxxx	11, 77, 388, 467
COMMAND\eledxxxx	381
COMMAND\elesection	388
COMMAND\else	326, 382
COMMAND\emph	38
COMMAND\empty	95, 175, 297
COMMAND\end	357, 358
COMMAND\end@lemmas	139
COMMAND\endashchar	210
COMMAND\endgraf	158, 199, 245
COMMAND\endlock	24, 113, 137, 344
COMMAND\endminipage	321, 323, 461, 472
COMMAND\endmsdata	40
COMMAND\endnotes	470, 474
COMMAND\endnumbering	18, 19, 21, 96, 97, 99, 100, 131, 462, 471, 477, 478
COMMAND\endnumberingR	96
COMMAND\endprint	251, 254, 275, 402
COMMAND\endstanzaextra	404
COMMAND\endsub	23, 112, 135
COMMAND\endverse	406
COMMAND\everypar	161
COMMAND\extensionchars	78, 97
COMMAND\externaldocument	68, 312
COMMAND\f@x@l@cks	462
COMMAND\falseverse	403, 465, 467
COMMAND\fi	382
COMMAND\firstlinenum	22, 174, 463
COMMAND\firstsublinenum	22, 463
COMMAND\flag@end	133, 134, 145, 467
COMMAND\flag@end@RTL	134
COMMAND\flag@end@later	135
COMMAND\flag@start	133, 134, 145, 467, 468
COMMAND\flag@start@RTL	134
COMMAND\flag@start@later	135
COMMAND\flagstanza	62
COMMAND\floatingpenalty	188, 469
COMMAND\flush@notes	183
COMMAND\fnpos	42, 247, 466, 477
COMMAND\footfmt	187, 190
COMMAND\footfmt...	230

COMMAND\footfootmarkA	40
COMMAND\footfudgefactor	197
COMMAND\footfudgefiddle	80, 195, 461
COMMAND\footgroup	188
COMMAND\footins	193
COMMAND\footnormal	279, 404, 461
COMMAND\footnormalX	404
COMMAND\footnote	40, 79, 225–227, 401, 462
COMMAND\footnote@lang	210
COMMAND\footnoteA	17, 40
COMMAND\footnoteB	17
COMMAND\footnoteC	29
COMMAND\footnoteE	40
COMMAND\footnoteX	9, 41, 271, 272, 477
COMMAND\footnoteX@reading	272
COMMAND\footnoteXmark	272, 478, 481
COMMAND\footnoteXmk	288
COMMAND\footnoteXtext	272, 478, 481
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩	140
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩mark	41
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩mk	41
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩nomk	41
COMMAND\footnote⟨X⟩text	41
COMMAND\footnotelang@lua	186
COMMAND\footnotelang@poly	187
COMMAND\footnotemark	41, 272
COMMAND\footnoteoption@	186, 473
COMMAND\footnoterule	203
COMMAND\footnotesize	51
COMMAND\footnotetext	41, 272
COMMAND\footparagraph	195, 279, 404, 467
COMMAND\footparagraphX	240, 404, 467
COMMAND\footplitskips	462, 469
COMMAND\footstart	188, 192, 203
COMMAND\footstrut	199
COMMAND\footthreecol	404
COMMAND\footthreecolX	404, 470
COMMAND\foottwocol	404
COMMAND\foottwocolX	404, 470
COMMAND\foreignlanguage	52
COMMAND\fullstop	407
COMMAND\get@edindex@hyperref	332
COMMAND\get@edindex@ledinnote@command	328
COMMAND\get@fnmark	227
COMMAND\get@index@command	466
COMMAND\get@linelistfile	462
COMMAND\get@thisfootnote	233
COMMAND\getline@num	167, 169
COMMAND\gl@p	103
COMMAND\global	117



COMMAND\globaldefs	117
COMMAND\gls	72, 335
COMMAND\hangindentX	52, 470, 473, 481
COMMAND\hangingsymbol	404, 463
COMMAND\hbox	197
COMMAND\hfill	465
COMMAND\hidenumbering	25, 126, 408, 470, 480
COMMAND\hidenumberingonleftpage	25, 126, 476
COMMAND\hidenumberingonrightpage	25, 126, 476
COMMAND\hline	73
COMMAND\hooktoggle@specific	287
COMMAND\hrulefill	374
COMMAND\hspace	44, 193, 195–197, 204, 207, 246, 462, 468
COMMAND\hspaceX	407, 474, 475
COMMAND\hsizethreecol	405
COMMAND\hsizethreecolX	53, 56
COMMAND\hsizetwocol	405
COMMAND\hsizetwocolX	53, 56
COMMAND\hyperlinkR	332
COMMAND\hyperlinkformat	332
COMMAND\hyperlinkformatR	332
COMMAND\if@RTL	87, 143
COMMAND\if@edtext@	468, 471
COMMAND\if@eled@sectioning	388
COMMAND\if@firstlineofpage	87
COMMAND\if@firstlineofpageR	87
COMMAND\if@msd@options@fullpage	356
COMMAND\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage	353
COMMAND\if@nobreak	159
COMMAND\if@noneed@Footnote	133
COMMAND\ifXnote@	96
COMMAND\ifafterendnumberingR	96
COMMAND\ifautopar	161
COMMAND\ifby@autopar	161
COMMAND\ifbypage@	103
COMMAND\ifbypage@R	103
COMMAND\ifbypstart@	103
COMMAND\ifbypstart@R	103
COMMAND\iffirst@linenum@out@	130, 131
COMMAND\ifindtl@innote	96
COMMAND\ifindtl@notenumber	96
COMMAND\ifinserthangingsymbol	339
COMMAND\ifinstanza	338
COMMAND\ifstwofollowinglines	221
COMMAND\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines	216, 469
COMMAND\ifl@d@Xtwolines	216
COMMAND\ifl@d@dash	216
COMMAND\ifl@d@elin	216
COMMAND\ifl@d@esl	216
COMMAND\ifl@d@pnum	216

COMMAND\ifl@d@ssub	216
COMMAND\ifl@dend@X	273
COMMAND\ifl@dmemoir	461
COMMAND\ifl@dpaging	468
COMMAND\ifl@dpairing	95, 463
COMMAND\ifl@dprintingpages	469
COMMAND\ifl@dskipnumber	174
COMMAND\ifl@dstartendok	373
COMMAND\ifl@imakeidx	87
COMMAND\ifledRcol	95, 463
COMMAND\ifledRcol@	95, 467
COMMAND\iflemmacommand@	468
COMMAND\ifnoend@	256
COMMAND\ifnoledgroup@	326
COMMAND\ifnoteschanged@	114
COMMAND\ifnumberedpar@	155
COMMAND\ifnumbering	97, 100
COMMAND\ifnumberingR	96, 463
COMMAND\ifnumberline	145, 174
COMMAND\ifpst@rted	463
COMMAND\ifpst@rtedL	97
COMMAND\ifresumenumbering@start	100
COMMAND\ifseriesbefore	277
COMMAND\ifstopmsdata@inserted@	348
COMMAND\ifsublines@	110, 123
COMMAND\iftrue	471
COMMAND\ifvmode	298
COMMAND\ifxxx	382
COMMAND\ignorespaces	143
COMMAND\imki@wrindexentry	87
COMMAND\immediate	130, 131, 250
COMMAND\indent	19, 161, 406
COMMAND\index	334, 335, 477
COMMAND\indtl@wrindexentry	87
COMMAND\initnumbering@quote	380, 472
COMMAND\initnumbering@reg	462
COMMAND\initnumbering@sectcmd	472
COMMAND\innotemarkX	70, 409, 482
COMMAND\inplaceofflemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\inplaceofnumber	405
COMMAND\insert	145, 179, 187, 190, 191, 205, 224, 230
COMMAND\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes	184, 205
COMMAND\insert@count	127, 133, 143
COMMAND\insert@countR	143
COMMAND\insert@msdata	349, 356
COMMAND\insert@txtbeforenotesX	184
COMMAND\inserthangingsymbol	465
COMMAND\insertlines@list	111, 127, 128
COMMAND\insertparafootsepX	244
COMMAND\inserts@list	138, 156, 180, 196

COMMAND\interAfootnotelinepenalty	463
COMMAND\interfootnotelinepenalty	463
COMMAND\interlinepenalty	188
COMMAND\interparanoteglue	403
COMMAND\justifying	53
COMMAND\keep@this@crossref@forinserting	225
COMMAND\l@advance@parledegroupp@beforenormalnotes	472
COMMAND\l@d@@wrindexhyp	468
COMMAND\l@d@add	148
COMMAND\l@d@end	251, 273
COMMAND\l@d@nums	143, 145, 147, 148, 216
COMMAND\l@d@section	251
COMMAND\l@d@set	122, 137
COMMAND\l@dampcount	364
COMMAND\l@dbfnote	227, 462
COMMAND\l@dcheckstartend	373
COMMAND\l@dchset@num	122
COMMAND\l@dcolcount	364, 366
COMMAND\l@dcollect@@body	358
COMMAND\l@dcollect@body	357
COMMAND\l@dcsnote	467
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext	166, 317
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext@l	166, 317
COMMAND\l@dcsnotetext@r	166, 317
COMMAND\l@ddodoreintrafeet	290, 461
COMMAND\l@ddoxtrafeet	288, 290, 461
COMMAND\l@demptyd@ta	462
COMMAND\l@dend@close	250
COMMAND\l@dend@open	250
COMMAND\l@dend@stuff	251
COMMAND\l@denvbody	358
COMMAND\l@dfeetbeginmini	461
COMMAND\l@dfeetendmini	461
COMMAND\l@dgetline@margin	463
COMMAND\l@dgetlock@disp	463
COMMAND\l@dgetref@num	304, 305
COMMAND\l@dgetsidenote@margin	314, 463
COMMAND\l@dgobbeloptarg	468
COMMAND\l@dgonblearg	468
COMMAND\l@dgonbleoptarg	363
COMMAND\l@dlabel@parse	304, 305
COMMAND\l@dld@ta	174, 176
COMMAND\l@dldp@rbox	319
COMMAND\l@dlsn@te	463
COMMAND\l@dlsnote	467
COMMAND\l@dmake@labels	299, 313
COMMAND\l@dmake@labelsR	313
COMMAND\l@dnumpsstartL	97, 463
COMMAND\l@dp@rsefootspec	216
COMMAND\l@dparssefootspec	216

COMMAND\l@dpush@begins	358
COMMAND\l@dref@ta	174, 176
COMMAND\l@dref@undefined	304
COMMAND\l@dref@te	463
COMMAND\l@dref@note	467
COMMAND\l@dtabaddcols	373
COMMAND\l@dtabnoexpands	461
COMMAND\l@dumboxmpfoot	472
COMMAND\l@dunboxmpfoot	462
COMMAND\l@dunhbox@line	162
COMMAND\l@dzeropenalties	463, 468
COMMAND\l@noexpands@edgl	338
COMMAND\l@pb	394
COMMAND\l@prev@nopb	393
COMMAND\l@prev@pb	393
COMMAND\l@reg	401
COMMAND\l@secondoptarg	363
COMMAND\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox	94
COMMAND\label	20, 65, 68, 72, 297, 305
COMMAND\label@refs	297
COMMAND\labelstarttrue	20, 408, 464, 479
COMMAND\labelref@list	296, 297, 300
COMMAND\language	197
COMMAND\lastbox	161
COMMAND\lastskip	136
COMMAND\latex@makecol	292
COMMAND\leavevmode	19, 161
COMMAND\led@check@nopb	394
COMMAND\led@check@pb	394
COMMAND\led@nopb	394, 395
COMMAND\led@nopbnum	394
COMMAND\led@pb	394, 395
COMMAND\led@pb@macro	394
COMMAND\led@pbnum	394
COMMAND\led@reinit@index@fornote	335
COMMAND\led@set@index@fornote	334
COMMAND\ledRflag	332
COMMAND\ledchapter	403, 464
COMMAND\ledfootinsdim	404
COMMAND\ledinnernote	68, 315, 467, 476
COMMAND\ledinnote	329, 402, 409, 471
COMMAND\ledinnotemark	402, 409, 470, 482
COMMAND\ledleftnote	69, 315
COMMAND\ledlinenum	109, 463
COMMAND\ledllfill	167
COMMAND\ledsnotefontsetup	476
COMMAND\ledsnotesep	69
COMMAND\ledsnotewidth	69
COMMAND\lednopb	78, 394
COMMAND\lednopbinverse	395

COMMAND\lednopbinversetue	60, 78
COMMAND\lednopbnum	394
COMMAND\ledouternote	68, 315, 467, 476
COMMAND\ledpb	78, 394, 403
COMMAND\ledpbnum	394
COMMAND\ledpbsetting	78, 394, 473
COMMAND\ledrightnote	69, 315
COMMAND\ledrsnotefontsetup	476
COMMAND\ledrsnotesep	69
COMMAND\ledrsnotewidth	69
COMMAND\ledsection	403
COMMAND\ledsectnomark	381
COMMAND\ledsectnotoc	381
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff	402, 403, 470
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuff@common	245
COMMAND\ledsetnormalparstuffX	402, 403, 470
COMMAND\ledsidenote	68, 69, 315, 317
COMMAND\ledsubsection	403
COMMAND\ledsubsubsection	403
COMMAND\ledxxx	467
COMMAND\left	75
COMMAND\leftctab	374
COMMAND\leftheadline	108
COMMAND\leftlinenum	23, 108, 461, 463
COMMAND\leftltab	374
COMMAND\leftnoteupfalse	69
COMMAND\leftstartnum	178
COMMAND\lefttab	374
COMMAND\leftsidenote	317
COMMAND\leftskip	193, 196, 197
COMMAND\lemma	3, 30, 32, 33, 35–37, 138, 142, 143, 147, 149, 399, 463, 464, 471, 472, 474
COMMAND\lemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\let	33, 57, 140, 145, 272, 292, 344, 461
COMMAND\letboxXendendlinenum	405
COMMAND\line	202, 205
COMMAND\line@list	111, 113, 128, 145, 146
COMMAND\line@list@stuff	97, 114, 115, 131, 461, 463
COMMAND\line@list@version	117
COMMAND\line@margin	105, 176, 314
COMMAND\line@num	110–112, 174, 461
COMMAND\line@set	148
COMMAND\lineannot	26, 64, 148
COMMAND\lineannot@set	148
COMMAND\lineation	22, 103, 479–481
COMMAND\linebreak	44
COMMAND\lineneation	475
COMMAND\linenum	26, 30, 32, 33, 64, 66, 138, 147, 148, 302, 305, 312, 399
COMMAND\linenum@out	130, 297, 300
COMMAND\linenumannotation	25, 172, 479, 480
COMMAND\linenumberlist	22, 95, 175, 461

COMMAND\linenumberstyle	24, 108, 461, 478
COMMAND\linenumincrement	22, 463
COMMAND\linenummargin	23, 105, 314
COMMAND\linenumr@p	108, 461, 463
COMMAND\linenumrep	108, 463
COMMAND\linenumsep	23, 69, 108, 315
COMMAND\linerangesep@	288
COMMAND\lineref	296, 303, 312, 405, 469
COMMAND\list@clear	102
COMMAND\list@clearing@reg	463
COMMAND\list@create	102
COMMAND\lock@disp	107
COMMAND\lock@off	125
COMMAND\lock@on	124
COMMAND\lockdisp	24, 107
COMMAND\loop	183, 339
COMMAND\ltab	374, 375, 379
COMMAND\ltabtext	379
COMMAND\m@mmf@prepare	226
COMMAND\mainmatter	479, 480
COMMAND\makeatletter	166
COMMAND\makehboxoffhboxes	198, 199
COMMAND\makeindex	70, 331
COMMAND\makelabel	312
COMMAND\managestanza@modulo	340
COMMAND\marginpar	68, 79, 313, 314, 462
COMMAND\marginparwidth	69, 315
COMMAND\markboth	28, 166
COMMAND\mathchardef	340
COMMAND\maxhXnotes	405
COMMAND\maxhnotesX	55, 80, 404, 466, 467, 469, 470
COMMAND\maxlinesinpar@list	115
COMMAND\measurebody	376
COMMAND\measuretbody	376
COMMAND\memorybreak	21
COMMAND\metaXXXvfootnote	224
COMMAND\microtype	162
COMMAND\morenoexpands	80, 81, 138, 140
COMMAND\morethantwolines	405
COMMAND\mpfnpos	42, 247, 466, 477
COMMAND\mpnormalfootgroup	461
COMMAND\mpnormalvfootnote	462
COMMAND\msdata	39, 40, 347, 348, 350, 478, 480
COMMAND\msdataposition	40
COMMAND\multfootsep	41, 226
COMMAND\multiplefootnotemarker	226
COMMAND\musixtex	466
COMMAND\n@num	463, 470
COMMAND\n@num@ref	470
COMMAND\new@line	132, 462

COMMAND\new@series	140
COMMAND\newcommand	33, 82, 99, 225, 299
COMMAND\newcommandx	33
COMMAND\newhookarg@specific	286
COMMAND\newhookcommand@series	280, 281, 470, 482
COMMAND\newhookcommand@series@reload	281
COMMAND\newhookcommand@toggle@reload	281, 468
COMMAND\newhooktoggle@series	281, 470
COMMAND\newhooktoggle@specific	286
COMMAND\newif	470
COMMAND\newline	44
COMMAND\newlinechar	273
COMMAND\newseries	41, 400, 403, 404
COMMAND\newseries@	264, 278
COMMAND\newverse	60, 62, 403, 467, 478
COMMAND\next	339
COMMAND\next@action	115
COMMAND\next@actionline	115
COMMAND\next@insert	180
COMMAND\next@line@list@stuff	131, 479
COMMAND\nl@regR	118
COMMAND\no@expands	80, 140, 147, 272, 338, 461
COMMAND\noXlemmaseparator	405
COMMAND\nobreak	216
COMMAND\nocritical	265
COMMAND\noeledsec	403
COMMAND\noendnotes	403
COMMAND\noexpand	401
COMMAND\nofamiliar	284
COMMAND\noindent	19, 20, 60, 61, 161, 473
COMMAND\noindentX	473
COMMAND\nomk@	288
COMMAND\nonbreakableafternumber	405
COMMAND\nonumberinfootnote	405
COMMAND\norelax	57
COMMAND\normal@footnotemarkX	229
COMMAND\normal@page@break	393
COMMAND\normal@pars	245
COMMAND\normalbfnoteX	463
COMMAND\normalbodyfootmarkX	230
COMMAND\normalfont	477
COMMAND\normalfootfmt	57, 192, 199, 210, 251, 476
COMMAND\normalfootfmtX	231
COMMAND\normalfootfootmarkX	231
COMMAND\normalfootgroup	193
COMMAND\normalfootgroupX	232
COMMAND\normalfootnoterule	188
COMMAND\normalfootstart	192, 196
COMMAND\normalfootstartX	231
COMMAND\normalvfootnote	190, 191

COMMAND\normalvfootnote@inserted	191
COMMAND\normalvfootnoteX	230
COMMAND\notbool	382
COMMAND\notfontsetup	404
COMMAND\notfontsizeX	51, 404
COMMAND\notenumfont	404
COMMAND\notenumfontX	51, 404
COMMAND\notesXwidthliketwocolumns	405
COMMAND\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX	56, 405, 468, 470
COMMAND\num@lines	155, 182
COMMAND\numberlinefalse	21, 480
COMMAND\numberlinetrue	21, 480
COMMAND\numberonlyfirstinline	278, 405
COMMAND\numberonlyfirstintwolines	405
COMMAND\numberpstartfalse	20
COMMAND\numberpstarttrue	20, 47, 402, 463, 472, 478, 480
COMMAND\numberstanza	47
COMMAND\numberstanzafalse	61
COMMAND\numberstanzatrue	61
COMMAND\numlabfont	23, 57, 109
COMMAND\one@line	156
COMMAND\onehalfspacing	473
COMMAND\onlyXpstart	405
COMMAND\onlysideX	271
COMMAND\page@action	112, 123
COMMAND\page@start	112, 463
COMMAND\pagecontents	112
COMMAND\pagenumbering	295
COMMAND\pageparbreak	403
COMMAND\pageref	65, 302
COMMAND\par	32, 44, 161, 245
COMMAND\par@line	156, 182
COMMAND\par@patch@pagenumbering	295
COMMAND\par@patch@thepage	132, 294, 295
COMMAND\para@footgroup	196
COMMAND\para@footgroupX	243
COMMAND\para@footsetup	195, 461
COMMAND\para@footsetupX	240, 461, 468
COMMAND\para@vfootnoteX	241
COMMAND\parafootfmt	198, 199, 476
COMMAND\parafootfmtX	242
COMMAND\parafootftm	201
COMMAND\parafootftmX	244
COMMAND\parafootftmsep	404
COMMAND\parafootsep	405, 466, 471
COMMAND\parafootsepX	54, 114, 404, 405, 409, 476, 481
COMMAND\parafootstart	196
COMMAND\parafootstartX	241
COMMAND\paravfootnote	196, 199
COMMAND\parfillskip	199



COMMAND\parindent	473
COMMAND\parindentX	52, 407, 473, 475, 481
COMMAND\parse@annot	174
COMMAND\parshape	80
COMMAND\parskip	20, 60, 61, 161
COMMAND\pause@numbering	100
COMMAND\pausenumbering	21, 100, 115, 117, 162, 466, 468, 475
COMMAND\pausenumbering@page@num	100
COMMAND\penalty	199
COMMAND\pend	2, 7, 18–21, 23, 24, 77, 136, 138, 141, 148, 155, 156, 158–162, 178–180, 346, 401, 466, 467, 476–479
COMMAND\preXnotes	470, 476
COMMAND\prenotesX	55, 249, 470
COMMAND\prepare@Xgroupbyline	224, 225
COMMAND\prepare@Xprenotes	248
COMMAND\prev@nopb	394
COMMAND\prev@pb	394
COMMAND\prevlineX	114
COMMAND\prevpageX@num	114
COMMAND\print@Xfootnoterule	470
COMMAND\print@Xnotes	290, 291
COMMAND\print@Xnotes@forpages	469
COMMAND\print@eledsection	165
COMMAND\print@footnoteXrule	470
COMMAND\print@leftmargin@eledsection	382
COMMAND\print@lemma	211
COMMAND\print@line	163
COMMAND\print@notesX@forpages	469
COMMAND\print@rightmargin@eledsection	382
COMMAND\printendlines	256, 263, 309, 407, 461, 463
COMMAND\printlinefootnote	212, 213, 469
COMMAND\printlinefootnotearea	214–216, 469
COMMAND\printlinefootnotenumbers	212
COMMAND\printlines	192, 210, 216, 217, 256, 309, 407, 461, 463, 469, 474
COMMAND\printnpnum	402, 407
COMMAND\printpstart	211
COMMAND\protect	140, 401
COMMAND\providecommand	225, 461
COMMAND\pstarL	156
COMMAND\pstart	2, 7, 18–21, 23, 24, 76, 77, 122, 136, 137, 141, 145, 148, 155, 156, 159–161, 165, 179, 180, 346, 387, 401, 402, 463–465, 467, 468, 470–472, 475–481
COMMAND\pstartinfootnote	405
COMMAND\pstartinfootnoteeverytime	405
COMMAND\pstartnum	178
COMMAND\pstartref	63, 296, 304, 466, 478
COMMAND\pstarts	463, 464
COMMAND\pstarts@readL	156
COMMAND\pstarts@typeset@L	156
COMMAND\raggedX	54
COMMAND\raggedleft	53

COMMAND\raggedright	53
COMMAND\raw@text	155, 156
COMMAND\rbracket	50
COMMAND\read@linelist	114, 116
COMMAND\ref	65, 68, 72
COMMAND\reformatted@	309
COMMAND\reformattedwithpage	309
COMMAND\relax	20, 122, 145, 169, 180, 344, 363, 401
COMMAND\renewcommand	80, 404, 407
COMMAND\reset@current@annot	173
COMMAND\reset@msd@options@iffullpage	356
COMMAND\resetprevline@	114
COMMAND\resetprevpage@	114
COMMAND\resumenumbering	21, 96, 100, 101, 115, 117, 162, 463, 467, 468, 475
COMMAND\right	75
COMMAND\rightctab	375
COMMAND\rightlinenum	23, 108, 461, 463
COMMAND\rightltab	375
COMMAND\rightnoteupfalse	69
COMMAND\rightrtab	375
COMMAND\rightrightnote	317
COMMAND\rightrightskip	193, 196, 197, 199
COMMAND\rightstartnum	178
COMMAND\rigidbalance	202, 203, 205, 407, 474
COMMAND\rigidbalanceX	202, 407, 474
COMMAND\robustify	44, 45
COMMAND\roman	368, 474
COMMAND\rtab	374–376, 379
COMMAND\rtabtext	376, 379
COMMAND\sameparallelpagenum	132
COMMAND\sameword	17, 33–37, 130, 149–152, 154, 409, 469, 471, 473, 476, 479, 481
COMMAND\sameword@inedtext	150
COMMAND\saweword	149
COMMAND\scriptsize	109
COMMAND\section	76, 463, 477
COMMAND\section@num	96
COMMAND\sectionmark	381
COMMAND\select@lemmafont	57, 186
COMMAND\series	264
COMMAND\series@	264
COMMAND\seriesatbegin	42, 277, 470
COMMAND\seriesatend	42, 277, 470
COMMAND\set@Xtxtbeforenotes	184
COMMAND\set@continuousnumberingforl	101
COMMAND\set@line	145
COMMAND\set@line@action	113, 123
COMMAND\set@txtbeforenotesX	184
COMMAND\setSErefonlypageprefixmore	66, 309, 475, 478
COMMAND\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle	66, 309, 475, 478
COMMAND\setSErefprefixmore	66

COMMAND\setSErefprefixsingle	66
COMMAND\setapprefprefixmore	66, 404
COMMAND\setapprefprefixsingle	66, 68, 404, 474
COMMAND\setcommand@series	279
COMMAND\sethangindentX	209
COMMAND\sethangingsymbol	60, 338, 404, 473
COMMAND\sethanginsymbol	58
COMMAND\setistwofollowinglines	221
COMMAND\setl@dlprbox	319
COMMAND\setline	24, 113, 117, 122, 136, 140, 472
COMMAND\setlinenum	24, 117, 122, 137, 159, 461, 479
COMMAND\setlinenumannotationsep	28, 408, 480
COMMAND\setmsdatalabel	40
COMMAND\setmsdataposition	478
COMMAND\setmsdataseries	40
COMMAND\setprintendlines	256, 260, 463
COMMAND\setprintlines	217, 221, 256, 463
COMMAND\setsidenotesep	69
COMMAND\setsidenotsep	404
COMMAND\setstanzaindent	341
COMMAND\setstanzaindents	59, 340, 401
COMMAND\setstanzapenalties	340
COMMAND\setstanzavalues	340
COMMAND\settoggle@series	278, 464, 468
COMMAND\showlemma	139, 461, 462
COMMAND\showwordrank	37, 150
COMMAND\sidenote@margin	462
COMMAND\sidenotemargin	68, 462, 467
COMMAND\sidenotesep	404
COMMAND\sidepstartnumtrue	20
COMMAND\skip	192, 193
COMMAND\skipnumbering	25, 125, 126, 137, 463, 470, 471
COMMAND\skipnumbering@reg	470
COMMAND\small	51
COMMAND\somemacro	38
COMMAND\special	14
COMMAND\splitmaxdepth	188, 204
COMMAND\splitoff	202
COMMAND\splittopskip	188, 204, 205
COMMAND\stanza	24, 25, 60–62, 96, 344, 404, 406, 473, 478
COMMAND\stanza@hang	343
COMMAND\stanza@line	343
COMMAND\stanzaindent	59, 341, 469
COMMAND\stanzaindent*	59
COMMAND\stanzaindentbase	339, 340
COMMAND\stanzanumwrapper	61
COMMAND\startlock	22, 24, 113, 137, 344
COMMAND\startstanzahook	404
COMMAND\startsub	23, 112, 135
COMMAND\stopmsd	350

COMMAND\stopmsdata	39, 348
COMMAND\store@annot@to@absline	173
COMMAND\strip@pt	196
COMMAND\strutbox	204
COMMAND\sub@action	112, 123
COMMAND\sub@lock	111
COMMAND\sub@off	121, 300
COMMAND\sub@on	121, 300
COMMAND\subline@num	110–112
COMMAND\sublinenum@rep	461
COMMAND\sublinenumberstyle	24, 108, 461
COMMAND\sublinenumincrement	22
COMMAND\sublinenumr@p	108, 461, 463
COMMAND\sublinenumrep	108, 463
COMMAND\sublineref	63, 296, 303
COMMAND\subsectionmark	381
COMMAND\sw@inthisedtext	142
COMMAND\sw@list@inedtext	147, 154
COMMAND\sw@txt	151
COMMAND\swnoexpands	37, 479
COMMAND\symlinenum	405
COMMAND\symplicenum	404
COMMAND\sza@penalty	343
COMMAND>tag	469
COMMAND\text	399
COMMAND\text<language>	52
COMMAND\textbeforenotesX	184
COMMAND\textcolor	81
COMMAND\textheight	80
COMMAND\textsuperscript	27, 94, 172
COMMAND\the	132, 461
COMMAND\thefootnoteA	40
COMMAND\thefootnoteX	465
COMMAND\thelabidx	333, 334
COMMAND\thepage	118, 132, 294
COMMAND\thepstart	20, 408
COMMAND\thepstartL	464
COMMAND\thepstartR	464
COMMAND\thestanza	61
COMMAND\this@crossref@end	225
COMMAND\this@line@list@version	130
COMMAND\this@section@next@page@num	100
COMMAND\this@section@page@num	113
COMMAND\thisfootnote	233
COMMAND\threecol@begin@insert	205
COMMAND\threecolfootfmt	204, 205, 476
COMMAND\threecolfootfmtX	239
COMMAND\threecolfootgroup	203
COMMAND\threecolfootgroupX	239
COMMAND\threecolfootsetup	203

COMMAND\threecolfootsetupX	238
COMMAND\threecolvfootnote	204
COMMAND\threecolvfootnote@inserted	204
COMMAND\threecolvfootnoteX	238
COMMAND\toendnotes	31, 254, 476
COMMAND\twocolfootfmt	476
COMMAND\twocolfootfmtX	236
COMMAND\twocolfootgroupX	237
COMMAND\twocolfootsetupX	236
COMMAND\twocolvfootnoteX	236
COMMAND\twolines	278, 405
COMMAND\twolines@A	278
COMMAND\twolines@B	278
COMMAND\twolines@C	278
COMMAND\twolinesbutnotmore	405
COMMAND\twolinesonlyinsamepage	405
COMMAND\txtbeforeXnotes	405
COMMAND\txtbeforenotesX	54, 479
COMMAND\txtbeforenotesonlyonceX	54, 479
COMMAND\uline	41
COMMAND\unhbox	162, 197
COMMAND\unpenalty	198, 199
COMMAND\unskip	199
COMMAND\unvxh	199, 406
COMMAND\unvxhX	406
COMMAND\upbracefill	374
COMMAND\usingcritext	400, 403
COMMAND\usingdtext	400, 403
COMMAND\vAfootnote	188
COMMAND\vadjust	134
COMMAND\variant	33
COMMAND\vbox	158, 161, 197, 202, 247
COMMAND\vfootnote	187, 193, 196, 204
COMMAND\vl@dbfnote	227, 462
COMMAND\vl@disnote	317
COMMAND\vl@dlsnote	317
COMMAND\vl@dosnote	317
COMMAND\vl@drsnote	317
COMMAND\vnumfootnoteX	463
COMMAND\vsizer	55, 80
COMMAND\vsplit	182
COMMAND\waklam	374
COMMAND\waklamec	374
COMMAND\wapunktel	374
COMMAND\wastricht	374
COMMAND\widthX	56, 407, 475
COMMAND\wrap@edcrossref	302, 468
COMMAND\wrapcontentX	52, 476
COMMAND\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX	244
COMMAND\wrapped@footfootmarkX	244

COMMAND\x...	64
COMMAND\xabslineref	303
COMMAND\xannotationref	64
COMMAND\xdef	102, 344
COMMAND\xflagref	64, 304, 407, 474
COMMAND\xleft@appenditem	103, 139
COMMAND\xlineref	64, 407, 474
COMMAND\xpageref	64
COMMAND\xparse	38
COMMAND\xpstartref	64, 466, 479
COMMAND\xr	68
COMMAND\xright@appenditem	102, 103
COMMAND\xsublineref	64
COMMAND\xxref	64, 305, 312, 466, 469, 476
COMMAND\xxxmatter	295
ENVIRONMENTastanza	96, 474
ENVIRONMENTedarrayc	379
ENVIRONMENTedarrayl	379
ENVIRONMENTedarrayr	379
ENVIRONMENTedtabular	481
ENVIRONMENTedtabularc	379
ENVIRONMENTedtabularl	379
ENVIRONMENTedtabularr	379
ENVIRONMENTledgroup	86, 324, 407, 474
ENVIRONMENTledgroupsize	325
PACKAGE(r)(e)ledmac	42
PACKAGEEledmac	112, 330, 402, 403, 469, 470
PACKAGEEledpar	470
PACKAGEEtoolbox	85
PACKAGEParallel	411
PACKAGEReledmac	61, 406, 407
PACKAGEamsgen	357
PACKAGEamsmath	357
PACKAGEbabel	52, 81, 368, 474
PACKAGEbiblatex	79
PACKAGEbidi	52, 53, 87, 473, 481
PACKAGEcaption	95
PACKAGEcolor	81
PACKAGEcsquotes	478
PACKAGEedmac	1, 6, 11, 13–15, 82, 216, 225, 297, 340, 399, 411, 461
PACKAGEedstanza	1, 14, 338
PACKAGEeledmac	1, 11, 15, 16, 71, 225, 326, 330, 361, 383, 396, 400, 402–404, 465, 467, 469
PACKAGEeledpar	188, 411, 463, 467–469
PACKAGEetex	473
PACKAGEetoolbox	102, 149, 264, 278, 288, 317, 382, 393
PACKAGEfancyhdr	292, 477
PACKAGEfloatrow	79, 407
PACKAGEfootmisc	41, 81, 87, 225, 411, 477
PACKAGEgeometry	16
PACKAGEglossaries	72, 335, 474

PACKAGEhandout	468
PACKAGEhyperlink	272
PACKAGEhyperref	64, 142, 244, 297, 332, 333, 386, 395, 466–468, 475, 478, 481
PACKAGEifluatex	85
PACKAGEifxetex	85
PACKAGEimakeidx	70, 79, 86, 87, 326, 330, 403, 465–467, 469
PACKAGEindextols	334
PACKAGEindextool	403
PACKAGEindextools	70, 79, 86, 87, 96, 326, 330, 334, 403, 469, 474, 477
PACKAGEledarab	81
PACKAGEledmac	1, 11, 14, 15, 81, 102, 330, 399, 400, 403, 406
PACKAGEledpar	81
PACKAGEMemoir	86, 330, 403, 411, 467
PACKAGEMorewrites	79
PACKAGEMusixtex	467
PACKAGEperpage	474
PACKAGEpolyglossia	50, 81, 187, 210, 474, 481
PACKAGERagged2e	53, 85
PACKAGEReledmac	1, 2, 6, 11–13, 15–18, 21, 22, 25, 28–30, 32–35, 38, 41, 44–46, 49, 52, 53, 55, 57, 60, 62, 64–66, 68, 70–73, 77, 79–83, 103, 106, 112, 113, 116, 117, 120, 130–132, 140, 143, 145, 148, 149, 179, 180, 189, 193, 197, 210, 225, 251, 265, 269, 270, 278, 288, 294, 302, 303, 306, 312, 330, 353, 357, 361, 381, 382, 395, 396, 403, 404, 406–409, 472, 475, 477
PACKAGEReledpar	1, 4, 6, 9, 17, 20, 22, 41, 56, 64, 66, 67, 77–79, 81, 83, 95, 103, 115, 120, 131, 132, 143, 145, 156, 190, 193, 246, 247, 264, 271, 288, 290, 291, 294, 326, 338, 381, 473, 474, 476, 477, 479, 480
PACKAGESuffix	85
PACKAGETabmac	1, 14, 411
PACKAGEthalie	62
PACKAGEulem	41
PACKAGEuninormalize	34
PACKAGExargs	33, 85
PACKAGExkeyval	83, 288
PACKAGExparse	85, 480
PACKAGExr	5, 68, 312, 313, 475
PACKAGExref	312
PACKAGExstring	85, 332

## A

\absline@num	1
Abu Kamil Shuja' b. Aslam	14
\actionlines@list	1
\actions@list	1
\add@hookarg@specific@to@cs	1
\add@hooktoggle@specific@to@cs	1
\add@inserts	1
\add@inserts@next	1
\add@msd@	1
\add@msdata	1
\add@msdata@firstlineofpage	1
\add@penalties	1

<code>\add@Xgroupbyline</code> .....	1
<code>\addtol@denbody</code> .....	1
Adelard II .....	14
<code>\advancelabel@refs</code> .....	1
<code>\advanceline</code> .....	1, 24
<code>\Aendnote</code> .....	30
<code>\affixline@num</code> .....	1
<code>\affixpstart@num</code> .....	1
<code>\affixside@note</code> .....	1
<code>\Afootnote</code> .....	30
<code>\afterantilabe</code> .....	62
<code>\afternoteX</code> .....	53
<code>\afterruleX</code> .....	55
<code>\ampersand</code> .....	1, 62
<code>\annot@list</code> .....	1
<code>\annotationref</code> .....	1, 63
<code>\antilabe</code> .....	1, 61
<code>\append@notesX</code> .....	1
<code>\append@Xnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\applabel</code> .....	1, 66
<code>\appref</code> .....	1, 66
<code>\apprefwithpage</code> .....	1, 66
<code>\arrangementX</code> .....	1, 43
<code>\arrangementX@normal</code> .....	1
<code>\arrangementX@paragraph</code> .....	1
<code>\arrangementX@threecol</code> .....	1
<code>\arrangementX@twocol</code> .....	1
<code>\at@every@pend</code> .....	1
<code>\AtEndEveryPend</code> .....	1, 20
<code>\AtEveryPend</code> .....	1, 20
<code>\AtEveryPstart</code> .....	1, 20
<code>\AtEveryStanza</code> .....	1, 60
<code>\AtEveryStopStanza</code> .....	1, 61
<code>\AtStartEveryPstart</code> .....	1, 20
<code>\AtStartEveryStanza</code> .....	1, 60
<code>\autopar</code> .....	1, 19

**B**

<code>\ballast</code> .....	80
<code>\ballast@count</code> .....	1
Beeton, Barbara Ann Neuhaus Friend .....	19
<code>\beforeantilabe</code> .....	62
<code>\beforeeledchapter</code> .....	1
<code>\BeforeEveryStopStanza</code> .....	1, 61
<code>\beforeinsertingX</code> .....	52
<code>\beforeinsertion@X</code> .....	1
<code>\beforenotesX</code> .....	55
<code>\beginnumbering</code> .....	1, 18
<code>\Bendnote</code> .....	30
<code>\Bfootnote</code> .....	30



\bhookgroupX	55
\bhooknoteX	52
\bodyfootmarkA	40
\boxfootnotenumbers	1
Bredon, Simon	14
Breger, Herbert	14, 360
Brey, Gerhard	14
Busard, Hubert L. L.	14
\bypage@false	1
\bypage@true	1
\bypstart@false	1
\bypstart@true	1

## C

\c@addcolcount	1
\c@ballast	1
\c@firstlinenum	1
\c@firstsublinenum	1
\c@labidx	1
\c@linenumincrement	1
\c@sublinenumincrement	1
\Cendnote	30
\Cfootnote	30
\ch@ck@l@ck	1
\ch@cksub@l@ck	1
\chapter	1
\check@pb@in@verse	1
Chester, Robert of	14
Claassens, Geert H. M.	14
\colalignX	53
\continuousnumberingwithcolumns@sync@linenumber@singletext	1
Copernicus, Nicolaus	14
\critext	399
\ctab	1
\ctabtext	1
\current@annot	1

## D

Dekker, Dirk-Jan	81
\Dendnote	30
\Dfootnote	30
\disable@endnotes	1
\disable@familiarnotes	1
\disable@notes	1
\disable@sidenotes	1
\disablel@dtabfeet	1
\do@actions	1
\do@actions@fixedcode	1
\do@actions@next	1
\do@ballast	1

<code>\do@feet@custom@order</code>	1
<code>\do@feetX</code>	1
<code>\do@insidelinehook</code>	1
<code>\do@line</code>	1
<code>\do@linehook</code>	1
<code>\do@lockoff</code>	1
<code>\do@lockoffL</code>	1
<code>\do@lockon</code>	1
<code>\do@lockonL</code>	1
<code>\do@Xfeet</code>	1
<code>\doedindexlabel</code>	1
<code>\doendnotes</code>	1, 31
<code>\doendnotesbysection</code>	1, 31
<code>\doinsidelinehook</code>	1, 28
<code>\doinsidethislinehook</code>	1, 28
<code>\dolinehook</code>	1, 28
<code>\dosplits</code>	1
Downes, Michael	80, 197, 199
<code>\dummy@edindex</code>	1
<code>\dummy@edtext</code>	1
<code>\dummy@edtext@showlemma</code>	1
<code>\dummy@ref</code>	1

## E

<code>\edaftertab</code>	1, 75, 374
<code>edarrayc</code> (environment)	73
<code>edarrayl</code> (environment)	73
<code>edarrayr</code> (environment)	73
<code>\edatleft</code>	1, 75
<code>\edatright</code>	1, 75
<code>\edbeforetab</code>	1, 75, 374
<code>\edfilldimen</code>	1
<code>\edfont@info</code>	1
<code>\edindex</code>	1, 70
<code>\edindexlab</code>	1, 72
<code>\EDLABEL</code>	1
<code>\edlabel</code>	1, 63
<code>\edlabelE</code>	1, 65
<code>\edlabelS</code>	1, 65
<code>\edlabelSE</code>	1, 65
<code>\edlineref</code>	1, 63
<code>\edmakelabel</code>	1, 65
<code>\edpageref</code>	1, 63
<code>\edrowfill</code>	1, 74
<code>\EDTAB</code>	1
<code>\edtabcolsep</code>	1, 73
<code>\EDTABINDENT</code>	1
<code>\edtabindent</code>	1
<code>\EDTABtext</code>	1
<code>edtabularc</code> (environment)	73

edtabularl (environment)	73
edtabularr (environment)	73
\EDTEXT	1
\edtext	1, 29
\edvertdots	1, 75
\edvertline	1, 75
\Eendnote	30
\Efootnote	30
\eled@chapter	1
\eled@section	1
\eled@sectioning@out	1
\eled@subsection	1
\eled@subsubsection	1
\eledchapter	1
\eledchapter*	1
\eledsection	1
\eledsection*	1
\eledsubsection	1
\eledsubsection*	1
\eledsubsubsection	1
\eledsubsubsection*	1
\enablel@dtabfeet	1
\end@lemmas	1
\endashchar	1
\endline@num	1
\endlock	1, 24
\endminipage	1
\endnumbering	1, 18
\endpage@num	1
\endprint	1
\endquotation	1
\endquote	1
\endsub	1, 23
\endsubline@num	1
environments:	
edarrayc	73
edarrayl	73
edarrayr	73
edtabularc	73
edtabularl	73
edtabularr	73
ledgroup	62
ledgroupsize	63
minipage	62
Euclid	14
\extensionchars	1, 78

## F

\f@x@l@cks	1
Fairbairns, Robin	41

<code>\first@linenum@out@false</code> .....	1
<code>\first@linenum@out@true</code> .....	1
<code>\firsthalf@antilabe@wd</code> .....	1
<code>\firstlinenum</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\firstseriesX@</code> .....	1
<code>\firstsublinenum</code> .....	1, 22
<code>\firstXseries@</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@end</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@end@later</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@end@RTL</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@start</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@start@later</code> .....	1
<code>\flag@start@RTL</code> .....	1
<code>\flagstanza</code> .....	1, 62
<code>\flush@notes</code> .....	1
<code>\fnpos</code> .....	1, 42
Folkerts, Menso .....	14
<code>\footfootmarkA</code> .....	40
<code>\footfudgefiddle</code> .....	1, 80
<code>\footnote</code> .....	1
<code>\footnoteA</code> .....	40
<code>\footnoteB</code> .....	40
<code>\footnoteC</code> .....	40
<code>\footnoteD</code> .....	40
<code>\footnoteE</code> .....	40
<code>\footnotelang@lua</code> .....	1
<code>\footnotelang@poly</code> .....	1
<code>\footnoteoptions@</code> .....	1
<code>\footnoteXmark</code> .....	41
<code>\footnoteXtext</code> .....	41
<code>\footsplitskips</code> .....	1
<code>\fullstop</code> .....	1

## G

Gädeke, Nora .....	14
<code>\get@edindex@hyperref</code> .....	1
<code>\get@edindex@ledinnote@command</code> .....	1
<code>\get@firsthalf@antilabe@wd</code> .....	1
<code>\get@fnmark</code> .....	1
<code>\get@fnmarkX</code> .....	1
<code>\get@index@command</code> .....	1
<code>\get@linelistfile</code> .....	1
<code>\get@pstartcounter</code> .....	1
<code>\get@stanzacounter</code> .....	1
<code>\get@sw@txt</code> .....	1
<code>\get@thisfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\get@thisfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\getline@num</code> .....	1
<code>\gl@p</code> .....	1

## H

<code>\h@num</code> .....	1
<code>\hangindentX</code> .....	52
<code>\hidenumbering</code> .....	1, 25
<code>\hidenumberingonleftpage</code> .....	1, 25
<code>\hidenumberingonrightpage</code> .....	1
<code>\Hilfsbox</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfsbox</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfscount</code> .....	1
<code>\HILFSskip</code> .....	1
<code>\Hilfsskip</code> .....	1
<code>\hilfsskip</code> .....	1
<code>\hookarg@specific</code> .....	1
<code>\hooktoggle@specific</code> .....	1
<code>\hsizethreecolX</code> .....	53
<code>\hsizetwocolX</code> .....	53
<code>\Hy@raisedlink@left</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkformat</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkformatR</code> .....	1
<code>\hyperlinkR</code> .....	1

## I

<code>\if@addsw</code> .....	1
<code>\if@edtabular</code> .....	1
<code>\if@edtext@secondarg@</code> .....	1
<code>\if@eled@sectioning</code> .....	1
<code>\if@firstlineofpage</code> .....	1
<code>\if@led@nofoot</code> .....	1
<code>\if@ledgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\if@lemmacommand@</code> .....	1
<code>\if@msdata@insertedfrompreviouspage</code> .....	1
<code>\if@noeled@sec</code> .....	1
<code>\if@noneed@Footnote</code> .....	1
<code>\if@RTL</code> .....	1
<code>\ifafterendnumberingR</code> .....	1
<code>\ifantilabe@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifat@every@pend@star@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifat@every@pstart@star@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifautopar@pause</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypage@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypage@R</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypstart@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifbypstart@R</code> .....	1
<code>\ifeledmaccompat@</code> .....	1
<code>\iffirst@linenum@out@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifinastanzaL</code> .....	1
<code>\ifinastanzaR</code> .....	1
<code>\ifindtl@innote</code> .....	1
<code>\ifindtl@notenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> .....	1

<code>\ifistanza</code>	1
<code>\ifistanzaL</code>	1
<code>\ifistanzaR</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@dash</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@elin</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@esl</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@pnum</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@ssub</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@Xmorethantwolines</code>	1
<code>\ifl@d@Xtwolines</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dend@X</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dhiddenumber</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dmemoir</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dpaging</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dpairing</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dprintingcolumns</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dprintingpages</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dskipnumber</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dskipversenumber</code>	1
<code>\ifl@dstartendok</code>	1
<code>\ifl@footmisc</code>	1
<code>\ifl@imakeidx</code>	1
<code>\ifl@indextools</code>	1
<code>\ifledfinal</code>	1, 78
<code>\ifledgroupnotesL@</code>	1
<code>\ifledgroupnotesR@</code>	1
<code>\iflednopbinverse</code>	1
<code>\ifledRcol</code>	1
<code>\ifledRcol@</code>	1
<code>\ifnocritical@</code>	1
<code>\ifnoend@</code>	1
<code>\ifnofamiliar@</code>	1
<code>\ifnoledgroup@</code>	1
<code>\ifnoquotation@</code>	1
<code>\ifnoresetlinenumannotation@</code>	1
<code>\ifnoteschanged@</code>	1
<code>\ifnumberedpar@</code>	1
<code>\ifnumbering</code>	1
<code>\ifnumberingR</code>	1
<code>\ifnumberline</code>	1
<code>\ifnumberstanza</code>	1
<code>\ifparapparatus@</code>	1
<code>\ifparledgroup</code>	1
<code>\ifprevpgnotnumbered</code>	1
<code>\ifpst@rtedL</code>	1
<code>\ifresumenumbering@start</code>	1
<code>\ifsameparallelpagenumber</code>	1
<code>\ifseriesbefore</code>	1
<code>\ifsidepstartnum</code>	1
<code>\ifstopmsdata@inserted@</code>	1

<code>\ifsublines@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifwidthliketwocolumns</code> .....	1
<code>\ifXendinsertsep@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifxindy@</code> .....	1
<code>\ifxindyhyperref@</code> .....	1
<code>\initnumbering@quote</code> .....	1
<code>\initnumbering@reg</code> .....	1
<code>\innotemarkX</code> .....	70
<code>\insert@count</code> .....	0, 1
<code>\insert@msdata</code> .....	1
<code>\insert@txtbeforenotesX</code> .....	1
<code>\insert@Xtxtbeforenotes</code> .....	1
<code>\inserthangingymbol</code> .....	1
<code>\insertlines@list</code> .....	1
<code>\insertparafootsepX</code> .....	1
<code>\inserts@list</code> .....	1

## J

Jayaditya .....	14
-----------------	----

## K

Kabelschacht, Alois .....	183
<code>\keep@this@crossref@forinserting</code> .....	1

## L

<code>\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@add</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@nums</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@section</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@set</code> .....	1
<code>\l@d@Xend</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dampcount</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dbfnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcheckcols</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcheckstartend</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dchset@num</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcolcount</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcollect@@body</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcollect@body</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcolwidth</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext@l</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dcsnotetext@r</code> .....	1
<code>\l@ddodoreinextrafeet</code> .....	1
<code>\l@ddoxtrafeet</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dedbeginmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dedendmini</code> .....	1
<code>\l@demptyd@ta</code> .....	1
<code>\l@dend@close</code> .....	1

<code>\l@dend@open</code>	1
<code>\l@dend@stuff</code>	1
<code>\l@dend@Xfalse</code>	1
<code>\l@dend@Xtrue</code>	1
<code>\l@denbody</code>	1
<code>\l@desnote</code>	1
<code>\l@dfambeginmini</code>	1
<code>\l@dfamendmini</code>	1
<code>\l@dfetbeginmini</code>	1
<code>\l@dfetendmini</code>	1
<code>\l@getline@margin</code>	1
<code>\l@getlock@disp</code>	1
<code>\l@getref@num</code>	1
<code>\l@getsidenote@margin</code>	1
<code>\l@gobbleoptarg</code>	1
<code>\l@disnote</code>	1
<code>\l@dlabel@parse</code>	1
<code>\l@dld@ta</code>	1
<code>\l@dlp@rbox</code>	1
<code>\l@dlsn@te</code>	1
<code>\l@dlsnote</code>	1
<code>\l@dmake@labels</code>	1
<code>\l@modforedtext</code>	1
<code>\l@nullfills</code>	1
<code>\l@dnumpstartsL</code>	1
<code>\l@doldold@footnotetext</code>	1
<code>\l@dp@rsefootspec</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedendline</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedendpage</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedendsub</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartline</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartpage</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsedstartsub</code>	1
<code>\l@dparsefootspec</code>	1
<code>\l@dpush@begins</code>	1
<code>\l@drd@ta</code>	1
<code>\l@dref@undefined</code>	1
<code>\l@drestorefills</code>	1
<code>\l@dstoreforedtext</code>	1
<code>\l@drp@rbox</code>	1
<code>\l@drrsn@te</code>	1
<code>\l@drrsnote</code>	1
<code>\l@dsetmaxcolwidth</code>	1
<code>\l@dskipnumberfalse</code>	1
<code>\l@dskipnumbertrue</code>	1
<code>\l@dtabaddcols</code>	1
<code>\l@dtabnoexpands</code>	1
<code>\l@dunboxmpfoot</code>	1
<code>\l@dunhbox@line</code>	1
<code>\l@dzeropenalties</code>	1



\l@noexpands@edgl	1
\l@secondmandarg	1
\l@wrap@ifnotemptybox	1
\l@wrapcs@ifnotemptybox	1
\label	65
\labelpstartfalse	1
\labelpstarttrue	1, 20
\labelref@list	1
\labelrefsparseline	1
\labelrefsparsesubline	1
\last@page@num	1
Lavagnino, John	13
\led@check@nopb	1
\led@check@pb	1
\led@err@AutoparNotNumbered	1
\led@err@BadAction	1
\led@err@edtextoutsidepstart	1
\led@err@EdtextWithoutFootnote	1
\led@err@FootnoteNotInSecondArgEdtext	1
\led@err@HighEndColumn	1
\led@err@LineationInNumbered	1
\led@err@LowStartColumn	1
\led@err@ManyLeftnotes	1
\led@err@ManyRightnotes	1
\led@err@ManySidenotes	1
\led@err@NumberingNotStarted	1
\led@err@NumberingShouldHaveStarted	1
\led@err@NumberingStarted	1
\led@err@NumberingWithoutPstart	1
\led@err@PendInEdtext	1
\led@err@PendNoPstart	1
\led@err@PendNotNumbered	1
\led@err@PstartInEdtext	1
\led@err@PstartInPstart	1
\led@err@PstartNotNumbered	1
\led@err@ReverseColumns	1
\led@err@samewordRTL	1
\led@err@toendnotes@outsidenumbering	1
\led@err@TooManyColumns	1
\led@err@UnequalColumns	1
\led@error@fail@patch@@doclearpage	1
\led@error@fail@patch@@iiiminipage	1
\led@error@fail@patch@@makecol	1
\led@error@fail@patch@@reinserts	1
\led@error@fail@patch@endminipage	1
\led@error@PackageAfterEledmac	1
\led@mess@NotesChanged	1
\led@mess@SectionContinued	1
\led@nopb	1
\led@nopbnum	1

<code>\led@pb</code>	1
<code>\led@pb@setting</code>	1
<code>\led@pbnum</code>	1
<code>\led@reinit@index@fornote</code>	1
<code>\led@set@index@fornote</code>	1
<code>\led@toksa</code>	1
<code>\led@toksb</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@AppLabelOutSecondArgEdtext</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAction</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAdvancelineLine</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadAdvancelineSubline</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadHookSeries</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLineation</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLinenummargin</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadLockdisp</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSetline</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSetlinenum</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSidenotemargin</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@BadSublockdisp</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@DuplicateLabel</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@edinde@outsidenumbering</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@LineFileObsolete</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoFile</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoIndexFile</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@NoMarginpars</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@RefUndefined</code>	1
<code>\led@warn@SeriesStillExist</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@hsizeX@deprecated</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@msdatawithoutstop</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@preXnotes@deprecated</code>	1
<code>\led@warning@Xhsize@deprecated</code>	1
<code>ledgroup (environment)</code>	62
<code>ledgroupsize (environment)</code>	63
<code>\ledinnernote</code>	1, 68
<code>\ledinnote</code>	1
<code>\ledinnotemark</code>	1
<code>\ledleftnote</code>	1, 68
<code>\ledlinenum</code>	1
<code>\ledllfill</code>	1
<code>\ledlsnotefontsetup</code>	1, 69
<code>\ledlsnotesep</code>	1, 69
<code>\ledlsnotewidth</code>	1, 69
<code>\lednopb</code>	1, 77
<code>\lednopbinversetrue</code>	78
<code>\lednopbnum</code>	1
<code>\ledouternote</code>	1, 68
<code>\ledpb</code>	1, 77
<code>\ledpbnum</code>	1
<code>\ledpbsetting</code>	1, 78
<code>\ledrightnote</code>	1, 68

\ledrlfill	1
\ledrsnotefontsetup	1, 69
\ledrsnotesep	1, 69
\ledrsnotewidth	1, 69
\ledsectnomark	1
\ledsectnotoc	1
\ledsetnormalparstuff@common	1
\ledsetnormalparstuffX	1
\ledsidenote	1, 68
\leftctab	1
\leftlinenum	1, 23
\leftltab	1
\leftnoteupfalse	69
\leftpstartnum	1
\leftfttab	1
Leibniz	14
\lemma	1, 32
\letsforverteilen	1
\line@list	1
\line@list@stuff	1
\line@list@version	1
\line@margin	1
\line@num	1
\line@set	1
\lineannot	1, 26
\lineannot@set	1
\lineation	1, 22
\linenum	1, 32
\linenum@out	1
\linenumannotation	1, 25
\linenumberlist	1, 22
\linenumberstyle	1, 24
\linenumincrement	1, 22
\linenummargin	1, 23
\linenumr@p	1
\linenumrep	1
\linenumsep	1, 23
\linerangesep@	1
\list@clear	1
\list@clearing@reg	1
\list@create	1
\lock@disp	1
\lock@off	1
\lock@on	1
\lockdisp	1, 24
Lorch, Richard	14
\ltab	1
\ltabtext	1
Luecking, Dan	85

## M

<code>\m@mmf@check</code> .....	1
<code>\m@mmf@prepare</code> .....	1
<code>\M@ssect</code> .....	1
<code>\makehboxofhboxes</code> .....	1
<code>\managestanza@modulo</code> .....	1
<code>\maxhnotesX</code> .....	55
Mayer, Gyula .....	14
<code>\measurebody</code> .....	1
<code>\measuremcell</code> .....	1
<code>\measuremrow</code> .....	1
<code>\measuretbody</code> .....	1
<code>\measuretcell</code> .....	1
<code>\measuretrow</code> .....	1
Middleton, Thomas .....	14, 110
<code>minipage</code> (environment) .....	62
Mittelbach, Frank .....	13, 14
<code>\morenoexpands</code> .....	1, 80
<code>\mp@append@notesX</code> .....	1
<code>\mp@append@Xnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\mpfnpos</code> .....	1, 42
<code>\mpnormalfootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\mpnormalfootgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\mpnormalvfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\mpnormalvfootnote@inserted</code> .....	1
<code>\mpnormalvfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\mppara@footgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\mppara@vfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\mpparafootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\mpparavfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\mpthreecolfootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\mpthreecolfootgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\mpthreecolfootsetup</code> .....	1
<code>\mpthreecolfootsetupX</code> .....	1
<code>\mptwocolfootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\mptwocolfootgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\mptwocolfootsetup</code> .....	1
<code>\mptwocolfootsetupX</code> .....	1
<code>\msdata</code> .....	1, 39
<code>\msdata@c</code> .....	1
<code>\msdata@cR</code> .....	1
<code>\multfootsep</code> .....	1, 41
<code>\multiplefootnotemarker</code> .....	1

## N

<code>\n@num</code> .....	1
<code>\n@num@stanza</code> .....	1
<code>\new@line</code> .....	1
<code>\newhookarg@specific</code> .....	1
<code>\newhookcommand@series</code> .....	1

<code>\newhookcommand@series@reload</code>	1
<code>\newhooktoggle@series</code>	1
<code>\newhooktoggle@series@reload</code>	1
<code>\newhooktoggle@specific</code>	1
<code>\newseries@</code>	1
<code>\newverse</code>	1
<code>\NEXT</code>	1
<code>\next@line@list@stuff</code>	1
<code>\no@expands</code>	1
<code>\nomk@</code>	1
<code>\normal@footnotemarkX</code>	1
<code>\normal@page@break</code>	1
<code>\normal@pars</code>	1
<code>\normalbfnoteX</code>	1
<code>\normalbodyfootmarkX</code>	1
<code>\normalfootfmt</code>	1
<code>\normalfootfmtX</code>	1
<code>\normalfootfootmarkX</code>	1
<code>\normalfootgroup</code>	1
<code>\normalfootgroupX</code>	1
<code>\normalfootnoterule</code>	1
<code>\normalfootnoteruleX</code>	1
<code>\normalfootstart</code>	1
<code>\normalfootstartX</code>	1
<code>\normalvfootnote</code>	1
<code>\normalvfootnote@inserted</code>	1
<code>\normalvfootnoteX</code>	1
<code>\notefontsizeX</code>	51
<code>\notenumfontX</code>	51
<code>\noteschanged@false</code>	1
<code>\noteschanged@true</code>	1
<code>\noteswidthliketwocolumnsX</code>	56
<code>\nulledindex</code>	1
<code>\nullsetzen</code>	1
<code>\num@lines</code>	1
<code>\numberedpar@false</code>	1
<code>\numberedpar@true</code>	1
<code>\numberingfalse</code>	1
<code>\numberingtrue</code>	1
<code>\numberlinefalse</code>	21
<code>\numberlinetrue</code>	21
<code>\numberpstartfalse</code>	1, 20
<code>\numberpstarttrue</code>	1, 20
<code>\numberstanzafalse</code>	61
<code>\numberstanzatrue</code>	61
<code>\numlabfont</code>	1, 57

## O

<code>\old@hsize</code>	1
<code>\one@line</code>	1

optionafter	27
optionantilabe	61, 346
optionauxdir	16, 476
optionbefore	27
optioncontinuousnumberingwithcolumns	96, 164, 171, 475, 480
optioninnnote	474
optioninnote	474
optionlinrangesep	288
optionnocritical	474
optionnoeledsec	77, 387, 476
optionnoend	474
optionnopentialties	80
optionnoprefix	68, 481
optionnoresetlinenumannotation	25, 44, 480
optionnotenumber	474
optionprefixmore	68, 481
optionsameparallelpagenum	480
optionswcaseinsensitive	34, 479

## P

\page@action	1
\page@num	1
\pagelinesep	1, 71
\pageref	65
\par@line	1
\par@patch@pagenumbering	1
\par@patch@thepage	1
\para@footgroupX	1
\para@footsetup	1
\para@footsetupX	1
\para@vfootnoteX	1
\parafootfmt	1
\parafootfmtX	1
\parafootgroup	1
\parafootsepX	54
\parafootstart	1
\parafootstartX	1
\paravfootnote	1
\parindentX	52
\parse@annot	1
\pausenumbering	1, 21
\pausenumbering@page@num	1
\pend	1, 18
Plato of Tivoli	14
\postbodyfootmark	1
\prebodyfootmark	1
\prenotesX	55
\prepare@edindex@fornote	1
\prepare@prenotesX	1
\prepare@Xgroupbyline	1

<code>\prepare@Xprenotes</code> .....	1
<code>\prev@nopb</code> .....	1
<code>\prev@pb</code> .....	1
<code>\prevpage@num</code> .....	1
<code>\print@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@footnoteXrule</code> .....	1
<code>\print@leftmargin@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@lemma</code> .....	1
<code>\print@line</code> .....	1
<code>\print@notesX</code> .....	1
<code>\print@rightmargin@eledsection</code> .....	1
<code>\print@Xfootnoterule</code> .....	1
<code>\print@Xnotes</code> .....	1
<code>\printendlines</code> .....	1
<code>\printlineendnote</code> .....	1
<code>\printlineendnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printlinefootnotenumbers</code> .....	1
<code>\printlines</code> .....	1
<code>\printnpnum</code> .....	1
<code>\printpstart</code> .....	1
<code>\printsymlineendnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printsymlinefootnotearea</code> .....	1
<code>\printXafternumber</code> .....	1
<code>\printXbeforenumber</code> .....	1
<code>\pstart</code> .....	1, 18
<code>\pstarteref</code> .....	1
<code>\pstartnum</code> .....	1
<code>\pstartref</code> .....	63
<code>\pstarts@read@L</code> .....	1
<code>\pstarts@typeset@L</code> .....	1

## Q

<code>\quotation</code> .....	1
<code>\quote</code> .....	1

## R

<code>\raggedX</code> .....	54
<code>\raw@text</code> .....	1
<code>\rbracket</code> .....	1
<code>\read@linelist</code> .....	1
<code>\ref</code> .....	65
<code>\ref@reg@later</code> .....	1
<code>\Relax</code> .....	1
<code>\reledmac@error</code> .....	1
<code>\reledmac@warning</code> .....	1
<code>\removehboxes</code> .....	1
<code>\reset@current@annot</code> .....	1
<code>\reset@msd@options@iffullpage</code> .....	1

<code>\resetprevline@</code>	1, 114
<code>\resetprevpage@</code>	1
<code>\resetprevpage@num</code>	114
<code>\restore@endnotes</code>	1
<code>\restore@familiarnotes</code>	1
<code>\restore@notes</code>	1
<code>\restore@sidenotes</code>	1
<code>\resumenumbering</code>	1, 21
<code>\rightctab</code>	1
<code>\rightlinenum</code>	1, 23
<code>\rightltab</code>	1
<code>\rightnoteupfalse</code>	69
<code>\rightrtab</code>	1
<code>\rightstartnum</code>	1
<code>\rigidbalance</code>	1
<code>\rigidbalanceX</code>	1
<code>\rtab</code>	1
<code>\rtabtext</code>	1

## S

Sacrobosco	14
<code>\sameword</code>	1, 33
<code>\sameword@inedtext</code>	1
Schöpf, Rainer	14
<code>\section@num</code>	1
<code>\select@lemmafont</code>	1
<code>\select@lemmafont</code>	1, 57
<code>\SEref</code>	1, 65
<code>\SErefonlypage</code>	65
<code>\SErefwithpage</code>	1, 65
<code>\series</code>	1
<code>\seriesatbegin</code>	1, 42
<code>\seriesatend</code>	1, 42
<code>\set@continuousnumberingforL</code>	1
<code>\set@line</code>	1
<code>\set@line@action</code>	1
<code>\set@this@c@page</code>	1
<code>\set@txtbeforenotesX</code>	1
<code>\set@Xtxtbeforenotes</code>	1
<code>\setapprefprefixmore</code>	66
<code>\setapprefprefixsingle</code>	66
<code>\setcommand@series</code>	1
<code>\sethangindentX</code>	1
<code>\sethangingsymbol</code>	1, 60
<code>\setistwofollowinglines</code>	1
<code>\setl@dlp@rbox</code>	1
<code>\setl@drpr@box</code>	1
<code>\setline</code>	1, 24
<code>\setlinenum</code>	1, 24
<code>\setlinenumannotationsep</code>	1, 28



<code>\setmcellcenter</code>	1
<code>\setmcellleft</code>	1
<code>\setmcellright</code>	1
<code>\setmrowcenter</code>	1
<code>\setmrowleft</code>	1
<code>\setmrowright</code>	1
<code>\setmsdatalabel</code>	1, 40
<code>\setmsdataposition</code>	1, 40
<code>\setmsdataseries</code>	1, 40
<code>\setnoteswidthliketwocolumnsX@</code>	1
<code>\setnotesXpositionliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\setparindentX</code>	1
<code>\setprintendlines</code>	1
<code>\setprintlines</code>	1
<code>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</code>	66
<code>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</code>	66
<code>\setSErefprefixmore</code>	66
<code>\setSErefprefixsingle</code>	66
<code>\setsidenotessep</code>	69
<code>\setstanzaindents</code>	1, 57
<code>\setstanzapenalties</code>	1, 59
<code>\setstanzavalues</code>	1
<code>\settccllcenter</code>	1
<code>\settccllleft</code>	1
<code>\settccllright</code>	1
<code>\settoggle@series</code>	1
<code>\setthrowcenter</code>	1
<code>\setthrowleft</code>	1
<code>\setthrowright</code>	1
<code>\setXnotespositionliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\setXnoteswidthliketwocolumns@</code>	1
<code>\showlemma</code>	1, 78
<code>\showwordrank</code>	1, 37
<code>\sidenote@margin</code>	1
<code>\sidenotemargin</code>	1, 68
<code>\sidepstartnumtrue</code>	20
<code>\skip@lockoff</code>	1
<code>\skipnumbering</code>	1, 25
<code>\splitoff</code>	1
<code>\spreadmath</code>	1, 74
<code>\spreadtext</code>	1, 74
<code>\stanza</code>	1, 57
<code>\stanza@count</code>	1
<code>\stanza@hang</code>	1
<code>\stanza@indent</code>	1
<code>\stanza@line</code>	1
<code>\stanzaindent</code>	1, 59
<code>\stanzaindent*</code>	1, 59
<code>\stanzaindentbase</code>	1, 57
<code>\stanzanumwrapper</code>	1, 61

\startlock	1, 24
\startsub	1, 23
\step1@dcolcount	1
\stopmsdata	1, 39
\store@annot@to@absline	1
\strip@szacnt	1
\sub@action	1
\sub@lock	1
\sub@off	1
\sub@on	1
\subline@num	1
\sublinenumberstyle	1, 24
\sublinenumincrement	1, 22
\sublinenumr@p	1
\sublinenumrep	1
\sublineref	1, 63
\sublines@false	1
\sublines@true	1
\sublock@disp	1
\sublockdisp	1
Sullivan, Wayne	14, 80, 95, 100, 197, 198, 297, 338
\sw@noexpand	1
\swnoexpands	37
\sza@penalty	1

## T

\tabHilfbox	1
\tabhilfbox	1
\theadcolcount	1
\theadtext	1
\theendpageline	1
\thefootnoteA	40
Theodosius	14
\thepageline	1
\thepar@page	1
\thepstart	1, 20
\thestanza	1, 61
\thestartpageline	1
\this@line@list@version	1
\this@section@last@page@num	1
\this@section@page@num	1
\threecol@begin@insert	1
\threecolfootfmt	1
\threecolfootfmtX	1
\threecolfootgroup	1
\threecolfootgroupX	1
\threecolfootsetup	1
\threecolfootsetupX	1
\threecolvfootnote	1
\threecolvfootnote@inserted	1

<code>\threecolvfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\toendnotes</code> .....	1, 31
<code>\toendnotes*</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootfmt</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootfmtX</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootgroup</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootgroupX</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootsetup</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolfootsetupX</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolvfootnote</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolvfootnote@inserted</code> .....	1
<code>\twocolvfootnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\txtbeforenotesonlyonceX</code> .....	54
<code>\txtbeforenotesX</code> .....	54

## U

<code>\unvxhX</code> .....	1
----------------------------	---

## V

Vamana .....	14
<code>\variab</code> .....	1
<code>\vbfnoteX</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dbfnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dcsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@disnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dlsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@dosnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vl@drsnote</code> .....	1
<code>\vnumfootnoteX</code> .....	1

## W

Whitney, Ron .....	13
<code>\widthX</code> .....	56
<code>\wrap@edcrossref</code> .....	1
<code>\wrapcontentX</code> .....	52
<code>\wrapped@bodyfootmarkX</code> .....	1
<code>\wrapped@footfootmarkX</code> .....	1
Wujastyk, Dominik .....	13

## X

<code>\X@atbegininsertion</code> .....	1
<code>\X@beforeinsertion</code> .....	1
<code>\X@doreinfeet</code> .....	1
<code>\xabslineref</code> .....	1
<code>\Xafterlemmaseparator</code> .....	50
<code>\Xafternote</code> .....	53
<code>\Xafternumber</code> .....	48
<code>\Xafterrule</code> .....	55
<code>\Xaftersymlinenum</code> .....	48
<code>\xannotationref</code> .....	1, 64

\Xarrangement	1, 43
\Xarrangement@normal	1
\Xarrangement@paragraph	1
\Xarrangement@threecol	1
\Xarrangement@twocol	1
\Xbeforeinserting	52
\Xbeforelemmaseparator	50
\Xbeforenotes	55
\Xbeforenumber	48
\Xbeforesymlinenum	48
\Xbhookgroup	55
\Xbhooknote	52
\Xboxlinenum	48
\Xboxlinenumalign	49
\Xboxsymlinenum	49
\Xcolalign	53
\xedindex	1
\xedlabel	1
\xedtext	1
\Xendafterlemmaseparator	50
\Xendafternote	56
\Xendafterpagenumber	46
\Xendaftersymlinenum	48
\Xendaftrenumber	48
\Xendahookinplaceofnumber	50
\Xendahooklinenum	49
\Xendbeforelemmaseparator	50
\Xendbeforenumber	48
\Xendbeforepagenumber	46
\Xendbeforesymlinenum	48
\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber	50
\Xendbhooklinenum	49
\Xendbhooknote	52
\Xendboxendlinenumalign	49
\Xendboxlinenum	49
\Xendboxlinenumalign	49
\Xendboxstartlinenumalign	49
\Xendboxsymlinenum	49
\Xendhangindent	52
\Xendinplaceoflemmaseparator	50
\Xendinplaceofnumber	48
\Xendinplaceofpagenumber	45
\Xendlemmadisablefontselection	51
\Xendlemmafont	51
\Xendlemmaseparator	50
\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst	45
\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo	45
\Xendlinenumannotationposition	26
\Xendlineprefixmore	46
\Xendlineprefixsingle	46

\Xendlinangeseparator	46
\Xendmorethantwolines	47
\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation	28
\Xendnonumber	47
\Xendnotefontsize	51
\Xendnotenumfont	51
\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline	44
\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines	44
\Xendpagenumberonlyfirst	45
\Xendparagraph	56
\Xendsep	56
\Xendstorelineinfo	1
\Xendsublinesep	48
\Xendsymlinenum	44
\Xendsymlinenumannotation	45
\Xendsympagenum	45
\Xendtwolines	47
\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore	47
\Xendtxtbeforenotes	54
\Xendwrapcontent	52
\xflagref	1
\Xgroupbyline	54
\Xgroupbylineseparetwolines	54
\Xhangindent	52
\Xhsizethreecol	53
\Xhsizetwocol	53
\Xinnotemark	70
\Xinplaceoflemmaseparator	50
\Xinplaceofnumber	48
\Xinsertparafootsep	1
\Xledsetnormalparstuff	1
\xleft@appenditem	1
\Xlemmadisablefontselection	51
\Xlemmafont	51
\Xlemmaseparator	50
\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst	44
\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo	44
\Xlinenumannotationposition	26
\Xlinenumannotationposition@side	1
\Xlinangeseparator	46
\xlineref	1, 64
\Xmaxhnotes	55
\Xmorethantwolines	46
\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation	28
\Xnolemmaseparator	1, 50
\Xnonbreakableafternumber	48
\Xnonumber	47
\Xnotefontsize	51
\Xnotenumfont	51
\Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns	56

<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code>	44
<code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	44
<code>\Xonlypstart</code>	47
<code>\Xpagelinesep</code>	48
<code>\xpageref</code>	1, 64
<code>\Xparafootsep</code>	54
<code>\Xparindent</code>	52
<code>\Xprenotes</code>	1, 55
<code>\Xprenotes@</code>	1
<code>\Xpstart</code>	47
<code>\Xpstarteverytime</code>	47
<code>\Xpstartonlyfirst</code>	47
<code>\xpstartref</code>	1, 64
<code>\Xpstartseparator</code>	47
<code>\XR@test</code>	1
<code>\XR@test@mac</code>	1
<code>\XR@test@mac@test</code>	1
<code>\Xragged</code>	54
<code>\xright@appenditem</code>	1
<code>\Xrigidbalance</code>	1
<code>\Xsethangindent</code>	1
<code>\Xsetparindent</code>	1
<code>\Xstanza</code>	47
<code>\Xstanzaonlyfirst</code>	47
<code>\Xstanzaseparator</code>	47
<code>\Xstorelineinfo</code>	1
<code>\xsublineref</code>	1, 64
<code>\Xsublinesep</code>	23, 47
<code>\Xsublinesepside</code>	23
<code>\Xsymlinenum</code>	44
<code>\Xsymlinenumannotation</code>	45
<code>\Xtoendnotes</code>	31
<code>\Xtwolines</code>	46
<code>\Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code>	46
<code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code>	54
<code>\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce</code>	54
<code>\Xtxtbeforenumber</code>	46
<code>\Xunvxh</code>	1
<code>\Xwidth</code>	56
<code>\Xwrapcontent</code>	52
<code>\Xwrapendlemma</code>	52
<code>\Xwraplemma</code>	51
<code>\Xwraplinenumannotation@ref</code>	1
<code>\Xwraplinenumannotation@side</code>	1
<code>\xxref</code>	1, 64

## Z

<code>\zz@@@</code>	1
<code>\zz@@@</code>	1

## Change History

v0.1.0.	
General: First public release	1
v0.2.0.	
\ifl@dmemoir: Added \ifl@dmemoir for memoir class having been used	86
\morenoexpands: Added \l@dtabnoexpands to \no@expands	140
\reledmac@error: Added \eledmac@error and replaced error messages	87
General: Added tabmac code, and extended indexing	1
v0.2.1.	
\@lab: Removed page setting from \@lab	300
\edlabel: Tweaked \edlabel to get correct page numbers	297
\l@ddodoreintrafeet: Renamed \dodoreintrafeet to \l@ddodoreintrafeet	290
\l@ddoxtrafeet: Renamed \doxtrafeet to \l@ddoxtrafeet	288
\morenoexpands: Removed some \lets from \no@expands. These were in edmac but Peter Wilson feels that they should not have been as they disabled page/line refs in a footnotes	140
General: Added text about normal labeling	65
Bug fixes and match with mempatch v1.8	1
Major changes to insert code when memoir is loaded	292
v0.2.2.	
\footfudgefiddle: Added \footfudgefiddle	195
\next@line@list@stuff: Added initial write of page number in \line@list@stuff	131
\para@footsetup: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetup	195
\para@footsetupX: Added \footfudgefiddle to \para@footsetupX	240
General: Improved paragraph footnotes	1
New Dekker example	1
Used \providecommand for \@gobblethree to avoid clash with the amsfonts package	94
v0.3.0.	
\@lab: Replaced \the\line@num by \linenumr@p\line@num in \@lab, and similar for sub-lines	300
\@n@reg: Added a bunch of code to \@n@ for handling \setlinenum	118
\ledlinenum: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenumr@p to \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum	109
\linenumberlist: Added \linenumberlist mechanism	95
\printendlines: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenumr@p to \printendlines	260
\printlines: Added \linenumr@p and \sublinenumr@p to \printlines	222
\sublinenumr@p: Added \linenumberstyle and \sublinenumberstyle	108
General: Includes edstanza and more	1
v0.3.1.	
General: Not released. Added remarks about the parallel package	1
v0.4.0.	
\@iiiminipage: Modified kernel \@iiiminipage and \endminipage to cater for critical footnotes	323
\Xarrangement@normal: Added minpage footnote setup to \footnormal	190
\edtext: Added \showlemma to \edtext	141
\l@dfeetendmini: Added \l@dfeetbeginmini, \l@dfeetendmini and all their supporting code	321
\mpnormalfootgroup: Added \mpnormalfootgroup	194

\mpnormalvfootnote: Added \mpnormalvfootnote	191
\showlemma: Added \showlemma	95
General: Added final/draft options	83
Added ledgroup environment	324
Added ledgroupsize environment	325
Added minipage, etc., support	1
v0.4.1.	
\doXfeet: Changed \doXfeet code for easier extensions	289
\edindex: Let eledmac take advantage of memoir's indexing	330
\printXnotes: Added \opXfeet	289
General: Added code for changing \doclearpage	293
Not released. Minor editorial improvements and code tweaks	1
Only change \@footnotetext and \@footnotemark if memoir not used	226
v0.5.0.	
\@footnotetext: Enabled regular \footnote in numbered text	227
\@xympar: Eliminated \marginpar disturbance	313
General: Added left and right sidenotes	314
Added sidenotes, familiar footnotes in numbered text	1
v0.5.1.	
\affixline@num: Changed \affixline@num to cater for sidenotes	174
\l@getsidenote@margin: Added \sidenotemargin and \sidenote@margin	314
General: Added moveable sidenote	314
Fixed right line numbers killed in v0.5	1
Only change \hsize in ledgroupsize environment otherwise page number can be in wrong place	325
v0.6.0.	
\@lopR: Added \@pend, \@pendR, \@lopL and \@lopR in anticipation of parallel processing	120
\@nl@reg: Extended \@nl to include the page number	118
\get@thisfootnote: Changed \l@dbfnote and \v1@dbfnote as originals could give incorrect markers in the footnotes	227
\set@this@page: Extended \new@line to output page numbers	132
General: Fixed long paragraphs looping	1
Fixed minor typos	1
Prepared for eledpar package	1
v0.7.0.	
\@nl@reg: Added \@nl@reg	118
\@ref@reg: Added \@ref@reg	128
\affixline@num: Added skipnumering to \affixline@num	174
\do@actions@fixedcode: Added \do@actions@fixedcode	170
\do@actions@next: Added number skipping to \do@actions	169
\do@insidelinehook: Added \do@linehook for use in \do@line	166
\endnumbering: Changed \endnumbering for eledpar	99
\fx@l@cks: Added \ch@cksub@l@ck, \ch@ck@l@ck and \fx@l@cks	177
\footsplitskips: Added \footsplitskips for use in many footnote styles	188
\get@linelistfile: Added \get@linelistfile	116
\initnumbering@reg: Added \initnumbering@reg	97
\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes: Added \l@dunboxmpfoot containing some common code	324
\l@dcsnotetext@r: Added \l@emptyd@ta	166



\l@dgetline@margin: Added \l@dgetline@margin	105
\l@dgetlock@disp: Added \l@dgetlock@disp	107
\l@dgetsidenote@margin: Added \l@dgetsidenote@margin	314
\l@dnumpstartsL: Added \l@dnumpstartsL, \ifl@dpairing and \ifpst@rted for/from eledpar	95
\l@drsn@te: Added \l@dlsn@te and \l@drsn@te for use in \do@line	167
\l@dzeropenalties: Added \l@dzeropenalties	160
\ledlinenum: Added \ledlinenum for use by \leftlinenum and \rightlinenum	109
\list@clearing@reg: Added \list@clearing@reg	116
\n@num: Added \n@num	125
\next@line@list@stuff: Deleted \page@start from \line@list@stuff	131
\normalbfnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \normalbfnoteX	232
\pausenumbering@page@num: Changed \resumenumbering for eledpar	100
\setprintendlines: Added \setprintendlines for use by \printendlines	256
\setprintlines: Added \setprintlines for use by \printlines	217
\skipnumbering: Added \skipnumbering and supports	137
\sublinenumincrement: Added \firstlinenum, \linenumincrement, \firstsublinenum and \linenumincrement	106
\sublinenumr@p: Using \linenumrep instead of \linenumr@p	108
Using \sublinenumrep instead of \sublinenumr@p	108
\vnumfootnoteX: Removed extraneous space from \vnumfootnoteX	234
General: eledmac having been available for 2 years, deleted the commented out original edmac texts	1
Maïeul Rouquette new maintainer	1
Made macros of all messages	87
Replaced all \interAfootnotelinepenalty, etc., by just \interfootnotelinepenalty	1
Tidying up for eledpar and ledarab packages	1
v0.8.0.	
General: Bug on endnotes fixed: in a // text, all endnotes will print and be placed at the ends of columns ()	1
v0.8.1.	
General: Bug on \edtext ; \critex ; \lemma fixed: we can now us non-switching commands	1
v0.9.0.	
General: No more ledpatch. All patches are now in the main file.	1
v0.9.1.	
General: Fix some bugs linked to integrating ledpatch on the main file.	1
v0.10.0.	
General: Corrections to \section and other titles in numbered sections	1
v0.11.0.	
General: Makes it possible to add a symbol on each verse's hanging, as in French typography. Redefines the command \hangingsymbol to define the character.	1
v0.12.0.	
\l@dnumpstartsL: Added \ifledRcol and \ifnumberingR for/from eledpar	95
General: For compatibility with eledpar, possibility to use \autopar on the right side.	1
Possibility to number \pstart.	20
Possibility to number the pstart with the commands \numberpstarttrue.	1
v0.12.1.	
General: Don't number \pstarts of stanza.	1

The numbering of <code>\pstarts</code> restarts on each <code>\beginnumbering</code> .	1
v0.13.0.	
<code>\managestanza@modulo</code> : New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	340
General: New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	58
New <code>stanzaindentsrepetition</code> counter: to repeat stanza indents every $n$ verses.	1
v0.13.1.	
General: <code>\thepstartL</code> and <code>\thepstartR</code> use now <code>\bfseries</code> and not <code>\bf</code> , which is deprecated and makes conflicts with <code>memoir</code> class.	1
v0.14.0.	
<code>\edlabel</code> : Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.	297
General: Tweaked <code>\edlabel</code> to get correct line number if the command is first element of a paragraph.	1
v0.15.0.	
<code>\affixline@num</code> : Line numbering can be disabled.	174
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New management of <code>hangingsymbol</code> insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.	339
<code>\printlines</code> : Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> .	222
General: Line numbering can be reset at each <code>pstart</code> .	103
Possibility to print <code>\pstart</code> number at the sides of the text.	20
v0.17.0.	
<code>\ifinserthangingsymbol</code> : New new management of <code>hangingsymbol</code> insertion, preventing undesirable insertions.	339
v1.0.0.	
<code>\morenoexpands</code> : Change to be compatible with new features	140
General: <code>\lemma</code> can contain commands.	32
Debug in lineation command	22
New generic commands to customize footnote display.	43, 278
Options <code>nonum</code> and <code>nosep</code> in <code>\Xfootnote</code> .	30
Options of <code>\Xfootnotes</code> .	186
Possibility to have commands in sidenotes.	68
Some compatibility break with <code>eledmac</code> . Change of name: <code>eledmac</code> .	1
v1.0.1.	
General: Correction on <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code> with lineation by <code>pstart</code> or by page.	44
v1.1.0.	
<code>\Xprenotes</code> : New skip <code>\Xprenotes@</code>	248
<code>\settoggle@series</code> : <code>\settoggle@series</code> switch the global value of the toggle, not only the local value.	278
General: Add <code>\labelpstarttrue</code> .	20
Add <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code>	44
Add <code>\Xpstart</code> and <code>\Xonlypstart</code>	47
New hook to add arbitrary code at the beginning of the notes	52
New options for block of notes.	54
New package option: <code>parapparatus</code> .	1
New tools to change order of series	277
Sectioning commands.	76
v1.2.0.	
<code>\Xprenotes</code> : Debug in familiar footnotes (bug introduced by v1.1).	248
<code>\endquote</code> : Compatibility of <code>\ledchapter</code> with the <i>memoir</i> class.	380

v1.3.0.		
\endquote:	<i>Quotation</i> and quote environment inside numbered sections. . . . .	380
v1.4.0.		
\edtext:	Compatibility of \edtext with the right-to-left direction (with Polyglossia). . . . .	141
\ledsetnormalparstuffX:	Direction of footnotes with polyglossia. . . . .	245
\newseries@:	Remembers the language of the lemma, in order to create a correct direction for the footnote separator. . . . .	267
\rbracket:	Switch the right bracket to a left bracket when the lemma is RTL (needs polyglossia or LuaTeX). . . . .	210
General:	Compatibility with LuaTeX of RTL notes. . . . .	1
v1.4.1.		
\affixside@note:	Remove spurious spaces. . . . .	320
\endquote:	New option <i>noquotation</i> . . . . .	380
\get@thisfootnote:	Compatibility of standard footnotes with eledmac when these footnotes contain any commands. . . . .	227
\labelrefsparsesubline:	Fix a bug with \edlabel. . . . .	298
v1.4.2.		
General:	Debug with some special classes. . . . .	1
v1.4.3.		
General:	Add \Xnonbreakableafternumber. . . . .	48
Spurious space after familiar footnotes.	. . . . .	1
v1.4.4.		
General:	Label inside familiar footnotes. . . . .	1
v1.4.5.		
General:	Bug with komasscript + eledpar + chapter. . . . .	1
v1.4.6.		
General:	Bug with memoir class introduced by 1.4.5. . . . .	1
v1.4.7.		
\endquote:	Compatibility of sectioning commands with \autopar. . . . .	380
v1.4.8.		
General:	Corrects a bug with parallel texts introduced by 1.1. . . . .	1
v1.4.9.		
\normalbfnoteX:	Allow to redefine \thefootnoteX with alph when some packages are loaded. . . . .	232
v1.5.0.		
\do@insidelinehook:	Added \do@insidelinehook for use in \do@line . . . . .	166
\edindex:	Compatibility with imakeidx package, and possibility to use multiple index with \edindex. . . . .	330
General:	Correct indexing when the call is made in critical notes. . . . .	326
v1.5.1.		
\managestanza@modulo:	Correct stanzaindentsrepetition counter . . . . .	340
\normalvfootnoteX:	Fix a bug with normal familiar footnotes when mixing RTL and LTR text. . . . .	230
v1.6.0.		
\newverse:	Add \falseverse macro. . . . .	344
v1.6.1.		
\AtStartEveryPstart:	Spurious space in \pstart. . . . .	156
\ifinserthangingsymbol:	Hang verse is now not automatically flush right. . . . .	339
\l@dunhbox@line:	Move the call to \inserthangingsymbol to allow use \hfill inside. . . . .	162

\pend: Spurious space in \pend. . . . .	158
General: Corrects a false hanging verse when a verse is exactly the length of a line. . . . .	1
v1.7.0.	
General: New features for managing page breaks. . . . .	77
v1.8.0.	
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . . . .	380
\get@index@command: Debug \get@index@command and compatibility with hyperref package. . . . .	329
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxnotesX which did not work. . . . .	281
\prevpage@num: Correct \parafootsep when using with ledgroup. . . . .	201
General: Compatibility with parledgroup option of eledpar package. . . . .	1
If imakeidx and hyperref are loaded, adds hyperref in the index. . . . .	326
v1.8.1.	
General: Debug endnotes when more than one series is used (change the position where tools for endnotes are defined). . . . .	250
v1.8.2.	
General: Debug compatibility problem with hebrew option of babel package. . . . .	1
v1.8.3.	
General: Fixes spurious spaces added by v1.7.0. . . . .	1
v1.8.5.	
General: Debug indexing in right column, with eledpar. . . . .	326
v1.9.0.	
\l@ddoxtrafeet: Add \fnpos to choice the order of footnotes. . . . .	288
\l@dfeetendmini: Add \mpfnpos to choice the order of footnotes in minipage / ledgroup. . . . .	321
v1.10.0.	
\endquote: Correction of sectioning commands in parallel texts. . . . .	380
General: Add \pstartref and \xpstartref to refer to a pstart number (extension of \edlabel). . . . .	1
v1.10.1.	
General: Compatibility with cleveref. . . . .	1
v1.10.2.	
General: Compatibility of stanza with v1.8a of babel-greek. . . . .	1
v1.10.3.	
General: Debug of cross-referencing. . . . .	1
v1.10.4.	
General: Debug of critical notes in edtabular environment. . . . .	1
v1.10.5.	
General: Debug of \pausenumbering. . . . .	1
Debug of \xxref. . . . .	1
v1.10.6.	
General: Debug of interaction between \autopar and \pausenumbering. . . . .	1
v1.11.0.	
General: Add hooks to disable the font selection for lemma in footnote. . . . .	51
v1.11.1.	
General: Correct a bug when a critical note starts with plus or minus. . . . .	1
v1.12.0.	
\@nl@reg: To ensure compatibility with \musixtex, \@1 becomes \@l. Consequently, \@1@reg becomes \@nl@reg. . . . .	117

\AtStartEveryPstart: New optional argument for \pstart, to execute code before it.	156
\edindex: Use correctly default index when imakeidx is loaded.	330
\endquote: \ledxxx sectioning commands are deprecated and replaced by \eledxxx commands.	380
\initnumbering@reg: \beginnumbering is defined only on eledmac, not on eledpar.	97
\l@dgetsidenote@margin: \sidenotemargin is now directly defined in eledmac to be able to manage eledpar.	314
\l@disnote: \l@dlsnote, \l@drsnote and \l@dcnote defined only one time, in eledmac, including needs for eledpar case.	315
\l@dnumbstartsL: Add \ifledRcol@ for eledpar	95
\l@dunhbox@line: \do@line is split in more little commands.	163
\newhookcommand@series@reload: Debug \beforenotesX and \maxhnotesX which did not work when called after \footparagraphX.	281
Debug \Xbeforenotes and \Xmaxhnotes which did not work when called after \footparagraph.	281
\pend: New optional argument for \pend, to execute code after it.	158
\stanza: &can have an optional argument: content to be printed after.	344
\Stanza can have an optional argument: content to be printed before.	344
Add \newverse macro, \falseverse deprecated.	344
General: Add \ledinnernote and \ledouternote commands.	68
Add \Xendparagraph and related settings.	56
Add hyperlink to crossref (needs hyperref package).	63
Compatibility with musixtex.	1
Debug eledmac sectioning command after using \resumenumbering.	1
Ensure that imakeidx is loaded <i>before</i> eledmac	326
New hooks: \Xafterrule and \afterruleX	55
New options for ragged-paragraph notes	54
New sectioning commands.	76
Optional arguments for \pstart and \pend.	19
v1.12.1.	
\wrap@edcrossref: Fix spurious spaces.	302
v1.12.2.	
\l@dunhbox@line: Fix a bug with critical notes at the tops of pages (added by v12.0.0)	162
v1.12.3.	
\flag@end: \flag@start and \flag@end are now defined only one time for eledmac and eledpar	133
\flag@start send a error message when a \edtext is done without insert (note)	133
\reledmac@error: Replaced error messages	87
General: Add macros for new messages since v0.7	87
Correct bug with side and familiar notes in tabular environments.	1
Debug \eledxxx with some paper size	1
Debug \ledinnernote and \ledouternote commands in the top of pages.	68
Debug left and right notes (bugs added by 1.12.0)	1
Underline lemma in \eledxxx when using draft mode.	1
v1.12.4.	
General: Debug spurious page breaks before \chapter (bug added in 1.12.0)	1
v1.12.5.	
\@edindex@hyperref: Debug \edindex when hyperref is not loaded	332
\@ssect: Debug \eledchapter in parallel with memoir	383
\doinsidelinehook: Added \dolinehook and \doinsidelinehook	166

\endnumbering: Allow to mix parallel columns and normal text when using \pausenumbering .....	99
\l@dgobbleoptarg: \l@dgobblearg becomes \l@dgobbeloptyarg .....	363
\l@drestoreforedtext: Debug optional arguments of \Xfootnote in tabular context	363
\pausenumbering@page@num: Debug \resumenumbering .....	100
v1.12.7.	
\wrap@edcrossref: \wrap@edcrossref is now robust .....	302
v1.12.8.	
\flag@end: \flag@start do not send a error message when a \edtext is done without insert (note) but have a endnote .....	133
v1.13.0.	
\newhooktoggle@series@reload: Add \newhookcommand@toggle@reload ....	281
\para@footsetupX: In \para@footsetupX, use \columnwidth instead of \hsize .	240
\settoggle@series: \settoggle@series can take an optional arguments to reload series setup. ....	278
General: Add \Xnoteswidthliketwocolumns and \noteswidthliketwocolumnsX .	56
Added widthliketwocolumns option .....	83
v1.13.1.	
\ifat@every@pstart@star@: Add \l@dzeropenalties in \pstart .....	156
General: Coming back of page and line breaking penalties's management, deleted by error in v0.17. ....	1
Debug quotation environment inside of a \pstart preceded by a sectioning command.	1
v1.13.2.	
\l@dnumpstartsL: Add \ifl@dpaging for eledpar .....	95
General: Fix a bug with normal footnotes, added by v1.13.0. ....	1
v1.13.3.	
General: Fix extra spaces with paragraphed footnotes, added by v1.13.0. ....	1
v1.13.4.	
General: Fix a bug with index when memoir class is used without hyperref .....	1
v1.14.0.	
\edindex: Let eledmac take advantage of imakeidx even when memoir class is used .	330
General: Debug spurious characters before endnotes. ....	250
Delete previous override of \l@d@@wrindexhyp at the beginning of a document when hyperref is not loaded. ....	334
Move gobbling command .....	94
Provide \@gobblefour .....	94
v1.14.1.	
\@ssect: Debug sectioning commands when using both handout and hyperref package. ....	386
v1.14.2.	
\@ssect: Debug \edtext after starred sectioning commands when using memoir class.	383
v1.15.0.	
\@edtext@level: New boolean \if@edtext@. ....	141
\arrangementX@paragraph: Correct bug with paragraphed familiar footnotes setting.	240
\endsub: Restore subline feature (disabled by mistake in v1.8.0). ....	135
\if@lemmacommand@: New boolean \iflemmacommand@. ....	147
General: Fix a bug with footnotes layout when using some options of the geometry package (bug add by v1.13.0). ....	1
New commands \AtEveryPstart and \AtEveryPend. ....	20
New tools to prevent ambiguous references in lemma .....	33

v1.15.1.	
\next@line@list@stuff:	Revert modification of 1.5.2 which makes bug with numbering. Leave vertical mode to solve spurious space before minipage. . . . .
	131
v1.16.0.	
General:	\edtext is now defined only in eledmac, not in eledpar. Debug wrong numbering when using \sameword + eledpar + \tag command. . . . .
	141
Compatibility of standard footnotes with some biblatex styles.	. . . . .
	1
New \stanzaindent command.	. . . . .
	1
v1.16.1.	
\xlineref:	\lineref is not defined if defined by some other package, like lineno. Eledmac provides \edlineref instead. . . . .
	303
v1.17.0.	
\edtext:	Error message when calling \edtext outside of a numbered paragraph. . . .
	141
v1.18.0.	
\@edindex@hyperref:	Fix spurious space with \edindex when using imakeidx/indextools + hyperref. . . . .
	332
\edlabel:	\edlabel is now defined only one time for both eledmac and eledpar . . . .
	297
\l@d@section:	Option parapparatus works for endnotes. . . . .
	251
\l@dnumprintstartL:	Add \ifl@dprintingpages and \@dprintingcolumns for eledpar . . . . .
	95
\print@line:	Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ RTL languages. . . . .
	163
\printlinefootnote:	Code refactoring in \printlinefootnote: the printing of the numbers are factorized in \printlinefootnotearea . . . . .
	212
\printpstart:	Debug \Xpstart with parallel pages and columns (eledpar) . . . . .
	211
General:	Add \Xpstarteverytime . . . . .
	47
Compatibility with Lua $\TeX$ RTL languages.	. . . . .
	1
Debug \Xonlypstart when using \Xnumberonlyfirstinline and the current line number differs from the previous.	. . . . .
	47
v1.19.0.	
\footplitskips:	\footplitskips doesn't set \floatingpenalty to \@MM when processing parallel pages. . . . .
	188
\xxref:	\xxref works also with right side numbers, when \@Rlineflag is not empty. . . .
	305
General:	\Xmaxhnotes and \maxhnotesX work now for both two-columns and three-columns setting. . . . .
	1
Compatibility with eledpar v1.13.0.	. . . . .
	1
v1.19.1.	
General:	Call \correct@footinsX@box and \correct@Xfootins@box directly in \print@notesX@forpages and \print@Xnotes@forpages, that is in eledpar. . . .
	1
v1.20.0.	
\printlines:	Added \ifl@dXmorethantwolines and \ifl@dXmorethantwolines to \printlines . . . . .
	222
\stanza:	& and \& can be preceded by spaces. . . . .
	344
\xxref:	Debug \xxref when not loading eledpar (Fix a bug added in 1.19.0). . . . .
	305
General:	Add \Xendboxlinenum . . . . .
	49
Add \Xtwolines and \Xmorethantwolines hooks	. . . . .
	46
Add series option.	. . . . .
	1
Correct \Xinplaceofnumber hook.	. . . . .
	1
Explicit error message when calling \Xfootnote outside of \edtext.	. . . . .
	1
Fix a bug with line number typesetting direction when using \eledsection and similar commands for RTL texts with Lua $\TeX$ .	. . . . .
	1

Fix issues with RTL text in notes when using Lua $\TeX$ .	1
Options fulllines in $\backslash Xfootnote$ .	30
The $\backslash newifs$ are not followed by boolean values set to false, because it is the $\TeX$ default setting.	1
v1.21.0.	
$\backslash @edindex@hyperref$ : Look at the hyperindex option of hyperref before inserting hyperref	332
$\backslash l@d@section$ : $\backslash endnotes$ take five arguments.	251
$\backslash ledinnotemark$ : Add $\backslash ledinnotemark$ .	329
$\backslash ledsetnormalparstuffX$ : $\backslash ledsetnormalparstuff$ is deprecated and becomes $\backslash ledsetnormalparstuffX$ and $\backslash Xledsetnormalparstuff$ .	245
$\backslash n@num$ : $\backslash n@num@ref$ deleted	125
$\backslash n@num$ defined only one time for both Eledmac and Eledpar	125
$\backslash newhookcommand@series$ : $\backslash newhookcommand@series$ can take an optional argument.	280
$\backslash newhooktoggle@series$ : $\backslash newhooktoggle@series$ can take an optional argument.	281
$\backslash print@footnoterule$ : Code refactoring: the spaces after the footnote rules are directly managed in $\backslash print@Xfootnoterule$ and $\backslash print@footnoterule$	247
$\backslash seriesatend$ : Fix spurious space in $\backslash seriesatend$	277
$\backslash skipnumbering$ : $\backslash skipnumbering$ defined only one time for both Eledmac and Eledpar.	137
Correct $\backslash skipnumbering$ for stanza.	137
Delete $\backslash skipnumbering@reg$ .	137
General: $\backslash AtEveryPstart$ and $\backslash AtEveryPend$ are now compatible with $\backslash autopar$	1
$\backslash Xafterrule$ and $\backslash afterruleX$ features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page.	1
$\backslash chapter$ inside optional argument of $\backslash pstart$ works when typesetting parallel pages	1
$\backslash preXnotes$ and $\backslash prenotesX$ features no longer create problems of overflowing at the bottom of the page.	1
$\backslash seriesatbegin$ and $\backslash seriesatbegin$ more efficient	277
Add $\backslash applabel$ and related	66
Add $\backslash beforenotesX$ and $\backslash Xbeforenotes$ features for notes set in two and three column.	1
Add $\backslash hidenummering$	25
Add $\backslash Xcolalign$ and $\backslash colalignX$ hooks	53
Add $\backslash Xendtwolines$ , $\backslash Xendmoreethantwolines$ , $\backslash Xendtwolinesbutnotmore$ and $\backslash Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage$ .	47
Add $\backslash Xparindent$ and $\backslash hangindentX$	52
Add $\backslash Xtwolinesbutnotmore$ and $\backslash Xtwolinesonlyinsamepage$ .	1
Add nocritical, noend, nofamiliar and noledgroup options.	1
Add noeledsec package option	1
Debug $\backslash beforenotesX$ $\backslash maxhnotesX$ $\backslash noteswidthliketwocolumnsX$ and $\backslash afterruleX$ with footnotes set in two and three columns.	1
Fix a bug when a $\backslash Xfootnote$ follows a $\backslash Xendnote$ in the second argument of $\backslash edtext$ (bug added in eledmac 1.0.0).	1
Fix a bug with $\backslash maxhnotesX$ when using $\backslash foottwocolX$ or $\backslash footthreecolX$ .	1
Fix a bug with space between columns with notes in two columns (bug added in v1.13.0).	1



Fix spurious space after first page number in <code>\doendnotes</code> . <code>oldprintnpnumspace</code> option allows to come back to previous setting . . . . .	1
<code>parapparatus</code> option works now with familiar footnotes. . . . .	1
Provide <code>\@gobblefive</code> . . . . .	94
v1.22.0.	
<code>\ledinnote</code> : <code>\ledinnote</code> takes a first optional argument, which is the label for hyperlinks. . . . .	329
General: Add <code>\doendnotesbysection</code> command. . . . .	31
Add option for lemma separator inside endnotes . . . . .	50
Adds hyperlink for references to notes in indices. . . . .	1
Fix conflict between <code>noend</code> package option and <code>edtabularx</code> environments . . . . .	1
Provides support for <code>xindy</code> . . . . .	1
Standardize endnotes handbook. . . . .	31
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, internal links in index or with <code>\edlineref</code> are now targeted to the top and not longer to the bottom of the lines they refer to. . . . .	1
v1.22.1.	
<code>\prevpage@num</code> : Correct double symbol when using both <code>\parafootsep</code> and <code>\Xsymlinenum</code> . . . . .	201
General: Fix a bug (added on v1.22.0) with <code>\Xinplaceofnumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
v1.23.0.	
<code>\@edtext@level</code> : The boolean <code>\if@edtext@</code> becomes the counter <code>\edtext@level</code> . . . . .	141
<code>\Serefwithpage</code> : Debug <code>\Xendtwolines</code> , <code>\Xendmoreethantwolines</code> , <code>\Xendtwolinesbutnotmore</code> and <code>\Xendtwolinesonlyinsamepage</code> when using <code>\apprefwithpage</code> . . . . .	309
<code>\lemma</code> : Fix spurious space after <code>\lemma</code> command . . . . .	147
<code>\newsseries@</code> : Prevent spurious spaces when <code>\Afootnote</code> and similar commands are followed by spaces (bug added on 1.0.0). . . . .	267
<code>\sameword</code> : In order to allow use of <code>\sameword</code> with <code>inputenc</code> , we detokenize its mandatory argument before using it in control sequence names. . . . .	152
General: Add <code>\Xboxlinenumalign</code> and <code>\Xendboxlinenumalign</code> . . . . .	49
Add <code>\Xboxstartlinenum</code> , <code>\Xendboxstartlinenum</code> , <code>\Xboxendlinenum</code> , <code>\Xendboxendlinenum</code> . . . . .	49
Allow use of <code>\sameword</code> with <code>inputenc</code> managing of UTF-8. . . . .	1
Compatibility between <code>nofamiliar/nocriticals</code> option and <code>minipage/ledgroup</code> . . . . .	1
Error message when using <code>\beginnumbering</code> ... <code>\endnumbering</code> without <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\sameword</code> when the lemma overlaps multiple line. . . . .	33
Fix a bug with <code>\sameword</code> when the same lemma is used for multiple notes or for nested <code>\edtexts</code> . . . . .	33
Fix a bug with <code>\skipnumbering</code> called immediately after a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix error of <code>\iftrue</code> not closed. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space with <code>\skipnumbering</code> (bug added on v1.21.0). . . . .	1
New tools to ensure the line-list file uses the right version of commands when upgrading the <code>eledmac</code> version. . . . .	1
Optional argument of <code>\sameword</code> can be a comma-separated list of <code>\edtext</code> depth. . . . .	33
v1.23.1.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\lemma</code> command in the right side. . . . .	1
v1.23.2.	
General: Compatibility with $\text{\LaTeX}$ 's release 2015. . . . .	1

v1.24.0.	
General: We can reinitialize <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> and <code>\AtEveryPend</code> providing to it an empty argument. . . . .	1
v1.24.1.	
General: <code>\lemma</code> is disabled when using ‘nocritical’ option. . . . .	1
v1.24.2.	
General: Fix incompatibility between ‘nofamiliar’ option and ‘memoir’ package. . . . .	1
v1.24.3.	
General: Restore marginal numbers and notes with sectioning command (bug introduced in v1.21.0) . . . . .	1
v1.24.4.	
General: Fix spurious space with <code>\edindex</code> when using <code>xindy+hyperref</code> option. . . . .	1
v1.24.5.	
General: Fix a bug of indent, when a added in 1.1.0, when a <code>\beginnumbering</code> immediately follow a sectioning command. . . . .	1
v2.0.0.	
<code>\@iiiminipage</code> : Patch <code>\@iiiminipage</code> instead of redefining it. . . . .	323
<code>\@xympar</code> : Patching <code>\@xympar</code> instead of redefining it . . . . .	313
<code>\endminipage</code> : Patch <code>\endminipage</code> instead of redefining it. . . . .	323
<code>\initnumbering@quote</code> : <code>\initnumbering@sectcmd</code> becomes <code>\initnumbering@quote</code> . . . . .	380
<code>\l@advance@parledgroup@beforenormalnotes</code> : Some code of <code>\l@dumboxmpfoot</code> moved to <code>\l@advance@parledegroupp@beforenormalnotes</code> . . . . .	324
<code>\newseries@</code> : One endnotes file by series. . . . .	273
General: <code>\@makecol</code> , <code>\@reinserts</code> and <code>\@doclearpage</code> are patched instead of begin redefined . . . . .	292
<code>\doxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\Xdo@feet</code> ; <code>\doxtrafeetii</code> becomes <code>\do@Xfeet</code> ; <code>\@opxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\@opfeetX</code> ; <code>\doreinxtrafeetii</code> becomes <code>\X@doreinfeet</code> ; <code>\doreinxtrafeeti</code> becomes <code>\@doreinfeetX</code> . . . . .	292
Add <code>\Xendinplaceofnumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
Add <code>\Xendnonumber</code> hook. . . . .	1
Add <code>nonum</code> option for endnotes. . . . .	1
Fix a bug when printing only one series of endnotes, but wanted to keep endnotes for other series. . . . .	1
In order to have a more consistent name’s convention, many names has been changed. . . . .	1
Many $\TeX$ ’s output macros are now patched and not override. . . . .	1
Package’s name becomes <code>reledmac</code> . . . . .	1
Patch <code>\@footnotemark</code> instead of redefine it . . . . .	226
Suppress indexing command specific to <code>memoir</code> . . . . .	330
v2.0.1.	
General: Fix a bug in <code>eledmac-compat</code> option . . . . .	1
Fix incompatibility between optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> . . . . .	1
v2.1.0.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\advanceline</code> at the beginning of a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\chapter</code> in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> in parallel typesetting with <code>scrbook</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\eledchapter</code> in parallel typesetting with <code>scrbook</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\setline</code> at the beginning of a <code>\pstart</code> . . . . .	1
Fix spacing bug with <code>\Xhooknote</code> and <code>\hooknoteX</code> when using them to insert text and not to execute code. . . . .	1

New tools to number stanzas . . . . .	1
v2.1.1.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\ledpbsetting{before}</code> . . . . .	1
v2.1.2.	
General: Fix a bug with lineation by <code>pstart</code> and <code>tabular</code> environments (added in 2.1.0). . . . .	1
v2.1.3.	
<code>\ledsetnormalparstuffX</code> : Replaced <code>\noindent</code> with <code>\parindent</code> set to 0pt. . . . .	245
General: <code>\Xhangindent</code> and <code>\hangindentX</code> work now with all the paragraphs in the note. . . . .	1
<code>\Xnoindent</code> and <code>\noindentX</code> work now again (broken in 2.0.0). . . . .	1
Change some internal code in order to provide compatibility with $\TeX$ release of october 2015 . . . . .	1
Fix a bug which inserted double space before paragraphed familiar notes. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\edindex</code> when using not-Latin characters without UTF-8 engines . . . . .	1
v2.2.0.	
General: Fix a bug with combination of <code>\onehalfspacing</code> and two columns and three columns notes typeset. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with some setting command and optimization option. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space with paragraphed critical notes when using $\text{Lua}\TeX$ . . . . .	1
Increase line list version number to ensure compatibility with new options of <code>reledpar</code> package. . . . .	1
New setting tools for endnotes: <code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstinline</code> , <code>\Xendnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code> , <code>\Xendsymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendbeforenumber</code> , <code>\Xendafterenumber</code> , <code>\Xendbeforesymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendaftersymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendboxsymmlinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendhangindent</code> , <code>\Xendbhooklinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendahooklinenumber</code> , <code>\Xendbhookinplaceofnumber</code> , <code>\Xendahookinplaceofnumber</code> . . . . .	1
v2.2.1.	
General: Compatibility with $\text{TeX}$ format 2015/10/01. . . . .	1
v2.2.2.	
General: Fix a bug in <code>\sethangingsymbol</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with old version of <code>etex</code> . . . . .	1
v2.3.0.	
General: Disable empty lines as paragraph in stanza. . . . .	1
Fix incompatibility of paragraphed footnotes with <code>bidi</code> v17.9 and following. . . . .	1
Warning message when using some setting commands inside <code>rightside</code> environment (deprecated behavior) . . . . .	1
v2.3.1.	
General: Fix spurious space when using optional argument of <code>\stanza</code> (introduced in v2.3.0). . . . .	1
v2.4.0.	
<code>\footnoteoptions@</code> : First argument of <code>\footnoteoption@</code> is now mandatory, not optional. . . . .	186
General: <code>\Xbhooknote</code> and <code>\bhooknoteX</code> work with notes in columns. . . . .	1
Fix a bug of <code>\parindentX</code> and <code>\Xparindent</code> with two columns and three columns notes. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\sameword</code> in right side. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space in two columns and three columns notes. . . . .	1
Fix spurious space when using optional argument of <code>stanza</code> (introduced in v2.3.0). . . . .	1
New hooks: <code>\Xlinerrangeseparator</code> and <code>\Xendlinerrangeseparator</code> . . . . .	46

Option linerangesep for critical footnotes and endnotes. . . . .	46
v2.4.1.	
General: Fix a bug with \appref and \apprefwithpage (introduced in v2.4.0). . . . .	1
Fix a bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages that override $\LaTeX$ \roman command, like Greek language. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with tabular environments when using babel or polyglossia languages that override $\LaTeX$ \roman command, like Greek. . . . .	1
v2.5.0.	
\Serefwithpage: Debug \setapprefprefixsingle . . . . .	309
\edlabel: Fix a bug when calling \edlabel in a footnotes of the right side . . . . .	297
\l@d@section: \endnotes take six arguments. . . . .	251
\printlines: \printlines takes an eighth argument: the line flag . . . . .	222
\xlineref: \xlineref does not include anymore the side flag. Use \xflagref to get it. Not that \edlineref still contains the flag. . . . .	303
General: \apprefwithpage and \appref print double quotation mark when the label was not defined. . . . .	1
\apprefwithpage and \appref work with right side crossref. . . . .	1
\apprefwithpage works also when noend option is enabled. . . . .	1
\appref and \apprefwithpage can take linerangesep optional argument. . . . .	1
\edlabel works now in \Xfootnote. . . . .	1
\lemma can be used even when the nocritical is enabled. . . . .	1
Compatibility with new hook and tools of reledpar 2.6.0. . . . .	1
Fix spurious vertical space in astanza environment (reledpar) . . . . .	1
Log now states ‘There were undefined references’ when using wrong references in \edlineref or edpageref. . . . .	1
New hooks to customize page and line number appearance in endnotes. . . . .	1
New hooks: \Xhookgroup and \hookgroupX. . . . .	1
New tools to easily make cross-reference to a passage defined by a start and an end line	65
v2.6.0.	
General: Adds compatibility with innnote and notenumber options of indextools package. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with footnote counter in ledgroup (added in v2.5.0). . . . .	1
Fix bug, introduced in v2.5.0, with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting when using perpage package. . . . .	1
v2.7.0.	
\@k: \rigidbalance is split in \Xrigidbalance and \rigidbalanceX. . . . .	202
\l@d@section: \endnotes take seven arguments. . . . .	251
General: Add dash as default page range separator for \SEonlypage . . . . .	1
Debug \SErefonlypage when referring to only one page. . . . .	1
Delete parenthesis after \SErefonlypage. . . . .	1
Fix (again) bugs with footnote numbering in parallel typesetting while using ledgroup environments (bug added in v2.5.0). . . . .	1
Fix a bug with \SErefwithpage. . . . .	1
Fix bugs in compatibility with innote and notenumber options of indextools package, when indexing outside of a ledgroup. . . . .	1
New commands to make glossaries connected to page and linenumber with the glossaries package . . . . .	1
New hooks: \Xhsize and \hsizeX . . . . .	56
New hooks: \Xlemmfont and \xendlemmfont . . . . .	51

New setting commands: <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</code> and <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</code> . . . . .	1
Warning for duplicate and undefined labels are parsable by latexmk . . . . .	1
Warning for duplicate labels does not send any more a false line and page number . . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add link in familiar footnotes between the footnote marks in the text and the footnote marks in the footnote . . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add links for <code>\SEref</code> and related, <code>\appref</code> and related. . . . .	1
When using <code>hyperref</code> package, add links from critical footnotes and critical endnotes to the line of text they refers . . . . .	1
v2.7.1.	
General: Debug <code>\Xhookgroup</code> hooks executed on columnar footnotes (moved to a larger group, to take effect). . . . .	1
v2.7.2.	
General: <code>\Xhsize</code> and <code>\hsizeX</code> become <code>\Xwidth</code> and <code>\widthX</code> . . . . .	56
Fix problem of hyphenation when using <code>hyperref</code> package (added in v2.7.0). . . . .	1
v2.8.0.	
<code>\l@d@section: \Xendhangindent</code> and <code>\Xendafternote</code> can take values which are relative to the font size of the endnote. . . . .	251
General: <code>reledmac</code> cross-referencing can take advantage of <code>xr</code> package. . . . .	1
More <code>\edgls...</code> commands. . . . .	1
No indentation for paragraphed notes in <code>ledgroup</code> . Can be changed with <code>\Xparindent</code> and <code>\parindentX</code> . . . . .	1
v2.8.1.	
General: Warnings for undefined labels are really parsable by latexmk . . . . .	1
v2.8.2.	
General: Fix a bug concerning indent in a paragraph immediately following a sectioning command (bug NOT fixed on <code>reledpar</code> ) . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> added in version 2.0.0. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with vertical space after the between-sectioning command as optional argument of a <code>\pstart</code> and <code>\pstart</code> content . . . . .	1
v2.9.0.	
General: Allow continuing line numbering between normal text and parallel text, using <code>\pausenumbering</code> and <code>\resumenumbering</code> and the <code>continuousnumberingwithcolumns</code> option. . . . .	1
Fix a bug when using <code>\lineneation{page}</code> and <code>\pausenumbering... \resumenumbering</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with three- and two-column footnote setting (added in v2.4.0). . . . .	1
Fix spurious space inside three-column familiar footnote. . . . .	1
Write correct metadata in numbered files when using <code>\pausenumbering... \resumenumbering</code> . . . . .	1
v2.9.1.	
General: Fix a bug when notes start with “plus” or “minus”. . . . .	1
v2.9.2.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>hyperref</code> package when a lemma starts with “plus” or “minus” (bug introduced in v. 2.7.0). . . . .	1
v2.9.3.	
General: Fix a bug with line number position and reset added by v. 2.9.0 . . . . .	1

v2.10.0.	
\print@lemma: Code refactoring between \parafootfmt, \twocolfootfmt, \threecolfootfmt and \normalfootfmt. . . . .	211
General: Add \AtEveryStanza and \AtEveryStopStanza. . . . .	1
Fix a bug in \ledlsnotefontsetup and \ledrsnotefontsetup which could not handle \color command properly. . . . .	1
More specific error messages. . . . .	1
New hooks: \Xwrapcontent, \Xendwrapcontent and \wrapcontentX. . . . .	52
New hooks: \Xwraplemma and \Xendwraplemma . . . . .	51
v2.10.1.	
General: Add ‘nopenalties’ option. . . . .	1
Fix a bug introduced in v. 1.4: not paragraphed critical footnotes could prevent marginal line number from being displayed . . . . .	1
v2.11.0.	
\do@actions@fixedcode: Add action 1010 . . . . .	170
General: Add new tools to produce an apparatus of manuscripts . . . . .	1
Fix a bug in \Xparafootsep in parallel typesetting . . . . .	1
Make \parafootsepX work . . . . .	1
Prevent \Xtxtbeforenotes hook from causing notes to go beyond the bottom margin . . . . .	1
v2.12.0.	
General: \preXnotes becomes \Xprenotes (naming convention) . . . . .	1
Add \hidenumberingonleftpage and \hidenumberingonrightpage . . . . .	1
Add \toendnotes and related. . . . .	1
Add auxdir option. . . . .	1
Fix a bug in critical and familiar footnotes when using uppercase letters with accent mark . . . . .	1
Fix a bug when using \chapter in optional argument of \pstart in parallel typesetting in combination with the noeledsec option. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with \ledinnernote and \ledouternote in parallel typesetting . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with familiar footnote number in optional argument of \pstart or \pend in parallel typesetting . . . . .	1
Fix spurious vertical space in \chapter when used as optional argument of \pstart in parallel typesetting. . . . .	1
Make endnote compatible with \sameword mechanism . . . . .	1
More accurate message to control the position of \Xfootnote and \applabel in the $\LaTeX$ code . . . . .	1
v2.13.0.	
General: Version 2.13.0 never existed. . . . .	1
v2.13.1.	
General: In critical footnotes, the right side flag is printed only if requested explicitly with \Xlineflag (bug added in v. 2.5.0). . . . .	1
v2.13.2.	
General: Fix a bug added in v. 11.2 which could make parallel typesetting not work. . . . .	1
v2.13.3.	
General: Makes \Xendafterpagenumbe affecting \Serefwithpage . . . . .	1
v2.14.0.	
General: Hyperref with the line number inside critical footnotes is correct when using \xxref . . . . .	1
Some internal changes for new features of reledpar. . . . .	1

v2.14.1.	
General: Fix a bug when using <code>\footnoteX</code> in the first argument of <code>\edtext</code> .	1
v2.14.1a.	
General: Fix problematic typos in the handbook.	1
v2.15.0.	
General: Add ‘byline’ arrangement.	1
Fix <code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code> in <code>ledgroup</code> .	1
v2.15.1.	
General: Fix <code>\edindex</code> in tabular environments.	1
v2.15.2.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>fancyhdr</code> package 3.8 and later.	1
v2.15.3.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\section</code> in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> and empty line before <code>\pend</code> (bug added in v2.8.2).	1
Simplification of the sectioning command code.	1
v2.16.0.	
General: <code>\Xdo@feet</code> becomes <code>\do@Xfeet</code>	292
Add <code>\Xendpagenumberonlyfirst</code> , <code>\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstifsingle</code> , <code>\Xendpagenumberonlyfirstintwo</code> , <code>\Xendinplaceofpagenumber</code> and <code>\Xendsympagenum</code> hooks.	1
Add <code>\Xpagelinesep</code> hook.	48
Compatibility with new features of <code>reledpar</code>	1
Deleted dead code.	1
Display a warning message if using a version of $\TeX$ that is too old.	1
Fix a bug with <code>\Xgroupbylines</code> for notes in two columns	1
Fix a bug with <code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code> for notes in three or two columns	1
Fix a bug with ‘notenumber’ option of <code>indextools</code> package when indexing texts in familiar footnotes.	1
Fix potential bug when using <code>\edindex</code> in critical footnotes.	1
More explicit error message in case the stanza indentation is not defined.	292
New options for <code>\fnpos</code> and <code>\mpfnpos</code> to set a customized order for familiar and critical footnotes.	1
When <code>\edindex</code> is called outside of a <code>\beginnumbering... \endnumbering</code> structure, it is automatically switched to <code>\index</code> , with a warning message.	1
When indexing texts in familiar footnotes with <code>\edtext</code> , refer to the line number where the footnote is called.	1
When indexing texts in sidenotes with <code>\edtext</code> , refer to the line number where the sidenote is called.	1
v2.16.1.	
General: Fix a bug with redefinition of the style of the footnote number (bug added in v2.12.0)	1
v2.16.2.	
General: Error message if <code>footmisc</code> is loaded after <code>reledmac</code> .	1
Fix a bug introduced by v2.16.1 when using non-expandable control sequence, like <code>\normalfont</code> , in the footnote number style.	1
v2.16.3.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\Seref</code> (bug added in v2.7.0).	1
v2.16.4.	
General: Fix a bug with vertical space before sectioning command in optional argument of <code>\pstart</code> (bug added in v2.15.3).	1

v2.16.5.	
General: Fix potential spurious spaces in endnotes. . . . .	1
v2.16.6.	
General: Fix a bug with the line number style in <code>\doenotes</code> when referring to right side line in parallel typesetting. . . . .	1
Take into account <code>\linenumberstyle</code> when using <code>\edlineref</code> . . . . .	1
v2.16.7.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\msdata</code> when using multiple <code>\beginnumbering... \endnumbering</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> when using multiple <code>\beginnumbering... \endnumbering</code> . . . . .	1
v2.16.8.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\edindex</code> in footnotes in parallel typesetting. . . . .	1
v2.17.0.	
General: Add <code>\edglsadd</code> command. . . . .	1
Add <code>\setmsdataposition</code> setting. . . . .	1
v2.17.1.	
General: Fix spurious space in paragraphed footnotes when using <code>Lua<math>\TeX</math></code> without using Right-To-Left text. . . . .	1
v2.17.2.	
General: Change log message when numbered files still don't exist, in order to improve compatibility with <code>latexmk</code> . . . . .	1
v2.17.3.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\doendnotesbysection</code> and <code>\doendnotes</code> . . . . .	1
v2.17.4.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixsingle</code> and <code>\setSErefonlypageprefixmore</code> . . . . .	1
v2.17.5.	
General: Fix a bug with <code>\pstartref</code> when referring to the left side in parallel typesetting. . . . .	1
v2.18.0.	
General: Fix a bug when using a <code>\edtext</code> in two lines or more in right-to-left typesetting with <code>X<math>\TeX</math></code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug when using both <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstintwolines</code> or <code>\Xnumberonlyfirstinline</code> and <code>\Xparafootsep</code> and <code>\Xsymlinenum</code> . . . . .	1
v2.18.1.	
General: Fix a bug when using <code>\msdata</code> with <code>Lua<math>\TeX</math></code> or with the <code>hyperref</code> package. . . . .	1
v2.19.0.	
General: Add <code>\footnoteXmark</code> and <code>\footnoteXtext</code> commands. . . . .	1
Add better compatibility with the <code>csquotes</code> package when using familiar footnotes. . . . .	1
Fix a bug with paragraph indent after sectioning command. . . . .	1
v2.20.0.	
General: Add <code>\AtStartEveryStanza</code> , <code>\BeforeEveryStopStanza</code> , <code>\AtEndEveryPend</code> , <code>\AtStartEveryPstart</code> . . . . .	1
Add second optional argument to <code>\pstart</code> , <code>\pend</code> and <code>\stanza</code> . . . . .	1
Add starred version of <code>\AtEveryPstart</code> , <code>\AtEveryPend</code> , <code>\AtEveryStanza</code> and <code>\AtEveryStopStanza</code> . . . . .	1
Add third and fourth optional argument to <code>\newverse</code> . . . . .	1
Fix a bug when using familiar footnotes in <code>\eledsection</code> and related. . . . .	1
Reset font specification at the beginning of familiar footnotes. . . . .	1



v2.21.0.	
General: Add the possibility of nested <code>\sameword</code> commands.	1
Fix a bug when using formatting command in the argument of <code>\edindex</code> inside <code>\edtext</code> .	1
Now, as explained in the handbook, a <code>\edindex</code> inside <code>\edtext</code> only creates an index reference to the main text, and not to the critical footnote.	1
v2.22.0.	
General: Add <code>\txtbeforenotesonlyonceX</code> and <code>\Xtxtbeforenotesonlyonce</code> hooks.	1
Add <code>\txtbeforenotesX</code> hook.	1
Fix a bug added in v2.16.0 when using <code>\Xtxtbeforenotes</code> with paragraphed or normal footnotes.	1
Fix a bug with three and two columns critical footnotes, broken in v. 2.17.6.	1
v2.22.1.	
General: Compatibility with new version of <code>reledpar</code> .	1
Fix a bug with some commands inside <code>\sameword</code> .	1
v2.22.2.	
General: Do not print footnotes at the first run.	1
v2.23.0.	
General: Add <code>swcaseinsensitive</code> option	1
Optimisation of the code added on v2.22.2 to not print footnotes at the first run.	1
v2.24.0.	
<code>\next@line@list@stuff</code> : Add <code>\next@line@list@stuff</code> internal hook.	131
General: Add <code>\swnoexpands</code> macro to avoid problems with not fully expandable macro inside <code>\sameword</code> .	1
Fix a bug with <code>\edlabel</code> at the beginning of a <code>\pstart</code> .	1
Fix spurious space with <code>\labelpstarttrue</code>	1
When a <code>\setlinenum</code> is used, it is stronger than the <code>\lineation{page}</code> setting.	1
v2.24.1.	
General: Compatibility with <code>reledpar 2.20.2</code>	1
v2.24.2.	
General: Fix bug between tabular environments and endnotes	1
v2.25.0.	
General: Add <code>\Xendtxtbeforenotes</code> hook	1
v2.26.0.	
General: Add a mechanism for annotation of stanza line numbering	1
Fix bug in <code>\xpstartref</code>	1
v2.26.1.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\linenumannotation</code>	1
v2.26.10.	
General: Add error message when insertion a <code>\pstart</code> or <code>\pend</code> inside <code>\edtext</code> arguments	1
Really fix bug with page number in footnote after <code>\mainmatter</code> (bug introduced in v2.26.7)	1
v2.26.11.	
General: Allow to use <code>\edtext</code> inside <code>\sameword</code>	1
v2.26.12.	
General: Precise minimal version of <code>xparse</code> package required.	1
v2.26.2.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\linenumannotation</code> in parallel typesetting	1
Fix bug with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> and <code>\Xparafootsep</code> .	1

Fix bug with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> and optional argument of critical footnotes. . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> for the series after the first one. . . . .	1
v2.26.3.	
General: Fix bug added by v2.26.0 with notes in parallel typesetting . . . . .	1
v2.26.4.	
General: Fix bug when using <code>\numberpstarttrue</code> and alternating between manual <code>\pstart</code> and automatic <code>\pstart</code> produced by <code>\autopar</code> . . . . .	1
v2.26.5.	
General: Check that users have a enough recent version of <code>xparse</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug when using <code>\eledsection</code> with the <code>continuousnumberingwithcolumns</code> of <code>reledpar</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>continuousnumberingwithcolumns</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with using <code>\eledsection</code> and related when alternate normal typesetting and parallel typesetting . . . . .	1
v2.26.6.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\lineation</code> by page and nexted <code>\edtext</code> between two pages (added in v. 2.24.0) . . . . .	1
v2.26.7.	
General: Fix page number in footnote and endnotes when using <code>sameparallelpagenumber</code> option of <code>reledpar</code> and typesetting critical text in single mode after critical text in double page mode . . . . .	1
v2.26.8.	
General: Fix bug in some specific cases, introduced by v.2.27.7 . . . . .	1
v2.26.9.	
General: Fix bug with critical footnotes line number when alternating between <code>\numberlinefalse</code> and <code>\numberlinetrue</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with page number in footnote after <code>\mainmatter</code> (bug introduced in v2.26.7) . . . . .	1
Workaround with a bug of <code>TeX2018/04/01</code> patch level 3 to generate the .sty file from a .ins file . . . . .	1
v2.27.0.	
General: Add <code>\doinsidethislinehook</code> . . . . .	1
v2.27.1.	
General: Fix spurious space in <code>\hidenumbering</code> . . . . .	1
v2.28.0.	
General: Familiar footnotes can take an optional argument to manually define the footnote mark. . . . .	1
v2.28.1.	
General: Fix bug with the alignment of the columns of two and three columns critical footnotes. . . . .	1
v2.29.0.	
General: Add <code>noresetlinenumannotation</code> . . . . .	1
Fix bug with <code>\linenumannotation</code> and ‘ <code>nofamiliar</code> ’ option. . . . .	1
Fix little bug with <code>\msdata</code> . . . . .	1
Really reset line number annotation at each line . . . . .	1
v2.30.0.	
General: Add <code>\Xnoidenticallinenumannotation</code> and <code>\Xendnoidenticallinenumannotation</code> hooks . . . . .	1
Add separator between line number annotations in margin. Add <code>\setlinenumannotationsep</code> . . . . .	1

v2.31.0.	
General: Add <code>noprefix</code> and <code>prefixmore</code> to <code>\appref</code> and <code>\Seref</code> .	1
v2.31.1.	
General: Fix bug in vertical spacing with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> .	1
Fix bug with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> , which could produce spurious blank lines.	1
Fix bug with <code>\Xhangindent</code> and <code>\hangindentX</code> for right-to-left texts.	1
Fix bug with indentation with <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> .	1
Fix bug with multiple footnote layer and <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> .	1
Fix incompatibility between <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> and <code>hyperref</code> package.	1
Fix incompatibility between <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> and optional argument of critical footnotes.	1
v2.31.2.	
General: Fix bug with familiar footnote containing non-default font (introduced with v. 2.20.0).	1
v2.31.3.	
General: Fix bug with paragraphed footnote in RTL context.	1
v2.32.0.	
General: Add <code>\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirst</code> , <code>\Xlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo</code> , <code>\Xsymlinenumannotation</code> , <code>\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirst</code> , <code>\Xendlinenumannotationonlyfirstintwo</code> and <code>\Xendsymlinenumannotation</code> .	1
v2.32.1.	
General: Do not print <code>\Xendsep</code> if we print <code>\Xendsymlinenum</code> .	1
When using <code>\parindentX</code> or <code>\Xparindent</code> and stanza, use the normal indentation in the footnote, not the verse indentation.	1
v2.32.2.	
General: Fix spurious vertical space in familiar footnotes with Lua $\TeX$ .	1
v2.32.3.	
General: Fix bug with critical footnotes when typesetting Arabic text with <code>polyglossia</code> .	1
v2.32.4.	
General: <code>\footnoteXmark</code> and <code>\footnoteXtext</code> can now have an optional argument, setting the footnote number.	1
Fix bug <code>\footnoteXmark</code> and <code>\footnoteXtext</code> .	1
Fix bug when using <code>\Xgroupbyline</code> and twocol arrangement.	1
Fix bug with three and two columns footnotes when using <code>bid</code> .	1
v2.32.5.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\edindex</code> inside <code>\eledsection</code> and related.	1
Fix bug with macro inside <code>\sameword</code> with no- $\mathcal{X}\TeX$ engines.	1
Fix bug with page number in index with <code>\edindex</code> when indexing a critical notes.	1
v2.32.6.	
General: Add <code>hyperref</code> link when inserting glossary entries.	1
Fix bug with glossary entries inside the first argument of <code>\edtext</code> .	1
v2.32.7.	
General: Fix bug with <code>\lineation{pstart}</code> and <code>\edtext</code> in the very first line of a <code>\pstart</code> .	1
Fix bug with <code>\parafootsepX</code> .	1
Fix spurious spaces at the very first line of <code>edtabular</code> environments.	1
v2.32.8.	
General: Add subline number in manuscript apparatus.	1

v2.33.0.	
\ledinnotemark: \ledinnotemark redefinition is deprecated, use \Xinnotemark and \innotemarkX instead. ....	329
\newhookcommand@series: \newhookcommand@series can take an second optional argument (third argument). ....	280
General: Add \Xinnotemark and \innotemarkX hooks. ....	1
Add antilabe feature. ....	1
Add startstanzaindentsrepetition feature. ....	1
v2.33.1.	
General: Fix a spacing bug when the argument of \antilabe contains more than one word. ....	1
v2.34.0.	
General: Add \Xpstartonlyfirst and \Xstanzaonlyfirst. ....	1
Add \Xpstartseparator. ....	1